



**Big Nerd
Ranch**



2ND EDITION

Swift Programming

THE BIG NERD RANCH GUIDE



Matthew Mathias and John Gallagher

Swift Programming: The Big Nerd Ranch Guide

by **Matthew Mathias and John Gallagher**

Copyright © 2016 Big Nerd Ranch, LLC

All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission must be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. For information regarding permissions, contact

Big Nerd Ranch, LLC
200 Arizona Ave NE
Atlanta, GA 30307
(770) 817-6373
<http://www.bignerdranch.com/>
book-comments@bignerdranch.com

The 10-gallon hat with propeller logo is a trademark of Big Nerd Ranch, LLC.
Exclusive worldwide distribution of the English edition of this book by

Pearson Technology Group
800 East 96th Street
Indianapolis, IN 46240 USA
<http://www.informit.com>

The authors and publisher have taken care in writing and printing this book but make no expressed or implied warranty of any kind and assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the use of the information or programs contained herein.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the publisher was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed with initial capital letters or in all capitals.

Print ISBN-10 0134689658
Print ISBN-13 978-0134689654

Second edition, first printing, November 2016

Release K.2.1.1

Dedication

For my wife, who is smart, strong, and virtuous. And for my family, who has given me every opportunity to live a good life.

— M.M.

For my wife and best friend; you are “s’wonderful.” And for my daughters, who bring me joy every day.

— J.G.

Acknowledgments

We received a lot of help in writing this book. Without it, this book would not be what it is, and it may never even have happened. Thanks are due.

First, we need to say thank you to our colleagues at Big Nerd Ranch. Thank you to Aaron Hillegass for providing us with the opportunity to write this book. It has been immensely gratifying to learn and teach Swift. Big Nerd Ranch provided us with the time and space to work on this project. We hope that this book lives up to the trust and the support that we have received.

Particular thanks are also due to our colleagues in the Cocoa Pod at Big Nerd Ranch. Your careful teaching revealed many bugs in the text, and your thoughtful recommendations led to many improvements in our approach. Those of you who are not instructors helped to review the materials, vetted our approach, and provided countless suggestions that we never thought of. It is truly wonderful to have colleagues such as you. Thank you Pouria Almassi, Matt Bezark, Nate Chandler, Step Christopher, Kynerd Coleman, Matthew Compton, Joseph Dixon, Robert Edwards, Sean Farrell, Brian Hardy, Florian Harr, Tom Harrington, David House, Bolot Kerimbaev, Christian Keur, JJ Manton, Bill Monk, Chris Morris, Adam Preble, Scott Ritchie, Jeremy Sherman, Steve Sparks, Rod Strougo, TJ Usiyan, Zach Waldowski, Thomas Ward, and Mike Zornek.

Our colleagues in operations, marketing, and sales are instrumental. Classes would literally never be scheduled without their work. Thank you Shannon Coburn, Nicole Rej, Heather Sharpe, Tasha Schroeder, Jade Hill, Nicola Smith, Mat Jackson, Chris Kirksey, and Jon Malmgren for all of your hard work. We cannot do what you do.

Second, we need to acknowledge the many talented folks who worked on the book with us. Elizabeth Holaday, our editor, helped refine the book, crystallize its strengths, and diminish its weaknesses.

Simone Payment and Anna Bentley, our copyeditors, found and corrected errors and ultimately made us look smarter than we are.

Ellie Volckhausen designed our cover; that skateboard looks pretty rad.

Chris Loper designed and produced the print book and the EPUB and Kindle versions.

Finally, thank you to our students. We learned with you and for you. Teaching is part of the greatest thing that we do, and it has been a pleasure working with you. We hope that the quality of this book matches your enthusiasm and determination.

Table of Contents

Introduction

[Learning Swift](#)

[Why Swift?](#)

[Whither Objective-C?](#)

[Prerequisites](#)

[How This Book Is Organized](#)

[How to Use This Book](#)

[Challenges](#)

[For the More Curious](#)

[Typographical Conventions](#)

[Necessary Hardware and Software](#)

[Using an eBook](#)

[Before We Begin](#)

I. Getting Started

1. Getting Started

[Getting Started with Xcode](#)

[Playing in a Playground](#)

[Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)

[You Are on Your Way!](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

2. Types, Constants, and Variables

[Types](#)

[Constants vs Variables](#)

[String Interpolation](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

II. The Basics

3. Conditionals

[if/else](#)

[Ternary Operator](#)

[Nested ifs](#)

[else if](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

4. Numbers

[Integers](#)

[Creating Integer Instances](#)

[Operations on Integers](#)

[Integer division](#)

[Operator shorthand](#)

[Overflow operators](#)

[Converting Between Integer Types](#)

[Floating-Point Numbers](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[5. Switch](#)

[What Is a Switch?](#)

[Switch It Up](#)

[Ranges](#)

[Value binding](#)

[where clauses](#)

[Tuples and pattern matching](#)

[switch vs if/else](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[6. Loops](#)

[for-in Loops](#)

[where](#)

[A Quick Note on Type Inference](#)

[while Loops](#)

[repeat-while Loops](#)

[Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[7. Strings](#)

[Working with Strings](#)

[Unicode](#)

[Unicode scalars](#)

[Canonical equivalence](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[8. Optionals](#)

[Optional Types](#)

[Optional Binding](#)

[Implicitly Unwrapped Optionals](#)

[Optional Chaining](#)

[Modifying an Optional in Place](#)

[The Nil Coalescing Operator](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[III. Collections and Functions](#)

[9. Arrays](#)

[Creating an Array](#)

[Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)

[Array Equality](#)

[Immutable Arrays](#)

[Documentation](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[10. Dictionaries](#)

[Creating a Dictionary](#)

[Populating a Dictionary](#)

[Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

[Adding and Removing Values](#)

[Looping](#)

[Immutable Dictionaries](#)

[Translating a Dictionary to an Array](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[11. Sets](#)

[What Is a Set?](#)

[Getting a Set](#)

[Working with Sets](#)

[Unions](#)

[Intersections](#)

[Disjoint](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[12. Functions](#)

[A Basic Function](#)

[Function Parameters](#)

[Parameter names](#)

[Variadic parameters](#)

[Default parameter values](#)

[In-out parameters](#)

[Returning from a Function](#)

[Nested Functions and Scope](#)

[Multiple Returns](#)

[Optional Return Types](#)

[Exiting Early from a Function](#)

[Function Types](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[For the More Curious: Void](#)

[13. Closures](#)

[Closure Syntax](#)

[Closure Expression Syntax](#)

[Functions as Return Types](#)

[Functions as Arguments](#)

[Closures Capture Values](#)

[Closures Are Reference Types](#)

[Functional Programming](#)

[Higher-order functions](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[IV. Enumerations, Structures, and Classes](#)

[14. Enumerations](#)

[Basic Enumerations](#)

[Raw Value Enumerations](#)

[Methods](#)

[Associated Values](#)

[Recursive Enumerations](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[15. Structs and Classes](#)

[A New Project](#)

[Structures](#)

[Instance Methods](#)

[Mutating methods](#)

[Classes](#)

[A Monster class](#)

[Inheritance](#)

[What Should I Use?](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[For the More Curious: Type Methods](#)

[For the More Curious: Mutating Methods](#)

[16. Properties](#)

[Basic Stored Properties](#)

[Nested Types](#)

[Lazy Stored Properties](#)

[Computed Properties](#)

[A getter and a setter](#)

[Property Observers](#)

[Type Properties](#)

[Access Control](#)

[Controlling getter and setter visibility](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[17. Initialization](#)

[Initializer Syntax](#)

[Struct Initialization](#)

[Default initializers for structs](#)

[Custom initializers for structs](#)

[Class Initialization](#)

[Default initializers for classes](#)

[Initialization and class inheritance](#)

[Required initializers for classes](#)

[Deinitialization](#)

[Failable Initializers](#)

[A failable Town initializer](#)

[Initialization Going Forward](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[For the More Curious: Initializer Parameters](#)

[18. Value vs Reference Types](#)

[Value Semantics](#)

[Reference Semantics](#)

[Constant Value and Reference Types](#)

[Using Value and Reference Types Together](#)

[Copying](#)

[Equality vs Identity](#)

[What Should I Use?](#)

[For the More Curious: Copy on Write](#)

[V. Advanced Swift](#)

[19. Protocols](#)

[Formatting a Table of Data](#)

[Protocols](#)

[Protocol Conformance](#)

[Protocol Inheritance](#)

[Protocol Composition](#)

[Mutating Methods](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[20. Error Handling](#)

[Classes of Errors](#)

[Lexing an Input String](#)

[Catching Errors](#)

[Parsing the Token Array](#)

[Handling Errors by Sticking Your Head in the Sand](#)

[Swift Error-Handling Philosophy](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[21. Extensions](#)

[Extending an Existing Type](#)

[Extending Your Own Type](#)

[Using extensions to add protocol conformance](#)

[Adding an initializer with an extension](#)

[Nested types and extensions](#)

[Extensions with functions](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[22. Generics](#)

[Generic Data Structures](#)

[Generic Functions and Methods](#)

[Type Constraints](#)

[Associated Type Protocols](#)

[Type Constraint where Clauses](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[For the More Curious: Understanding Optionals](#)

[For the More Curious: Parametric Polymorphism](#)

[23. Protocol Extensions](#)

[Modeling Exercise](#)

[Extending Exercise](#)

[Protocol Extension where Clauses](#)

[Default Implementations with Protocol Extensions](#)

[Naming Things: A Cautionary Tale](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[24. Memory Management and ARC](#)

[Memory Allocation](#)

[Strong Reference Cycles](#)

[Breaking Strong Reference Cycles with weak](#)

[Reference Cycles in Closures](#)

[Escaping and Non-escaping Closures](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[For the More Curious: Can I Retrieve the Reference Count of an Instance?](#)

[25. Equatable and Comparable](#)

[Conforming to Equatable](#)

[Interlude: infix operators](#)

[Buy one method, get another free!](#)

[Conforming to Comparable](#)

[Comparable's Inheritance](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[Platinum Challenge](#)

[For the More Curious: Custom Operators](#)

[VI. Event-Driven Applications](#)

[26. Your First Cocoa Application](#)

[Getting Started with VocalTextEdit](#)

[Model-View-Controller](#)

[Setting Up the View Controller](#)

[Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)

[Adding the Speak and Stop buttons](#)

[Adding the text view](#)

[Auto Layout](#)

[Making Connections](#)

[Setting target-action pairs for VocalTextEdit's buttons](#)

[Connecting the text view outlet](#)

[Making VocalTextEdit ... Vocal](#)

[Saving and Loading Documents](#)

[Type casting](#)

[Saving documents](#)

[Loading documents](#)

[MVC cleanup](#)

[Swift in the real world](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[27. Your First iOS Application](#)

[Getting Started with iTahDoodle](#)

[Laying Out the User Interface](#)

[Wiring up your interface](#)

[Modeling a To-Do List](#)

[Setting Up the UITableView](#)

[Saving and Loading TodoList](#)

[Saving TodoList](#)

[Loading TodoList](#)

[Bronze Challenge](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[28. Interoperability](#)

[An Objective-C Project](#)

[Creating a contacts app](#)

[Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#)

[Adding contacts](#)

[Adding an Objective-C Class](#)

[Silver Challenge](#)

[Gold Challenge](#)

[29. Conclusion](#)

[Where to Go from Here?](#)

[Shameless Plugs](#)

[An Invitation](#)

[Index](#)

Introduction

Learning Swift

Apple's Worldwide Developers Conference is an annual landmark event for its developer community. It is a big deal every year, but 2014 was particularly special because Apple introduced Swift, an entirely new language for the development of iOS and OS X (now called macOS) applications.

As a relatively new language, Swift represents a fairly dramatic shift for macOS and iOS developers. More experienced iOS developers have something new to learn, and new developers cannot rely on a venerable community for tried and true answers and patterns. Naturally, this shift creates some uncertainty.

But this is also an exciting time to be a macOS and iOS developer. There is a lot to learn in a new language, and this is especially true for Swift. The language has evolved quite a bit since its beta release in the summer of 2014, and it continues to evolve.

We are all at the forefront of this language's development. As new features are added to Swift, its users can collaboratively determine its best practices. You can directly contribute to this conversation, and your work with this book will start you on your way to becoming a contributing member of the Swift community.

Why Swift?

If you have experience using Objective-C to develop for Apple platforms, you may be wondering why Apple released a new language. After all, developers had been producing high-quality apps for OS X and iOS for years. Apple had a few things in mind.

First, Objective-C is an older language. And while this is not always a problem, it leads to some difficulty in this case. The syntax of Objective-C was solidified prior to the rise of prominent scripting languages in the 1990s that popularized more streamlined and elegant syntax (e.g., JavaScript, Python, PHP, Ruby, and others). This makes Objective-C feel strange to most developers when they get started, so its syntax can be an impediment to developer productivity. Additionally, as an older language, Objective-C is missing many advancements developers in modern languages currently enjoy.

Also, Swift aims to be safe. Objective-C did not aim to be unsafe, but things have changed quite a bit since Objective-C was released in the 1980s. For example, the Swift compiler aims to minimize undefined behavior, which is intended to save the developer time debugging code that failed during the runtime of an application.

Another goal of Swift is to be a suitable replacement for the C family of languages (C, C++, and Objective-C). That means Swift has to be fast. Indeed, Swift's performance is comparable to these languages in most cases.

Swift gives you safety and performance all in a clean, modern syntax. The language is quite expressive; developers can write code that feels natural. This feature makes Swift a joy to write and easy to read, which makes it great for collaborating on larger projects.

Last, Apple wants Swift to be a general purpose programming language. This desire was reflected by the decision to open source Swift in December 2015. Open sourcing the language not only invites developer involvement to help the language progress, but also makes it easier for developers to port the language to other systems beyond macOS and iOS. Apple hopes that developers will use Swift to write apps for a variety of mobile and desktop platforms and to develop back-end web applications as well. Swift is intended to become a mainstream programming language that is the best solution for writing a variety of applications on a variety of systems.

Whither Objective-C?

So, what about Objective-C, Apple’s previous *lingua franca* for its platforms? Do you still need to know that language? For professional macOS and iOS developers, we think that answer is an unequivocal “yes.” Apple’s **Cocoa** and **UIKit** libraries, which you will use extensively, are written in Objective-C, so debugging will be easier if you understand that language. Indeed, Apple has made it easy – and sometimes preferable – to mix and match Objective-C with Swift in the same project. As a macOS or iOS developer, you are bound to encounter Objective-C, so it makes sense to be familiar with the language.

But do you need to know Objective-C to learn Swift or to begin to develop macOS or iOS apps? Not at all. Swift coexists and interoperates with Objective-C, but it is its own language. If you do not know Objective-C, it will not hinder you in learning Swift. (We will only use Objective-C directly in one chapter toward the end of this book, and even then it will not be important for you to understand the language.)

Prerequisites

We have written this book for all types of macOS and iOS developers, from platform experts to first-timers. For readers just starting software development, we will highlight and implement best practices for Swift and programming in general. Our strategy is to teach you the fundamentals of programming while learning Swift. For more experienced developers, we believe this book will serve as a helpful introduction to your platform's new language. So while having some development experience will be helpful, we do not believe that it is necessary to have a good experience with this book.

We have also written this book with numerous examples so that you can refer to it in the future. Instead of focusing on abstract concepts and theory, we have written in favor of the practical. Our approach favors using concrete examples to unpack the more difficult ideas and also to expose the best practices that make code more fun to write, more readable, and easier to maintain.

How This Book Is Organized

This book is organized in six parts. Each is designed to accomplish a specific set of goals that build on each other. By the end of the book, you will have built your knowledge of Swift from that of a beginner to a more advanced developer.

<i>Getting Started</i>	This part of the book focuses on the tools that you will need to write Swift code and introduces Swift's syntax.
<i>The Basics</i>	<i>The Basics</i> introduces the fundamental data types that you will use every day as a Swift developer. This part of the book also covers Swift's <i>control flow</i> features that will help you to control the order in which your code executes.
<i>Collections and Functions</i>	You will often want to gather related data in your application. Once you do, you will want to operate on that data. This part of the book covers the <i>collections</i> and <i>functions</i> Swift offers to help with these tasks.
<i>Enumerations, Structures, and Classes</i>	<i>Enumerations</i> , This part of the book covers how you will model your data in your own development. We discuss the differences between Swift's <i>enumerations</i> , <i>structures</i> , and <i>classes</i> and make some recommendations on when to use each.
<i>Advanced Swift</i>	As a modern language, Swift provides a number of more advanced features that enable you to write elegant, readable, and effective code. This part of the book discusses how to use these elements of Swift to write idiomatic code that will set you apart from more casual Swift developers.
<i>Event-Driven Applications</i>	This part of the book walks you through writing your first macOS and iOS applications. For readers working with older OS X or iOS applications, we conclude this part of the book by discussing how to interoperate between Objective-C and Swift.

How to Use This Book

Programming can be tough, and this book is here to make it easier. To get the most out of it, we recommend you follow these steps:

- Read the book. Really! Do not just browse it nightly before going to bed.
- Type out the examples as you read along. Part of learning is muscle memory. If your fingers know where to go and what to type without too much thought on your part, then you are on your way to becoming a more effective developer.
- Make mistakes! In our experience, the best way to learn how things work is to first figure out what makes them not work. Break our code examples and then make them work again.
- Experiment as your imagination sees fit. Whether that means tinkering with the code you find in the book or going off in your own direction, the sooner you start solving your own problems with Swift, the sooner you will become a better developer.
- Do the challenges we have provided. As we mentioned, it is important to begin solving problems with Swift as soon as possible. Doing so will help you to start thinking like a developer.

More experienced developers may not need to go through some of the earlier parts of the book. *Getting Started* and *The Basics* may be very familiar to some developers.

One caveat: In *The Basics*, do not skip the chapter on optionals as they are at the heart of Swift, and in many ways they define what is unique about the language.

Subsequent chapters like Arrays, Dictionaries, Functions, Enumerations, and Structs and Classes may seem like they will not present anything new to the practiced developer, but we feel that Swift's approach to these topics is unique enough that every reader should at least skim these chapters.

Last, remember that learning new things takes time. Dedicate some time to going through this book when you are able to avoid distractions. You will get more out of the text if you can give it your undivided attention.

Challenges

Many of the chapters conclude with exercises for you to work through on your own. These are opportunities for you to challenge yourself. In our experience, truly deep learning is accomplished when you solve problems in your own way.

For the More Curious

Relatedly, we include “For the More Curious” sections at the end of many chapters. These sections address questions that may have occurred to the curious reader working through the chapter. Sometimes, we discuss how a given language feature’s underlying mechanics work, or we may explore a programming concept not quite related to the heart of the chapter.

Typographical Conventions

You will be writing a lot of code as you work through this book. To make things easier, we use a couple of conventions to identify what code is old, what should be added, and what should be removed. For example, in the function implementation below, you are deleting `print("Hello")` and adding `print("Goodbye")`. The line reading `func talkToMe() {` and the final brace `}` were already in the code. They are shown to help you locate the changes.

```
func talkToMe() {  
    print("Hello")  
    print("Goodbye")  
}
```


Necessary Hardware and Software

To build and run the applications in this book, you will need a Mac running macOS El Capitan (10.11.4) or newer. You will also need to install **Xcode**, Apple's *integrated development environment* (IDE), which is available on the App Store. **Xcode** includes the Swift compiler as well as other development tools you will use throughout the book.

Swift is still under rapid development. This book is written for Swift 3.0 and **Xcode** 8.0. Many of the examples will not work as written with older versions of **Xcode**. If you are using a newer version of **Xcode**, there may have been changes in the language that will cause some examples to fail.

As this book is moving into the printing process, **Xcode** 8.1 Beta is available. The code samples in the book work with the latest beta version we have been able to use. If future versions of **Xcode** do cause problems, take heart – the vast majority of what you learn will continue to be applicable to future versions of Swift even though there may be changes in syntax or names. You can also check out our forums at forums.bignerdranch.com for help.

Using an eBook

If you are reading this book on a Kindle or Kindle Fire device, or in a Kindle for Android/iPhone/iPad app, reading the code may be tricky at times. Longer lines of code may wrap to a second line, depending on your selected font size.

The longest lines of code in this book are 86 monospace characters, like this one.

```
let friends = ["Arti", "Brian", "Carrie", "Danielle", "Dave", "D
```

You can play with your Kindle's settings to find the best for viewing long code lines.

When you get to the point where you are actually typing in code, we suggest opening the book on your Mac (or PC) in the appropriate Kindle application. (Kindle for Mac and Kindle for PC are free applications you can download from Amazon.) Make the application window large enough so that you can see the code with no wrapping lines. You will also be able to see the figures in full detail.

Before We Begin

We hope to show you how much fun it can be to make applications for the Apple ecosystem. While writing code can be extremely frustrating, it can also be gratifying. There is something magical and exhilarating about solving a problem, not to mention the special joy that comes from making an app that helps people and brings them happiness.

The best way to improve at anything is with practice. If you want to be a developer, then let's get started! If you find that you do not think you are very good at it, who cares? Keep at it and we are sure that you will surprise yourself. Your next steps lie ahead. Onward!

Part I

Getting Started

This part of the book introduces the toolchain for writing Swift code. It introduces Xcode as the Swift developer's primary development tool and uses playgrounds to provide a lightweight environment for trying out code. These initial chapters will also help you become familiar with some of Swift's most basic concepts, like constants and variables, which will set the stage for the rest of the book and a deeper understanding of the language.

Getting Started

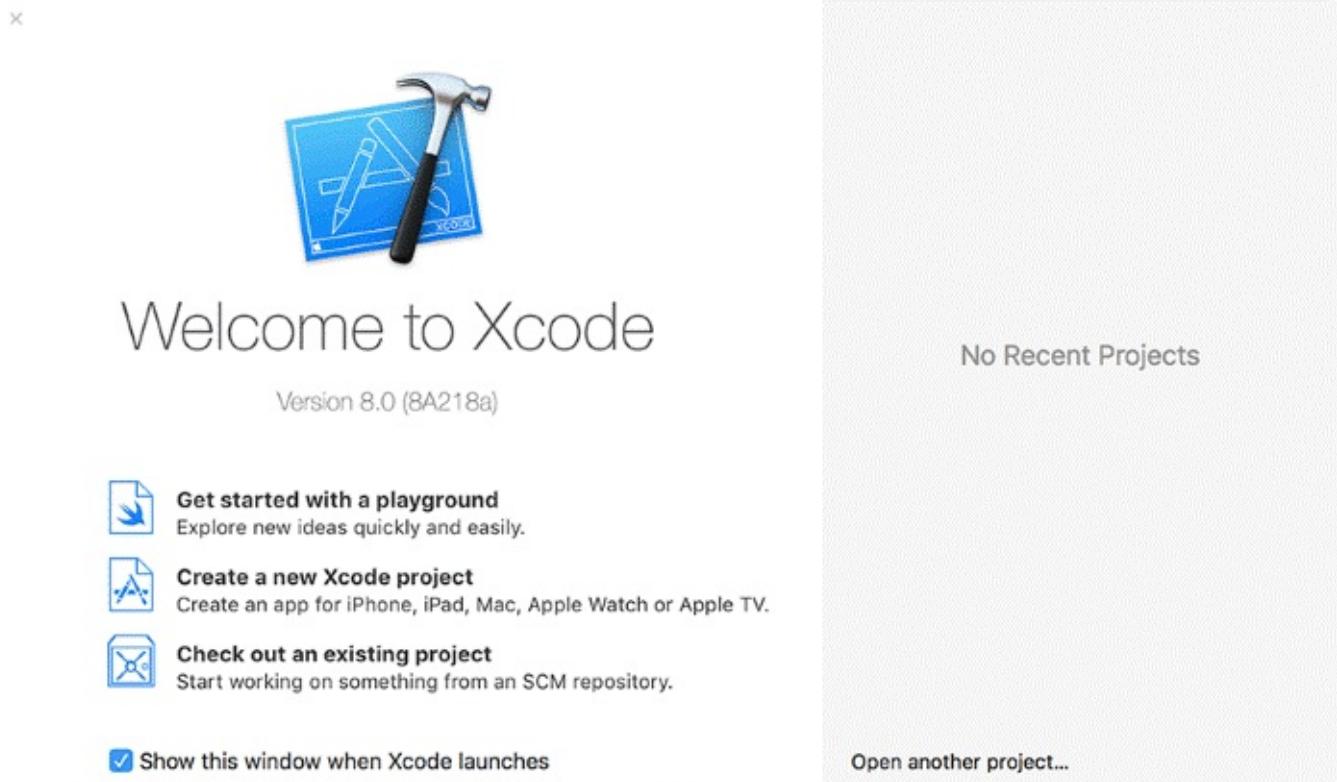
In this chapter, you will set up your environment and take a small tour of some of the tools you will use every day as an iOS and macOS developer. Additionally, you will get your hands dirty with some code to help you get better acquainted with Swift and Xcode.

Getting Started with Xcode

If you have not already done so, download and install Xcode, available on the App Store. Make sure to download Xcode 8 or higher.

When you have Xcode installed, launch it. The welcome screen gives you several options, including Get started with a playground and Create a new Xcode project ([Figure 1.1](#)).

Figure 1.1 Welcome to Xcode



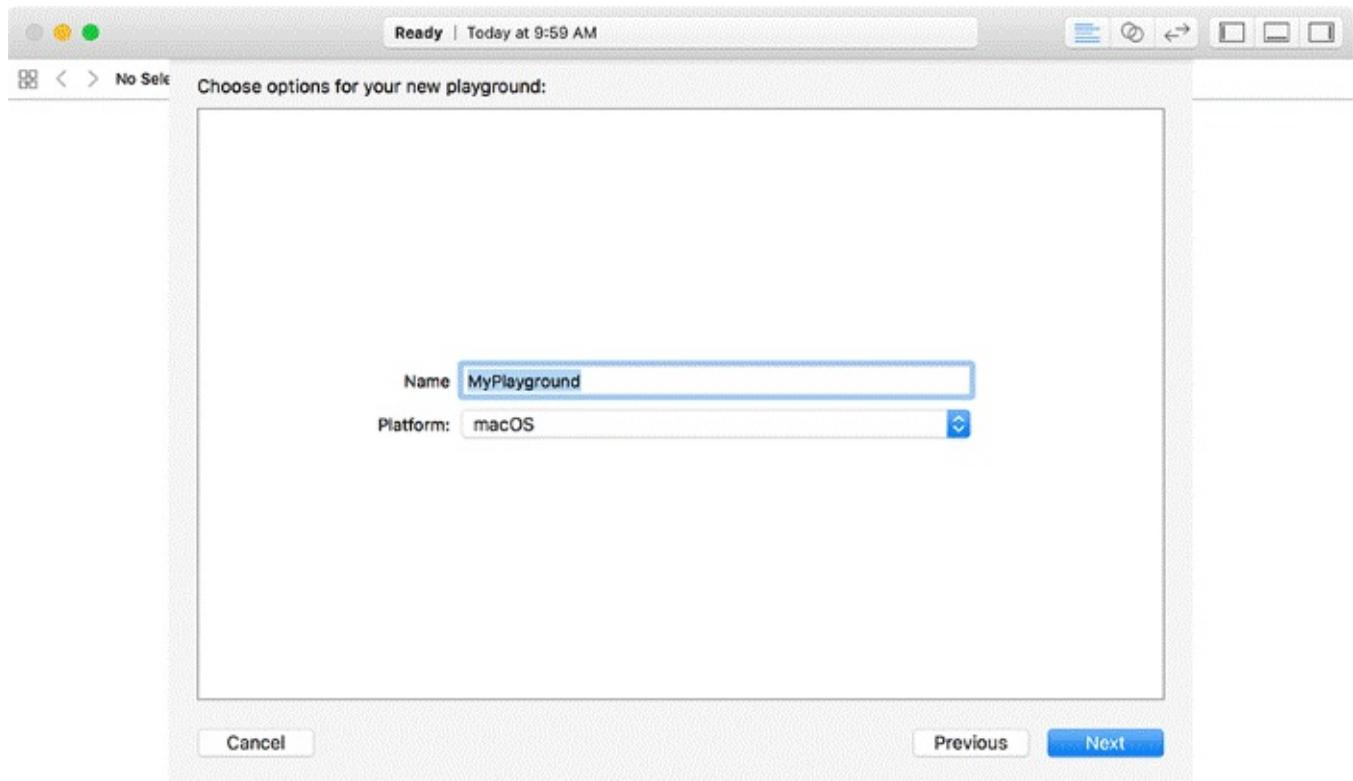
Playgrounds were released in Xcode 6. They provide an interactive environment for rapidly developing and evaluating Swift code and have become a useful prototyping tool. A playground does not require that you compile and run a complete project. Instead, playgrounds evaluate your Swift code on the fly, so they are ideal for testing and experimenting with the Swift language in a lightweight environment. You will be using playgrounds frequently throughout this book to get quick feedback on your Swift code.

In addition to playgrounds, you will create native command-line tools in later chapters. Why not just use playgrounds? You would miss out on a lot of Xcode's features and would not get as much exposure to the IDE. You will be spending a lot of time in Xcode, and it is good to get comfortable with it as soon as possible.

From the welcome screen, select Get started with a playground.

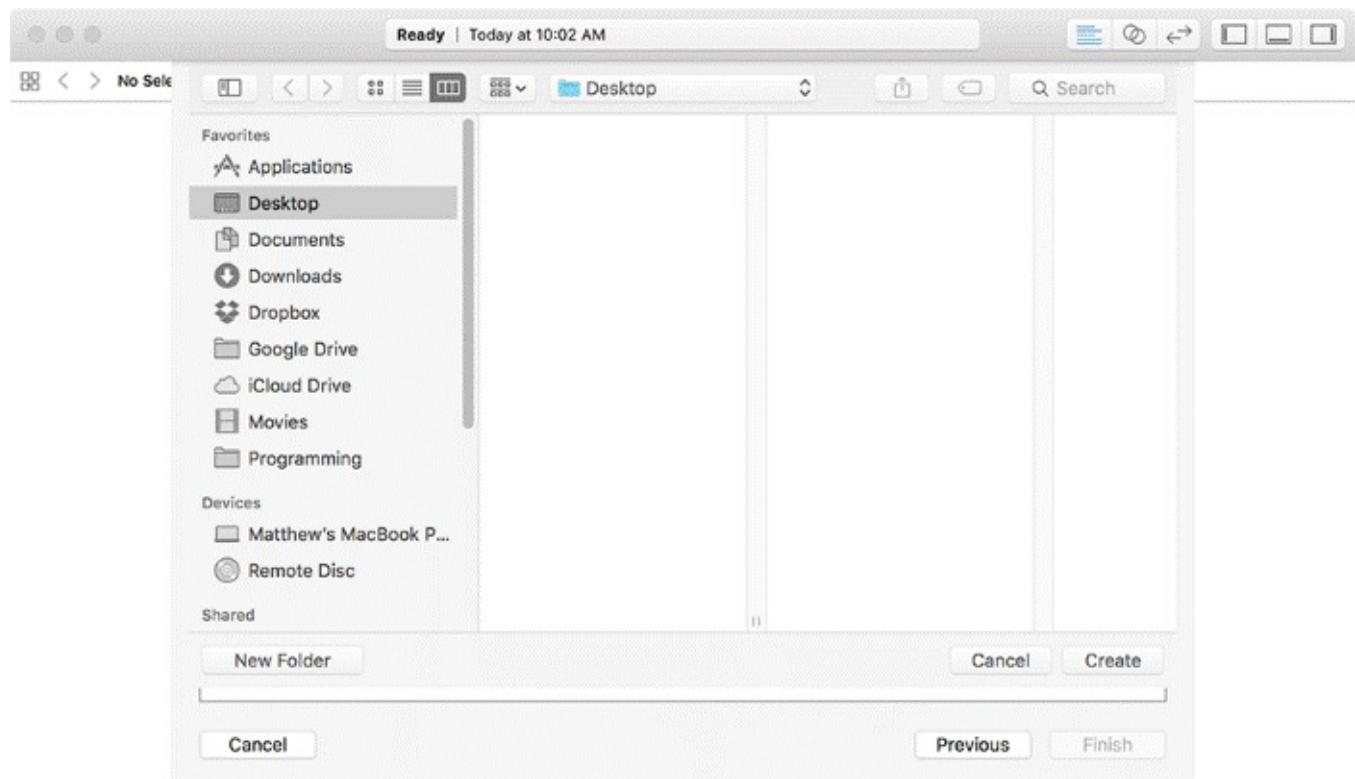
Next, name your playground **MyPlayground**. For the platform (iOS, macOS, or tvOS), select **macOS**, even if you are an iOS developer ([Figure 1.2](#)). The Swift features you will be covering are common to both platforms. Click **Next**.

Figure 1.2 Naming a playground



Finally, you are prompted to save your playground. As you work through this book, it is a good idea to put all of your work in one folder. Choose a location that works for you and click **Create** ([Figure 1.3](#)).

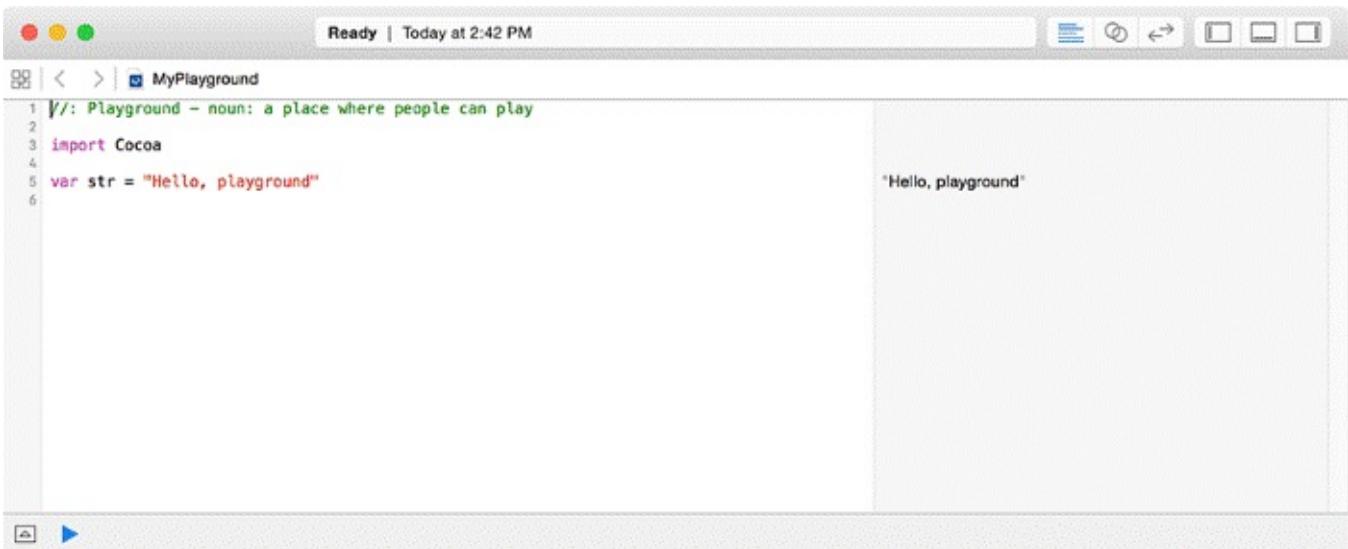
Figure 1.3 Saving a playground



Playing in a Playground

As you can see in [Figure 1.4](#), a Swift playground opens with two sections. On the left, you have the Swift code editor. On the right, you have the results sidebar. The code in the editor is evaluated and run top to bottom, if possible, every time the source changes. The results of the code are displayed in the results sidebar.

Figure 1.4 Your new playground



Let's take a look at your new playground. Notice that the first line of text is green and that it begins with two forward slashes: `//`. The slashes signify to the compiler that the line is a *comment*, and Xcode shows comments in green.

Developers use comments as inline documentation or for notes to help keep track of what happens where. The forward slashes tell the compiler that it should not treat that line as code. Delete the forward slashes. The compiler will issue an error complaining that it cannot parse the expression. Add the slashes back using the handy keyboard shortcut Command-/. (If you just installed Xcode and Command-/ does not work, restart your computer and try again.)

Just below the comment, the playground imports the Cocoa framework. This import statement means that your playground has complete access to all of the application programming interfaces (APIs) in the Cocoa framework. (An API is similar to a prescription – or set of definitions – for how a program can be written.)

Below the import statement is a line that reads `var str = "Hello, playground"`. The text in quotes is copied on the right, in the results sidebar: "Hello, playground". Let's take a closer look at that line of code.

First, notice the equals sign, which is called the *assignment operator*. The assignment operator assigns the result of code on its righthand side to a constant or variable on its lefthand side. For example, on the lefthand side of the equals sign, you have the text `var str`. Swift's keyword `var` is used to declare a variable. This is an important concept that you will see in greater detail in the next chapter. For now, a variable represents some value that you expect to change or vary.

On the righthand side of the equality, you have "Hello, playground". In Swift, the quotation

marks indicate a **String**, an ordered collection of characters. The template named this new variable `str`, but variables can be named almost anything. (There are limitations, of course. Try to change the name `str` to be `var`. What happens? Why do you think you cannot name your variable `var`? Be sure to change the name back to `str` before moving on.)

Now you can understand the text printed on the right in the results sidebar: It is the string value assigned to the variable `str`.

Varying Variables and Printing to the Console

String is a *type*, and we say that the `str` variable is “an instance of the **String** type.” Types describe a particular structure for representing data. Swift has many types, which you will meet throughout this book. Each type has specific abilities (what the type can do with data) and limitations (what it cannot do with data). For example, the **String** type is designed to work with an ordered collection of characters and defines a number of functions to work with that ordered collection of characters.

Recall that `str` is a variable. That means you can change `str`’s value. Let’s append an exclamation point to the end of the string to make it a well-punctuated sentence. (Whenever new code is added in this book, it will be shown in bold. Deletions will be struck through.)

Listing 1.1 Proper punctuation

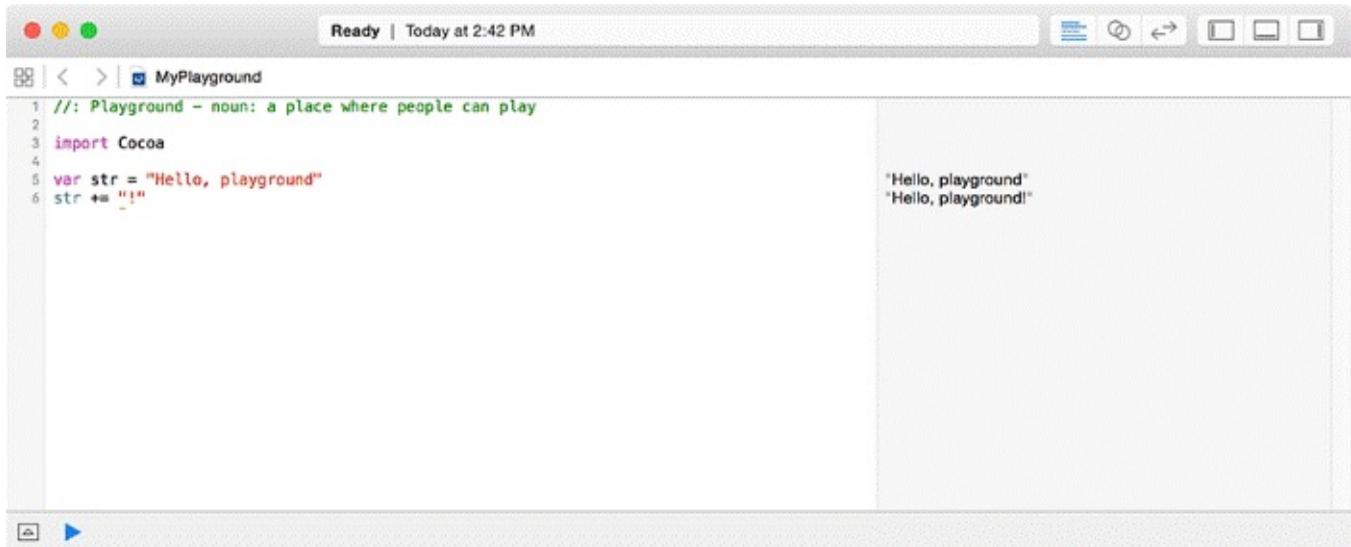
```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"
str += "!"
```

To add the exclamation point, you are using the `+= addition assignment operator`. The addition assignment operator combines the addition (`+`) and assignment (`=`) operations in a single operator. (You will learn more about operators in [Chapter 3](#).)

Did you notice anything in the results sidebar on the right? You should see a new line of results representing `str`’s new value, complete with exclamation point ([Figure 1.5](#)).

Figure 1.5 Varying `str`



Next, add some code to print the value held by the variable `str` to the *console*. In Xcode, the console displays text messages that you create and want to log as things occur in your program. Xcode also uses the console to display warnings and errors as they occur.

To print to the console, you will use the function `print()`. Functions are groupings of related code that send instructions to the computer to complete a specific task. `print()` is a function used to print a value to the console, followed by a line break. Unlike playgrounds,

Xcode projects do not have a results sidebar, so you will use the `print()` function frequently when you are writing fully featured apps. The console is useful for checking the current value of some variable of interest.

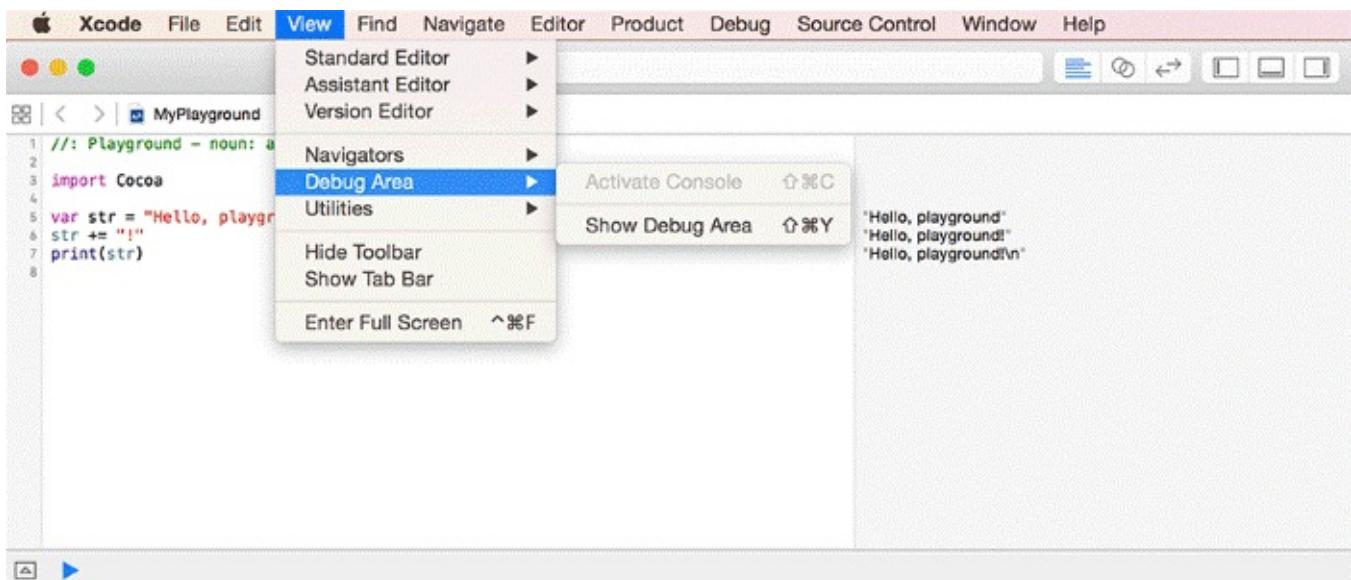
Listing 1.2 Printing to the console

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"
str += "!"
print(str)
```

After you enter this line and the playground executes the code, the console will open automatically at the bottom of the Xcode screen. (If it does not, you can open the *debug area* to see it. Click on View → Debug Area → Show Debug Area, as shown in [Figure 1.6](#). Notice the keyboard shortcut next to this last step? You can also type Shift-Command-Y on your keyboard to open the debug area.)

Figure 1.6 Showing the debug area



Now that you have your debug area open, you should see something like [Figure 1.7](#).

Figure 1.7 Your first Swift code

The screenshot shows a Mac OS X window titled "Ready | Today at 2:44 PM". Inside, there's a "MyPlayground" tab. The code area contains the following Swift code:

```
//: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
import Cocoa
var str = "Hello, playground"
str += "!"
print(str)
```

To the right of the code, the output is displayed in three lines:

```
"Hello, playground"
"Hello, playground!"
"Hello, playground!\n"
```

At the bottom left, there's a status bar with a play button icon and the text "Hello, playground!".

You Are on Your Way!

Let's review what you have accomplished so far. You have:

- installed Xcode
- created and gotten acquainted with a playground
- used a variable and modified it
- learned about the **String** type
- used a function to print to the console

That is good! You will be making your own apps in no time. Until then, stick with it. As you continue, you will see that most everything in this book is merely a variation on the themes you have covered thus far.

Bronze Challenge

Many of the chapters in this book end with one or more challenges. The challenges are for you to work through on your own to deepen your understanding of Swift and get a little extra experience. Your first challenge is below. Before you get started, create a new playground.

You learned about the **String** type and printing to the console using **print()**. Use your new playground to create a new instance of the **String** type. Set the value of this instance to be equal to your last name. Print its value to the console.

Types, Constants, and Variables

This chapter will introduce you to Swift's basic data types, constants, and variables. These elements are the fundamental building blocks of any program. You will use constants and variables to store values and to pass data around in your applications. Types describe the nature of the data held by the constant or variable. There are important differences between constants and variables, as well as each of the data types, that shape their uses.

Types

Variables and constants have a data type. The type describes the nature of the data and provides information to the compiler on how to handle the data. Based on the type of a constant or variable, the compiler knows how much memory to reserve and will also be able to help with *type checking*, a feature of Swift that helps prevent you from assigning the wrong kind of data to a variable.

Let's see this in action. Create a new macOS playground. (From the welcome screen, choose Get started with a playground. From within Xcode, choose File → New → Playground... .) Name the playground **Variables**.

Suppose you want to model a small town in your code. You might want a variable for the number of stoplights in the town. Remove the code that came with the template, create a variable called `numberOfStoplights`, and give it a value. (Remember that code you are to delete is shown struck through.)

Listing 2.1 Assigning a string to a variable

```
import Cocoa  
  
var str = "Hello, playground"  
var numberOfStoplights = "Four"
```

Here, you have assigned an instance of the **String** type to the variable called `numberOfStoplights`. Let's go piece by piece to see why this is so. The assignment operator (=) assigns the value on its right side to whatever is on its left side. Swift uses *type inference* to determine the data type of your variable. In this case, the compiler knows the variable `numberOfStoplights` is of the **String** type because the value on the right side of the assignment operator is an instance of **String**. Why is "Four" an instance of the **String** type? Because the quotation marks indicate that it is a **String** literal.

Now add the integer 2 to your variable, using `+=` as you did in the last chapter.

Listing 2.2 Adding "Four" and 2

```
import Cocoa  
  
var numberOfStoplights = "Four"  
numberOfStoplights += 2
```

The compiler gives you an error telling you that this operation does not make sense. You get this error because you are trying to add a number to a variable that is an instance of a different type: **String**. What does it mean to add the number 2 to a string? Does it double the string and give you "FourFour"? Does it put "2" on the end and give you "Four2"? Nobody knows. It just does not make sense to add a number to an instance of **String**.

If you are thinking that it does not make sense to have `numberOfStoplights` be of type **String** in the first place, you are right. Because this variable represents the *number* of stoplights in your theoretical town, it makes sense to use a *numerical* type. Swift provides an

Int type to represent whole integers that is perfect for your variable. Change your code to use **Int** instead.

Listing 2.3 Using a numerical type

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var numberOfStoplights = "Four"
var numberOfStoplights: Int = 4
numberOfStoplights += 2
```

Let's take a look at the changes here. Before, the compiler relied on type inference to determine the data type of the variable `numberOfStoplights`. Now, you are explicitly declaring the variable to be of the **Int** type using Swift's *type annotation* syntax. The colon in the code above represents the phrase "*of type*." This code could be read as: "Declare a variable called `numberOfStoplights` of type **Int** that starts out with a value of 4."

Note that type annotation does not mean that the compiler is no longer paying attention to what is on each side of the equality. If, for example, you tried to reassign your previous **String** instance of "Four" to be an integer using type annotation, the compiler would give you a warning telling you that it cannot convert a string to an integer.

Swift has a host of frequently used data types. You will learn more about strings, which contain textual data, in [Chapter 7](#) and numbers in [Chapter 4](#). Other commonly used types are the various *collection types*, which you will see later in the book.

Notice something else about the new code you entered: Your error has disappeared. It is fine to add 2 to the integer variable representing your town's number of stoplights. In fact, because you have declared this instance to be a variable, this operation is perfectly natural.

Constants vs Variables

We said that types describe the nature of the data held by a constant or variable. What, then, are constants and variables? Up to now, you have only seen variables. Variables' values can vary, which means that you can assign them a new value. You varied `numberOfStoplights`'s value in this code: `numberOfStoplights += 2`.

Often, however, you will want to create instances with values that do not change. Use *constants* for these cases. As the name indicates, the value of a constant cannot be changed.

You made `numberOfStoplights` a variable, and you changed its value. But what if you did not want to vary the value of `numberOfStoplights`? In that case, making `numberOfStoplights` a constant would be better. A good rule of thumb is to use variables for instances that must vary and constants for instances that will not.

Swift has different syntax for declaring constants and variables. As you have seen, you declare a variable with the keyword `var`. You use the `let` keyword to declare that an instance is a constant.

Declare a constant in the current playground to fix the number of stoplights in your small town.

Listing 2.4 Declaring a constant

```
import Cocoa

var numberOfStoplights: Int = 4
let numberOfStoplights: Int = 4
numberOfStoplights += 2
```

You declare `numberOfStoplights` to be a constant via the `let` keyword. Unfortunately, this change causes the compiler to issue an error. Why?

You have just changed `numberOfStoplights` to be a constant, but you still have code that attempts to change its value: `numberOfStoplights += 2`. Because constants cannot change, the compiler gives you an error when you try to change it. Fix the problem by removing the addition and assignment code.

Listing 2.5 Constants do not vary

```
import Cocoa

let numberOfStoplights: Int = 4
numberOfStoplights += 2
```

Now, add an `Int` to represent the town's population. (Do you think it should be a variable or a constant?)

Listing 2.6 Declaring population

```
import Cocoa
```

```
let numberOfRowsStoplights: Int = 4  
var population: Int
```

Your town's population is likely to vary over time. Thus, you declared `population` with the `var` keyword to make this instance a variable. You also declared `population` to be an instance of type **Int**. You did so because a town's population is counted in terms of whole persons. But you did not *initialize* `population` with any value. It is therefore an *uninitialized Int*.

(Initialization, which you will learn more about in [Chapter 17](#), is the operation of setting up an instance of a type so that it is prepared and available to use.)

Use the assignment operator to give `population` its starting value.

Listing 2.7 Giving `population` a value

```
import Cocoa
```

```
let numberOfRowsStoplights: Int = 4  
var population: Int  
population = 5422
```


String Interpolation

Every town needs a name. Your town is fairly stable, so it will not be changing its name any time soon. Make the town name a constant of type **String**.

Listing 2.8 Giving the town a name

```
import Cocoa

let numberOfStoplights: Int = 4
var population: Int
population = 5422
let townName: String = "Knowhere"
```

It would be nice to have a short description of the town that the Tourism Council could use. The description is going to be a constant **String**, but you will be creating it a bit differently than the constants and variables you have created so far. The description will include all the data you have entered, and you are going to create it using a Swift feature called *string interpolation*.

String interpolation lets you combine constant and variable values into a new string. You can then assign the string to a new variable or constant or just print it to the console. You are going to print the town description to the console.

Listing 2.9 Crafting the town description

```
import Cocoa

let numberOfStoplights: Int = 4
var population: Int
population = 5422
let townName: String = "Knowhere"
let townDescription =
"\(townName) has a population of \(population) and \(numberOfStoplights)"
print(townDescription)
```

The `\()` syntax represents a placeholder in the **String** literal that accesses an instance's value and places it (or “interpolates” it) within the new **String**. For example, `\(townName)` accesses the constant `townName`'s value and places it within the new **String** instance.

The result of the new code is shown in [Figure 2.1](#).

Figure 2.1 Knowhere's short description

The screenshot shows a Mac OS X desktop with an Xcode playground window titled "Ready | Today at 10:54 AM". The playground interface includes a toolbar with standard Mac OS X icons (red, yellow, green circles) and a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "Project", "Run", "Stop", "Variables", and "Help". The main area has tabs for "Variables" and "Playground". The playground code is as follows:

```
1 //: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
2
3 import Cocoa
4
5 let numberOfStoplights: Int = 4
6 var population: Int
7 population = 5422
8 let townName = "Knowhere"
9 let townDescription =
10 "\(townName) has a population of \(population) and \(numberOfStoplights) stoplights."
11 print(townDescription)
```

The output pane shows the results of the print statement:

```
4
5422
"Knowhere"
"Knowhere has a population of 5422 and 4 stoplights."
"Knowhere has a population of 5422 and 4 stoplights.\n"
```

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays the message "Knowhere has a population of 5422 and 4 stoplights."

Bronze Challenge

Add a new variable to your playground representing Knowhere's level of unemployment. Which data type should you use? Give this variable a value and update `townDescription` to use this new information.

Part II

The Basics

Programs execute code in a specific order. Writing software means having control over the order in which code executes. Programming languages provide *control flow statements* to help developers organize the execution of their code. This part of the book introduces the concepts of conditionals and loops to accomplish this task.

The chapters in this section of the book will also show you how Swift represents numbers and text – often called strings – in code. These types of data are the building blocks of many applications. By the end of these chapters, you will have a good understanding of how numbers and strings work in Swift.

Last, this part of the book introduces the concept of *optionals* in Swift. Optionals play an important role in the language and provide a mechanism for the language to represent the concept of *nothing* in a safe way. As you will see, how Swift deals with optionals highlights the language’s approach to writing safe and reliable code.

Conditionals

In previous chapters your code led a relatively simple life: You declared some constants and variables and then assigned them values. But of course, an application really comes to life – and programming becomes a bit more challenging – when the application makes decisions based on the contents of its variables. For example, a game may let players leap a tall building *if* they have eaten a power-up. You use conditional statements to help applications make these kind of decisions.

if/else

if/else statements execute code based on a specific logical condition. You have a relatively simple either/or situation, and depending on the result one branch of code or another (but not both) runs.

Consider Knowhere, your small town from the previous chapter, and imagine that you need to buy stamps. Either Knowhere has a post office or it does not. If it has a post office, you will buy stamps there. If it does not have a post office, you will need to drive to the next town to buy stamps. Whether there is a post office is your logical condition. The different behaviors are “get stamps in town” and “get stamps out of town.”

Some situations are more complex than a binary yes/no. You will see a more flexible mechanism called switch in [Chapter 5](#). But for now, let’s keep it simple.

Create a new macOS playground and name it **Conditionals**. Enter the code below, which shows the basic syntax for an if/else statement:

Listing 3.1 Big or small?

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"
var population: Int = 5422
var message: String

if population < 10000 {
    message = "\(population) is a small town!"
} else {
    message = "\(population) is pretty big!"
}
print(message)
```

You first declare **population** as an instance of the **Int** type and then assign it a value of 5,422. You also declare a variable called **message** that is of the **String** type. You leave this variable uninitialized at first, meaning that you do not assign it a value.

Next comes the conditional if/else statement. This is where **message** is assigned a value based on whether the “if” statement evaluates to true. (Notice that you use *string interpolation* to put the population into the **message** string.)

[Figure 3.1](#) shows what your playground should look like. The console and the results sidebar show that **message** has been set to be equal to the string literal assigned when the conditional evaluates to true. How did this happen?

Figure 3.1 Conditionally describing a town's population

The screenshot shows an Xcode playground window titled "Conditionals". The code is as follows:

```
//: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
import Cocoa
var population: Int = 5422
var message: String
if population < 10000 {
    message = "\(population) is a small town!"
} else {
    message = "\(population) is pretty big!"
}
print(message)
```

The output pane shows the result of running the code: "5422 is a small town!". Below the output pane, a status bar displays "5422 is a small town!".

The condition in the `if/else` statement tests whether your town's population is less than 10,000 via the `<` *comparison operator*. If the condition evaluates to true, then `message` is set to be equal to the first string literal ("`X` is a small town!"). If the condition evaluates to false – if the population is 10,000 or greater – then `message` is set to be equal to the second string literal ("`X` is pretty big!"). In this case, the town's population is less than 10,000, so `message` is set to "5422 is a small town!".

[Table 3.1](#) lists Swift's comparison operators.

Table 3.1 Comparison operators

Operator	Description
<code><</code>	Evaluates whether the value on the left is less than the value on the right.
<code><=</code>	Evaluates whether the value on the left is less than or equal to the value on the right.
<code>></code>	Evaluates whether the value on the left is greater than the value on the right.
<code>>=</code>	Evaluates whether the value on the left is greater than or equal to the value on the right.
<code>==</code>	Evaluates whether the value on the left is equal to the value on the right.
<code>!=</code>	Evaluates whether the value on the left is not equal to the value on the right.
<code>===</code>	Evaluates whether the two instances point to the same reference.
<code>!==</code>	Evaluates whether the two instances do not point to the same reference.

You do not need to understand all of the operators' descriptions right now. You will see many of them in action as you move through the book, and they will become clearer as you use them. Refer back to this table as a reference if you have questions.

Sometimes you only care about one aspect of the condition that is under evaluation. That is, you want to execute code if a certain condition is met and do nothing if it is not. Enter the code below. (Notice that new code, shown in bold, appears in two places.)

Listing 3.2 Is there a post office?

```

import Cocoa

var population: Int = 5422
var message: String
var hasPostOffice: Bool = true

if population < 10000 {
    message = "\((population) is a small town!"
} else {
    message = "\((population) is pretty big!"
}
print(message)

if !hasPostOffice {
    print("Where do we buy stamps?")
}

```

Here, you add a new variable called `hasPostOffice`. This variable has the type **Bool**, short for “Boolean.” Boolean types can take one of two values: `true` or `false`. In this case, the Boolean `hasPostOffice` variable keeps track of whether the town has a post office. You set it to `true`, meaning that it does.

The `!` is a *logical operator* known as *logical not*. It tests whether `hasPostOffice` is false. You can think of `!` as inverting a Boolean value: True becomes false, and false becomes true.

The code above first sets `hasPostOffice` to true, then asks whether it is false. If `hasPostOffice` is false, you do not know where to buy stamps, so you ask. If `hasPostOffice` is true, you know where to buy stamps and do not have to ask, so nothing happens.

Because the town *does* have a post office (because `hasPostOffice` was initialized to `true`), the condition `!hasPostOffice` is false. That is, it is *not* the case that `hasPostOffice` is false. Therefore, the `print()` function never gets called.

[Table 3.2](#) lists Swift’s logical operators.

Table 3.2 Logical operators

Operator	Description
<code>&&</code>	Logical and: true if and only if both are true (false otherwise).
<code> </code>	Logical or: true if either is true (false only if both are false).
<code>!</code>	Logical not: true becomes false, false becomes true.

Ternary Operator

The *ternary operator* is very similar to an `if/else` statement, but has the more concise syntax `a ? b : c`. In English, the ternary operator reads something like, “If `a` is true, then do `b`. Otherwise, do `c`.”

Let’s rewrite the town population check that used `if/else` using the ternary operator instead.

Listing 3.3 Using the ternary operator

```
...
if population < 10000 {
    message = "\(\population) is a small town!"
} else {
    message = "\(\population) is pretty big!"
}

message = population < 10000 ? "\(\population) is a small town!"
                            "\(\population) is pretty big!"
...

```

The ternary operator can be a source of controversy: Some programmers love it; some programmers loathe it. We come down somewhere in the middle. This particular usage is not very elegant. Your assignment to `message` requires more than a simple `a ? b : c`. The ternary operator is great for concise statements, but if your statement starts wrapping to the next line, we think you should use `if/else` instead.

Hit Command-Z to undo, removing the ternary operator and restoring your `if/else` statement.

Listing 3.4 Restoring `if/else`

```
...
message = population < 10000 ? "\(\population) is a small town!"
                            "\(\population) is pretty big!"
if population < 10000 {
    message = "\(\population) is a small town!"
} else {
    message = "\(\population) is pretty big!"
}
...

```


Nested ifs

You can nest `if` statements for scenarios with more than two possibilities. You do this by writing an `if/else` statement inside the curly braces of another `if/else` statement. To see this, nest an `if/else` statement within the `else` block of your existing `if/else` statement.

Listing 3.5 Nesting conditionals

```
import Cocoa

var population: Int = 5422
var message: String
var hasPostOffice: Bool = true

if population < 10000 {
    message = "\u2022(population) is a small town!"
} else {
    if population >= 10000 && population < 50000 {
        message = "\u2022(population) is a medium town!"
    } else {
        message = "\u2022(population) is pretty big!"
    }
}
print(message)

if !hasPostOffice {
    print("Where do we buy stamps?")
}
```

Your nested `if` clause makes use of the `>= comparator` (comparison operator) and the `&&` logical operator to check whether `population` is within the range of 10,000 to 50,000. Because your town's `population` does not fall within that range, your `message` is set to "5422 is a small town!" as before.

Try bumping up the population to exercise the other branches.

Nested `if/else` statements are common in programming. You will find them out in the wild, and you will be writing them as well. There is no limit to how deeply you can nest these statements. However, the danger of nesting them too deeply is that it makes the code harder to read. One or two levels are fine, but beyond that your code becomes less readable and maintainable.

There are ways to avoid nested statements. Next, you are going to *refactor* the code that you have just written to make it a little easier to follow. Refactoring means changing code so that it does the same work but in a different way. It may be more efficient, be easier to understand, or just look prettier.

else if

The `else if` conditional lets you chain multiple conditional statements together. `else if` allows you to check against multiple cases and conditionally executes code depending on which clause evaluates to true. You can have as many `else if` clauses as you want. Only one condition will match.

To make your code a little easier to read, extract the nested `if/else` statement to be a standalone clause that evaluates whether your town is of medium size.

Listing 3.6 Using else if

```
import Cocoa

var population: Int = 5422
var message: String
var hasPostOffice: Bool = true

if population < 10000 {
    message = "\u2028(population) is a small town!"
} else if population >= 10000 && population < 50000 {
    message = "\u2028(population) is a medium town!"
} else {
    if population >= 10000 && population < 50000 {
        message = "\u2028(population) is a medium town!"
    } else {
        message = "\u2028(population) is pretty big!"
    }
}
print(message)

if !hasPostOffice {
    print("Where do we buy stamps?")
}
```

You are using one `else if` clause, but you could have chained many more. This block of code is an improvement over the nested `if/else` above. If you find yourself with lots of `if/else` statements, you may want to use another mechanism – such as `switch`, described in [Chapter 5](#). Stay tuned.

Bronze Challenge

Add an additional `else if` statement to the town-sizing code to see if your town's `population` is very large. Choose your own population thresholds. Set the `message` variable accordingly.

Numbers

Numbers are the fundamental language of computers. They are also a staple of software development. Numbers are used to keep track of temperature, determine how many letters are in a sentence, and count the zombies infesting a town. Numbers come in two basic flavors: integers and floating-point numbers.

Integers

You have worked with integers already, but we have not yet defined them. An integer is a number that does not have a decimal point or fractional component – a whole number. Integers are frequently used to represent a count of “things,” such as the number of pages in a book. A difference between integers used by computers and numbers you use elsewhere is that an integer type on a computer takes up a fixed amount of memory. Therefore, they cannot represent all possible whole numbers – they have a minimum and maximum value.

We could tell you those minimum and maximum values, but we are going to let Swift tell you instead. Create a new playground, name it `Numbers`, and enter the following code.

Listing 4.1 Maximum and minimum values for `Int`

```
import Cocoa  
  
var str = "Hello, playground"
```

```
print("The maximum Int value is \(Int.max).")  
print("The minimum Int value is \(Int.min).")
```

In the console, you should see the following output:

The maximum Int value is 9223372036854775807.

The minimum Int value is -9223372036854775808.

Why are those numbers the minimum and maximum `Int` values? Computers store integers in binary form with a fixed number of bits. A bit is a single 0 or 1. Each bit position represents a power of 2; to compute the value of a binary number, add up each of the powers of 2 whose bit is a 1. For example, the binary representations of 38 and -94 using an 8-bit signed integer are shown in [Figure 4.1](#). (Note that the bit positions are read from right to left. *Signed* means that the integer can represent positive or negative values. More about signed integers in a moment.)

Figure 4.1 Binary numbers

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} \boxed{0} & \boxed{0} & \boxed{1} & \boxed{0} & \boxed{0} & \boxed{1} & \boxed{1} & \boxed{0} \\ -2^7 & 2^6 & 2^5 & 2^4 & 2^3 & 2^2 & 2^1 & 2^0 \end{array} = 2^1 + 2^2 + 2^5 = 2 + 4 + 32 = 38$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} \boxed{1} & \boxed{0} & \boxed{1} & \boxed{0} & \boxed{0} & \boxed{0} & \boxed{1} & \boxed{0} \\ -2^7 & 2^6 & 2^5 & 2^4 & 2^3 & 2^2 & 2^1 & 2^0 \end{array} = 2^1 + 2^5 - 2^7 = 2 + 32 - 128 = -94$$

In macOS, `Int` is a 64-bit integer, which means it has 2^{64} possible values. Imagine [Figure 4.1](#), only 64 bits wide instead of 8. The power of 2 represented by the top (left-most) bit would be $-2^{63} = -9,223,372,036,854,775,808$ – exactly the value you see for `Int.min` in your playground. And, if you were to add up $2^0, 2^1, \dots, 2^{62}$, you would arrive at $9,223,372,036,854,775,807$ – the value you see for `Int.max`.

In iOS, **Int** is slightly more complicated. Apple introduced 64-bit devices starting with iPhone 5S, iPad Air, and iPad mini with Retina display. Earlier devices had a 32-bit architecture. If you write an iOS app for newer devices, which is called “targeting a 64-bit architecture,” **Int** is a 64-bit integer just like in macOS. On the other hand, if you target a 32-bit architecture like iPhone 5 or iPad 2, **Int** is a 32-bit integer. The compiler determines the appropriate size for **Int** when it builds your program.

If you need to know the exact size of an integer, you can use one of Swift’s explicitly sized integer types. For example, **Int32** is Swift’s 32-bit signed integer type. Use **Int32** to see the minimum and maximum value for a 32-bit integer.

Listing 4.2 Maximum and minimum values for Int32

```
...
print("The maximum Int value is \(\Int.max).")
print("The minimum Int value is \(\Int.min).")
print("The maximum value for a 32-bit integer is \(\Int32.max).")
print("The minimum value for a 32-bit integer is \(\Int32.min).")
```

Also available are **Int8**, **Int16**, and **Int64**, for 8-bit, 16-bit, and 64-bit signed integer types. You use the sized integer types when you need to know the size of the underlying integer, such as for some algorithms (common in cryptography) or to exchange integers with another computer (such as sending data across the internet). You will not use these types much; good Swift style is to use an **Int** for most use cases.

All the integer types you have seen so far are signed, which means they can represent both positive and negative numbers. Swift also has unsigned integer types to represent whole numbers greater than or equal to 0. Every signed integer type (**Int**, **Int16**, etc.) has a corresponding unsigned integer type (**UInt**, **UInt16**, etc.). The difference between signed and unsigned integers at the binary level is that the power of 2 represented by the top-most bit (2^7 for 8-bit integers) is positive instead of negative. Test a couple of these.

Listing 4.3 Maximum and minimum values for unsigned integers

```
...
print("The maximum Int value is \(\Int.max).")
print("The minimum Int value is \(\Int.min).")
print("The maximum value for a 32-bit integer is \(\Int32.max).")
print("The minimum value for a 32-bit integer is \(\Int32.min).")

print("The maximum UInt value is \(\UInt.max).")
print("The minimum UInt value is \(\UInt.min).")
print("The maximum value for a 32-bit unsigned integer is \(\UInt32.max).")
print("The minimum value for a 32-bit unsigned integer is \(\UInt32.min).")
```

Like **Int**, **UInt** is a 64-bit integer in macOS and may be 32-bit or 64-bit depending on the target for iOS. The minimum value for all unsigned types is 0. The maximum value for an N-bit unsigned type is $2^N - 1$. For example, the maximum value for a 64-bit unsigned type is $2^{64} - 1$, which equals 18,446,744,073,709,551,615.

There is a relationship between the minimum and maximum values of signed and unsigned types: The maximum value of **UInt64** is equal to the maximum value of **Int64** plus the absolute value of the minimum value of **Int64**. Both signed and unsigned types have 2^{64} possible values, but the signed version has to devote half of the possible values to negative numbers.

Some quantities seem like they would naturally be represented by an unsigned integer. For example, it does not make sense for the count of a number of objects to ever be negative. However, Swift style is to prefer **Int** for all integer uses (including counts) unless an unsigned integer is required by the algorithm or code you are writing. The explanation for this involves topics we are going to cover later in this chapter, so we will return to the reasons behind consistently preferring **Int** soon.

Creating Integer Instances

You created instances of **Int** in [Chapter 2](#), where you learned that you can declare a type explicitly or implicitly.

Listing 4.4 Declaring **Int** explicitly and implicitly

```
...  
print("The maximum value for a 32-bit unsigned integer is \(UInt  
print("The minimum value for a 32-bit unsigned integer is \(UInt
```

```
let numberOfRows: Int = 10 // Declares the type explicitly  
let numberOfChapters = 3    // Also of type Int, but inferred by
```

The compiler always assumes that implicit declarations with integer values are of type **Int**. However, you can create instances of the other integer types using explicit type declarations.

Listing 4.5 Declaring other integer types explicitly

```
...  
let numberOfRows: Int = 10 // Declares the type explicitly  
let numberOfChapters = 3    // Also of type Int, but inferred by
```

```
let numberOfPeople: UInt = 40  
let volumeAdjustment: Int32 = -1000
```

What happens if you try to create an instance with an invalid value? What if, for example, you try to create a **UInt** with a negative value or an **Int8** with a value greater than 127? Try it and find out.

Listing 4.6 Declaring integer types with invalid values

```
...  
let numberOfRows: UInt = 40  
let volumeAdjustment: Int32 = -1000
```

```
// Trouble ahead!  
let firstBadValue: UInt = -1  
let secondBadValue: Int8 = 200
```

You should see red exclamation marks in the left column of the playground. Click on the exclamation marks to see the errors ([Figure 4.2](#)).

Figure 4.2 Integer overflow error

A screenshot of an Xcode playground showing two errors. The first error is at line 20, column 19: "let firstBadValue: UInt = -1". A red exclamation mark is in the gutter, and a tooltip says "Negative integer '-1' overflows when stored into unsigned type 'UInt'". The second error is at line 21, column 19: "let secondBadValue: Int8 = 200". Another red exclamation mark is in the gutter, and a tooltip says "Integer literal '200' overflows when stored into 'Int8'".

The compiler reports that the two values you have typed in “overflow when stored into” constants of type **UInt** and **Int8**, respectively. “Overflows when stored into...” means that when the compiler tried to store your number into the type you specified, it did not fit in the type’s allowed range of values. An **Int8** can hold values from -128 to 127; 200 is outside of

that range, so trying to store 200 into an **Int8** overflows.

Remove the problematic code.

Listing 4.7 No more bad values

```
...
// Trouble ahead!
let firstBadValue: UInt = -1
let secondBadValue: Int8 = 200
```


Operations on Integers

Swift allows you to perform basic mathematical operations on integers using the familiar operators + (add), - (subtract), and * (multiply). Try printing the results of some arithmetic.

Listing 4.8 Performing basic operations

```
...  
let numberOfPeople: UInt = 40  
let volumeAdjustment: Int32 = -1000  
  
print(10 + 20)  
print(30 - 5)  
print(5 * 6)
```

The compiler respects the mathematical principles of precedence and associativity, which define the order of operations when there are multiple operators in a single expression. For example:

Listing 4.9 Order of operations

```
...  
print(10 + 20)  
print(30 - 5)  
print(5 * 6)  
  
print(10 + 2 * 5) // 20, because 2 * 5 is evaluated first  
print(30 - 5 - 5) // 20, because 30 - 5 is evaluated first
```

You could memorize the rules governing precedence and associativity. However, we recommend taking the easy route and using parentheses to make your intentions explicit, because parentheses are always evaluated first.

Listing 4.10 Parentheses are your friends

```
...  
print(10 + 2 * 5) // 20, because 2 * 5 is evaluated first  
print(30 - 5 - 5) // 20, because 30 - 5 is evaluated first  
print((10 + 2) * 5) // 60, because (10 + 2) is now evaluated first  
print(30 - (5 - 5)) // 30, because (5 - 5) is now evaluated first
```

Integer division

What is the value of the expression `11 / 3`? You might (reasonably) expect 3.66666666667, but try it out.

Listing 4.11 Integer division can give unexpected results

```
...
```

```
print((10 + 2) * 5) // 60, because (10 + 2) is now evaluated first  
print(30 - (5 - 5)) // 30, because (5 - 5) is now evaluated first
```

print(11 / 3) // Prints 3

The result of any operation between two integers is always another integer of the same type; 3.666666666667 is not a whole number and cannot be represented as an integer. Swift truncates the fractional part, leaving just 3. If the result is negative, such as $-11 / 3$, the fractional part is still truncated, giving a result of -3. Integer division, therefore, always rounds toward 0.

It is occasionally useful to get the remainder of a division operation. The remainder operator, %, returns exactly that. (If you are familiar with the modulo operator in math and some other programming languages, be warned: The remainder operator is not the same, and using it on a negative integer may not return what you expect.)

Listing 4.12 Remainders

```
...  
print(11 / 3) // Prints 3  
print(11 % 3) // Prints 2  
print(-11 % 3) // Prints -2
```

Operator shorthand

All the operators that you have seen so far return a new value. There are also versions of all of these operators that modify a variable in place. An extremely common operation in programming is to increase or decrease the value of an integer by another integer. You can use the += operator, which combines addition and assignment, or the -= operator, which combines subtraction and assignment.

Listing 4.13 Combining addition or subtraction and assignment

```
...  
print(11 % 3) // Prints 2  
print(-11 % 3) // Prints -2  
  
var x = 10  
x += 10 // Is equivalent to: x = x + 10  
print("x has had 10 added to it and is now \(x)")  
x -= 5 // Is equivalent to: x = x - 5  
print("x has had 5 subtracted from it and is now \(x)")
```

There are also shorthand operation-and-assignment combination operators for the other basic math operations: *=, /=, and %=, each of which assigns the result of the operation to the value on the lefthand side of the operator.

Overflow operators

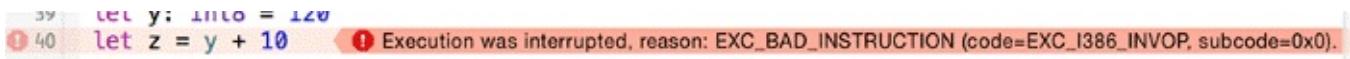
What do you think the value of `z` will be in the following code? (Think about it for a minute before you type it in to find out for sure.)

Listing 4.14 Solve for z

```
...  
let y: Int8 = 120  
let z = y + 10
```

If you thought the value of `z` would be 130, you are not alone. But type it in, and you will find that instead Xcode is showing you an error. Click on it to see a more detailed message ([Figure 4.3](#)).

Figure 4.3 Execution interrupted when adding to an Int8



What does “Execution was interrupted” mean? Let’s break down what is happening:

1. `y` is an **Int8**, so the compiler assumes `y + 10` must be an **Int8**, too.
2. Therefore, the compiler infers the type of `z` to be **Int8**.
3. When your playground runs, Swift adds 10 to `y`, resulting in 130.
4. Before storing the result back into `z`, Swift checks that 130 is a valid value for an **Int8**.

But **Int8** can only hold values from -128 to 127; 130 is too big! Your playground therefore hits a *trap*, which stops the program from running. We will discuss traps in more detail in [Chapter 20](#). For now, know that a trap results in your program stopping immediately and noisily, which indicates a serious problem you need to examine.

Swift provides *overflow operators* that have different behaviors when the value is too big (or too small). Instead of trapping the program, they “wrap around.” To see what that means, try it now. The overflow addition operator is `&+`. Substitute it into your code.

Listing 4.15 Using an overflow operator

```
...  
let y: Int8 = 120  
let z = y + 10  
let z = y &+ 10  
print("120 &+ 10 is \(z)")
```

The result of overflow-adding $120 + 10$ and storing the result into an **Int8** is -126. Was that what you expected?

Probably not. (And that is OK!) To understand the logic of this result, think about incrementing `y` one at a time. Because `y` is an **Int8**, once you get to 127 you cannot go any higher. Instead, incrementing one more time wraps around to -128. So $120 + 8 = -128$, $120 + 9 = -127$, and $120 + 10 = -126$.

There are also overflow versions of the subtraction and multiplication operators: `&-` and `&*`. It should be apparent why there is an overflow version of the multiplication operator, but what about subtraction? Subtraction clearly cannot overflow, but it can *underflow*. For example, trying to subtract 10 from an **Int8** currently holding -120 would result in a value too negative to be stored in an **Int8**. Using `&-` would cause this underflow to wrap back around and give you positive 126.

Integer operations overflowing or underflowing unexpectedly can be a source of serious and hard-to-find bugs. Swift is designed to prioritize safety and minimize these errors. Swift's default behavior of trapping on overflow calculations may come as a surprise to you if you have programmed in another language. Most other languages default to the "wrap-around" behavior that Swift's overflow operators provide. The philosophy of the Swift language is that it is better to trap (even though this may result in a program crashing) than potentially have a security hole. There are some use cases for wrapping arithmetic, so these special operators are available if you need them.

Converting Between Integer Types

So far, all the operations you have seen have been between two values with exactly the same type. What happens if you try to operate on numbers with different types?

Listing 4.16 Adding values of different types

```
...
let a: Int16 = 200
let b: Int8 = 50
let c = a + b // Uh-oh!
```

This is a compile-time error. You cannot add `a` and `b` because they are not of the same type. Some languages will automatically convert types for you to perform operations like this. Swift does not. Instead, you have to manually convert types to get them to match.

In this case, you could either convert `a` to an `Int8` or convert `b` to an `Int16`. Actually, though, only one of these will succeed. (Why? Reread the previous section!)

Listing 4.17 Converting type to allow addition

```
...
let a: Int16 = 200
let b: Int8 = 50
let c = a + b // Uh-oh!
let c = a + Int16(b)
```

We can now return to the recommendation to stick with `Int` for almost all integer needs in Swift, even for values that might naturally only make sense as positive values (like a count of “things”). Swift’s default type inference for literals is `Int`, and you cannot typically perform operations between different integer types without converting one of them. Using `Int` consistently throughout your code will greatly reduce the need for you to convert types, and it will allow you to use type inference for integers freely.

Requiring you, the programmer, to decide how to convert variables in order to do math between different types is another feature that distinguishes Swift from other languages. Again, this requirement is in favor of safety and correctness. The C programming language, for example, will convert numbers of different types in order to perform math between them, but the conversions it performs are sometimes “lossy” – you may lose information in the conversion. Swift code that requires math between numbers of different types will be more verbose, but it will be more clear about what conversions are taking place. The increase in verbosity will make it easier for you to reason about and maintain the code.

Floating-Point Numbers

To represent a number that has a decimal point, like 3.2, you use a *floating-point number*. There are two things to bear in mind about floating-point numbers. First, in computers floating-point numbers are stored as a *mantissa* and an *exponent*, similar to how you write a number in scientific notation. For example, 123.45 could be stored as something like 1.2345×10^2 or 12.345×10^1 (although the computer will use base 2 instead of base 10). Additionally, floating-point numbers are often imprecise: There are many numbers that cannot be stored with perfect accuracy in a floating-point number. The computer will store a very close approximation to the number you expect. (More on that in a moment.)

Swift has two basic floating-point number types: **Float**, which is a 32-bit floating-point number, and **Double**, which is a 64-bit floating-point number. The different bit sizes of **Float** and **Double** do not determine a simple minimum and maximum value range as they do for integers. Instead, the bit sizes determine how much precision the numbers have. **Double** has more precision than **Float**, which means it is able to store more accurate approximations.

The default inferred type for floating-point numbers in Swift is **Double**. As with different types of integers, you can also declare **Floats** and **Doubles** explicitly.

Listing 4.18 Declaring floating-point number types

```
...
let d1 = 1.1 // Implicitly Double
let d2: Double = 1.1
let f1: Float = 100.3
```

All the same numeric operators work on floating-point numbers (except for the remainder operator, which is typically only used on integers anyway).

Listing 4.19 Operations on floating-point numbers

```
...
let d1 = 1.1 // Implicitly Double
let d2: Double = 1.1
let f1: Float = 100.3

print(10.0 + 11.4)
print(11.0 / 3.0)
```

The fact that floating-point numbers are inherently imprecise is an important difference from integer numbers that you should keep in mind. Let's see an example. Recall the `==` operator from [Chapter 3](#), which determines whether two values are equal to each other. As you might expect, you can also use it to compare floating-point numbers.

Listing 4.20 Comparing two floating-point numbers

```
...
print(10.0 + 11.4)
```

```
print(11.0 / 3.0)

if d1 == d2 {
    print("d1 and d2 are the same!")
}
```

d1 and d2 were both initialized with a value of 1.1. So far, so good. Now, let's add 0.1 to d1. You would expect that to result in 1.2, so compare the result to that value.

Listing 4.21 Unexpected results

```
if d1 == d2 {
    print("d1 and d2 are the same!")

print("d1 + 0.1 is \u2028(d1 + 0.1)")
if d1 + 0.1 == 1.2 {
    print("d1 + 0.1 is equal to 1.2")
}
```

The results you get may be very surprising! You should see the output `d1 + 0.1 is 1.2` from your first `print()`, but the `print()` inside the if statement does not run. Why not? Isn't 1.2 equal to 1.2?

Well, sometimes it is and sometimes it is not.

As we said before, many numbers – including 1.2 – cannot be represented exactly in a floating-point number. Instead, the computer stores a very close approximation to 1.2. When you add 1.1 and 0.1, the result is really something like 1.2000000000000001. The value stored when you typed the literal 1.2 is really something like 1.1999999999999999. Swift will round both of those to 1.2 when you print them. But they are not technically equal, so the `print()` inside the if statement does not execute.

All the gory details behind floating-point arithmetic are outside the scope of this book. The moral of this story is to be aware that there are some potential pitfalls with floating-point numbers. One consequence is that you should never use floating-point numbers for values that must be exact (such as calculations dealing with money). There are other tools available for those purposes.

Bronze Challenge

Set down your computer and grab a pencil and paper for this challenge. What is the binary representation of -1 using an 8-bit signed integer?

If you took that same bit pattern and interpreted it as an 8-bit unsigned integer, what would the value be?

Switch

In an earlier chapter, you saw one sort of conditional statement: `if/else`. Along the way, we mentioned that `if/else` can be somewhat inadequate in scenarios that have more than a few conditions. This chapter looks at the `switch` statement. Unlike `if/else`, `switch` is ideal for handling multiple conditions. As you will see, Swift's `switch` statement is an incredibly flexible and powerful feature of the language.

What Is a Switch?

`if/else` statements execute code based on whether the condition under consideration evaluates to true. In contrast, `switch` statements consider a particular value and attempt to match it against a number of *cases*. If there is a match, the `switch` executes the code associated with that case. Here is the basic syntax of a `switch` statement:

```
switch aValue {  
    case someValueToCompare:  
        // Do something to respond  
  
    case anotherValueToCompare:  
        // Do something to respond  
  
    default:  
        // Do something when there are no matches  
}
```

In the example above, the `switch` only compares against two cases, but a `switch` statement can include any number of cases. If `aValue` matches any of the comparison cases, then the body of that case will be executed.

Notice the use of the `default` case. It is executed when the comparison value does not match any of the cases. The `default` case is not mandatory. However, it *is* mandatory for `switch` statements to have a case for every value of the type being checked. So it is often efficient to use the `default` case rather than providing a specific case for every value in the type.

As you might guess, in order for the comparisons to be possible the type in each of the cases must match the type being compared against. In other words, `aValue`'s type must match the types of `someValueToCompare` and `anotherValueToCompare`.

This code shows the basic syntax of a `switch` statement, but it is not completely well formed. In fact, this `switch` statement would cause a compile-time error. Why? If you are curious, type it into a playground and see. Give `aValue` and all of the cases values. You should see an error for each of the cases, telling you "'case' label in a 'switch' should have at least one executable statement."

The problem is that every case must have at least one executable line of code associated with it. This is the purpose of a `switch` statement: Each case should represent a separate branch of execution. In the example, the cases only have comments under them. Because comments are not executable, the `switch` statement does not meet this requirement.

Switch It Up

Create a new playground called **Switch** and set up a switch.

Listing 5.1 Your first switch

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

var statusCode: Int = 404
var errorString: String
switch statusCode {
case 400:
    errorString = "Bad request"

case 401:
    errorString = "Unauthorized"

case 403:
    errorString = "Forbidden"

case 404:
    errorString = "Not found"

default:
    errorString = "None"
}
```

The switch statement above compares an HTTP status code against four cases in order to match a **String** instance describing the error. Because case `404` matches `statusCode`, `errorString` is assigned to be equal to `"Not found"`, as you can see in the sidebar ([Figure 5.1](#)). Try changing the value of `statusCode` to see the other results. When you are done, set it back to `404`.

Figure 5.1 Matching an error string to a status code

The screenshot shows a Mac OS X desktop with an Xcode playground window titled "Switch". The code in the playground is as follows:

```
//: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
import Cocoa
var statusCode: Int = 404
var errorString: String
switch statusCode {
    case 400:
        errorString = "Bad request"
    case 401:
        errorString = "Unauthorized"
    case 403:
        errorString = "Forbidden"
    case 404:
        errorString = "Not found"
    default:
        errorString = "None"
}
```

The right side of the window shows the output of the playground. For the line `404`, the output is `404`. For the line `errorString = "Not found"`, the output is `"Not found"`.

Suppose you want to use a switch statement to build up a meaningful error description. Update your code as shown.

Listing 5.2 Switch cases can have multiple values

```
import Cocoa

var statusCode: Int = 404
var errorString: String = "The request failed:"
switch statusCode {
    case 400:
        errorString += "Bad request"
    case 401:
        errorString += "Unauthorized"
    case 403:
        errorString += "Forbidden"
    case 404:
        errorString += "Not found"
    default:
        errorString += "None"
}
case 400, 401, 403, 404:
    errorString = "There was something wrong with the request."
    fallthrough
default:
    errorString += " Please review the request and try again."
}
```

There is now only one case for all of the error status codes (which are listed and separated by

commas). If the `statusCode` matches any of the values in the case, the text "There was something wrong with the request." is given to the `errorString`.

You have also added a *control transfer statement* called `fallthrough`. Control transfer statements allow you to modify the order of execution in some control flow. These statements *transfer* control from one chunk of code to another. You will see another way to use control transfer statements in [Chapter 6](#) on looping.

Here, `fallthrough` tells the `switch` statement to “fall through” the bottom of a case to the next one. If a matching case has a `fallthrough` control transfer statement at the end of it, it will first execute its code, and then transfer control to the case immediately below. That case will execute its code – whether or not it matches the value being checked against. If it also has a `fallthrough` statement at the end, it will hand off control to the case below, and so on. `fallthrough` statements allow you to enter a case and execute its code without having to match against it.

In this example, because of the `fallthrough` statement, the `switch` statement does not stop, even though the first case matches. Instead, it proceeds to the `default` case. Without the `fallthrough` keyword, the `switch` statement would have ended execution after the first match. The use of `fallthrough` in this example allows you to build up `errorString` without having to use strange logic that would guarantee that the comparison value matched all of the cases of interest.

The `default` case uses a compound-assignment operator (`+=`) to add a recommendation to review the request to the `errorString`. The end result of this `switch` statement is that `errorString` is set to "There was something wrong with the request. Please review the request and try again." If the status code provided had not matched the values in the case, the end result would have been `errorString` being set to "The request failed: Please review the request and try again."

If you are familiar with other languages like C or Objective-C, you will see that Swift’s `switch` statement works differently. `switch` statements in those languages automatically fall through their cases. Those languages require a `break` control transfer statement at the end of the case’s code to break out of the `switch`. Swift’s `switch` works in the opposite manner. If you match on a case, the case executes its code and the `switch` stops running.

Ranges

You have seen `switch` statements in which the cases have a single value to check against the comparison value and others in which the cases have multiple values. `switch` statements can also compare to a range of values using the syntax `valueX...valueY`. Update your code to see this in action.

Listing 5.3 Switch cases can have single values, multiple values, or ranges of values
`import Cocoa`

```

var statusCode: Int = 404
var errorString: String = "The request failed with the error:"
switch statusCode {
    case 400, 401, 403, 404:
        errorString += " There was something wrong with the request."
        fallthrough
    default:
        errorString += " Please review the request and try again."
}

switch statusCode {
case 100, 101:
    errorString += " Informational, 1xx."

case 204:
    errorString += " Successful but no content, 204."

case 300...307:
    errorString += " Redirection, 3xx."

case 400...417:
    errorString += " Client error, 4xx."

case 500...505:
    errorString += " Server error, 5xx."

default:
    errorString = "Unknown. Please review the request and try again."
}

```

The switch statement above takes advantage of the ... syntax of *range matching* to create an inclusive range for categories of HTTP status codes. That is, 300...307 is a range that includes 300, 307, and everything in between.

You also have cases with a single HTTP status code (the second case) and with two codes explicitly listed and separated by a comma (the first case), as well as a default case. These are formed in the same way as the cases you saw before. All of the case syntax options can be combined in a switch statement.

The result of this switch statement is that `errorString` is set to equal "The request failed with the error: Client error, 4xx." Again, try changing the value of `statusCode` to see the other results. Be sure to set it back to 404 before continuing.

Value binding

Suppose you want to include the actual numerical status codes in your `errorString`, whether the status code is recognized or not. You can build on your previous switch statement to include this information using Swift's *value binding* feature.

Value binding allows you to *bind* the matching value in a certain case to a local constant or variable. The constant or variable is available to use only within the matching case's body.

Listing 5.4 Using value binding

```
...
switch statusCode {
case 100, 101:
    errorString += " Informational, 1xx."
    errorString += " Informational, \$(statusCode)."

case 204:
    errorString += " Successful but no content, 204."

case 300...307:
    errorString += " Redirection, 3xx."
    errorString += " Redirection, \$(statusCode)."

case 400...417:
    errorString += " Client error, 4xx."
    errorString += " Client error, \$(statusCode)."

case 500...505:
    errorString += " Server error, 5xx."
    errorString += " Server error, \$(statusCode)."

default:
    errorString = "Unknown. Please review the request and try again."

case let unknownCode:
    errorString = "\$(unknownCode) is not a known error code."
}
```

Here you use string interpolation to pass `statusCode` into the `errorString` in each case. Take a closer look at the last case. When the `statusCode` does not match any of the values provided in the cases above, you create a temporary constant, called `unknownCode`, binding it to the value of `statusCode`. For example, if the `statusCode` were set to be equal to 200, then your switch would set `errorString` to be equal to "200 is not a known error code." Because `unknownCode` takes on the value of any status code that does not match the earlier cases, you no longer need an explicit default case.

Note that by using a constant, you fix the value of `unknownCode`. If you needed to do work on `unknownCode`, for whatever reason, you could have declared it with `var` instead of `let`.

Doing so would mean, for example, that you could then modify `unknownCode`'s value within the final case's body.

This example shows you the syntax of value binding, but it does not really add much. The standard default case can produce the same result. Replace the final case with a default case.

Listing 5.5 Reverting to the default case

```
...
switch statusCode {
case 100, 101:
    errorString += " Informational, \\" + (statusCode) + "\""

case 204:
    errorString += " Successful but no content, 204."

case 300...307:
    errorString += " Redirection, \\" + (statusCode) + "\""

case 400...417:
    errorString += " Client error, \\" + (statusCode) + "\""

case 500...505:
    errorString += " Server error, \\" + (statusCode) + "\""

case let unknownCode:
    errorString = "\\" + (unknownCode) + " is not a known error code."

default:
    errorString = "\\" + (statusCode) + " is not a known error code."
}
```

In the final case in [Listing 5.4](#), you declared a constant with a value that was bound to the status code. This meant that the final case by definition matched everything that had not already matched a case in the `switch` statement. The `switch` statement was, therefore, exhaustive.

When you deleted the final case, the `switch` was no longer exhaustive. This means that you had to add a `default` case to the `switch`.

where clauses

The code above is fine, but it is not great. After all, a status code of 200 is not *really* an error – 200 represents success! Therefore, it would be nice if your `switch` statement did not catch these cases.

To fix this, use a `where` clause to make sure `unknownCode` is not a 2xx indicating success. `where` allows you to check for additional conditions that must be met for the case to match and

the value to be bound. This feature creates a sort of dynamic filter within the switch.

Listing 5.6 Using where to create a filter

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var statusCode: Int = 404
var statusCode: Int = 204
var errorString: String = "The request failed with the error:"
```

```
switch statusCode {
```

```
case 100, 101:
```

```
    errorString += " Informational, \$(statusCode)."
```

```
case 204:
```

```
    errorString += " Successful but no content, 204."
```

```
case 300...307:
```

```
    errorString += " Redirection, \$(statusCode)."
```

```
case 400...417:
```

```
    errorString += " Client error, \$(statusCode)."
```

```
case 500...505:
```

```
    errorString += " Server error, \$(statusCode)."
```

```
case let unknownCode where (unknownCode >= 200 && unknownCode < 300) || unknownCode > 505:
```

```
    errorString = "\$(unknownCode) is not a known error code."
```

```
default:
```

```
    errorString = "\$(statusCode) is not a known error code."
```

```
    errorString = "Unexpected error encountered."
```

```
}
```

Your case for `unknownCode` now specifies a range of status codes, which means that it is not exhaustive. This is not a problem because you already have a `default` case in the `switch`.

Without Swift's `fallthrough` feature, the `switch` statement will finish execution as soon as it finds a matching case and executes its body. When `statusCode` is equal to 204, the `switch` will match at the second case and the `errorString` will be set accordingly. So, even though 204 is within the range specified in the `where` clause, the `switch` statement never gets to that clause.

Change `statusCode` to exercise the `where` clause and confirm that it works as expected.

Tuples and pattern matching

Now that you have your `statusCode` and `errorString`, it would be helpful to pair those two pieces. Although they are logically related, they are currently stored in independent variables. A *tuple* can be used to group the two.

A tuple is a finite grouping of two or more values that are deemed by the developer to be logically related. The different values are grouped as a single, compound value. The result of this grouping is an ordered list of elements.

Create your first Swift tuple that groups the `statusCode` and `errorString`.

Listing 5.7 Creating a tuple

```
import Cocoa

var statusCode: Int = 204
var statusCode: Int = 418
var errorString: String = "The request failed with the error:"

switch statusCode {
case 100, 101:
    errorString += " Informational, \(statusCode)."

case 204:
    errorString += " Successful but no content, 204."

case 300...307:
    errorString += " Redirection, \(statusCode)."

case 400...417:
    errorString += " Client error, \(statusCode)."

case 500...505:
    errorString += " Server error, \(statusCode)."

case let unknownCode where (unknownCode >= 200 && unknownCode <
                           || unknownCode > 505):
    errorString = "\(unknownCode) is not a known error code."

default:
    errorString = "Unexpected error encountered."
}

let error = (statusCode, errorString)
```

You made a tuple by grouping `statusCode` and `errorString` within parentheses. The result was assigned to the constant `error`.

The elements of a tuple can be accessed by their index. You might have noticed `.0` and `.1` in the value of your tuple shown in the results sidebar – these are the elements’ indices. Type in the following to access each element stored inside of the tuple.

Listing 5.8 Accessing the elements of a tuple

```
...
let error = (statusCode, errorString)
error.0
error.1
```

You should see `418` and "Unexpected error encountered." displayed in the results sidebar for `error.0` (that is, the first element stored in the tuple) and `error.1` (the second element stored in the tuple), respectively.

Swift’s tuples can also have named elements. Naming a tuple’s elements makes for more readable code. It is not very easy to keep track of what values are represented by `error.0` and `error.1`. Named elements allow you to use easier-to-parse code like `error.code` and `error.error`.

Give your tuple’s elements these more informative names.

Listing 5.9 Naming the tuple’s elements

```
...
let error = (statusCode, errorString)
error.0
error.1
let error = (code: statusCode, error: errorString)
error.code
error.error
```

Now you can access your tuple’s elements by using their related names: `code` for `statusCode` and `error` for `errorString`. Your results sidebar should have the same information displayed.

You have already seen an example of pattern matching when you used ranges in the `switch` statement’s cases. This form of pattern matching is called *interval matching* because each case attempts to match a given interval against the comparison value. Tuples are also helpful in matching patterns.

Imagine, for example, that you have an application that is making multiple web requests. You save the HTTP status code that comes back with the server’s response each time. Later, you would like to see which requests, if any, failed with the status code `404` (the “requested resource not found” error). Using a tuple in the `switch` statement’s cases enables you to match against very specific patterns.

Add the following code to create and switch on a new tuple.

Listing 5.10 Pattern matching in tuples

```

...
let error = (code: statusCode, error: errorString)
error.code
error.error

let firstErrorCode = 404
let secondErrorCode = 200
let errorCodes = (firstErrorCode, secondErrorCode)

switch errorCodes {
case (404, 404):
    print("No items found.")
case (404, _):
    print("First item not found.")
case (_, 404):
    print("Second item not found.")
default:
    print("All items found.")
}

```

You first add a few new constants. `firstErrorCode` and `secondErrorCode` represent the HTTP status codes associated with two different web requests. `errorCodes` is a tuple that groups these codes.

The new switch statement matches against several cases to determine what combination of 404s the requests might have yielded. The underscore (`_`) in the second and third cases is a wildcard that matches anything, which allows these cases to focus on a specific request's error code. The first case will match only if both of the requests failed with error code 404. The second case will match only if the first request failed with 404. The third case will match only if the second request failed with 404. Finally, if the switch has not found a match, that means none of the requests failed with the status code 404.

Because `firstErrorCode` did have the status code 404, you should see "First item not found." in the results sidebar.

switch vs if/else

switch statements are primarily useful for comparing a value against a number of potentially matching cases. if/else statements, on the other hand, are better used for checking against a single condition. switches also offer a number of powerful features that allow you to match against ranges, bind values to local constants or variables, and match patterns in tuples – to name just a few features covered in this chapter.

Sometimes you might be tempted to use a switch statement on a value that could potentially match against any number of cases, but you really only care about one of them. For example, imagine checking an `age` constant of type `Int` looking for a specific demographic: ages 18–35. You might think writing a switch statement with a single case is your best option:

Listing 5.11 Single-case switch

```
...
let age = 25
switch age {
case 18...35:
    print("Cool demographic")
default:
    break
}
```

`age` is a constant set to be equal to 25. It is possible that `age` could take on any value between 0 and 100 or so, but you are only interested in a particular range. The switch checks to see whether `age` is in the range from 18 to 35. If it is, then `age` is in the desired demographic and some code is executed. Otherwise, `age` is not in the target demographic and the default case matches, which simply transfers the flow of execution outside of the switch with the `break` control transfer statement.

Notice that you had to include a `default` case; switch statements have to be exhaustive. If this does not feel quite right to you, we agree. You do not really want to do anything here, which is why you used a `break`. It would be better to not have to write any code when you do not want anything to happen!

Swift provides a better way. In [Chapter 3](#) you learned about if/else statements. Swift also has an if-case statement that provides pattern matching similar to what a switch statement offers.

Listing 5.12 if-case

```
...
let age = 25
switch age {
case 18...35:
    print("Cool demographic")
default:
    break
}
```

```
if case 18...35 = age {  
    print("Cool demographic")  
}
```

This syntax is much more elegant. It simply checks to see whether `age` is in the given range. You did not have to write a default case that you did not care about. Instead, the syntax of the `if`-case allows you to focus on the single case of interest: whether `age` is in the range of 18 to 35.

`if`-cases can also include more complicated pattern matching, just as with `switch` statements. Say, for example, you wanted to know if `age` was greater than or equal to 21.

Listing 5.13 `if`-cases with multiple conditions

```
...  
let age = 25  
  
if case 18...35 = age {  
    print("Cool demographic")  
}  
if case 18...35 = age, age >= 21 {  
    print("In cool demographic and of drinking age")  
}
```

The new code above does the same as before, but adds something new. After the comma, it also checks to see whether `age` is 21 or greater. In the United States, this means that the person in question is also old enough to drink.

`if`-cases provide an elegant substitute for `switch` statements with only one condition. They also enjoy all of the pattern-matching power that make `switch` statements so wonderful. Use an `if`-case when you have only one case in mind for a `switch` and you do not care about the default case. Because `if`-case statements are just `if/else` statements with improved pattern matching, you can also write the usual `else` block – but doing so would mean that you are effectively writing the default case and would detract from some of the `if`-case's allure.

Bronze Challenge

Review the switch statement below. What will be logged to the console? After you have decided, enter the code in a playground to see whether you were right.

```
let point = (x: 1, y: 4)

switch point {
    case let q1 where (point.x > 0) && (point.y > 0):
        print("\(q1) is in quadrant 1")

    case let q2 where (point.x < 0) && point.y > 0:
        print("\(q2) is in quadrant 2")

    case let q3 where (point.x < 0) && point.y < 0:
        print("\(q3) is in quadrant 3")

    case let q4 where (point.x > 0) && point.y < 0:
        print("\(q4) is in quadrant 4")

    case (_, 0):
        print("\(point) sits on the x-axis")

    case (0, _):
        print("\(point) sits on the y-axis")

    default:
        print("Case not covered.")
}
```


Silver Challenge

You can add more conditions to the `if`-case by supplying a comma-separated list. For example, you could check to see whether the person is: a) in the cool demographic, b) of drinking age in the United States, and c) not in their thirties. Add another condition to [Listing 5.13](#) to check whether `age` meets all of these conditions.

Loops

Loops help with repetitive tasks. They execute a set of code repeatedly, either for a given number of iterations or as long as a defined condition is met. Loops can save you from writing tedious and repetitive code, so take note! You will be using them a lot in your development.

In this chapter, you will use two sorts of loops:

- `for` loops
- `while` loops

`for` loops are ideal for iterating over the specific elements of an instance or collection of instances if the number of iterations to perform is either known or easy to derive. `while` loops, on the other hand, are well suited for tasks that execute repeatedly as long as a certain condition is met. Each type of loop has variations. Let's start with a `for-in` loop, which performs a set of code for each item in a specific range, sequence, or collection.

for-in Loops

Create a new playground called Loops. Create a loop as shown.

Listing 6.1 A for-in loop

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

var myFirstInt: Int = 0

for i in 1...5 {
    myFirstInt += 1
    myFirstInt
    print(myFirstInt)
}
```

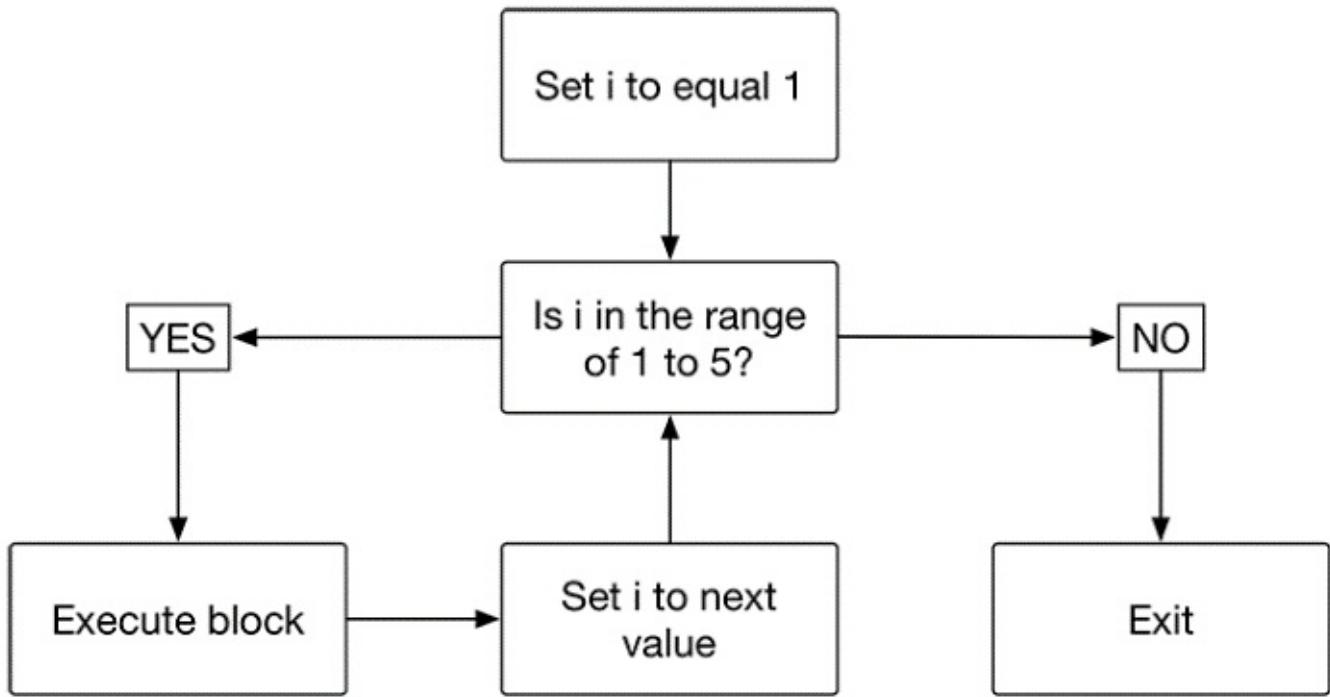
First, you declare a variable called `myFirstInt` that is an instance of `Int` and is initialized to be equal to `0`. Next, you create a `for-in` loop. Let's look at the components of the loop.

The `for` keyword signals that you are writing a loop. You next declare an *iterator* called `i` that represents the current iteration of the loop. The iterator is constant within the body of the loop and only exists here; it is also managed for you by the compiler.

In the first iteration of the loop, its value is the first value in the range of the loop. Because you used `...` to create an inclusive range of 1 through 5, the first value of `i` is 1. In the second iteration, the value of `i` is 2, and so on. You can think of `i` as being replaced with a new constant set to the next value in the range at the beginning of each iteration.

The code inside the braces (`{}`) is executed at each iteration of the loop. For each iteration, you increment `myFirstInt` by 1. After incrementing `myFirstInt`, you type the variable's name in the next line to expose its value to the results sidebar. You then log this value to the console. These two steps – incrementing and logging – continue until `i` reaches the end of the range: 5. This loop is represented in [Figure 6.1](#).

Figure 6.1 Looping over a range



To see the results of your loop, find and click on the *results* button on the right edge of the results sidebar on the line with the code `myFirstInt` ([Figure 6.2](#)).

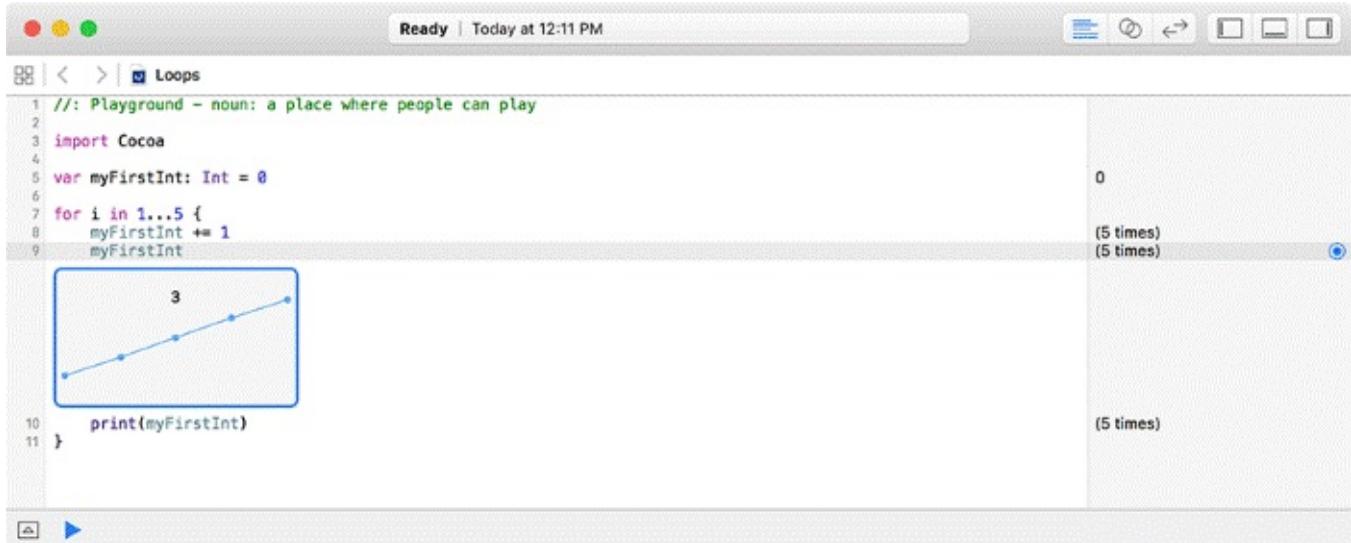
Figure 6.2 The results button



This opens a *results view* that displays the instance's value history inline with the code in the playground. You can grow or shrink the window of the graph by clicking and dragging its edges.

Move your mouse pointer into this new window and you will see that you can select individual points on this plot. For example, if you click the middle point, the playground will tell you that the value of this point is 3 ([Figure 6.3](#)).

Figure 6.3 Selecting a value on the plot



Because you declared `i` to be the iterator in the `for-in` loop, you can access `i` inside each iteration of the loop. Change your output to show the value of `i` at each iteration.

Listing 6.2 Printing the changing value of `i` to the console

```
...
for i in 1...5 {
    myFirstInt += 1
    myFirstInt
    print(myFirstInt)
    print("myFirstInt equals \(myFirstInt) at iteration \(i)")
}
```

Instead of using an explicitly declared iterator, you can ignore it by using `_`. Replace your named constant with this wildcard and return your `print()` statement to its earlier implementation.

Listing 6.3 Replacing `i` with `_`

```
for i in 1...5 {
for _ in 1...5 {
    myFirstInt += 1
    myFirstInt
    print("myFirstInt equals \(myFirstInt) at iteration \(i)")
    print(myFirstInt)
}
```

This implementation of the `for-in` loop ensures that a specific operation occurs a set number of times. It does not check and report the value of the iterator in each pass of the loop over its range. You would typically use the explicit iterator `i` if you wanted to refer to that iterator within your loop's code block.

where

Swift's `for-in` loop supports the use of `where` clauses similar to the ones you saw in [Chapter 5](#). Using `where` allows for finer control over when the loop executes its code. The `where` clause provides a logical test that must be met in order to execute the loop's code. If the condition established by the `where` clause is not met, then the loop's code is not run.

For example, imagine that you want to write a loop that iterates over a range, but only executes its code when the loop's iterator is a multiple of 3.

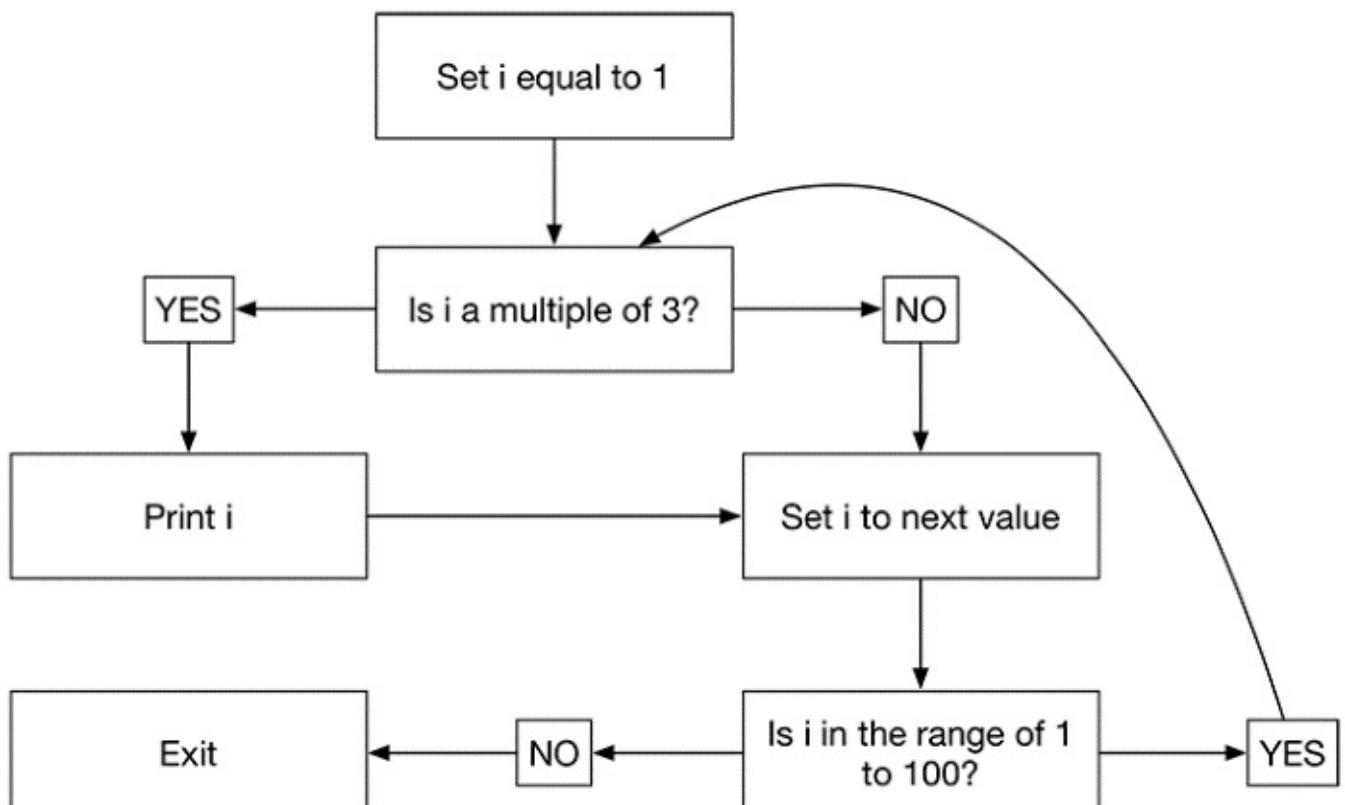
Listing 6.4 A `for-in` loop with a `where` clause

```
...  
for _ in 1...5 {  
    myFirstInt += 1  
    myFirstInt  
    print(myFirstInt)  
}  
  
for i in 1...100 where i % 3 == 0 {  
    print(i)  
}
```

As before, you create a local constant `i` that you can now use in the `where` clause's condition. Each integer in the range of 1 to 100 is bound to `i`. The `where` clause then checks to see whether `i` is divisible by 3. If the remainder is 0, the loop will execute its code. The result is that the loop will print out every multiple of 3 from 1 to 100.

[Figure 6.4](#) demonstrates the flow of execution for this loop.

Figure 6.4 `where` clause loop diagram



Imagine how you might accomplish this same result without the help of a `where` clause.

```
for i in 1...100 {  
    if i % 3 == 0 {  
        print(i)  
    }  
}
```

The above code does the same work as the loop with the `where` clause, but it is less elegant. There are more lines of code and there is a nested conditional within the loop. Generally speaking, we prefer fewer lines of code, so long as the code is not overly complex to read. Swift's `where` clauses are very readable, so we typically choose this more concise solution.

A Quick Note on Type Inference

Take a look at this code that you entered earlier:

```
for i in 1...5 {  
    myFirstInt += 1  
    print("myFirstInt equals \$(myFirstInt) at iteration \$i")  
}
```

Notice that `i` is not declared to be of the **Int** type. It could be, as in `for i: Int in 1...5`, but an explicit type declaration is not necessary. The type of `i` is inferred from its context (as is the `let`). In this example, `i` is inferred to be of type **Int** because the specified range contains integers.

Type inference is handy: Because you will type less, you will make fewer typos. However, there are a few cases in which you need to specifically declare the type. We will highlight those when they come up. In general, however, we recommend that you take advantage of type inference whenever possible, and you will see many examples of it in this book.

while Loops

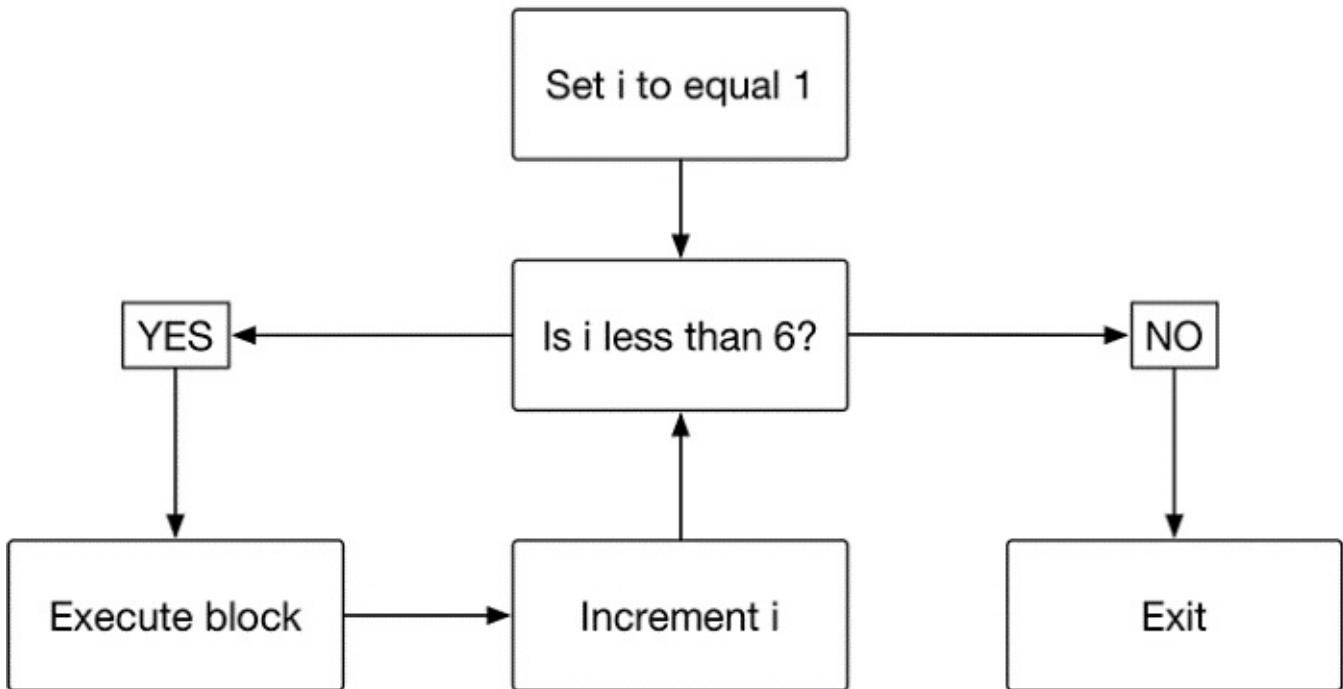
A while loop executes the code inside its body so long as a condition is true. You can write while loops to do many of the same things you have seen in for loops above. For example, a while loop that replicates the for loop in [Listing 6.1](#) can be expressed like so:

Listing 6.5 A while loop

```
...
var i = 1
while i < 6 {
    myFirstInt += 1
    print(myFirstInt)
    i += 1
}
```

[Figure 6.5](#) shows the flow of execution in this code.

Figure 6.5 while loop diagram



This while loop initializes an incrementer (`var i = 1`), evaluates a condition (`i < 6`), executes code if the condition is valid (`myFirstInt += 1`, `print(myFirstInt)`, increment `i`), and then returns to the top of the while loop to determine whether the loop should continue iterating.

`i` is declared as a variable because the condition you evaluate (`i < 6`) must be able to change. Remember, the while loop will run as long as the condition it checks is true. Thus, the condition for a while loop often checks some kind of state that will change at some point. Otherwise, if the state the condition examines never changes (or is always true), then the while loop will execute forever. Loops that never end are called *infinite loops*, and they are usually bugs.

while loops are best for circumstances in which the number of iterations the loop will pass through is unknown. For example, imagine a space shooter game with a spaceship that continuously fires its blasters as long as the spaceship has shields. Various external factors may lower or increase the ship's shields, so the exact number of iterations cannot be known. But if the shields have a value greater than 0, the blasters will keep shooting. The code snippet below illustrates a simplified implementation of this idea.

```
while shields > 0 {  
    // Fire blasters!  
    print("Fire blasters!")  
}
```


repeat-while Loops

Swift also supports a type of while loop called the repeat-while loop. The repeat-while loop is called a do-while loop in other languages. The difference between while and repeat-while loops is *when* they evaluate their condition. The while loop evaluates its condition before stepping into the loop. This means that the while loop may not ever execute, because its condition could be `false` when it is first evaluated. The repeat-while loop, on the other hand, executes its loop at least once and *then* evaluates its condition. The syntax for the repeat-while loop demonstrates this difference.

```
repeat {  
    // Fire blasters!  
    print("Fire blasters!")  
} while shields > 0
```

In this repeat-while version of the space shooter game, the code block that contains the line `print("Fire blasters!")` is executed first. Then the repeat-while loop's condition is evaluated to determine whether the loop should continue iterating. Thus, the repeat-while loop ensures that the spaceship fires its blasters at least one time.

The repeat-while loop avoids a somewhat depressing scenario: What if the spaceship is created and, by some freak accident, immediately loses all of its shields? Perhaps it spawns in front of an oncoming asteroid. It would not even get to fire a shot. That would be a pretty poor user experience. A repeat-while loop ensures that the blasters fire at least once to avoid this anticlimactic scenario.

Control Transfer Statements, Redux

Let's revisit control transfer statements in the context of loops. Recall from [Chapter 5](#) (where you used `fallthrough` and `break`) that control transfer statements change the typical order of execution. In the context of a loop, you can control whether execution iterates to the top of the loop or leaves the loop altogether.

Let's elaborate on the space shooter game to see how this works. You are going to use the `continue` control transfer statement to stop the loop where it is and begin again from the top.

Listing 6.6 Using `continue`

```
...
var shields = 5
var blastersOverheating = false
var blasterFireCount = 0
while shields > 0 {

    if blastersOverheating {
        print("Blasters are overheated! Cooldown initiated.")
        sleep(5)
        print("Blasters ready to fire")
        sleep(1)
        blastersOverheating = false
        blasterFireCount = 0
    }

    if blasterFireCount > 100 {
        blastersOverheating = true
        continue
    }
    // Fire blasters!
    print("Fire blasters!")

    blasterFireCount += 1
}
```

You are adding a good bit of code, so let's break it down. First, you added some variables to keep track of certain information about the spaceship:

- `shields` is of type **Int**, keeps track of the shield strength, and is initialized to be equal to 5.
- `blastersOverheating` is a **Bool** initialized to `false` that keeps track of whether the blasters need time to cool down.
- `blasterFireCount` is of type **Int** and keeps track of the number of shots the spaceship has fired (which determines whether the blasters are overheating).

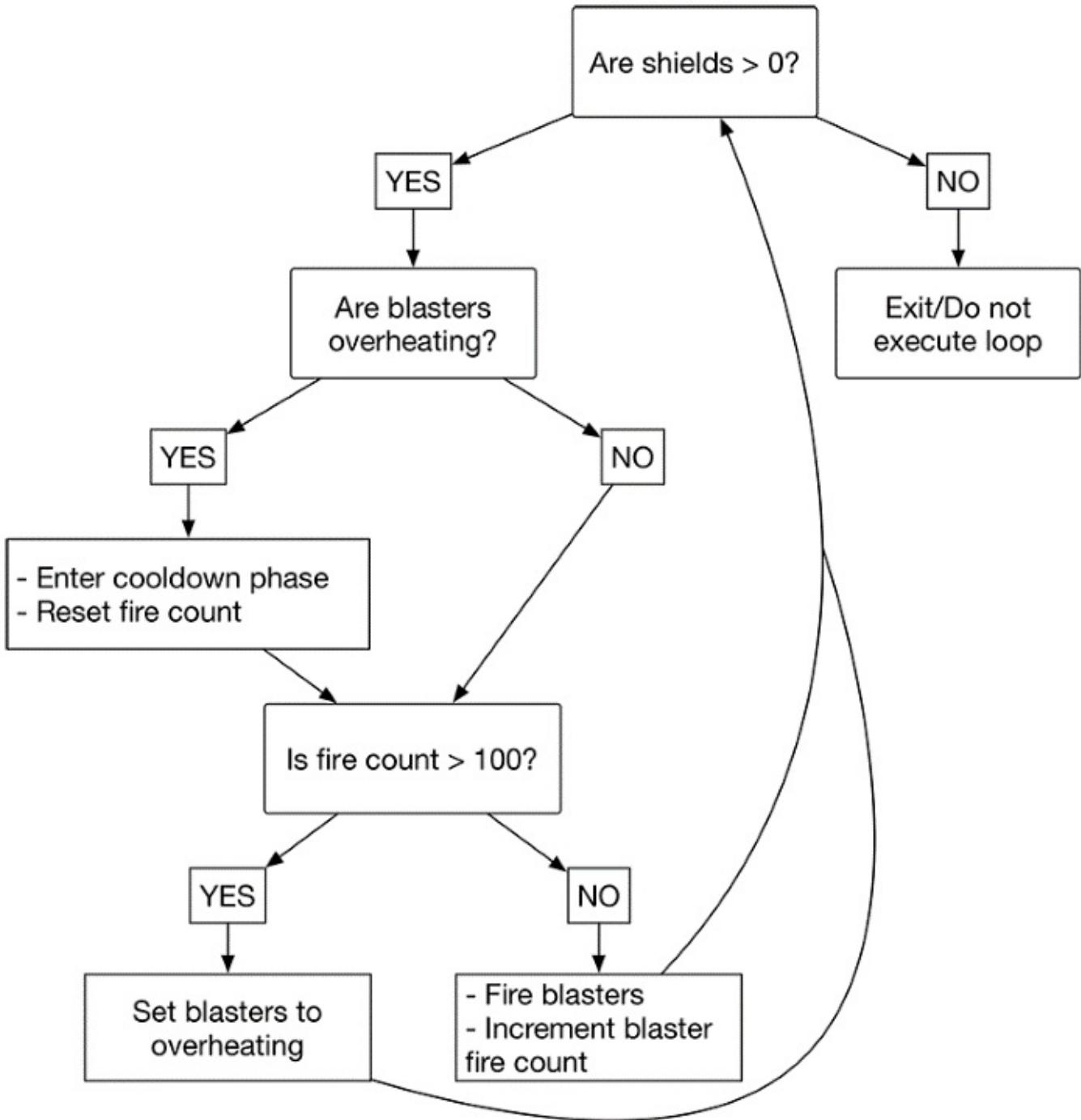
After creating your variables, you wrote two `if` statements, both contained in a `while` loop with a condition of `shields > 0`. The first `if` statement checks whether the blasters are overheating, and the second checks the fire count. For the first, if the blasters are overheating, a number of code steps execute. You log information to the console and the `sleep()` function tells the system to wait for 5 seconds, which models the blasters' cooldown phase. You next log that the blasters are ready to fire again, wait for 1 more second (simply because it makes it easier to see what logs to the console next), set `blastersOverheating` to be equal to `false`, and also reset `blasterFireCount` to 0.

With shields intact and blasters cooled down, the spaceship is ready to fire away.

The second `if` statement checks whether `blasterFireCount` is greater than 100. If this conditional evaluates to `true`, you set the Boolean for `blastersOverheating` to be `true`. At this point, the blasters are overheated, so you need a way to jump back up to the top of the loop so that the spaceship does not fire. You use `continue` to do this. Because the spaceship's blasters have overheated, the conditional in the first `if` statement will evaluate to `true`, and the blasters will shut down to cool off.

If the second conditional is evaluated to be `false`, you log to the console as before. Next, you increment the `blasterFireCount` by one. After you increment this variable, the loop will jump back up to the top, evaluate the condition, and either iterate again or hand off the flow of execution to the line immediately after the closing brace of the loop. [Figure 6.6](#) shows this flow of execution.

Figure 6.6 `while` loop diagram



Note that this code will execute indefinitely. There is nothing to change the value of `shields`, so while `shields > 0` is always satisfied. If nothing changes, and your computer has enough power to run forever, this loop will continue to execute. This is what we call an *infinite loop*.

But all games must come to an end. Let's say that the game is over when the user has destroyed 500 space demons. To exit the loop, you will use the `break` control transfer statement.

Listing 6.7 Using break

```
...
var shields = 5
var blastersOverheating = false
```

```

var blasterFireCount = 0
var spaceDemonsDestroyed = 0
while shields > 0 {

    if spaceDemonsDestroyed == 500 {
        print("You beat the game!")
        break
    }

    if blastersOverheating {
        print("Blasters are overheated! Cooldown initiated.")
        sleep(5)
        print("Blasters ready to fire")
        sleep(1)
        blastersOverheating = false
        blasterFireCount = 0
        continue
    }

    if blasterFireCount > 100 {
        blastersOverheating = true
        continue
    }
    // Fire blasters!
    print("Fire blasters!")

    blasterFireCount += 1
    spaceDemonsDestroyed += 1
}

```

Here, you add a new variable called `spaceDemonsDestroyed`, which is incremented each time the blasters fire. (You are a pretty good shot, apparently.) Next, you add a new `if` statement that checks whether the `spaceDemonsDestroyed` variable is equal to 500. If it is, you log victory to the console.

Note the use of `break`. The `break` control transfer statement will exit the `while` loop, and execution will pick up on the line immediately after the closing brace of the loop. This makes sense: If the user has destroyed 500 space demons and the game is won, the blasters do not need to fire anymore.

Silver Challenge

Fizz Buzz is a game used to teach division. Create a version of the game that works like this: For every value in a given range, print out “FIZZ” if the current number is evenly divisible by 3. If the number is evenly divisible by 5, print out “BUZZ.” If the number is evenly divisible by both 3 and 5, then print out “FIZZ BUZZ.” If the number is not evenly divisible by 3 or 5, then simply print out the number.

For example, over the range of 1 through 10, playing Fizz Buzz should yield this: “1, 2, FIZZ, 4, BUZZ, FIZZ, 7, 8, FIZZ, BUZZ.”

Computers love to play Fizz Buzz. The game is perfect for loops and conditionals. Loop over the range from 0 through 100 and print “FIZZ,” “BUZZ,” or “FIZZ BUZZ” appropriately for each number in the range.

For bonus points, solve Fizz Buzz with both an `if/else` conditional and a `switch` statement. When using the `switch`, make sure to match against a tuple in its various cases.

Strings

In programming, textual content is represented by strings. You have seen and used strings already. "Hello, playground", for example, is a string that appears at the top of every newly created playground. Like all strings, it can be thought of as an ordered collection of characters. In reality, Swift strings are not themselves collections, but they do provide a variety of views into their underlying contents that are collections. In this chapter, you will see more of what strings can do.

Working with Strings

In Swift, you create strings with the **String** type. Create a new playground called **Strings** and add the following new instance of the **String** type.

Listing 7.1 Hello, playground

```
import Cocoa  
  
var str = "Hello, playground"  
let playground = "Hello, playground"
```

You have created a **String** instance named **playground** using the string literal syntax, which encloses a sequence of text with quotation marks.

This instance was created with the **let** keyword, making it a constant. Recall that being a constant means that the instance cannot be changed. If you do try to change it, the compiler will give you an error.

Create a new string, but make this instance mutable.

Listing 7.2 Creating a mutable string

```
...  
let playground = "Hello, playground"  
var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"
```

mutablePlayground is a mutable instance of the **String** type. In other words, you can change the contents of this string. Use the addition and assignment operator to add some final punctuation.

Listing 7.3 Adding to a mutable string

```
...  
let playground = "Hello, playground"  
var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"  
mutablePlayground += "!"
```

Take a look at the results sidebar on the righthand side of the playground. You should see that the instance has changed to "Hello, mutable playground!"

The characters that comprise Swift's strings are of the **Character** type. You use Swift's **Character** type to represent Unicode characters, and in combination **Characters** form a **String** instance.

Loop through the **mutablePlayground** string to see the **Character** type in action.

Listing 7.4 mutablePlayground's Characters

```
...  
let playground = "Hello, playground"  
var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"  
mutablePlayground += "!"
```

```

for c: Character in mutablePlayground.characters {
    print("'"\u{c}'")
}

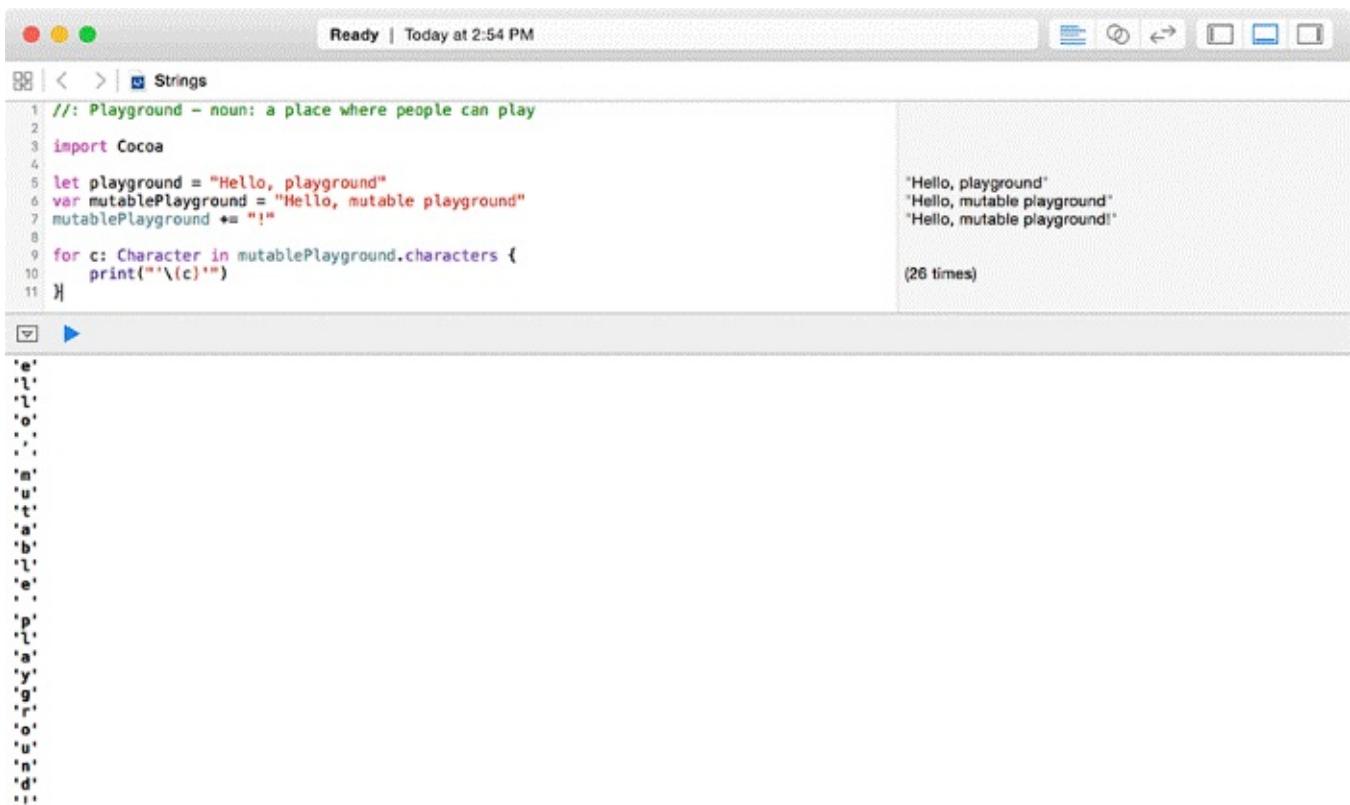
```

This loop iterates through every **Character** `c` in `mutablePlayground`. In it, you access the `characters` property of the **String** `mutablePlayground`. Do not worry about what a property is right now; this topic will be covered in detail in [Chapter 16](#). For now, all you need to know is that a property is a way a type holds on to data. In Swift, you access properties via *dot syntax*, as in `mutablePlayground.characters`.

The `characters` property represents the collection of characters that make up the instance. Each iteration of the loop logs one of the **String**'s characters to the console. Every character is logged to the console on its own line because `print()` prints a line break after logging its content.

Your output should look like [Figure 7.1](#).

Figure 7.1 Logging characters in a string



The screenshot shows a Mac OS X application window titled "Ready | Today at 2:54 PM". The title bar includes standard window controls (red, yellow, green) and a toolbar with icons for file operations. The main area is a "Strings" playground. On the left, the code is displayed:

```

1 //: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
2
3 import Cocoa
4
5 let playground = "Hello, playground"
6 var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"
7 mutablePlayground += "!"
8
9 for c: Character in mutablePlayground.characters {
10     print("'"\u{c}'")
11 }

```

On the right, the playground's output pane shows the results of the loop:

```

"Hello, playground"
"Hello, mutable playground"
"Hello, mutable playground!"

(26 times)

'e'
'l'
'l'
'o'
' '
'm'
'u'
't'
'a'
'b'
'l'
'e'
' '
'p'
'l'
'a'
'y'
'g'
'r'
'o'
'u'
'n'
'd'
'!'

```


Unicode

Unicode is an international standard that encodes characters so they can be seamlessly processed and represented regardless of the platform. Unicode represents human language (and other forms of communication like emoji) on computers. Every character in the standard is assigned a unique number.

Swift's **String** and **Character** types are built on top of Unicode and they do the majority of the heavy lifting. Nonetheless, it is good to have an understanding of how these types work with Unicode. Having this knowledge will likely save you some time and frustration in the future.

Unicode scalars

At their heart, strings in Swift are composed of *Unicode scalars*. Unicode scalars are 21-bit numbers that represent a specific character in the Unicode standard. For example, U+0061 represents the Latin small letter “a.” U+1F60E represents the smiley-faced emoji with sunglasses. The text U+1F60E is the standard way of writing a Unicode character. The 1F60E portion is a number written in hexadecimal, or base 16.

Create a constant to see how to use specific Unicode scalars in Swift and the playground.

Listing 7.5 Using a Unicode scalar

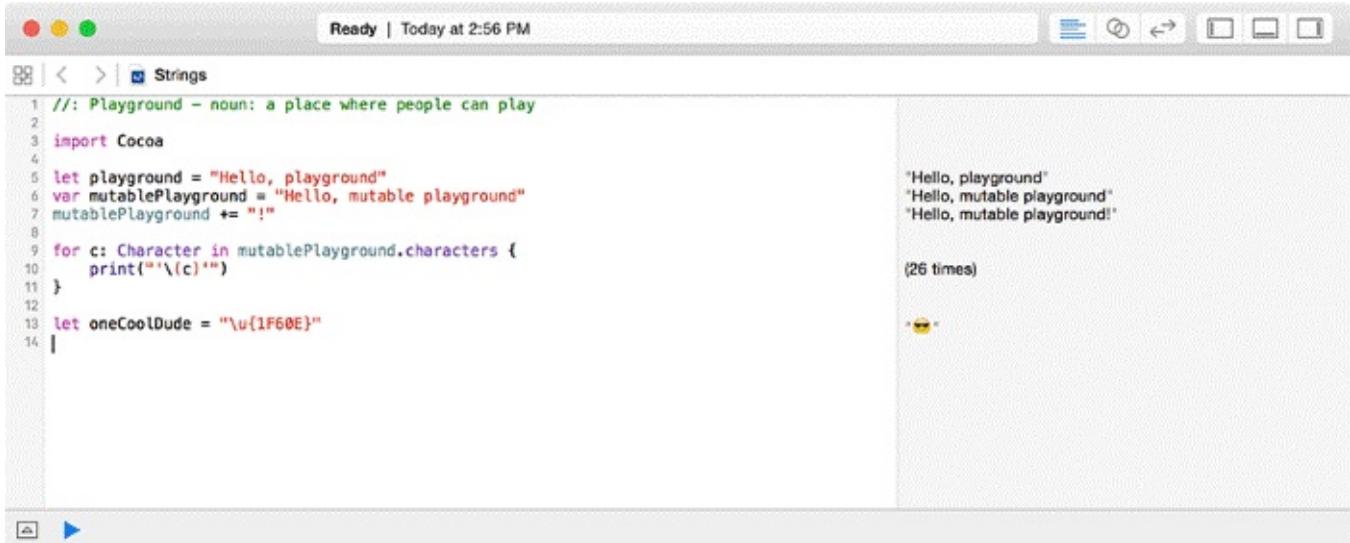
```
...
let playground = "Hello, playground"
var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"
mutablePlayground += "!"

for c: Character in mutablePlayground.characters {
    print("\\"(c)'")
}

let oneCoolDude = "\u{1F60E}"
```

This time, you used a new syntax to create a string. The quotation marks are familiar, but what is inside them is not a string literal, as you have seen before. It does not match the results in the sidebar ([Figure 7.2](#)).

Figure 7.2 Emoji in the sidebar



The screenshot shows a Xcode playground window. The code in the editor is:

```
//: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
import Cocoa
let playground = "Hello, playground"
var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"
mutablePlayground += "!"
for c: Character in mutablePlayground.characters {
    print("\u{c}")
}
let oneCoolDude = "\u{1F60E}"
```

The results sidebar shows the output of the print statements and the emoji:

```
"Hello, playground"  
"Hello, mutable playground"  
"Hello, mutable playground!"  
(26 times)  
😎
```

The `\u{}` syntax represents the Unicode scalar whose hexadecimal number appears between the braces. In this case, `oneCoolDude` is assigned to be equal to the character representing the sunglasses-wearing emoji.

How does this relate to more familiar strings? It turns out that every string in Swift is composed of Unicode scalars. So why do they look unfamiliar? To explain, we need to discuss a few more concepts.

Every character in Swift is built up from one or more Unicode scalars. One Unicode scalar maps onto one fundamental character in a given language. But we say that characters are built from “one or more” Unicode scalars because there are also *combining scalars*. For example, U+0301 represents the Unicode scalar for the combining acute accent: ‘. This scalar is placed on top of – that is, combined with – the character that precedes it. You can use this scalar with the Latin small letter “a” to create the character á.

Listing 7.6 Using a combining scalar

```
...
let playground = "Hello, playground"
var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"
mutablePlayground += "!"

for c: Character in mutablePlayground.characters {
    print("\u{c}")
}

let oneCoolDude = "\u{1F60E}"
let aAcute = "\u{0061}\u{0301}"
```

You should see á, the combination of the letter “a” and the acute accent, in the results sidebar. Every character in Swift is an *extended grapheme cluster*. Extended grapheme clusters are sequences of one or more Unicode scalars that combine to produce a single human-readable character. Just now, you decomposed the character á into its two constituent Unicode scalars:

the letter and the accent. Making characters extended grapheme clusters gives Swift flexibility in dealing with complex script characters.

Swift also provides a mechanism to see all of the Unicode scalars in a string. For example, you can see all of the Unicode scalars that Swift uses to create the instance of **String** named `playground` that you created earlier using the `unicodeScalars` property, which holds all of the scalars that Swift uses to make the string. Add the following code to your playground to see `playground`'s Unicode scalars.

Listing 7.7 Revealing the Unicode scalars behind a string

```
...
let playground = "Hello, playground"
var mutablePlayground = "Hello, mutable playground"
mutablePlayground += "!"

for c: Character in mutablePlayground.characters {
    print("\u202A(c)\u202B")
}

let oneCoolDude = "\u{1F60E}"
let aAcute = "\u{0061}\u{0301}"
for scalar in playground.unicodeScalars {
    print("\u202A(scalar.value)\u202B")
}
```

You should see the following output in the console: 72 101 108 108 111 44 32 112 108 97 121 103 114 111 117 110 100. What do all of these numbers mean?

Recall that the `unicodeScalars` property holds on to data representing all of the Unicode scalars used to create the string instance `playground`. Each number on the console corresponds to a Unicode scalar representing a single character in the string. But they are not the hexadecimal Unicode numbers. Instead, each is represented as an unsigned 32-bit integer. The first, 72, corresponds to the Unicode scalar value of `U+0048`, or an uppercase “H.”

Canonical equivalence

While there is a role for combining scalars, Unicode also provides already combined forms for some common characters. For example, there is a specific scalar for á. You do not actually need to decompose it into its two parts: the letter and the accent. The scalar is `U+00E1`. Create a new constant string that uses this Unicode scalar.

Listing 7.8 Using a precomposed character

```
...
let aAcute = "\u{0061}\u{0301}"
for scalar in playground.unicodeScalars {
```

```
    print("\(scalar.value) ")
}
```

```
let aAcutePrecomposed = "\u{00E1}"
```

As you can see, `aAcutePrecomposed` appears to have the same value as `aAcute`. Indeed, if you check to see if these two characters are the same, you will find that Swift answers “yes.”

Listing 7.9 Checking equivalence

```
let aAcute = "\u{0061}\u{0301}"
for scalar in playground.unicodeScalars {
    print("\(scalar.value) ")
}
```

```
let aAcutePrecomposed = "\u{00E1}"
```

```
let b = (aAcute == aAcutePrecomposed) // true
```

`aAcute` was created using two Unicode scalars, and `aAcutePrecomposed` only used one. Why does Swift say that they are equivalent? The answer is *canonical equivalence*.

Canonical equivalence refers to whether two sequences of Unicode scalars are the same *linguistically*. Two characters, or two strings, are considered equal if they have the same linguistic meaning and appearance, regardless of whether they are built from the same Unicode scalars. `aAcute` and `aAcutePrecomposed` are equal strings because both represent the Latin small letter “a” with an acute accent. The fact that they were created with different Unicode scalars does not affect this.

Counting elements

Canonical equivalence has implications for counting elements of a string. You might think that `aAcute` and `aAcutePrecomposed` would have different character counts. Write the following code to check.

Listing 7.10 Counting characters

```
...
let aAcute = "\u{0061}\u{0301}"
for scalar in playground.unicodeScalars {
    print("\(scalar.value) ")
}

let aAcutePrecomposed = "\u{00E1}"

let b = (aAcute == aAcutePrecomposed) // true
print("aAcute: \(aAcute.characters.count);")
```

`aAcutePrecomposed: \(\aAcutePrecomposed.characters.count\)"`

You use the `count` property on `characters` to determine the character count of these two strings. `count` iterates over a string's Unicode scalars to determine its length. The results sidebar reveals that the character counts are the same: Both are 1 character long. Canonical equivalence means that whether you use a combining scalar or a precomposed scalar, the result is treated as a single character.

Indices and ranges

Because strings can be thought of as ordered collections of characters, you might think that you can access a specific character on a string like so:

```
let index = playground[3] // 'l'???
```

The code `playground[3]` uses the subscript syntax. In general, the brackets `([])` indicate that you are using a subscript in Swift. Subscripts allow you to retrieve a specific value within a collection.

`3` is an *index* that is used to find a particular element within a collection. The code above suggests that you are trying to select the fourth character from the collection of characters making up the `playground` string (the first index is `0`). You will learn more about subscripts below and will also see them in action in [Chapter 9](#) and [Chapter 10](#) on arrays and dictionaries.

If you tried to use a subscript like this, you would get an error: "'subscript' is unavailable: cannot subscript String with an Int." The Swift compiler will not let you access a specific character on a string via a subscript index. This limitation has to do with the way Swift strings and characters are stored. You cannot index a string with an integer because Swift does not know which Unicode scalar corresponds to a given index without stepping through every preceding character. This operation can be expensive. Therefore, Swift forces you to be more explicit.

Swift uses a type called **String.CharacterView.Index** to keep track of indices. Do not worry about all of the periods `(.)` in **String.CharacterView.Index**; they just mean that **Index** is a type that is defined on **CharacterView**, which is a type defined on **String**. (You will read more about nested types in [Chapter 16](#).) The type **CharacterView** is responsible for giving a view of a string's characters as an ordered collection.

As you have seen in this chapter, an individual character may be made up of multiple Unicode code points. It is the job of the **CharacterView** to represent each of these code points as a single **Character** instance and to combine these characters into the correct string.

It is convenient to have **Index** defined on **CharacterView**. This allows you to ask the character view to hand back indices that are meaningful for the string in question. For example, to find the character at a particular index, you begin with the **String** type's `startIndex` property. This property yields the starting index of a string as a

String.CharacterIndex.Index. You can then use this starting point in conjunction with the **index(_:offsetBy:)** method to move forward until you arrive at the position of your choosing. (A *method* is like a function; you will learn more about them in [Chapter 12](#).) Say you want to know the fifth character of the playground string that you created at the beginning of this chapter.

Listing 7.11 Finding the fifth character

```
...
let start = playground.startIndex
let end = playground.index(start, offsetBy: 4)
let fifthCharacter = playground[end] // "o"
```

You used the **startIndex** property on the string to get the first index of the string. This property yields an instance of type **String.CharacterView.Index**. Next, you used the **index(_:offsetBy:)** method to advance from the starting point to your desired position. The **offsetBy** parameter takes an argument of type **Int**, which the method then adds to the first index. You passed in 4 to represent the fifth character.

The result of calling **index(_:offsetBy:)** is a **String.CharacterView.Index** that you assigned to the constant **end**. Finally, you used **end** to subscript your **playground** string instance, which resulted in the character “o” being assigned to **fifthCharacter**. (**playground**, remember, is set to equal “Hello, playground”.)

Ranges, like indices, depend upon the **String.CharacterView.Index** type. Imagine that you wanted to grab the first five characters of **playground**. You can use the same **start** and **end** constants.

Listing 7.12 Pulling out a range

```
...
let start = playground.startIndex
let end = playground.index(start, offsetBy: 4)
let fifthCharacter = playground[end] // "o"
let range = start...end
let firstFive = playground[range] // "Hello"
```

The result of the syntax **start...end** is called a *closed range* of type **String.CharacterView.Index**, which works similarly to the range you saw in [Chapter 6](#) (1...5). You used this new range as a subscript on the **playground** string. The subscript grabbed the first five characters from **playground**, making **firstFive** a constant equal to “Hello”.

Bronze Challenge

Create a new **String** instance called `empty` and give it an empty string: `let empty = ""`. It is useful to be able to tell if a string has any characters in it. Use the `startIndex` and `endIndex` properties on `empty` to determine whether this string is truly empty. Next, consult the documentation via the `Help` menu item in Xcode for a cleaner way to accomplish this check.

Silver Challenge

Replace the "Hello" string with an instance created out of its corresponding Unicode scalars.
You can find the appropriate codes on the internet.

Optionals

Optionals are a special feature in Swift used to indicate that an instance may not have a value. When you see an optional, you know that one of two things is true about that instance: It either has a value and it is ready for use, or it has no value. If an instance has no value associated with it, we say that it is *nil*.

You can use optionals with any type to signal that an instance is potentially `nil`. This feature distinguishes Swift from Objective-C, which only allows objects to be `nil`.

This chapter covers how to declare optional types, how to use *optional binding* to check whether an optional is `nil` and make use of its value if it has one, and how to use *optional chaining* to query a sequence of optional values.

Optional Types

Optionals in Swift make the language safer. An instance that may potentially be `nil` should be declared to be an optional type. This means that if an instance is *not* declared as an optional type, this instance is guaranteed to *not* be `nil`. This way, the compiler knows whether an instance can be `nil`. This explicit declaration makes your code more expressive and safe.

Let's take a look at how to declare an optional type. Create a new playground and name it **Optionals**. Enter the code snippet below.

Listing 8.1 Declaring an optional type

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

var errorCodeString: String?
errorCodeString = "404"
```

First, you make a variable named `errorCodeString` to hold on to error code information in a string format. Next, you explicitly declare the type of `errorCodeString` to be **String** – but in a slightly different way than what you have done before. This time you put a `?` at the end of `String`. The `?` makes `errorCodeString` an optional of the type **String**.

Now that you have declared an optional and given it a value, log the value of the optional to the console.

Listing 8.2 Logging the value of the optional to the console

```
import Cocoa

var errorCodeString: String?
errorCodeString = "404"
print(errorCodeString)
```

Logging the value of `errorCodeString` to the console shows `Optional("404")`. What would happen if you did not give `errorCodeString` a value? Try it! Comment out the line assigning a value to `errorCodeString`.

Listing 8.3 Logging the nil value of the optional to the console

```
import Cocoa

var errorCodeString: String?
// errorCodeString = "404"
print(errorCodeString)
```

Checking the console, you will see that it has logged the value `nil`.

But logging `nil` to the console is not very helpful. Instead, you want to know when your variables are `nil` so that you can execute code based on whether there is a value. You can use

a conditional to gain traction on a variable's value in these circumstances.

For example, let's say that if some operation generated an error, you would want to assign that error to a new variable and log it to the console. Add the following code to your playground.

Listing 8.4 Adding a condition

```
import Cocoa

var errorCodeString: String?
// errorCodeString = "404"
print(errorCodeString)
if errorCodeString != nil {
    let theError = errorCodeString!
    print(theError)
}
```

Let's look at what you did here. You set up a conditional with code that executes if `errorCodeString` is not nil (remember that `!=` means “is not equal to”).

In the body of the conditional, you created a new constant called `theError` to hold the value of `errorCodeString`. To do this, you appended `!` to `errorCodeString`. The exclamation mark here does what is called *forced unwrapping*.

Forced unwrapping accesses the underlying value of the optional, which allows you to grab “404” and assign it to the constant `theError`. It is called “forced” unwrapping because it tries to access the underlying value whether or not there is actually a value there at all. That is, the `!` assumes there is a value; if there is no value, unwrapping the value in this way would lead to a runtime error.

There is some danger in forced unwrapping. If there is no value inside the optional, your program will trap at runtime. In this case, you checked to make sure that `errorCodeString` was not nil, so force-unwrapping it was not dangerous. Nonetheless, we suggest that you use force-unwrapping cautiously and sparingly.

Finally, you logged this new constant's value to the console.

What would have happened if you had not unwrapped `errorCodeString`'s value but simply assigned the optional to the constant `theError`? The value of `theError` would still have been logged to the console correctly. So, why unwrap the optional's value and assign it to a constant? The answer requires a better understanding of the optional type.

If you had omitted the exclamation mark at the end of `errorCodeString`, you would have simply assigned the optional `String` to a constant instead of the actual `String` value for the error code. In fact, `errorCodeString`'s type is `String?`. `String?` is not the same type as `String` – if you have a `String` variable, you cannot set it to the value of a `String?` without unwrapping the optional.

The optional `errorCodeString` was `nil` when it was first declared because it was given no value. In the next line, you assigned “404” to `errorCodeString`. You can compare an

optional value to `nil` to determine whether it contains a value. In the code above, you first check whether `errorCodeString` has a value; if the value is not equal to `nil`, you know it is safe to unwrap `errorCodeString`.

Creating a constant inside the conditional is a little clunky. Fortunately, there is a better way to conditionally bind an optional's value to a constant. It is called *optional binding*.

Optional Binding

Optional binding is a useful pattern that you can use to detect whether an optional contains a value. If there is a value, then you can assign it to a temporary constant or variable and make it available within a conditional's first branch of execution. This can make your code more concise while also retaining its expressive nature. Here is the basic syntax:

```
if let temporaryConstant = anOptional {  
    // Do something with temporaryConstant  
} else {  
    // There was no value in anOptional; i.e., anOptional is nil  
}
```

With this syntax in hand, refactor the example above to make use of optional binding.

Listing 8.5 Optional binding

```
import Cocoa  
  
var errorCodeString: String?  
errorCodeString = "404"  
if errorCodeString != nil {  
    let theError = errorCodeString!  
if let theError = errorCodeString {  
    print(theError)  
}
```

As you can see, the syntax for optional binding is more or less the same as the syntax using a constant created within the conditional. The constant `theError` moves from the body of the conditional to its first line. This makes `theError` a temporary constant that is available within the first branch of the conditional. In other words, if there is a value within the optional, a temporary constant is made available for use in the block of code that is executed if the condition is evaluated as true.

Also, you no longer forcibly unwrap the optional. If the conversion is successful, then this operation is done for you and the optional's value is made available in the temporary constant you declared. Finally, note that you could have declared `theError` with the `var` keyword if you needed to manipulate the value inside the first branch of the conditional.

Imagine that you wanted to convert `errorCodeString` to its corresponding integer representation. You could accomplish this by nesting `if let` bindings.

Listing 8.6 Nesting optional binding

```
import Cocoa  
  
var errorCodeString: String?  
errorCodeString = "404"  
if let theError = errorCodeString {  
    print(theError)
```

```

if let errorCodeInteger = Int(theError) {
    print("\(theError): \(errorCodeInteger)")
}
}

```

Notice that the second `if let` takes place within the first, which makes `theError` available to use in the second optional binding. Here, you use a syntax that you saw in [Chapter 4](#) to convert between integer types.

In the example above, you use `Int(theError)` to convert the **String** instance in `theError` to its corresponding **Int**. This operation can fail; for example, the string "Error!" does not naturally translate to an integer. Therefore, `Int(theError)` returns an optional, in case a corresponding **Int** is not found for the given string.

The result of `Int(theError)` is unwrapped and assigned to `errorCodeInteger` in the second binding, which makes the integer value available for use. You can then use both of these new constants in a call to `print()` to log them to the console.

Nesting optional binding can be convoluted. While it is not too bad with just a couple of optionals, you can imagine how complicated this strategy can get if you have several more optionals that need to be unwrapped. We call deeply nested optional bindings the “Pyramid of Doom,” a reference to the many indentation levels. Thankfully, you can unwrap multiple optionals in a single `if let` binding. This feature helps you avoid the need for nesting multiple `if let` calls – nasty code like you saw above (and worse).

Listing 8.7 Unwrapping multiple optionals

```

import Cocoa

var errorCodeString: String?
errorCodeString = "404"
if let theError = errorCodeString, let errorCodeInteger = Int(theError) {
    if let errorCodeInteger = Int(theError) {
        print("\(theError): \(errorCodeInteger)")
    }
}

```

You now unwrap two optionals in a single line with `if let theError = errorCodeString, let errorCodeInteger = Int(theError)`. First, `errorCodeString` is unwrapped, and its value is given to `theError`. You use `Int(theError)` to try to convert `theError` into an **Int**. Because this results in an optional, you next unwrap that optional and bind its value to `errorCodeInteger`. If either of these bindings return `nil`, then the success block of the conditional will not execute. In this case, though, `errorCodeString` has a value and `theError` can be successfully unwrapped because `theError` can be converted into an integer.

Optional binding can even perform additional checks that work very similarly to what you have already seen with standard `if` statements. Imagine that you only care about an error code if the value is 404.

Listing 8.8 Optional binding and additional checks

```
import Cocoa

var errorCodeString: String?
errorCodeString = "404"
if let theError = errorCodeString, let errorCodeInteger = Int(th
    errorCodeInteger == 404 {
    print("\(theError): \(errorCodeInteger)")
}
}
```

(Do not overlook the added comma in this code.)

Now, the conditional evaluates to true if `errorCodeInteger` is equal to 404. The final clause (`errorCodeInteger == 404`) is only executed if both optionals are successfully unwrapped. Because `theError` is "404", and that string can be converted to the integer 404, all conditions are met and `404: 404` is logged to the console.

Implicitly Unwrapped Optionals

At this point it is worth mentioning *implicitly unwrapped optionals*, though you will not make much use of them until we discuss classes and class initialization later. Implicitly unwrapped optionals are like regular optional types, with one important difference: You do not need to unwrap them. How is that the case? It has to do with how you declare them. Take a look at the code below, which refactors the example above to work with an implicitly unwrapped optional.

```
import Cocoa

var errorCodeString: String!
errorCodeString = "404"
print(errorCodeString)
```

Here, the optional is declared with the `!`, which signifies that it is an implicitly unwrapped optional. The conditional is removed because using an implicitly unwrapped optional signifies a great deal more confidence than its more humble counterpart. Indeed, much of the power and flexibility associated with the implicitly unwrapped optional is related to the idea that you do not need to unwrap it to access its value.

Note, however, that this power and flexibility comes with some danger: Accessing the value of an implicitly unwrapped optional will result in a runtime error if it does not have a value. For this reason, we suggest that you do not use the implicitly unwrapped optional if you believe that the instance has any chance of becoming `nil`. Indeed, implicitly unwrapped optionals are so unsafe that Swift will attempt to give you regular optionals if you are not specific about wanting an implicitly unwrapped optional.

Let's revisit the example above to see this in action. Suppose you set `errorCodeString` to be `nil`. What would happen if you declared a constant named `anotherErrorCodeString` with type **String** and tried to assign to it the contents (or lack thereof) of `errorCodeString`? If you were to assign `errorCodeString` to another instance, what type do you think Swift would infer for that new instance if you were not explicit about the type?

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var errorCodeString: String! = nil
errorCodeString = "404"
print(errorCodeString)
```

```
let anotherErrorCodeString: String = errorCodeString // Will thi
let yetAnotherErrorCodeString = errorCodeString // Optional or i
```

For the first question, you would see a trap. If `errorCodeString` is `nil`, assigning that value to `anotherErrorCodeString`, which is of type **String**, results in a runtime error. Why? Because `anotherErrorCodeString` cannot be optional, due to its explicitly

declared type.

As for the second question, Swift will infer the safest thing possible: a regular optional. `yetAnotherErrorCodeString` would be a **String?** whose value is `nil`. You would have to unwrap the optional to access its value, which helps to increase the safety of your code. This feature makes type inference safe by default and thereby suppresses the unintended proliferation of unsafe code.

If you want `yetAnotherErrorCodeString` to be an implicitly unwrapped optional, then the compiler requires you to be explicit. You need to declare that the type of optional that you want is implicitly unwrapped, as in `let yetAnotherErrorCodeString: String! = errorCodeString`.

Using implicitly unwrapped optionals is best limited to somewhat special cases. As we indicated, the primary case concerns class initialization, which we will discuss in detail in [Chapter 17](#). For now, you know enough of the basics of implicitly unwrapped optionals to understand what is going on if you find them in the wild.

Optional Chaining

Like optional binding, *optional chaining* provides a mechanism for querying an optional to determine whether it contains a value. One important difference between the two is that optional chaining allows the programmer to chain numerous queries into an optional's value. If each optional in the chain contains a value, then the call to each succeeds, and the entire query chain will return an optional of the expected type. If any optional in the query chain is `nil`, then the entire chain will return `nil`.

Let's begin with a concise example. Imagine that your app has a custom error code for some reason. If you encounter a 404, you want to use your customized error code instead, as well as an error description you will display to the user. Add the following to your playground.

Listing 8.9 Optional chaining

```
import Cocoa

var errorCodeString: String?
errorCodeString = "404"
var errorDescription: String?
if let theError = errorCodeString, let errorCodeInteger = Int(th
    errorCodeInteger == 404 {
    print("\(theError): \(errorCodeInteger)")
    errorDescription = "\(errorCodeInteger + 200)": resource was n
}

var upCaseErrorDescription = errorDescription?.uppercased()
errorDescription
```

You added a new var named `errorDescription`. Inside of the `if let` success block, you created a new interpolated string and assigned that instance to `errorDescription`. When you created the interpolated string, you increased 404 to your custom error code value of 604 using `\(errorCodeInteger + 200)` (this is arbitrary, and theoretically unique to your app). Last, you added some more informative text about the error.

Next, you used optional chaining to create a new instance of the error description to be in all uppercase text, perhaps to indicate its urgency. This instance is called `upCaseErrorDescription`. The question mark appended to the end of `errorDescription` signals that this line of code initiates the optional chaining process. If there is no value in `errorDescription`, then there is no string to uppercase. In that case, `upCaseErrorDescription` would be set to `nil`. This point demonstrates that optional chaining will return an optional.

Because `errorDescription` does have a value in it, you uppercased the description and reassigned that new value to `upCaseErrorDescription`. The results sidebar should display the updated value: "604: RESOURCE WAS NOT FOUND."

Modifying an Optional in Place

You can modify an optional *in place* so that you do not have to create a new variable or constant. Add a call to the `append(_:)` method on `upCaseErrorDescription`.

Listing 8.10 Modifying in place

```
...
upCaseErrorDescription?.append(" PLEASE TRY AGAIN.")
upCaseErrorDescription
```

Modifying an optional in place can be extremely helpful. In this case, all you wanted to do was update a string inside of an optional. You did not need anything returned. If there was a value inside of the optional, then you wanted to add some text to the string. If there was no value, then you did not want to do anything.

This is exactly what modifying an optional in place does. The `?` at the end of `upCaseErrorDescription` works similarly to optional chaining: It exposes the value of the optional if it exists. If `upCaseErrorDescription` were `nil`, then the optional would not have been modified because no value would exist to update.

It is worth mentioning that you can also use the `!` operator in the code above. This operation would forcibly unwrap the optional – which can be dangerous, as you have learned. If `upCaseErrorDescription` were `nil`, then `upCaseErrorDescription!.append(" PLEASE TRY AGAIN.")` would lead to a runtime crash.

As you have read above, it is best to use `?` most of the time. The `!` operator should be used when you know that the optional will not be `nil` or that the *only* reasonable action to take if the optional is `nil` is to crash.

The Nil Coalescing Operator

A common operation when dealing with optionals is to either get the value (if the optional contains a value) or to use some default value if the optional is nil. For example, when pulling out the error information inside of `errorDescription`, you might want to default to "No error" if the string does not contain an error. You could accomplish this with optional binding.

Listing 8.11 Using optional binding to parse `errorDescription`

```
...
let description: String
if let errorDescription = errorDescription {
    description = errorDescription
} else {
    description = "No error"
}
```

There is a problem with this technique. You had to write a lot of code for what should be a simple operation: Get the value from the optional or use "No error" if the optional is nil. This can be solved via the *nil coalescing operator*: `??`. Let's see what that looks like.

Listing 8.12 Using the nil coalescing operator

```
...
let description: String
if let errorDescription = errorDescription {
    description = errorDescription
} else {
    description = "No error"
}

let description = errorDescription ?? "No error"
```

The lefthand side of `??` must be an optional – `errorDescription`, in this case, which is an optional **String**. The righthand side must be a nonoptional of the same type – "No error", in this case, which is a **String**. If the lefthand side optional is nil, `??` returns the righthand side. If the lefthand side optional is not nil, `??` returns the value contained in the optional.

Try changing `errorDescription` so that it does not contain an error and confirm that `description` gets the value "No error".

Listing 8.13 Changing `errorDescription`

```
...
errorDescription = nil
let description = errorDescription ?? "No error"
```

This chapter was fairly involved. You learned a lot of new material. Optionals are a new topic regardless of your level of development experience. They are also a powerful feature of

Swift.

As a developer, you will often need to represent `nil` in an instance. Optionals help you keep track of whether instances are `nil` and provide a mechanism to respond appropriately. If optionals do not quite feel comfortable yet, do not worry. You will be seeing them quite a bit in future chapters.

Bronze Challenge

Optionals are best used for things that can literally be nil; that is, they are useful in representing the complete absence of something. But nonexistence is not the same as zero. For example, if you are writing code to model a bank account, and the user has no balance in a given account, the value 0 is more appropriate than nil. In other words, the user does not lack an account; what they are missing is money! Take a look at the examples below and select which type would model them best.

- The number of kids a parent has: **Int** or **Int?**
- The name of a person's pet: **String** or **String?**

Silver Challenge

Earlier in the chapter we told you that accessing an optional's value when it is `nil` will result in a runtime error. Make this mistake by force-unwrapping an optional when it is `nil`. Next, examine the error and understand what the error is telling you.

Part III

Collections and Functions

As a programmer, you will often have a *collection* of related values that you need to keep together. Collections in Swift help you do this, and this part of the book will introduce you to Swift's different collection options.

Swift provides functions to help developers transform data into something meaningful for the user or accomplish some other task. These chapters also describe how to use the system functions provided by the Swift language as well as how to create your own functions to accomplish your goals.

Arrays

An important task in programming is to group together logically related values. For example, imagine that your application keeps lists of a user's friends, favorite books, travel locations, and so on. It is often necessary to be able to keep those values together and pass them around your code. *Collections* make these operations convenient.

Swift has a number of collection types. The first we will cover is called an **Array**.

An array is an ordered collection of values. Each position in an array is identified by an index, and any value can appear multiple times in an array. Arrays are typically used when the order of the values is important or useful to know, but it is not a prerequisite that the order of the values be meaningful. Unlike in Objective-C, Swift's **Array** type can hold on to any sort of value – objects and nonobjects alike.

To get started, create a new Swift playground called **Arrays**.

Creating an Array

In this chapter, you will create an array that represents your bucket list: the things that you would like to do in the future. Begin by declaring your first array.

Listing 9.1 Creating an array

```
import Cocoa  
  
var str = "Hello, playground"
```

```
var bucketList: Array<String>
```

Here, you create a new variable called `bucketList` that is of the type **Array**. Much of that syntax should look familiar. For example, the `var` keyword means that `bucketList` is a variable, which means that `bucketList` is mutable: The array can be changed. There are also immutable arrays, which we will discuss later in this chapter.

What is probably new in the syntax is `<String>`. This code tells `bucketList` what sort of instances it can accept. Here, your array will accept instances of the **String** type. Arrays can hold instances of any type. Because this array will hold information concerning your future goals, it makes sense that it takes instances of **String**.

There is an alternative syntax for declaring an array. Make the following change in your playground.

Listing 9.2 Changing the syntax

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList: Array<String>  
var bucketList: [String]
```

Here, the brackets identify `bucketList` as an instance of **Array**, and the **String** syntax tells `bucketList` what sort of values it can accept.

Your `bucketList` is only declared. It is not yet initialized. This means that it is not yet ready to accept instances of the **String** type. If you were to try to append an item to your `bucketList`, you would get an error saying that you are trying to add something before your `bucketList` is initialized.

Change your declaration of `bucketList` to initialize the array in the same line.

Listing 9.3 Initializing the array

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList: [String] = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
```

You use the assignment operator `=` in conjunction with the **Array** literal syntax `["Climb Mt. Everest"]`. An **Array** literal is a shorthand syntax that initializes an array with whatever instances you include. In this case, you initialize `bucketList` with the bucket item to climb

Mt. Everest.

As with other types, **Arrays** can be declared by taking advantage of Swift's type inference capabilities. Remove the type declaration from your code to use type inference.

Listing 9.4 Using type inference

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList: [String] = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
```

Nothing has really changed. Your `bucketList` still contains the same item, and it still will only accept instances of the **String** type. The only difference is that it now infers this based on the type of the instance used to initialize it. If you were to try to add an integer to this array, you would see an error telling you that you cannot add an instance of **Int** to your array because it is expecting instances of the **String** type.

Now that you know how to create and initialize an array, it is time to learn how to access and modify your array's elements.

Accessing and Modifying Arrays

So, you have a bucket list? Great! Sadly, you do not have that many ambitions in it yet. But you are an interesting person with a zest for life, so let's add some values to your `bucketList`. Update your list with another ambition.

Listing 9.5 Hot air balloon adventure

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
```

You are using `append(_:)` to add a value to `bucketList`. The `append(_:)` method takes an argument of whatever type an array accepts and makes it a new element in the array.

Your playground should look like [Figure 9.1](#).

Figure 9.1 Appending to your `bucketList`



Add more future adventures to your `bucketList` using the `append(_:)` function.

Listing 9.6 So many ambitions!

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
bucketList.append("Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day")
bucketList.append("Go on a walkabout")
bucketList.append("Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole")
bucketList.append("Find a triple rainbow")
```

Now you have six items in `bucketList`. But what if you have a change of heart? Or – thinking positively – what happens when you accomplish one of the items on your list?

Suppose last weekend you settled in and spent 10 hours watching the *Lord of the Rings* series.

Now it is time to take that item off your list. Remove it with the function **remove(at:)**. (Arrays are zero-indexed, so "Climb Mt. Everest" is at index 0 and "Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day" is at index 2.)

Listing 9.7 Removing an item from the array

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
bucketList.append("Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day")
bucketList.append("Go on a walkabout")
bucketList.append("Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole")
bucketList.append("Find a triple rainbow")
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
bucketList
```

To confirm that the value in the second index was removed from your **bucketList**, highlight the final line (**bucketList**) in the results sidebar and click the button that looks like an eye. This is called the *Quick Look* ([Figure 9.2](#)). Scroll down in the Quick Look window to see that the count of items in your array is now 5. The item formerly at the second index – your movie marathon – is gone. "Go on a walkabout" now occupies the second index.

Figure 9.2 Checking the Quick Look



Having spent last weekend on a movie marathon, you decide to go out this weekend. You are at a party, and the topic of bucket lists comes up. As you begin to share your ambitious goals, the crowd's collective jaw starts to drop. "Just how many things do you want to do?" someone gasps.

No problem! It is easy to find the number of items in an array. Arrays keep track of the number of items in them via the **count** property. Use this property to print the number of bucket list items you have to the console.

Listing 9.8 Counting items in the array

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
bucketList.append("Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day")
bucketList.append("Go on a walkabout")
bucketList.append("Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole")
bucketList.append("Find a triple rainbow")
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
bucketList
print(bucketList.count)
```

“Five,” the crowd gasps. “That is a lot of things to do!” The party is winding down, and everyone needs to go home and rethink their personal bucket lists. They beg you to tell them just your top three. You can easily do this using subscripting, which allows you to access the values at specific indices in your array.

Listing 9.9 Subscripting to find your top three items

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
bucketList.append("Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day")
bucketList.append("Go on a walkabout")
bucketList.append("Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole")
bucketList.append("Find a triple rainbow")
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
bucketList
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
```

You have seen the subscripting bracket syntax (`[0...2]`) before. Notice that your first three items print to the console. (You can also use the same basic syntax to log a single item, such as `print(bucketList[2])`.)

Subscripting is a powerful feature. Say that during your conversation someone asks, “Where do you want to do your walkabout?” The question makes you realize that you need some specifics. After all, you do not want to go on a walkabout just *anywhere*. Only a walkabout in Australia will do. You can use subscripting to change an item at a particular index (or range of indices).

Listing 9.10 Subscripting to append new information

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
bucketList.append("Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day")
bucketList.append("Go on a walkabout")
```

```
bucketList.append("Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole")
bucketList.append("Find a triple rainbow")
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
bucketList
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
bucketList[2] += " in Australia"
bucketList
```

You use the `+=` addition and assignment operator to add some text to the item at index 2. This assignment works because the instance at index 2 is of the same type as the instance you added to it – "Go on a walkabout" and " in Australia" are both of the **String** type. Thus, you change the value at index 2 to be: "Go on a walkabout in Australia".

Thinking about all of these adventures has gotten you excited, and now you are having trouble sleeping. Reading usually helps you fall asleep, so you start to read about climbing Mt. Everest. You discover that it is pretty dangerous, so you decide to update your top bucket item with a slightly less ambitious goal.

Listing 9.11 Replacing an array item

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
bucketList.append("Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one da
bucketList.append("Go on a walkabout")
bucketList.append("Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole")
bucketList.append("Find a triple rainbow")
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
bucketList[2] += " in Australia"
bucketList[0] = "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro"
bucketList
```

There! That is better. Now your top bucket list item is safer, but still quite adventurous.

While you are now happy with the content of your bucket list, you might not be all that happy that you had to type `bucketList.append` five times. You think to yourself, “There has to be a better way!”

Then you remember something: “I know how to use loops! What if I made an array of all the bucket list items I want to add? Then I could loop through that array and use **append(_ :)** each time the loop iterates. I would only have to type `bucketList.append` one time!”

And this is exactly what you do.

Listing 9.12 Using a loop to append items from one array to another

```
import Cocoa
```

```

var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
bucketList.append("Fly hot air balloon to Fiji")
bucketList.append("Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day")
bucketList.append("Go on a walkabout")
bucketList.append("Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole")
bucketList.append("Find a triple rainbow")
var newItems = [
    "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji",
    "Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day",
    "Go on a walkabout",
    "Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole",
    "Find a triple rainbow"
]

for item in newItems {
    bucketList.append(item)
}
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
bucketList[2] += " in Australia"
bucketList[0] = "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro"
bucketList

```

You create an array for the bucket list items that you want to add, called `newItems`. Next, you make a `for - in` loop that iterates through each `item` in the array and appends it to your `bucketList`. You use the `item` variable in the local scope of the loop to append it to your `bucketList` array.

You are about to fall asleep, happy in how you have refactored your code to make it more concise and keep it just as expressive – but then a bolt of inspiration strikes.

“That is pretty good,” you think. “But I think I can do better. Maybe I can use the addition and assignment operator!” Indeed you can. Just as you can use `+=` to add one integer to another, you can use it to add one array to another.

Listing 9.13 Refactoring with the addition and assignment operator

```
import Cocoa
```

```

var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
var newItems = [
    "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji",
    "Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day",
    "Go on a walkabout",
    "Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole",

```

```

        "Find a triple rainbow"
    ]
}

for item in newItems {
    bucketList.append(item)
}
bucketList += newItems
bucketList
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
bucketList[2] += " in Australia"
bucketList[0] = "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro"
bucketList

```

The `+=` operator makes for an easy way to add your array of new items to your existing bucket list.

Finally, suppose you decide on a new goal – tobogganing across Alaska – that is more important than going on walkabout in Australia but less important than flying a hot air balloon to Fiji. Use the `insert(_:_at:)` function to add a new element to your array at a specified index.

Listing 9.14 Inserting a new ambition

```

import Cocoa

var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
var newItems = [
    "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji",
    "Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day",
    "Go on a walkabout",
    "Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole",
    "Find a triple rainbow"
]
bucketList += newItems
bucketList
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
bucketList[2] += " in Australia"
bucketList[0] = "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro"
bucketList.insert("Toboggan across Alaska", at: 2)
bucketList

```

The `insert(_:_at:)` function has two arguments. The first argument takes the instance to add to the array. (Recall that your array takes **String** instances.) The second argument takes

the index for where you would like to add the new element in the array.

With your list fully formed, you lay your head down and dream of flying hot air balloons to mountain islands.

Array Equality

The next morning you wake up and go to your neighborhood coffee shop. There, you meet a friend, named Myron, who had been at the party with you. Myron was inspired by your `bucketList` and decided to make his own bucket list modeled after yours. He went home after the party and wrote out all of your items, and now he wants to make sure that he got everything correct.

After updating Myron with the changes you made after the party, it is time to compare your arrays of bucket list items to ensure that they are the same. Use `==` to check for equality.

Listing 9.15 Checking two arrays for equality

```
import Cocoa

var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
var newItems = [
    "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji",
    "Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day"
    "Go on a walkabout",
    "Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole",
    "Find a triple rainbow"
]
bucketList += newItems
bucketList
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
bucketList[2] += " in Australia"
bucketList[0] = "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro"
bucketList.insert("Toboggan across Alaska", at: 2)
bucketList

var myronsList = [
    "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro",
    "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji",
    "Toboggan across Alaska",
    "Go on a walkabout in Australia",
    "Find a triple rainbow",
    "Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole"
]

let equal = (bucketList == myronsList)
```

Because the contents of both arrays are the same, you might expect `equal` to be set to true. Yet `equal` was determined to be false. Why?

Remember that arrays are ordered. That means two arrays that have the same values are not equal if the ordering is different, and `myronsList` places "Find a triple rainbow" higher than your list does. Put this goal at the end of `myronsList` to make the two lists equal.

Listing 9.16 Fixing `myronsList`

```
import Cocoa

var bucketList = ["Climb Mt. Everest"]
var newItems = [
    "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji",
    "Watch the Lord of the Rings trilogy in one day"
    "Go on a walkabout",
    "Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole",
    "Find a triple rainbow"
]
bucketList += newItems
bucketList
bucketList.remove(at: 2)
print(bucketList.count)
print(bucketList[0...2])
bucketList[2] += " in Australia"
bucketList[0] = "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro"
bucketList.insert("Toboggan across Alaska", at: 2)
bucketList

var myronsList = [
    "Climb Mt. Kilimanjaro",
    "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji",
    "Toboggan across Alaska",
    "Go on a walkabout in Australia",
    "Find a triple rainbow",
    "Scuba dive in the Great Blue Hole",
    "Find a triple rainbow"
]
let equal = (bucketList == myronsList)
```


Immutable Arrays

You have been doing a lot of tinkering with your bucket list array. But you can also create an array that cannot be changed, called an *immutable array*. Here is how.

Let's say you are making an application that allows users to keep track of the lunches they eat each week. Among other things, users will log what they ate and generate reports at a later time. You decide to put these meals in an immutable array to generate the reports. After all, it does not make sense to change last week's lunches after they have been eaten.

Create an immutable array and initialize it with a week's worth of lunches.

Listing 9.17 An immutable array

```
...
let lunches = [
    "Cheeseburger",
    "Veggie Pizza",
    "Chicken Caesar Salad",
    "Black Bean Burrito",
    "Falafel Wrap"
]
```

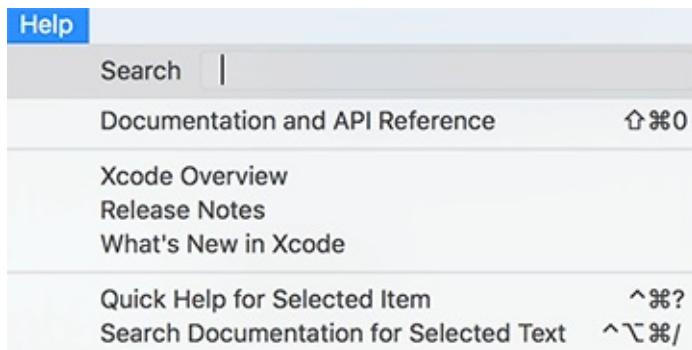
You use the `let` keyword to create an immutable array. If you were to try to modify the array in any way, the compiler would issue an error stating that you cannot mutate an immutable array. If you even try to reassign a new array to `lunches`, you would get an error from the compiler telling you that you cannot reassign an instance to a constant created via the `let` keyword.

Documentation

The documentation for any programming language is an indispensable resource, and Swift's is no exception.

Open the documentation that shipped with Xcode by clicking Help → Documentation and API Reference at the top ([Figure 9.3](#)).

Figure 9.3 Help menu



A new window will open. In the search bar at the top, type in “Array” and hit Return on your keyboard. This will open the documentation for Swift’s **Array** type, as in [Figure 9.4](#).

Figure 9.4 Opening the documentation

The screenshot shows the Swift Standard Library documentation for the **Array** type. The title bar says "Array". The navigation bar shows "Swift Standard Library > Array". The main content area has a sidebar with "Generic Structure" and a tree view showing "Array". The main content area starts with a definition: "An ordered, random-access collection." To the right, under "Language", it says "Swift". Below this is the "Overview" section, which contains text about arrays and examples of array literals. To the right of the overview is a "On This Page" sidebar with links to "Overview", "Symbols", "Relationships", and "See Also". At the bottom, there are two code snippets:

```
// An array of 'Int' elements
let oddNumbers = [1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15]

// An array of 'String' elements
let streets = ["Albemarle", "Brandywine", "Chesapeake"]
```

Take some time to explore the documentation for **Array**. Get to know the organization of the documentation to save yourself a lot of time in the future. You will be visiting these pages regularly.

Bronze Challenge

Look at the array below.

```
var toDoList = ["Take out garbage", "Pay bills", "Cross off fini
```

Use the documentation to locate a **var** defined on the **Array** type that will tell you whether **toDoList** contains any elements.

Silver Challenge

Enter the array from the bronze challenge in your playground. Use a loop to reverse the order of the elements of this array. Log the results to the console. Finally, examine the documentation to see if there is a more convenient way to do this operation.

Gold Challenge

You will often work with instances of **Array** via their indices. Consult the documentation to find a method on **Array** that will locate the index of "Fly hot air balloon to Fiji" in your **bucketList**. Beware: This method will return an **Index?** (i.e., an optional index). Unwrap that value and use it to compute the index that is two positions later in the array. Last, use this new index to find the **String** at that position within your **bucketList**.

Dictionaries

In the previous chapter, you became familiar with Swift's **Array** type. The **Array** type is a useful collection when the order of the elements in the collection is important.

But order is not always important. Sometimes you simply want to hold on to a set of information in a container and then retrieve the information as needed. That is what dictionaries are for.

A **Dictionary** is a collection type that organizes its content by *key-value* pairs. The keys in a dictionary map onto values. A key is like the ticket you give to the attendant at a coat check. You hand your ticket over, and the attendant uses it to find your coat. Similarly, you give a key to an instance of the **Dictionary** type, and it returns to you the value associated with that key.

The keys in a **Dictionary** must be unique. This requirement means that every key will uniquely map onto its value. To continue the coat check metaphor, a coat check might have several navy blue coats. So long as each coat has its own ticket, you can be sure that the attendant will be able to find *your* navy blue coat when you return with your ticket.

In this chapter, you will see how to:

- create and initialize a dictionary
- loop through dictionaries
- access and modify dictionaries via their keys

You will also learn more about keys and how they work, especially as they pertain to Swift. Last, you will see how to create arrays out of your dictionary's keys and values.

Creating a Dictionary

The general syntax to create a Swift dictionary is `var dict: Dictionary<Key, Value>`. This code creates a mutable instance of the **Dictionary** type called `dict`. The declarations for what types the dictionary's keys and values accept are inside the angle brackets (`<>`), denoted here by `Key` and `Value`.

The only requirement for Swift's **Dictionary** type's keys is that the key must be *hashable*: Each Key must provide a mechanism that allows **Dictionary** to guarantee that any given key is unique. Swift's basic types, such as **String**, **Int**, **Float**, **Double**, and **Bool**, are all hashable.

Before you begin typing code, let's take a look at the different ways you can get an instance of **Dictionary**.

```
var dict1: Dictionary<String, Double> = [:]
var dict2 = Dictionary<String, Double>()
var dict3: [String:Double] = [:]
var dict4 = [String:Double]()
```

Each of these four options yields the same result: a fully initialized instance of the **Dictionary** type with type information associated with its future keys and values. The Key is set to accept keys of the **String** type, and the Value is set to accept values of the **Double** type. In all four cases, the dictionary instance is empty: It has no keys and no values.

What is the difference between the `[:]` and the `()` syntax? They are essentially the same. They both create and prepare an instance of the **Dictionary** type. The `[:]` code uses the literal syntax to create an empty instance of the **Dictionary** type that will use the type information for its keys and values provided in its declaration. For example, `dict1` specifies its type and then is initialized to be an empty dictionary. The `()` syntax uses the default initializer for the **Dictionary** type, which will prepare an empty dictionary instance. You will see more about initializers later in this book.

It is useful to take advantage of Swift's type-inference capabilities. Type inference creates code that is more concise but just as expressive. Accordingly, you will stick with type inference in this chapter.

Populating a Dictionary

To get started, create a new playground called **Dictionary**. Declare a dictionary called **movieRatings** and use type inference to initialize it with some data.

Listing 10.1 Creating a dictionary

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var str = "Hello, playground"
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "I
```

You created a mutable dictionary using the **Dictionary** literal syntax. Your dictionary will hold movie ratings. Its keys are instances of the **String** type and represent individual movies. These keys map onto values that are instances of the **Int** type that represent individual ratings of the movies.

Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary

Now that you have a mutable dictionary, how do you work with it? You will want to read from and modify the dictionary. Begin by using `count` to get some useful information about your dictionary.

Listing 10.2 Using `count`

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")")
```

You should see in the console `I have rated 3 movies.`

Now let's read a value from the `movieRatings` dictionary.

Listing 10.3 Reading a value from the dictionary

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]
```

You access values from a dictionary by supplying the key associated with the value you would like to retrieve. In the example above, you supply the key `"Donnie Darko"` to the dictionary of movie ratings. `darkoRating` is now set to be equal to 4.

Option-click on the `darkoRating` instance to get more information ([Figure 10.1](#)).

Figure 10.1 Option-clicking `darkoRating`



Xcode tells you that its type is `Int?`, but `movieRatings` has type `[String: Int]`. Why the discrepancy? The **Dictionary** type needs a way to tell you that the value you asked for is not present. For example, you have not rated *Braveheart* yet, so `let braveheartRating = movieRatings["Braveheart"]` would result in `braveheartRating` having type `Int?` and

being set to nil.

You subscripted `movieRatings` above using brackets: `movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]`. This syntax asks the dictionary for the value associated with the **String** key "Donnie Darko". Whenever you subscript a **Dictionary** instance for a given key, the dictionary will return an optional matching the type of the **Dictionary**'s values. In this case, subscripting `movieRatings` for a given key will return an **Int?** (an optional **Int**).

Next, you will modify a value in your dictionary of movie ratings.

Listing 10.4 Modifying a value

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings
```

As you can see, the value associated with the key "Dark City" is now equal to 5.

There is another useful way to update values associated with a dictionary's keys: the **updateValue(_:forKey:)** method. It takes two arguments: `value: Value`, `forKey: Key`. The first argument, `value`, takes the new value. The second argument, `forKey`, specifies the key whose value you would like to change.

This method is useful because it gives you a handle on the last value to which the key mapped. There is one small caveat: **updateValue(_:forKey:)** returns an optional. This return type is handy because the key may not exist in the dictionary. Therefore, it is helpful to assign the return of the **updateValue(_:forKey:)** method to an optional of the type that you are expecting and use optional binding to gain access to the key's old value. Let's see this in action.

Listing 10.5 Updating a value

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings  
let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donnie Darko")  
if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
    print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentRating)")  
}
```

[Figure 10.2](#) shows the old and new values for *Donnie Darko*'s rating in the results sidebar.

Figure 10.2 The updated value

The screenshot shows a Mac OS X window titled "Ready | Today at 10:27 AM". The title bar includes standard window controls (red, yellow, green) and a "Dictionary" button. The main area is a "Playground" window with a toolbar containing icons for back, forward, and search. The code editor contains the following Swift code:

```
1 //: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
2
3 import Cocoa
4
5 var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "Dark City": 4]
6 print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")
7 let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]
8 movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5
9 movieRatings
10 let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donnie Darko")
11 if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"] {
12     print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentRating)")
13 }
```

The output pane shows the results of the code execution:

```
["Dark City": 4, "Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5]
"I have rated 3 movies.

4
5
["Dark City": 5, "Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5]
4
"Old rating: 4; current rating: 5"
```


Adding and Removing Values

Now that you have seen how to update a value, let's look at how you can update the key-value pairs in your dictionary by adding or removing a value. Begin by adding a value.

Listing 10.6 Adding a value

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings  
let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donni  
if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings[  
    print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentR  
}  
movieRatings["The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari"] = 5
```

Here, you add a new key-value pair to your dictionary using the syntax `movieRatings["The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari"] = 5`. You use the assignment operator to associate a value (in this case, 5) with the new key ("The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari").

Next, remove the entry for *Dark City*.

Listing 10.7 Removing a value

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings  
let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donni  
if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings[  
    print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentR  
}  
movieRatings["The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari"] = 5  
movieRatings.removeValue(forKey: "Dark City")
```

The method `removeValue(forKey:)` takes a key as an argument and removes the key-value pair that matches what you provide. Now, `movieRatings` has no entry for *Dark City*.

Additionally, this method returns the value the key was associated with, if the key is found and removed successfully. In the example above, you could have typed `let removedRating: Int? = movieRatings.removeValue(forKey: "Dark City")`. Because `removeValue(forKey:)` returns an optional of the type that was removed, `removedRating` is an optional `Int`.

Placing the old value in a variable or constant like this can be handy if you need to do something with the old value.

However, you do not have to assign the return value of this method to anything. If the key is found in the dictionary, then the key-value pair is removed regardless of whether you assign the old value to anything.

You can also remove a key-value pair by setting a key's value to `nil`.

Listing 10.8 Setting the key's value to `nil`

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings  
let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donni  
if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings[  
    print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentR  
}  
movieRatings["The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari"] = 5  
movieRatings.removeValue(forKey: "Dark City")  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = nil
```

The result is essentially the same, but this strategy does not return the removed key's value.

Looping

You can use `for-in` to loop through a dictionary. Swift's **Dictionary** type provides a convenient mechanism to loop through the key-value pairs for each entry. This mechanism breaks each entry into its constituent parts by providing temporary constants representing the key and the value. These constants are placed within a tuple that the `for-in` loop can access inside of its body.

Listing 10.9 Looping through your dictionary

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings  
let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donni  
if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings[  
    print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentR  
}  
movieRatings["The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari"] = 5  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = nil  
for (key, value) in movieRatings {  
    print("The movie \(key) was rated \(value).")  
}
```

Notice how you use string interpolation to combine the values of `key` and `value` into a single string. You should see that each movie and its rating was logged to the console.

You do not have to access both the key and the value of each entry. A **Dictionary** has properties for its `keys` and `values` that can be accessed separately if you only need the information from one.

Listing 10.10 Just the keys, please

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings  
let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donni  
if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings[  
    print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentR  
}  
movieRatings["The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari"] = 5
```

```
movieRatings["Dark City"] = nil
for (key, value) in movieRatings {
    print("The movie \u2028(key) was rated \u2028(value).")
}
for movie in movieRatings.keys {
    print("User has rated \u2028(movie).")
}
```

This new loop iterates through `movieRatings`'s keys and logs each movie the user has rated to the console.

Immutable Dictionaries

Creating an immutable dictionary works much the same as creating an immutable array. You use the `let` keyword to tell the Swift compiler that you do not want your instance of **Dictionary** to change. Create an immutable dictionary that lists the track names of a short fictional album along with each track's length in seconds.

Listing 10.11 Creating an immutable dictionary

```
...
let album = ["Diet Roast Beef": 268,
             "Dubba Dubbs Stubs His Toe": 467,
             "Smokey's Carpet Cleaning Service": 187,
             "Track 4": 221]
```

The track names are the keys and the track lengths are the values. If you try to change this dictionary, the compiler will give you an error and prevent the change. (Go ahead and try it!)

Translating a Dictionary to an Array

Sometimes it is helpful to pull information out of a dictionary and put it into an array. Suppose, for example, that you want to list all of the movies that have been rated (without their ratings).

In this case, it makes sense to create an instance of the **Array** type with the keys from your dictionary.

Listing 10.12 Sending keys to an array

```
import Cocoa
```

```
var movieRatings = ["Donnie Darko": 4, "Chungking Express": 5, "  
print("I have rated \(movieRatings.count) movies.")  
let darkoRating = movieRatings["Donnie Darko"]  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = 5  
movieRatings  
let oldRating: Int? = movieRatings.updateValue(5, forKey: "Donni  
if let lastRating = oldRating, let currentRating = movieRatings[  
    print("Old rating: \(lastRating); current rating: \(currentR  
}  
movieRatings["The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari"] = 5  
movieRatings["Dark City"] = nil  
for (key, value) in movieRatings {  
    print("The movie \(key) was rated \(value).")  
}  
for movie in movieRatings.keys {  
    print("User has rated \(movie).")  
}  
let watchedMovies = Array(movieRatings.keys)  
...
```

You use the `Array()` syntax to create a new **[String]** instance. Inside the `()`, you pass in the dictionary's keys. The result is that `watchedMovies` is a constant instance of the **Array** type representing all of the movies a user has in the `movieRatings` dictionary.

Silver Challenge

It is not uncommon to place instances of the **Array** type inside of a dictionary. Create a dictionary that represents a state. Your dictionary's keys will refer to counties (to keep it short, only include three counties). Each key should map onto an array that holds five of the zip codes within that county. (You can make up the county names and zip codes.)

Finally, log only the dictionary's zip codes. Your result should look something like the output below. Note that we are formatting the zip codes so that they do not overflow the page. Your zip codes may appear in a single line.

Georgia has the following zip codes: [30306, 30307, 30308, 30309
30311, 30312, 30313, 30314,
30301, 30302, 30303, 30304,

Gold Challenge

Repeat the silver challenge, but this time make sure that the formatting above matches what you print to the console. You may need to search the documentation for how to represent special characters in **String** literals (e.g., how do you represent a newline in a **String**?). You will also want to look at the documentation for the **print()** function to use a new parameter called `terminator`. This parameter defaults to printing a new line after each **String** logged to the console, but you will want to do something else.

There are many ways to solve this challenge, but one way would be to print a **String** with a certain number of empty spaces (it is up to you to figure out how many!) when you print specific zip codes.

11

Sets

Swift provides a third collection type called **Set**. **Set** is not frequently used, purely by convention, but we do not think that this should be the case. This chapter will introduce **Set** and show off some of its unique advantages.

What Is a Set?

A **Set** is an unordered collection of distinct instances. This definition sets it apart from an **Array**, which is ordered and can accommodate repeated values. For example, an array could have the content [2, 2, 2, 2], but a set cannot.

A **Set** has some similarities to a **Dictionary**, but it is also a little different. Like a dictionary, a set's values are unordered within the collection. Similar to the requirement that a dictionary's keys must be unique, **Set** does not allow repeated values. To ensure that elements are unique, **Set** requires that its elements conform to the protocol **Hashable**, as a dictionary's keys do. However, while dictionary values are accessed via their corresponding key, a set only stores individual elements, not key-value pairs.

[Table 11.1](#) summarizes this information.

Table 11.1 Comparing Swift's collections

Collection Type	Ordered?	Unique?	Stores
Array	Yes	No	Elements
Dictionary	No	Keys	Key-value pairs
Set	No	Elements	Elements

Getting a Set

It is time to make an instance of **Set**. Create a new playground called **Groceries**.

Type in the following to get an instance of **Set**.

Listing 11.1 Creating a set

```
import Cocoa  
  
var str = "Hello, playground"
```

```
var groceryBag = Set<String>()
```

You made an instance of **Set** and declared that it will hold instances of the **String** type. It is a mutable **Set** called **groceryBag** and is currently empty. Let's fix that.

You can add groceries to your **groceryBag** using the **insert(_:)** method.

Listing 11.2 Adding to a set

```
...  
var groceryBag = Set<String>()  
groceryBag.insert("Apples")  
groceryBag.insert("Oranges")  
groceryBag.insert("Pineapple")
```

You may notice that the results sidebar shows something like `(.0 true, .1 "Apples")` for every line where you insert a fruit into your **groceryBag**. This is because **insert(_:)** returns a tuple, `(inserted: Bool, memberAfterInsert: Element)`. (Option-click on **insert(_:)** to verify this).

The `true` you see in the sidebar is the Boolean indicating whether the instance was successfully inserted into the set. The type **Element** refers to the type of the instance you inserted into the set, which also must match the type of the elements the set stores. **Element** is a generic parameter, and you will learn more about these in [Chapter 22](#). For now, all you need to know is that it is a way for the compiler to ensure that the type passed to **insert(_:)** matches the type of the elements within the set.

Now **groceryBag** has a few items inside of it. As with arrays and dictionaries, you can loop through a set to see its contents.

Listing 11.3 Looping through a set

```
...  
var groceryBag = Set<String>()  
groceryBag.insert("Apples")  
groceryBag.insert("Oranges")  
groceryBag.insert("Pineapple")
```

```
for food in groceryBag {
```

```
    print(food)
}
```

Each item in your `groceryBag` is logged to the console.

As of Swift 3.0, **Set** does not have its own literal syntax. Nonetheless, you can still create a **Set** with a more convenient syntax than what you just used if you already know the instances you would like to add to the **Set** instance when you create it. Refactor your code as shown.

Listing 11.4 Creating a set, redux

```
...
var groceryBag = Set<String>(["Apples", "Oranges", "Pineapple"])
groceryBag.insert("Apples")
groceryBag.insert("Oranges")
groceryBag.insert("Pineapple")

for food in groceryBag {
    print(food)
}
```

You used an initializer on **Set** to create a **Set** instance from an **Array** instance (you will learn more about initializers in [Chapter 17](#)). Thus, you no longer need the three calls to the `insert(_:_)` method.

Sets provide another convenient syntax to create an instance. This syntax combines declaring the instance to be of the **Set** type with the **Array**'s literal syntax. To see this, replace the new code in [Listing 11.4](#) with the example below.

```
...
var groceryBag = Set(["Apples", "Oranges", "Pineapple"])
var groceryBag: Set = ["Apples", "Oranges", "Pineapple"]

for food in groceryBag {
    print(food)
}
```

This code explicitly declares `groceryBag` to be of the **Set** type, which means that we can use the **Array** literal syntax to create an instance of **Set**.

Working with Sets

Now that you have an instance of **Set**, you might be wondering how to work with the elements inside of it. For example, you might want to know if your `groceryBag` contains a particular item. The **Set** type provides a method called `contains(_:_)` that looks inside of a set instance for a particular item.

Listing 11.5 Has bananas?

```
...
var groceryBag: Set = ["Apples", "Oranges", "Pineapple"]

for food in groceryBag {
    print(food)
}

let hasBananas = groceryBag.contains("Bananas")
```

The value of `hasBananas` is `false`; your `groceryBag` does not have any bananas inside of it.

Unions

Imagine that you are wandering around the grocery store and you bump into a friend. You get to talking, and your friend suggests that you do your shopping together. Taking a peek into her shopping cart, you see that she has a bunch of bananas. Because you were looking for bananas to complete the recipe for your famous fruit salad, you decide to combine your grocery bags.

Listing 11.6 Combining sets

```
...
var groceryBag: Set = ["Apples", "Oranges", "Pineapple"]

for food in groceryBag {
    print(food)
}

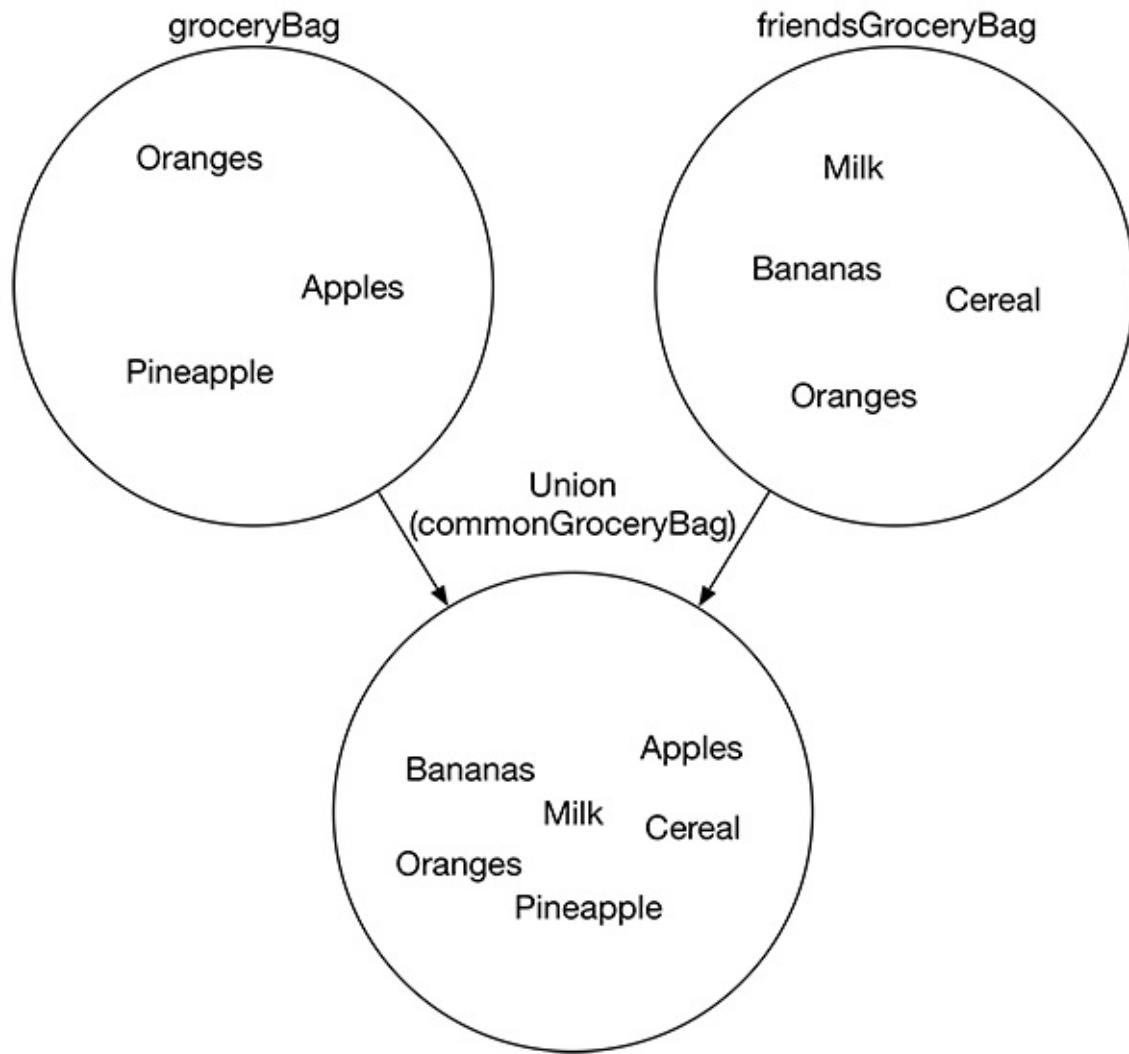
let hasBananas = groceryBag.contains("Bananas")
let friendsGroceryBag = Set(["Bananas", "Cereal", "Milk", "Orange"])
let commonGroceryBag = groceryBag.union(friendsGroceryBag)
```

You add a new constant **Set** instance representing your friend's grocery bag and use the `union(_:_)` method to combine the two sets together. `union(_:_)` is a method on the **Set** type that takes an argument that expects a **Sequence** (which is a protocol that you will learn more about in [Chapter 22](#)) and returns a new **Set** instance that includes the unique elements

of both collections. In short, you can pass arrays and sets to **union(_:_)** and get back a set with their combined elements, less any duplicates.

Here, `commonGroceryBag` is a **Set** that contains the unique elements of both `groceryBag` and `friendsGroceryBag`. [Figure 11.1](#) demonstrates the union of the two sets graphically.

Figure 11.1 Union of two sets



Intersections

You and your friend finish grocery shopping and head to your house to make your famous fruit salad. When you get home, you find that your roommate also just got back from the grocery store. It turns out that your roommate also wants to make fruit salad, so you compare your grocery bags to figure out which items are duplicated and can be returned to the grocery store.

Listing 11.7 Intersecting sets

```
...  
var groceryBag: Set = ["Apples", "Oranges", "Pineapple"]
```

```

for food in groceryBag {
    print(food)
}

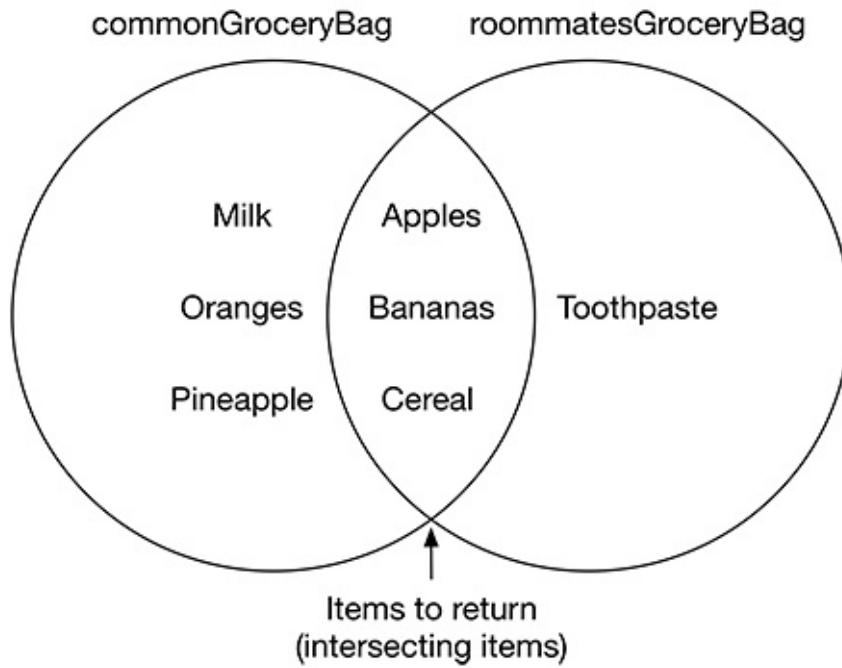
let hasBananas = groceryBag.contains("Bananas")
let friendsGroceryBag = Set(["Bananas", "Cereal", "Milk", "Orang
let commonGroceryBag = groceryBag.union(friendsGroceryBag)

let roommatesGroceryBag = Set(["Apples", "Bananas", "Cereal", "T
let itemsToReturn = commonGroceryBag.intersection(roommatesGrocer

```

Set provides an **intersection(_:_)** method that identifies the items that are present in both collections and returns those duplicated items in a new **Set** instance. [Figure 11.2](#) shows this relationship graphically. Your roommate's grocery bag duplicates several of your items – but not all of them.

Figure 11.2 Intersecting sets



Disjoint

You have seen how to combine two sets into a new, all-inclusive set via the **union(_:_)** method. You also used the **intersection(_:_)** method to find the common elements of two sets and place them into a new set. What if you want to know whether two sets contain any common elements?

Consider, for example, that you and your roommate realize that you both forgot several ingredients for your famous fruit salad. You leave your friend to start chopping, and you and your roommate go back to the store to pick up the final items (and return the duplicates). Your

plan at the store is to split up and find different items to make the trip as quick as possible. Wouldn't it be nice if you could reconvene at the checkout and compare your carts quickly to make sure nothing is duplicated? Swift's **Set** type has a convenient method to help you.

Listing 11.8 Detecting intersections in sets

```
...
var groceryBag: Set = ["Apples", "Oranges", "Pineapple"]

for food in groceryBag {
    print(food)
}

let hasBananas = groceryBag.contains("Bananas")
let friendsGroceryBag = Set(["Bananas", "Cereal", "Milk", "Orange"])
let commonGroceryBag = groceryBag.union(friendsGroceryBag)

let roommatesGroceryBag = Set(["Apples", "Bananas", "Cereal", "Tomatoes"])
let itemsToReturn = commonGroceryBag.intersection(roommatesGroceryBag)

let yourSecondBag = Set(["Berries", "Yogurt"])
let roommatesSecondBag = Set(["Grapes", "Honey"])
let disjoint = yourSecondBag.isDisjoint(with: roommatesSecondBag)
```

You decided to pick up the berries and yogurt, and your roommate got the grapes and honey. The two of you meet at the register and check your carts to make sure nothing is repeated.

Set's **isDisjoint(with:)** method returns true or false depending on whether any

members of the set (here, `yourSecondBag`) are in the sequence provided to

isDisjoint's argument (here, `roommatesSecondBag`).

In this case, `disjoint` will be `true`. The two sets, or grocery bags, do not share any items. You and your roommate are ready to check out and go home to make your fruit salad.

Bronze Challenge

Consider the following code that models the cities two people have visited as sets.

```
let myCities = Set(["Atlanta", "Chicago",
                    "Jacksonville", "New York", "San Francisco"])
let yourCities = Set(["Chicago", "San Francisco", "Jacksonville"])
```

Find a method on **Set** that returns a **Bool** indicating whether `myCities` contains all of the cities contained by `yourCities`. (Hint: This relationship would make `myCities` a *superset* of `yourCities`.)

Silver Challenge

In this chapter, you used methods like `union(_:)` and `intersection(_:)` to create new sets. Sometimes, however, you may not want to create new instances, but rather to modify the existing instances in place. Look through the documentation and find the appropriate methods on the `Set` type. Rework the examples in the chapter for `union(_:)` and `intersection(_:)` to use these methods.

Functions

A function is a named set of code that is used to accomplish some specific task. The function's name describes the task the function performs. You have already used some functions, such as `print()`, which is a function provided to you by Swift. Other functions are created in code you write.

Functions execute code. Some functions define *arguments* that you can use to pass in data to help the function do its work. Some functions *return* something after they have completed their work. You might think of a function as a little machine. You turn it on and it chugs along, doing its work. You can feed it data and, if it is built to do so, it will return a new chunk of data that results from its work.

Functions are an extremely important part of programming. Indeed, a program is mostly a collection of related functions that combine to accomplish some sort of functionality.

Accordingly, there is a lot to cover in this chapter. Take your time and make sure that you are comfortable with each new concept before moving on.

Let's start with some examples.

A Basic Function

Create a new playground called **Functions** and enter the code below.

Listing 12.1 Defining a function

```
import Cocoa  
  
var str = "Hello, playground"  
  
func printGreeting() {  
    print("Hello, playground.")  
}  
printGreeting()
```

Here, you define a function with the **func** keyword followed by the name of the function: **printGreeting()**. The parentheses are empty because this function does not take any arguments. (More on arguments soon.)

The opening brace (**{**) denotes the beginning of the function's implementation. This is where you write the code that describes how the function will perform its work. When the function is called, the code inside the braces is executed.

The **printGreeting()** function is fairly simple. You have one line of code that uses **print()** to log the string `Hello, playground.` to the console.

Finally, you *call* the function to execute the code inside of it. To do this, you enter its name, **printGreeting()**. Calling the function executes its code, and `Hello, playground.` is logged to the console.

Now that you have written and executed a simple function, it is time to graduate to more sophisticated varieties.

Function Parameters

Functions begin to take on more life when they have *parameters*. You use parameters to give a function some inputs. We call these parts of a function “parameters” to indicate that they can change value depending on the data the caller passes into the function. The function takes the data passed to its parameters to execute a task or produce a result.

Create a function that prints a more personal greeting by using a parameter.

Listing 12.2 Using a parameter

```
import Cocoa
```

```
func printGreeting() {  
    print("Hello, playground.")  
}  
printGreeting()  
  
func printPersonalGreeting(name: String) {  
    print("Hello \(name), welcome to your playground.")  
}  
printPersonalGreeting(name: "Matt")
```

printPersonalGreeting(name:) takes a single argument, as indicated in the parentheses directly after the function name. An *argument* is the value a caller gives to a function’s parameter. In this case, the function has a parameter called `name` that is an instance of the **String** type. You specify the type for `name` after the `:` that follows the parameter’s name, just as you specify the types of variables and constants.

As a quick aside, although the terms *parameter* and *argument* technically have different meanings, they are used interchangeably by some. Also, you may be wondering why we wrote **printPersonalGreeting(name:)** with `name:` inside of the parentheses. This signifies that **printPersonalGreeting(name:)** has one parameter whose name is used when calling the function, as in `printPersonalGreeting(name: "Matt")`. `name` must be used when the function is called. You will learn more about parameter visibility below.

If the argument passed to the parameter `name` is an instance of **String**, it will be interpolated into the string that is logged to the console. Check it out. Your console should say something like `Hello Matt, welcome to your playground.`

If you happened to pass an argument that was not of the **String** type, the compiler would give you an error telling you that the type you passed in is incorrect. This behavior is useful; it lets you know what your inputs will look like when you are writing the implementations of your functions.

Functions can – and often do – take multiple arguments. Make a new function that does a little math.

Listing 12.3 A function for division

```

...
func printPersonalGreeting(name: String) {
    print("Hello \u{0027}(name), welcome to your playground.")
}
printPersonalGreeting(name: "Matt")

func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double, denominator: Double) {
    print("\u{0027}(numerator) divided by \u{0027}(denominator) equals \u{0027}(numerator / denominator)")
}
divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0)

```

The function **divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator:)** describes some basic division constructed from the instances of the **Double** type that you supply to the function's two parameters: **numerator** and **denominator**. Note that you did some math within the `\()` of the string printed to the console. You should see `9.0 divided by 3.0 equals 3.0` logged to the console.

Parameter names

A function's parameters have names. For example, the function

divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator:) has two parameters with the parameter names **numerator** and **denominator**. You referenced both parameter names when you used **divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator:)**. This is because all parameter names are used by default when you call a function.

Sometimes it is useful to have different parameter names visible outside of your function's body. This means that you will use one name for a parameter when you call the function and a different name within the function's body. These parameters are called *external* parameters.

External parameters can make your functions more readable – provided you choose the names well. At the moment, the visible parameter name when you call **printPersonalGreeting(name:)** is informative, but it is not very readable. You should typically aim for your code to read like something you might say while speaking.

Writing your code this way will make it easier to follow. For example, if a function is going to be used in some other file in your application's code base, and the function's implementation is not immediately visible or intuitive, it could be difficult to infer what values to give to the function's parameters. This would make the function less useful, so it can be helpful to use more descriptive external parameter names in your function.

Update **printPersonalGreeting(name:)** to have an external parameter name that is different from the function's internal parameter name to make calling the function more readable.

Listing 12.4 Using explicit parameter names

...

```

func printPersonalGreeting(name: String) {
    print("Hello \(name), welcome to your playground.")
}
printPersonalGreeting(name: "Matt")

func printPersonalGreeting(to name: String) {
    print("Hello \(name), welcome to your playground.")
}
printPersonalGreeting(to: "Matt")

func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double, denominator: Double) {
    print("\(numerator) divided by \(denominator) equals \(numerator / denominator)")
}
divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0)

```

Now **printPersonalGreeting(to:)** has an external parameter, `to`. This parameter helps the function read more like you would speak: “Print personal greeting to Matt.” You still need to use `name` within the function’s definition. This is actually good; `name` has clearer meaning within the implementation of the function than does `to`. It would be a little confusing to type `print("Hello \(to), welcome to your playground.")` in **printPersonalGreeting**’s implementation.

You probably noticed that there is a preposition at the end of **divisionDescriptionFor**. Why is there a preposition at the end of this function when the preposition is located *inside* of **printPersonalGreeting(to:)**? The answer is that the Swift naming guidelines suggest that if a function has multiple parameters that formulate a single concept, then the preposition should be placed at the end of the function name. This is the case with **divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator)**, because a numerator and a denominator combine to form a fraction. On the other hand, **printPersonalGreeting(to:)** does not have multiple parameters, so the preposition should be placed within the parentheses as an external parameter name.

Naming functions and parameters can be tricky, and it is more art than science. It is advisable to choose function and parameter names that are readable and informative. You should also strive to formulate grammatical phrases with your code. Last, you should always consider how easy it is to type out and call your functions.

Variadic parameters

A *variadic* parameter takes zero or more input values for its argument. A function can have only one variadic parameter, and it should typically be the final parameter in the list. The values provided to the argument are made available within the function’s body as an array.

To make a variadic parameter, use three periods after the parameter’s type: e.g., `names: String....` In this example, `names` is available within the function’s body and has the type

[String].

Update your **printPersonalGreeting(to:)** function to have a variadic parameter.

Listing 12.5 Greeting a group

```
...
func printPersonalGreeting(to name: String) {
    print("Hello \(name), welcome to your playground.")
}
printPersonalGreeting(to: "Matt")

func printPersonalGreetings(to names: String...) {
    for name in names {
        print("Hello \(name), welcome to the playground.")
    }
}
printPersonalGreetings(to: "Alex", "Chris", "Drew", "Pat")
...
```

Now the **printPersonalGreeting(to:)** function is replaced with a plural version, **printPersonalGreetings(to:)**. Check the console. You should see that the function logged a personal greeting for each name that was supplied to the variadic parameter ([Figure 12.1](#)).

Figure 12.1 Multiple greetings



The screenshot shows an Xcode playground window titled "Ready | Today at 11:23 AM". The code editor contains the following Swift code:

```
//: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
import Cocoa

func printGreeting() {
    print("Hello, playground")
}

printGreeting()

func printPersonalGreetings(to names: String...) {
    for name in names {
        print("Hello \(name), welcome to the playground.")
    }
}

printPersonalGreetings(to: "Alex", "Chris", "Drew", "Pat")

func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double, denominator: Double) {
    print("\(numerator) divided by \(denominator) equals \(numerator / denominator)")
}

divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0)
```

The playground output pane shows the results of the code execution:

```
Hello, playground
Hello Alex, welcome to the playground.
Hello Chris, welcome to the playground.
Hello Drew, welcome to the playground.
Hello Pat, welcome to the playground.
9.0 divided by 3.0 equals 3.0
```

Default parameter values

Swift's parameters can take default values. Default values should be placed at the end of the function's parameter list. If a parameter has a default value, you can omit that argument when calling the function (in which case, as you might expect, the function will use the parameter's default value).

Let's see a default parameter value in action in your division function. (Note that we have broken the call to **print()** across two lines to make it fit on the page. You should enter it on one line.)

Listing 12.6 Adding a default parameter value

```
...
func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double, denominator: Double
    print("\(numerator) divided by \(denominator) equals \(numera
}
divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0)
func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double,
                           denominator: Double,
                           punctuation: String =
    print("\(numerator) divided by \(denominator) equals
          \(numerator / denominator)\(punctuation)")
}
divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0)
divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0, withPunc
```

Now the function has three parameters:

divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator:withPunctuation:).

Notice the new code, `punctuation: String = ".")`. You add a new parameter for punctuation, including its expected type, and also give it a default value via the `= "..."` syntax. This means that the string created by the function will conclude with a period by default.

Your two function calls illustrate how the default value works. To use the default, as in your first function call, you can simply omit the final parameter. Or, as in your second function call, you can substitute a new punctuation mark for the default value by passing in a new argument. The first call of the

divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator:withPunctuation:)

function logs the description with a period, and the second logs the description with an exclamation point ([Figure 12.2](#)).

Figure 12.2 Default and explicit punctuation

The screenshot shows an Xcode playground window titled "Functions". The code in the editor is:

```
1 //: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
2
3 import Cocoa
4
5 func printGreeting() {
6     print("Hello, playground")
7 }
8 printGreeting()
9
10 func printPersonalGreetings(to names: String...) {
11     for name in names {
12         print("Hello \(name), welcome to the playground.")
13     }
14 }
15 printPersonalGreetings(to: "Alex", "Chris", "Drew", "Pat")
16
17 func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double,
18                             denominator: Double,
19                             withPunctuation punctuation: String = ".") {
20     print("\(numerator) divided by \(denominator) equals \(numerator / denominator)\(punctuation)")
21 }
22 divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0)
23 divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0, withPunctuation: "!")
```

The output pane shows the results of running the code:

```
Hello, playground
Hello Alex, welcome to the playground.
Hello Chris, welcome to the playground.
Hello Drew, welcome to the playground.
Hello Pat, welcome to the playground.
9.0 divided by 3.0 equals 3.0.
9.0 divided by 3.0 equals 3.0!
```

In-out parameters

Sometimes there is a reason to have a function modify the value of an argument. *In-out parameters* allow a function's impact on a variable to live beyond the function's body. There are a couple of caveats: First, in-out parameters cannot have default values. Second, variadic parameters cannot be marked with `inout`.

Say you have a function that will take an error message as an argument and will append some information based on certain conditions. Enter this code in your playground.

Listing 12.7 An in-out parameter

```
...
var error = "The request failed."
func appendErrorCode(_ code: Int, toErrorString errorString: inout
    if code == 400 {
        errorString += " bad request."
    }
}
appendErrorCode(400, toErrorString: &error)
error
```

The function `appendErrorCode(_ :toErrorString:)` has two parameters. The first is the error code that the function will compare against, which expects an instance of `Int`. Notice that you gave this parameter an external name of `_`, which has a special meaning in Swift. Using a `_` in front of a parameter name will suppress the external name when calling the function. Because its name is added at the end of the function name, there is no reason for

the parameter name to be used in the call.

The second is an `inout` parameter – denoted by the `inout` keyword – named `toErrorString`. This parameter expects an instance of **String**. `toErrorString` is an external parameter name used when calling the function, while `errorString` is an internal parameter name used within the function.

`inout` is added prior to **String** to express that the function expects a specific kind of **String**. That is, it needs an `inout` **String**. When you use the function, the variable you pass into the `inout` parameter is preceded by an ampersand (&). This indicates that the variable will be modified by the function. Here, the `errorString` is modified to read, `The request failed: bad request`, which you should see displayed in the results sidebar.

In-out parameters are not the same as a function returning a value. If you want your function to produce something, there is a more elegant way to accomplish that goal.

Returning from a Function

Functions can give you information after they finish executing the code inside of their implementation. This information is called the *return* of the function. It is often the case that you write a function to do some work and return some data. Make your **divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator:withPunctuation:)** function return an instance of the **String** type.

Listing 12.8 Returning a string

```
...
func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double,
                            denominator: Double,
                            withPunctuation punctuation: String =
    print("\(numerator) divided by \(denominator) equals
          \(numerator / denominator)\(punctuation)\")
}
divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0)
divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0, denominator: 3.0, withPunc
func divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: Double,
                            denominator: Double,
                            withPunctuation punctuation: String =
    return "\(numerator) divided by \(denominator) equals
          \(numerator / denominator)\(punctuation)"
}
print(divisionDescriptionFor(numerator: 9.0,
                            denominator: 3.0,
                            withPunctuation: "!"))
...
```

The behavior of this new function is very similar to your earlier implementation with an important twist: This new implementation returns a value. This return value is denoted by the `-> String` syntax, which indicates that the function will return an instance of the specified type. Because you want to log a string to the console, your function returns an instance of the **String** type. The details of the string to be returned are inside the body of the function.

Because

divisionDescriptionFor(numerator:denominator:withPunctuation:) returns a **String** and **print()** expects to take a **String** argument, you can call your division function within a call to **print()** to log the string instance to the console.

Nested Functions and Scope

Swift's function definitions can be nested. Nested functions are declared and implemented within the definition of another function. The nested function is not available outside of the enclosing function. This feature is useful when you need a function to do some work, but only within another function. Let's look at an example.

Listing 12.9 Nested functions

```
...
func areaOfTriangleWith(base: Double, height: Double) -> Double {
    let numerator = base * height
    func divide() -> Double {
        return numerator / 2
    }
    return divide()
}
areaOfTriangleWith(base: 3.0, height: 5.0)
```

The function **areaOfTriangleWith(base:height:)** takes two arguments of type **Double**: a **base** and a **height**. It also returns a **Double**. Inside of this function's implementation, you declare and implement another function called **divide()**. This function takes no arguments and returns a **Double**. The **areaOfTriangleWith(base:height:)** function calls the **divide()** function and returns the result.

The **divide()** function above makes use of a constant called **numerator** that is defined in **areaOfTriangleWith(base:height:)**. Why does this work?

The constant is defined within the **divide()** function's enclosing *scope*. Anything within a function's braces (`{}`) is said to be enclosed by that function's scope. In this case, both the **numerator** constant and the **divide()** function are enclosed by the scope of **areaOfTriangle(withBase:andHeight:)**.

A function's scope describes the visibility an instance or function will have. It is a sort of horizon. Anything defined within a function's scope will be visible to that function; anything that is not is past that function's field of vision. **numerator** is visible to the **divide()** function because they share the same enclosing scope.

On the other hand, because the **divide()** function is defined within **areaOfTriangleWith(base:height:)** function's scope, it is not visible outside of it. The compiler will give you an error if you try to call **divide()** outside of the enclosing function. Give it a try to see the error.

divide() is a very simple function. Indeed, **areaOfTriangleWith(base:height:)** could achieve the same result without it: `return (base * height) / 2`. The important lesson to focus on here is how scope works. You will see a more sophisticated example of nested functions in [Chapter 13](#). Stay tuned!

Multiple Returns

Functions can return more than one value. To do this, Swift uses the tuple data type, which you learned about in [Chapter 5](#). Recall that a tuple is an ordered list of related values. To better understand how to use tuples, you are going to make a function that takes an array of integers and sorts them into arrays for even and odd integers.

Listing 12.10 Sorting evens and odds

```
...
func sortedEvenOddNumbers(_ numbers: [Int]) -> (evens: [Int], odds: [Int])
{
    var evens = [Int]()
    var odds = [Int]()
    for number in numbers {
        if number % 2 == 0 {
            evens.append(number)
        } else {
            odds.append(number)
        }
    }
    return (evens, odds)
}
```

Here, you first declare a function called **sortedEvenOddNumbers(_ :)**. You specify this function to take an array of integers as its only argument. The function returns what is called a *named tuple*. You can tell that the tuple is named because its constituent parts are named: **evens** will be an array of integers, and **odds** will also be an array of integers.

Next, inside the implementation of the function, you initialize the **evens** and **odds** arrays to prepare them to store their respective integers. You then loop through the array of integers provided to the function's parameter, **numbers**. At each iteration through the loop, you use the `%` operator to see whether **number** is even. If the result is even, you append it to the **evens** array. If the result is not even, the integer is added to the **odds** array.

Now that your function is set up, call it and pass it an array of integers.

Listing 12.11 Calling sortedEvenOddNumbers(_ :)

```
...
func sortedEvenOddNumbers(_ numbers: [Int]) -> (evens: [Int], odds: [Int])
{
    var evens = [Int]()
    var odds = [Int]()
    for number in numbers {
        if number % 2 == 0 {
            evens.append(number)
        } else {
            odds.append(number)
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }
    return (evens, odds)
}

let aBunchOfNumbers = [10, 1, 4, 3, 57, 43, 84, 27, 156, 111]
let theSortedNumbers = sortedEvenOddNumbers(aBunchOfNumbers)
print("The even numbers are: \(theSortedNumbers.evens);
      the odd numbers are: \(theSortedNumbers.odds)")
```

First, you create an instance of the **Array** type to house a number of integers. Second, you give that array to the **sortedEvenOddNumbers(_ :)** function and assign the return value to a constant called **theSortedNumbers**. Because the return value is specified above as **(evens: [Int], odds: [Int])**, this is the type the compiler infers for your newly created constant. Finally, you log the result to the console.

Notice that you use string interpolation in combination with a tuple. You can access a tuple's members by name if they are defined. For example, **theSortedNumbers.evens** inserts the contents of the **evens** array into the string logged to the console. Your console output should be **The even numbers are: [10, 4, 84, 156]; the odd numbers are: [1, 3, 57, 43, 27, 111]**.

Optional Return Types

Sometimes you want a function to return an optional. When a function will sometimes need to return `nil` but will have a value to return at other times, Swift allows you to use an optional return.

Imagine, for example, that you need a function that looks at a person's full name and pulls out and returns that person's middle name. Not all people have a middle name, so your function will need a mechanism to return the person's middle name if there is one and return `nil` otherwise. Use an optional to do just that.

Listing 12.12 Using an optional return

```
...
func grabMiddleName(fromFullName name: (String, String?, String))
    return name.1
}

let middleName = grabMiddleName(fromFullName: ("Matt", nil, "Mathias"))
if let theName = middleName {
    print(theName)
}
```

Here, you create a function called `grabMiddleName(fromFullName:)`. This function looks a little different than what you have seen before. It takes one argument: a tuple of type `(String, String?, String)`. The tuple's three **String** instances are for the first, middle, and last names, and the instance for the middle name is declared as an optional type.

The `grabMiddleName(fromFullName:)` function's one parameter is called `name`, which has an external parameter name called `fromFullName`. You access this parameter inside the implementation of the function using the index of the name that you want to return. Because the tuple is zero-indexed, you use 1 to access the middle name provided to the argument. And because the middle name might be `nil`, the return type of the function is optional.

You then call `grabMiddleName(fromFullName:)` and provide it a first, middle, and last name (feel free to change the names). Because you declared the middle name component of the tuple to be of type **String?**, you can pass `nil` to that portion of the tuple. You cannot do this for the first or last name portion of the tuple.

Nothing is logged to the console. Because the middle name provided is `nil`, the Boolean used in the optional binding does not evaluate to `true` and `print()` is not executed.

Try giving the middle name a valid **String** instance and note the result.

Exiting Early from a Function

You learned about Swift's conditional statements in [Chapter 3](#), but there is one more to introduce: guard statements. Just like `if/else` statements, guard statements execute code depending on a Boolean value resulting from some expression. But guard statements are different from what you have seen before. A guard statement is used to exit early from a function if some condition is *not* met. As their name suggests, you can think of guard statements as a way to protect your code from running under improper conditions.

Following the example above, consider an example in which you want to write a function that greets a person by their middle name if they have one. If they do not have a middle name, you would rather use something more generic.

Listing 12.13 Early exits with guard statements

```
func greetByMiddleName(fromFullName name: (first: String,  
                                              middle: String?,  
                                              last: String)) {  
    guard let middleName = name.middle else {  
        print("Hey there!")  
        return  
    }  
    print("Hey \(middleName)")  
}  
greetByMiddleName(fromFullName: ("Matt", "Danger", "Mathias"))
```

`greetByMiddleName(fromFullName:)` is similar to `grabMiddleName(fromFullName:)` in that it takes the same argument, but it differs in that it has no return value. Another difference is that the names of the elements in the tuple `name` match specific components of a person's name. As you can see, these element names are available inside of the function.

The code `guard let middleName = name.middle` binds the value in `middle` to a constant called `middleName`. If there is no value in the optional, then the code in the guard statement's body is executed. This would result in a generic greeting being logged to the console that omits the middle name: `Hey there!`. After this, you must explicitly `return` from the function, which represents that the condition established by the guard statement was not met and the function needs to return early.

You can think of guard as protecting you from embarrassingly addressing somebody as "mumble-mumble" when you do not know his middle name. But if the tuple did get passed to the function with a middle name, then its value is bound to `middleName` and is available after the guard statement. This means that `middleName` is visible in the parent scope that encompasses the guard statement.

In your call to `greetByMiddleName(fromFullName:)`, however, you pass in a middle name to the tuple `name`. That means `Hey Danger!` will be logged to the console. If `nil` were

passed to the middle name element, then `Hey there!` would have been logged to the console.
(Go ahead and try it!)

Function Types

Each function you have been working with in this chapter has a specific type. In fact, all functions do. *Function types* are made up of the function's parameter and return types. Consider the **sortedEvenOddNumbers(_:_)** function. This function takes an array of integers as an argument and returns a tuple with two arrays of integers. Thus, the function type for **sortedEvenOddNumbers(_:_)** is expressed as `([Int]) -> ([Int], [Int])`.

The function's parameters are listed inside the left parentheses, and the return type comes after the `->`. You can read this function type as: “A function with one parameter that takes an array of integers and returns a tuple with two arrays containing integers.” For comparison, a function with no arguments and no return has the type `() -> ()`.

Function types are useful because you can assign them to variables. This feature will become particularly handy in the next chapter when you see that you can use functions in the arguments and returns of other functions. For now, let's just take a look at how you can assign a function type to a constant:

```
let evenOddFunction: ([Int]) -> ([Int], [Int]) = sortedEvenOddNu
```

This code creates a constant named `evenOddFunction` whose value is the function type of the **sortedEvenOddNumbers(_:_)** function. Pretty cool, right? Now you can pass this constant around just like any other. You can even use this constant to call the function; for example, `evenOddFunction(numbers: [1, 2, 3])` will sort the numbers in the array supplied to the function's sole argument into a tuple of two arrays – one each for even and odd integers.

You accomplished a lot in this chapter. There was a lot of material here, and it may make sense to go through it all a second time. Be sure to type out all of the code in this chapter. In fact, try to extend the examples to different cases. Try to break the examples and then fix them.

If you are still a little fuzzy on functions, do not worry. They are also a major focus in the next chapter, so you will get lots more practice.

Bronze Challenge

Like `if/else` conditions, guard statements support the use of multiple clauses to perform additional checks. Using additional clauses with a guard statement gives you further control over the statement's condition. Refactor the `greetByMiddleName(name:)` function to have an additional clause in its guard statement. This clause should check to see if the middle name is less than four characters long. If it is, then greet that person by their middle name. If it is not, then use the generic greeting.

Silver Challenge

Write a function called **siftBeans(fromGroceryList:)** that takes a grocery list (as an array of strings) and “sifts out” the beans from the other groceries. The function should take one argument that has a parameter name called **list**, and it should return a named tuple of the type (beans: [String], otherGroceries: [String]).

Here is an example of how you should be able to call your function and what the result should be:

```
let result = siftBeans(fromGroceryList: ["green beans",
                                         "milk",
                                         "black beans",
                                         "pinto beans",
                                         "apples"])

result.beans == ["green beans", "black beans", "pinto beans"] // true
result.otherGroceries == ["milk", "apples"] // true
```

Hint: You may need to use a function on the **String** type called **hasSuffix(_:)**.

For the More Curious: Void

The first function you wrote in this chapter was **printGreeting()**. It took no arguments and returned nothing. Or, did it?

It turns out that functions that do not explicitly return something actually do still have a return. They return something called **Void**. This return is inserted into the code for you by the compiler.

So, while you wrote **printGreeting()** like this:

```
func printGreeting() {  
    print("Hello, playground.")  
}
```

The compiler actually added something like this to your code:

```
func printGreeting() -> Void {  
    print("Hello, playground.")  
}
```

In other words, it added a return value of **Void** for you. Just what is **Void**? Go ahead and make **printGreeting** return **Void**, as shown above. Command-click on the word “Void” and Xcode will show you what it looks like in the standard library.

```
public typealias Void = ()
```

Void is a typealias for `()`. You have not read about typealiases in this book yet, but you will in [Chapter 21](#). Stay tuned. For now, think of typealiases as a way to tell the compiler that one thing is shorthand for another. In the excerpt above, the standard library is establishing that **Void** is another way of expressing `()`.

You have already seen the concept at play here in [Chapter 5](#). The `()` refers to what is called an empty tuple. If a tuple is a list of ordered elements, then an empty tuple is simply a list with nothing in it.

Given what you know now, you can see that these three implementations of **printGreeting()** are equivalent.

```
func printGreeting() {  
    print("Hello, playground.")  
}
```

```
func printGreeting() -> Void {  
    print("Hello, playground.")  
}
```

```
func printGreeting() -> () {  
    print("Hello, playground.")  
}
```

The first version above is what you originally wrote. The second is what the compiler inserts

for you. And the third uses the empty parentheses, which is what the standard library maps **Void** to.

Knowing that **Void** maps to () should help you to better understand what is going on in a given function type. For example, the function type for **printGreeting()** is () -> Void. This is simply the type for a function that takes no arguments and returns an empty tuple, which is the implicit return type for all functions that do not explicitly have a return value.

Closures

Closures are discrete bundles of functionality that can be used in your application to accomplish specific tasks. Functions, which you learned about in the last chapter, are a special case of closures. You can think of a function as a named closure.

In [Chapter 12](#), you worked primarily with global and nested functions. Closures differ from functions in that they have a more compact and lightweight syntax. They allow you to write a “function-like” construct without having to give it a name and a full function declaration. This makes closures easy to pass around in function arguments and returns.

Let’s get started. Create a new playground called **Closures**.

Closure Syntax

Imagine that you are a community organizer managing a number of organizations. You want to keep track of how many volunteers there are for each organization and have created an instance of the **Array** type for this task.

Listing 13.1 Starting with an array

```
import Cocoa  
var str = "Hello, playground"
```

```
let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]
```

You entered the number of volunteers for each organization as they were provided to you. This means that the array is completely disorganized. It would be better if your array of volunteers were sorted from lowest to highest number. Good news: Swift provides a *method* called **sorted(by:)** that allows you to specify how an instance of **Array** will be sorted. (We call a function a method when it is defined on a type, like the **Array** type. More on this topic in [Chapter 15](#).)

sorted(by:) takes one argument: a closure that describes how the sorting should be done. The closure takes two arguments, whose types must match the type of the elements in the array, and returns a **Bool**. The two arguments are compared to produce this return value, which represents whether the instance in the first argument should be sorted before the instance in the second argument. Use `<` in the return if you would like argument one to be sorted before argument two. Doing so will sort the array in an *ascending* fashion – that is, from smallest to largest. Use `>` in the return if you would like argument two to come before argument one. This will sort the array in an *descending* fashion – that is, from largest to smallest.

Because your array of volunteer counts is filled with integers, the function type for **sorted(by:)** will look like `((Int, Int) -> Bool) -> [Int]` in your code. In words, “**sorted(by:)** is a method that takes a closure that takes two integers to compare and returns a Boolean value specifying which integer should come first. **sorted(by:)** returns a new array of integers that have been ordered according to how the closure organizes them.”

Add the following code to sort your array.

Listing 13.2 Sorting the array

```
import Cocoa
```

```
let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]
```

```
func sortAscending(_ i: Int, _ j: Int) -> Bool {  
    return i < j  
}
```

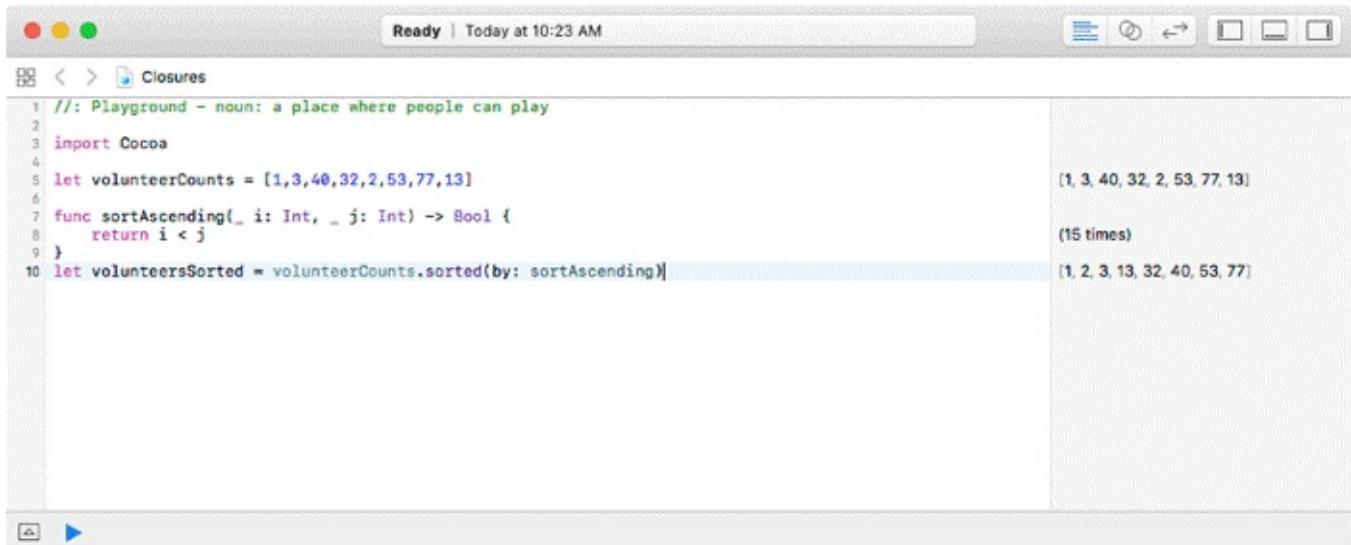
```
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: sortAscending)
```

First, you create a function called **sortAscending(_:_:)** that has the required type. It compares two integers and returns a Boolean that indicates whether the integer *i* should be placed before the integer *j*. Because the name **sortAscending** implies that we will be sorting two things, you use the *_* to suppress the parameter names from being used in the call. The function will return `true` if *i* is less than – and should be placed before – *j*. As this global function is a named closure (remember, all functions are closures), you can provide this function as the value of the argument in **sorted(by:)**.

Next, you call **sorted(by:)**, passing in **sortAscending(_:_:)** for the second argument. Because **sorted(by:)** returns a new array, you assign that result to a new constant array called **volunteersSorted**. This instance will serve as your new record for the organizations' volunteer counts, correctly sorted.

Look in the results sidebar of your playground. You should see that the values inside **volunteersSorted** are sorted from lowest to highest ([Figure 13.1](#)).

Figure 13.1 Sorting volunteer counts



The screenshot shows an Xcode playground window titled "Closures". The code area contains the following Swift code:

```
1 //: Playground - noun: a place where people can play
2
3 import Cocoa
4
5 let volunteerCounts = [1,3,40,32,2,53,77,13]
6
7 func sortAscending(_ i: Int, _ j: Int) -> Bool {
8     return i < j
9 }
10 let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: sortAscending)
```

The results sidebar shows the output of the code execution:

- Line 5: [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]
- Line 6: (15 times)
- Line 10: [1, 2, 3, 13, 32, 40, 53, 77]

Closure Expression Syntax

This works, but you can clean up your code. Closure syntax follows this general form:

```
{(parameters) -> return type in  
    // Code  
}
```

You write a closure expression inside of the braces ({}). The closure's parameters are listed inside of the parentheses immediately after the opening brace. Its return type comes after the parameters and uses the regular syntax. The keyword `in` is used to separate the closure's parameters and return type from the statements inside of its body.

Refactor your code to use a closure expression: Create a closure inline instead of defining a separate function outside of the `sorted(by:)` method.

Listing 13.3 Refactoring your sorting code

```
import Cocoa
```

```
let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]
```

```
func sortAscending(_ i: Int, _ j: Int) -> Bool {  
    return i < j  
}  
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: sortAscending)  
  
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: {  
    (i: Int, j: Int) -> Bool in  
    return i < j  
})
```

This code is a bit cleaner and more elegant than the first version. Instead of providing a function defined elsewhere in the playground, you implement a closure inline in the `sorted(by:)` method's second argument. You define the parameters and their type (`Int`) inside of the closure's parentheses and also specify the return type. Next, you implement the closure's body by providing the logical test (is `i` less than `j`?) that will inform the closure's return.

The result is just as before: The sorted array is assigned to `volunteersSorted`.

This refactoring is a step in the right direction, but it is still a little verbose. Closures can take advantage of Swift's type inference system, so you can clean up your closure even more by trimming out the type information.

Listing 13.4 Taking advantage of type inference

```
import Cocoa
```

```
let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]
```

```
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: {  
    (i: Int, j: Int) -> Bool in  
        return i < j  
})
```

```
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: { i, j in i < j})
```

There are three new developments here. First, you remove the type information for both the parameters and the return. You can remove the return type because the compiler knows that checking `i < j` will return `true` or `false` – that is, a `Bool` value. Second, you move the entire closure expression to be one line.

Third, you remove the keyword `return`. Not all closure statements can omit the `return` keyword. This one can because it only has one expression (`i < j`). If more expressions were present, an explicit `return` would be needed.

Notice that the result in the sidebar is the same.

Your closure is getting fairly compact, but it can become even more so. Swift provides shorthand argument names that you can refer to in inline closure expressions. These shorthand argument names behave similarly to the explicitly declared arguments you have been using: They have the same types and values. The compiler’s type inference capabilities help it to know the number and types of arguments your closure takes, which means it is not necessary to name them.

For example, the compiler knows that `sorted(by:)` takes a closure. That closure itself takes two parameters that are of the same type as the items in the array you pass into the method’s argument. Because the closure has two arguments, whose values are compared to determine their order, you can refer to the values of the arguments using `$0` for the first and `$1` for the second.

Adjust your code to take advantage of the shorthand syntax.

Listing 13.5 Using shorthand syntax for arguments

```
import Cocoa
```

```
let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]
```

```
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: { i, j in i < j})
```

```
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: { $0 < $1 })
```

Now that your inline closure expression makes use of the shorthand argument syntax, you do not need to explicitly declare the parameters as you did for `i` and `j`. The compiler knows that the values in the closure’s arguments are of the correct type and knows what to infer based on the `<` operator.

Incidentally, for a closure with more than two arguments you can use `$2`, `$3`, and so on.

Before you think this closure could not possibly get any slimmer, just wait, there is more! If a closure is passed to a function's final argument, it can be written inline, outside of and after the function's parentheses. Because **sorted(by:)** only takes one argument, this means you do not need any parentheses at all. You can also omit invoking the parameter name for the closure because you are using the trailing closure syntax.

Make this change.

Listing 13.6 Inline closure as the function's final argument

```
import Cocoa
```

```
let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]
```

```
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted(by: { $0 < $1 })
```

```
let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted { $0 < $1 }
```

This *trailing closure syntax* is especially helpful if the closure's body is long. Here, the trailing closure makes for only a little less typing.

Truly, “Brevity is the soul of wit.” The code above works just as well in this terse form as the earlier, much more verbose version. After all, there is really only one thing that you care about (is one integer less than another?), and that can be easily expressed. However, do not go too crazy with these tricks. It is always more important to make sure that your code is readable and maintainable.

Functions as Return Types

Now that you have more experience with functions and closures, recall from [Chapter 12](#) that every function has a function type that defines its parameter and return types. For example, a function that takes a **String** argument and returns an **Int** has the function type of `(String) -> Int`. Function types are frequently used to determine what sort of closure you need to satisfy a given parameter's type or what sort of function needs to be returned.

Functions can return other functions as their return type. Remember your little town of Knowhere? It is time to make a function to improve your town. You are going to build some roads.

Listing 13.7 Return to Knowhere

```
import Cocoa

let volunteerCounts = [1,3,40,32,2,53,77,13]

let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted { $0 < $1 }

func makeTownGrand() -> (Int, Int) -> Int {
    func buildRoads(byAddingLights lights: Int,
                    toExistingLights existingLights: Int) -> Int
        return lights + existingLights
    }
    return buildRoads
}
```

The function **makeTownGrand()** takes no arguments – it is like your grandfather. It does, however, return a function. This function takes two arguments, both integers, and returns an integer. Inside the **makeTownGrand()** function's body, you implement the function you return.

In terms of implementation details, the function you return is a nested function called **buildRoads(byAddingLights:toExistingLights:)**. **buildRoads** takes two **Int** arguments and returns an **Int**, just like the function that is declared as the return type for **makeTownGrand()**.

To see this in action, exercise your new function and build some roads.

Listing 13.8 The roads to Knowhere

```
import Cocoa

let volunteerCounts = [1,3,40,32,2,53,77,13]

let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted { $0 < $1 }

func makeTownGrand() -> (Int, Int) -> Int {
```

```

func buildRoads(byAddingLights lights: Int,
                toExistingLights existingLights: Int) -> Int
    return lights + existingLights
}
return buildRoads
}
var stoplights = 4
let townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights = makeTownGrand()
stoplights = townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights(4, stoplights)
print("Knowhere has \(stoplights) stoplights.")

```

First, you set up a variable called `stoplights`. This instance is declared as a variable because you are going to build some roads that will add to the town's number of stoplights. Next, you declare a constant called `townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights` that refers to the **`buildRoads`** function that is created by the **`makeTownGrand()`** function. You call that function, using the parameter names that you listed in the return type of **`makeTownGrand()`**, and pass into it the number of lights to add (the first argument) and the current number of stoplights (the second argument). The result of this function, an instance of type **`Int`**, is reassigned to the `stoplights` variable. Last, you print this new value to the console.

Check your console. It should read `Knowhere has 8 stoplights.`

Functions as Arguments

Functions can serve as arguments to other functions. Recall, for example, that you initially gave `sorted(by:)` the `sortAscending(_:_:)` function as an argument.

Practicality suggests that your town can only build roads when it has a suitable budget. Adjust your previous `makeTownGrand()` function to take a budget parameter and a condition parameter. The budget parameter will serve as your town's budget, and the condition parameter will evaluate whether this budget is suitable to build the new roads.

Listing 13.9 Adding budget considerations

```
import Cocoa

let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]

let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted { $0 < $1 }

func makeTownGrand() -> (Int, Int) -> Int {
    func buildRoads(byAddingLights lights: Int,
                    toExistingLights existingLights: Int) -> Int
        return lights + existingLights
    }
    return buildRoads
}

var stoplights = 4
let townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights = makeTownGrand()
stoplights = townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights(4, stoplight:

func makeTownGrand(withBudget budget: Int,
                   condition: (Int) -> Bool) -> ((Int, Int) -> I
if condition(budget) {
    func buildRoads(byAddingLights lights: Int,
                    toExistingLights existingLights: Int) ->
        return lights + existingLights
    }
    return buildRoads
} else {
    return nil
}
}

func evaluate(budget: Int) -> Bool {
    return budget > 10_000
}

var stoplights = 4
```

```

if let townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights = makeTownGrand(wi
    co
stoplights = townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights(4, stopl:
}
print("Nowhere has \u2028(stoplights) stoplights.")

```

Let's go over the changes here.

One change is the new **makeTownGrand(withBudget:condition:)** function, which takes two arguments. The first is an instance of the **Int** type representing the town's budget. The second is called **condition** and takes a function. This function determines whether the town's budget is sufficient. Thus, it will take an **Int** and return a **Bool**. If the integer budget is high enough, then this function will return true. If the budget is not high enough, then the function will return false.

Did you notice that the **makeTownGrand(withBudget:condition:)** function has a different return type? The return type is now `((Int, Int) -> Int)?`. The previous implementation of **makeTownGrand()** returned a function that took two integers and returned an integer. In this revised version, **makeTownGrand(withBudget:condition:)** returns the same thing, but in an optional incarnation.

Why? Consider the budget requirement.

The implementation of **makeTownGrand(withBudget:condition:)** runs the function passed into the **condition** parameter. If it evaluates to true, then town has the appropriate budget and the **buildRoads(byAddingLights:toExistingLights:)** function will be created and returned. If, on the other hand, the budget is not sufficient, **buildRoads(byAddingLights:toExistingLights:)** will not be created and `nil` will be returned. An optional is needed to handle the possibility of a `nil` return.

Also, you create the **evaluate(budget:)** function. This function takes an integer and returns a Boolean. Its implementation evaluates the integer to see whether it is greater than a threshold (arbitrarily set at 10,000).

Finally, you use optional binding to conditionally set **townPlan**. If the budget provided to the **makeTownGrand(withBudget:condition:)** function is sufficiently large, then the **buildRoads(byAddingLights:toExistingLights:)** function will be created, returned, and assigned to **townPlan**. In this case, your town's number of **stoplights** will be increased by 4. If, however, the budget is not large enough, then **makeTownGrand(withBudget:condition:)** will return `nil`. In this case, your town's number of stoplights will not be increased.

Check your console. Unfortunately, your town's budget is too small. A budget of 1,000 is certainly less than the requisite 10,000. Thus, **makeTownGrand(withBudget:condition:)** returned `nil` and **buildRoads(byAddingLights:toExistingLights:)** was never executed. Your

town will have to keep saving before it can build any new roads...

OK, enough time for saving. Your town now has enough money to build some roads. Update the code with a higher budget to see the effect.

Listing 13.10 Building more roads

```
import Cocoa

let volunteerCounts = [1, 3, 40, 32, 2, 53, 77, 13]

let volunteersSorted = volunteerCounts.sorted { $0 < $1 }

func makeTownGrand(withBudget budget: Int,
                    condition: (Int) -> Bool) -> ((Int, Int) -> I
if condition(budget) {
    func buildRoads(byAddingLights lights: Int,
                    toExistingLights existingLights: Int) ->
        return lights + existingLights
    }
    return buildRoads
} else {
    return nil
}
}

func evaluate(budget: Int) -> Bool {
    return budget > 10_000
}

var stoplights = 4

if let townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights = makeTownGrand(w:
    cor
    stoplights = townPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights(4, stop]
}
if let newTownPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights
    = makeTownGrand(withBudget: 10_500, condition: evaluate)
    stoplights = newTownPlanByAddingLightsToExistingLights(4, st
}
print("Knowhere has \(stoplights) stoplights.")


```

The budget of 10,500 exceeds the minimum necessary to build roads. You should see in the sidebar and on the console that your town now has a whopping 8 stoplights!

Closures Capture Values

Closures and functions can keep track of internal information encapsulated by a variable defined in their enclosing scope. To see an example of this, imagine that Knowhere is booming. As growth can be erratic, you create a function that will allow you to update the town's population data based on recent growth. Your town planner will update the town's census data every time the population grows by 500 people.

Listing 13.11 Tracking growth

```
...
print("Knowhere has \(stoplights) stoplights.")

func makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation population: Int)
    var totalPopulation = population
    func populationTracker(growth: Int) -> Int {
        totalPopulation += growth
        return totalPopulation
    }
    return populationTracker
}

var currentPopulation = 5_422
let growBy = makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation: currentP
```

The function **makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation:)** builds a **populationTracker(growth:)** function.

makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation:) takes one argument, an integer representing the initial population, and returns a function that takes one argument and returns an integer. This integer is a running total of the number of people in your town, **totalPopulation**, which is initially set to track the initial population passed into **makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation:)**.

The **populationTracker(growth:)** function captures the value of the **totalPopulation** variable from its enclosing scope. After **populationTracker(growth:)** is created, the **totalPopulation** variable will be incremented by the amount specified in the argument passed to the function.

The result of the above is that you have created a new function, **growBy(_:)**, that takes an integer as its sole argument and tracks **currentPopulation**. Subsequent calls to **growBy(_:)** will supply an amount to grow the initial population by. Exercise and test this function by calling it a few times.

Listing 13.12 The population is booming

```
...
print("Knowhere has \(stoplights) stoplights.")
```

```
func makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation population: Int)
    var totalPopulation = population
    func populationTracker(growth: Int) -> Int {
        totalPopulation += growth
        return totalPopulation
    }
    return populationTracker
}

var currentPopulation = 5_422
let growBy = makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation: current
growBy(500)
growBy(500)
growBy(500)
currentPopulation = growBy(500) // currentPopulation is now 7422
```

You call **growBy(_:_)** four times to model a growth of 2,000 people for your town. Notice that the first three calls to **growBy(_:_)** do not assign its result to any constant or variable. This is fine because the function is keeping an internal running total of your town's growth. All you have to do to update your town's population is assign the result of the function to your **currentPopulation** variable when your town planner is ready.

Closures Are Reference Types

Closures are *reference types*. This means that when you assign a function to a constant or variable, you are actually setting that constant or variable to *point to* the function. You are not creating a distinct copy of that function. One important consequence of this fact is that any information captured by the function's scope will be changed if you call the function via a new constant or variable.

To see this, create a new constant and set it equal to your **growBy(_:)** function.

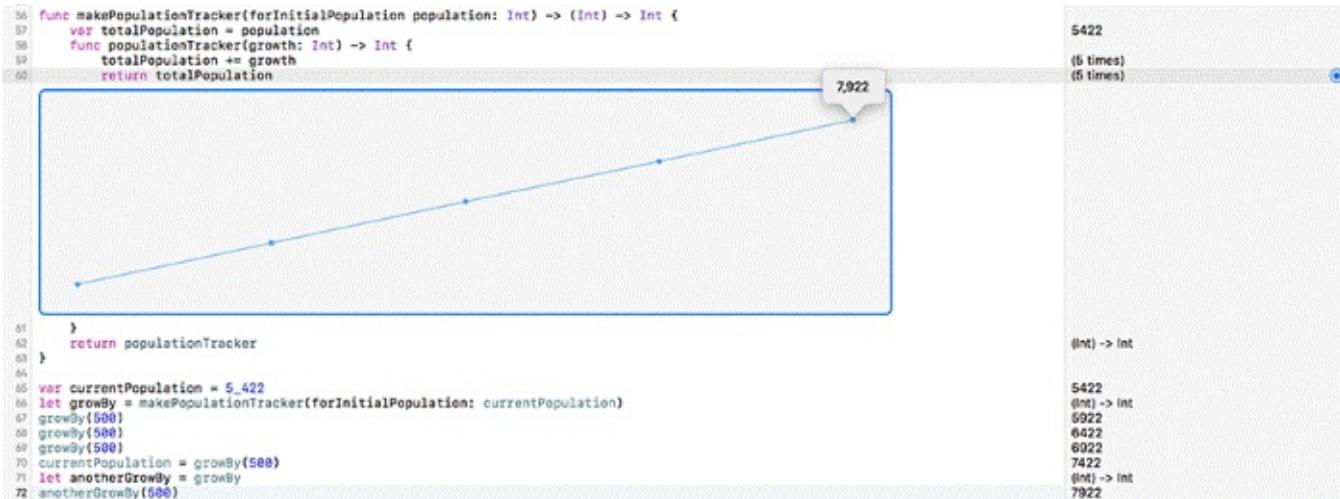
Listing 13.13 Duplicate growth

```
...
func makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation population: Int)
    var totalPopulation = population
    func populationTracker(growth: Int) -> Int {
        totalPopulation += growth
        return totalPopulation
    }
    return populationTracker
}

var currentPopulation = 5_422
let growBy = makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation: current
growBy(500)
growBy(500)
growBy(500)
currentPopulation = growBy(500) // currentPopulation is now 7422
let anotherGrowBy = growBy
anotherGrowBy(500) // totalPopulation now equal to 7922
```

anotherGrowBy now points to the same function to which growBy points. So when you call **anotherGrowBy(_:)** and pass in 500 as the argument, the variable totalPopulation is incremented by 500. But remember that currentPopulation is unchanged, because you do not set its value by the return value of **anotherGrowBy(_:)**! In other words, **anotherGrowBy(_:)** only directly increments the value of the internal totalPopulation variable that is captured by the **populationTracker(growth:)** function's scope. [Figure 13.2](#) shows a plot of totalPopulation's growth each time the **populationTracker(growth:)** function is called.

Figure 13.2 totalPopulation's growth



For comparison, suppose a large neighboring city has fallen in love with your town planner's function. The city wants its own growth-tracker function to update its population data every time the population grows by 10,000. Create the city's population and use the **makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation:)** function to create another growth-tracker function for the larger city.

Listing 13.14 Another population to track

```
...  
let anotherGrowBy = growBy  
anotherGrowBy(500) // totalPopulation now equal to 7922  
var bigCityPopulation = 4_061_981  
let bigCityGrowBy = makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation: b  
bigCityPopulation = bigCityGrowBy(10_000)  
currentPopulation
```

You now have another population that you are keeping track of, and you have a new growth-tracker function called **bigCityGrowBy(_:_)** to help. You use **bigCityGrowBy(_:_)** to grow the new city's population, as in `bigCityPopulation = bigCityGrowBy(10_000)`. This is analogous to your use of **growBy(_:_)** above. The new city's population is increased to 4,071,981 after this line.

Notice that the small town of Knowhere's population, represented by `currentPopulation`, does not change. It is still 7,422. This is because you used the **makePopulationTracker(forInitialPopulation:)** function to create a new growth-tracker function. This new growth-tracker function is separate and distinct from **growBy(_:_)**.

You will learn more about reference types (as well as value types, whose instances keep unique copies of their data) in [Chapter 18](#).

Functional Programming

Swift adopts some patterns from the *functional programming* paradigm. It is difficult to provide a concrete definition of functional programming because people use the phrase with different meanings and intentions, but typically it is understood to include:

- *First-class functions* – functions can be returned from and passed as arguments to other functions, can be stored in variables, etc.; they are just like any other type.
- *Pure functions* – functions have no side effects; functions, given the same input, always return the same output and do not modify other states elsewhere in the program. Most math functions like sin, cos, fibonacci, and factorial are pure.
- *Immutability* – mutability is de-emphasized as it is more difficult to reason about data whose values can change.
- *Strong typing* – a strong type system increases the runtime safety of the code because the guarantees of the language's type system are checked at compile time.

Swift supports all of these approaches.

Functional programming can make your code more concise and expressive. By emphasizing immutability and strong compile-time type checking, your code can also be safer at runtime. These hallmarks of functional programming can also make code easier to reason about and maintain.

Swift's `let` keyword allows you to declare immutable instances in your code. Its strong type system helps you to catch errors at compile time instead of at runtime. Swift also provides several *higher-order functions* that are well known to developers fond of functional programming: `map(_:_:)`, `filter(_:_:)`, and `reduce(_:_:_:)`. These functions emphasize that Swift's functions are indeed first-class citizens.

Let's look at what these functions add to Swift's toolkit.

Higher-order functions

Higher-order functions take at least one function as an input. You have already worked with higher-order functions in this chapter (for example, recall the use of `sorted(by:)` above). Let's take a look at three more: `map(_:_:)`, `filter(_:_:)`, and `reduce(_:_:_:)`.

`map(_:_:)`

`map(_:_:)` is a function that you can use to transform an array's contents. You *map* an array's contents from one value to another and put these new values into a new array. Because `map(_:_:)` is a higher-order function, you provide it with another function that tells it how to transform the array's contents.

The Swift standard library provides an implementation of `map(_:)` on the `Array` type. Suppose your town, Knowhere, has three precincts, each with its own population. Hold these values in an array named `precinctPopulations`.

Listing 13.15 Setting populations by precinct

```
...  
let precinctPopulations = [1244, 2021, 2157]
```

As before, Knowhere is a town on the move. Given Knowhere's growth, the town's city planner needs to make projections for each precinct's population. The city planner could use `map(_:)` in conjunction with the `precinctPopulations` array to do some estimating.

Listing 13.16 Using `map(_:)` to estimate population

```
...  
let precinctPopulations = [1244, 2021, 2157]  
let projectedPopulations = precinctPopulations.map {  
    (population: Int) -> Int in  
    return population * 2  
}  
projectedPopulations
```

Here, you use `map(_:)` to apply an estimate to each value of `precinctPopulations`. (Notice that you use the trailing closure syntax.) Next, you declare a parameter named `population` of type `Int` and also specify `Int` for the closure's return type. `map(_:)` will apply this function to the value at each index in `precinctPopulations`. The estimate increases each precinct's population by 200% and results in a new array called `projectedPopulations`, which has the values 2488, 4042, and 4314.

filter(_:)

`filter(_:)`, like `map(_:)`, can be called on an instance of the `Array` type. It also takes a closure expression as an argument. Its purpose is to *filter* an array based upon some criteria. The resulting array will contain the values of the original array that passed the test.

After applying her estimate, your city planner wants to know which precincts have projected populations greater than 4,000 people. `filter(_:)` is an ideal choice for this operation.

Listing 13.17 Filtering an array

```
...  
let precinctPopulations = [1244, 2021, 2157]  
let projectedPopulations = precinctPopulations.map {  
    (population: Int) -> Int in  
    return population * 2  
}  
projectedPopulations
```

```
let bigProjections = projectedPopulations.filter {  
    (projection: Int) -> Bool in  
    return projection > 4000  
}  
bigProjections
```

As above, you use the trailing closure syntax. The closure takes a population projection of type **Int** as its argument and returns a **Bool** indicating whether the projection passed the test. Inside of this closure, you check to see whether the projection's value is greater than 4,000 and return the result. The values that pass this test are given to the **bigProjections** array. Only two projections pass the test, so **bigProjections** contains 4042 and 4314.

reduce(_:_:)

Imagine that Knowhere's mayor asked the city planner to provide an estimate of the town's projected population. With the data spread out in an array, how could the city planner figure this out? **reduce(_:_:)** provides a great way to accomplish this task. You can call **reduce(_:_:)** on an instance of the array type. Its job is to *reduce* the values in the collection to a single value that is returned from the function.

Listing 13.18 Reducing an array to a single value

```
...  
let bigProjections = projectedPopulations.filter {  
    (projection: Int) -> Bool in  
    return projection > 4000  
}  
bigProjections  
  
let totalProjection = projectedPopulations.reduce(0) {  
    (accumulatedProjection: Int, precinctProjection: Int) -> Int  
    return accumulatedProjection + precinctProjection  
}  
totalProjection
```

reduce(_:_:)'s first argument refers to an initial amount (or some other value) that can be added at the outset. The second argument is a closure that defines how the values inside the collection should be combined. (Notice that you used the trailing closure syntax.) Here, all you need is to add up the projections in the **projectedPopulations** array, so the initial value you give is 0. Next, the closure has two arguments, **accumulatedProjection** and **precinctProjection**, both of type **Int**, that are combined as the **reduce(_:_:)** traverses the array. When the function is done, **totalProjection** is set to be equal to 10844.

Bronze Challenge

In this chapter, you sorted a collection by returning a new instance of **Array** with its integers sorted from smallest to largest. You can also sort collections *in place*. Modify the existing example of sorting `volunteerCounts` to sort the array in place. Sort from smallest to largest.

Bronze Challenge

In this chapter, you used **sorted(by:)** to sort a collection from smallest to largest. But if you just want to sort a collection in an ascending fashion, then there is a simpler method to use. Use the documentation to find this method. Also apply this method to your solution to the previous bronze challenge.

Gold Challenge

Use what you have learned in this chapter to clean up the implementation of `reduce(_:_:)` presented above. The implementation can be shortened quite significantly: Your solution should be expressed in one line. When you are done, take a look at the sample code for the other higher-order functions and practice with them.

Part IV

Enumerations, Structures, and Classes

You will be learning about a lot of new tools and concepts in this part of the book. You will be adding features to projects that you will change in later projects. This will simulate the act of writing code in a real way: Sometimes you start developing an application with one solution in mind and then have to modify your code when you learn a better pattern or if a feature has changed. That does not mean the first code or tools were bad – just that they would be better for other circumstances. Projects often evolve and develop, and decisions that are ideal at one stage may become inadequate as requirements change. Learning to be flexible in the face of these changes is part of the trade.

Enumerations

Up to this point, you have been using the built-in types that Swift provides, like integers, strings, arrays, and dictionaries. The next couple of chapters will show the capabilities the language provides to create your own types. The focus of this chapter is *enumerations* (or enums), which allow you to create instances that are one of a defined list of cases. If you have used enumerations in other languages, much of this chapter will be familiar. But Swift's enums also have some advanced features that make them unique.

Basic Enumerations

Create a new playground called `Enumerations`. Define an enumeration of possible text alignments.

Listing 14.1 Defining an enumeration

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

enum TextAlignement {
    case left
    case right
    case center
}
```

You define an enumeration with the `enum` keyword followed by the name of the enumeration. The opening brace (`{`) opens the body of the enum, and it must contain at least one `case` statement that declares the possible values for the enum. Here, you include three. The name of the enumeration (here, `TextAlignement`) is now usable as a type, just like `Int` or `String` or the various other types you have used so far.

The names of types (and, therefore, enums) begin with a capital letter by convention. If multiple words are needed, use camel-casing: `UpperCamelCasedType`. The names of variables, functions, and enum cases begin with a lowercase letter and also use camel-casing as needed: `lowerCamelCasedName`.

Because the enumeration declares a new type, you can now create instances of that type.

Listing 14.2 Creating an instance of `TextAlignment`

```
...

enum TextAlignement {
    case left
    case right
    case center
}

var alignment: TextAlignement = TextAlignement.left
```

Although `TextAlignement` is a type that you have defined, the compiler can still infer the type for alignment. Therefore, you can omit the explicit type of the `alignment` variable:

Listing 14.3 Taking advantage of type inference

```
...

var alignment: TextAlignement = TextAlignement.left
```

The compiler's ability to infer the type of enumerations is not limited to variable declarations. If you have a variable known to be of a particular enum type, you can omit the type from the

case statement when assigning a new value to the variable.

Listing 14.4 Inferring the enum type

```
...  
var alignment = TextAlign.left  
alignment = .right
```

Notice that you had to specify the enum's type and value when initially creating the `alignment` variable, because that line gives `alignment` both its type and its value. In the next line, you can omit the type and simply reassign `alignment` to be equal to a different value within its type. You can also omit the enum type when passing its values to functions or comparing them.

Listing 14.5 Type inference when comparing values

```
...  
alignment = .right  
  
if alignment == .right {  
    print("We should right-align the text!")  
}
```

While enum values can be compared in `if` statements, `switch` statements are typically used to handle enum values. Use `switch` to print the alignment in a more human-readable way.

Listing 14.6 Switching to switch

```
...  
alignment = .right  
  
if alignment == .right {  
    print("We should right-align the text!")  
}  
switch alignment {  
case .left:  
    print("left aligned")  
  
case .right:  
    print("right aligned")  
  
case .center:  
    print("center aligned")  
}
```

Recall from [Chapter 5](#) that all `switch` statements must be exhaustive. In that chapter, you wrote `switch` statements that included a `default` case. When switching on enumeration values, that is not necessary: The compiler knows all possible values the enumeration can check. If you have included a case for each one, the `switch` is exhaustive.

You *could* include a `default` case when switching on an enum type.

Listing 14.7 Making center the default case

```
...
switch alignment {
case .left:
    print("left aligned")

case .right:
    print("right aligned")

case .center:
default:
    print("center aligned")
}
```

This code works, but we recommend avoiding default clauses when switching on enum types, because using a default is not as “future proof.” Suppose you later want to add another alignment option for justified text.

Listing 14.8 Adding a case

```
...
enum TextAlignement {
    case left
    case right
    case center
    case justify
}

var alignment = TextAlignement.leftjustify
alignment = .right
...
```

Notice that your program still runs, but it now prints the wrong value. The `alignment` variable is set to `.justify`, but the `switch` statement prints `center aligned`. This is what we mean when we say that using a default is not future proof: It adds complication to modifying your code in the future.

Change your `switch` back to listing each case explicitly.

Listing 14.9 Returning to explicit cases

```
...
switch alignment {
case .left:
    print("left aligned")

case .right:
    print("right aligned")
```

```
default:
case .center:
    print("center aligned")
}
```

Now, instead of your program running and printing the wrong answer, you have a compile-time error that your `switch` statement is not exhaustive. It may seem odd to say that a compiler error is desirable, but that is exactly the situation here.

If you use a `default` clause when switching on an enum, your `switch` statement will always be exhaustive and satisfy the compiler. If you add a new case to the enum without updating the `switch`, the `switch` statement will fall to the `default` when it encounters the new case. Your code will compile, but it will not do what you intended, as you saw in [Listing 14.8](#).

By listing each enum case in the `switch`, you ensure that the compiler will help you find all of the places in your code that must be updated if you add cases to your enum. That is what is happening here: The compiler is telling you that your `switch` statement does not include all of the cases defined in your enum.

Let's fix that.

Listing 14.10 Including all cases

```
...
switch alignment {
case .left:
    print("left aligned")

case .right:
    print("right aligned")

case .center:
    print("center aligned")

case .justify:
    print("justified")
}
```


Raw Value Enumerations

If you have used enumerations in a language like C or C++, you may be surprised to learn that Swift enums do not have an underlying integer type. You can, however, choose to get the same behavior by using what Swift refers to as a *raw value*. To use **Int** raw values for your text alignment enumeration, change the declaration of the enum.

Listing 14.11 Using raw values

```
...
enum TextAlignement: Int {
    case left
    case right
    case center
    case justify
}
...
```

Specifying a raw value type for **TextAlignment** gives a distinct raw value of that type (**Int**) to each case. The default behavior for integral raw values is that the first case gets raw value 0, the next case gets raw value 1, and so on. Confirm this by printing some interpolated strings.

Listing 14.12 Confirming the raw values

```
...
var alignment = TextAlignement.justify

print("Left has raw value \(TextAlignement.left.rawValue)")
print("Right has raw value \(TextAlignement.right.rawValue)")
print("Center has raw value \(TextAlignement.center.rawValue)")
print("Justify has raw value \(TextAlignement.justify.rawValue)")
print("The alignment variable has raw value \(alignment.rawValue)")
...
```

You are not limited to the default behavior for raw values. If you prefer, you can specify the raw value for each case.

Listing 14.13 Specifying raw values

```
...
enum TextAlignement: Int {
    case left    = 20
    case right   = 30
    case center  = 40
    case justify = 50
}
...
```

When is a raw value enumeration useful? The most common reason for using a raw value is

to store or transmit the enum. Instead of writing functions to transform a variable holding an enum, you can use `rawValue` to convert the variable to its raw value.

This brings up another question: If you have a raw value, how do you convert it back to the enum type? Every enum type with a raw value can be created with a `rawValue:` argument, which returns an optional enum.

Listing 14.14 Converting raw values to enum types

```
...
print("Justify has raw value \\" + TextAlign.justify.rawValue + "\\")
print("The alignment variable has raw value \\" + alignment.rawValue + "\\")  
  
// Create a raw value
let myRawValue = 20  
  
// Try to convert the raw value into a TextAlign
if let myAlignment = TextAlign(rawValue: myRawValue) {
    // Conversion succeeded!
    print("successfully converted \\" + myRawValue + "\\ into a TextAlign")
} else {
    // Conversion failed
    print("\\" + myRawValue + "\\ has no corresponding TextAlign case")
}
...
```

What is going on here? You start with `myRawValue`, a variable of type `Int`. Then you try to convert that raw value into a `TextAlign` case using `TextAlign(rawValue:)`. Because `TextAlign(rawValue:)` has a return type of `TextAlign?`, you use optional binding to determine whether you get a `TextAlign` value or `nil` back.

The raw value you used here corresponds to `TextAlign.left`, so the conversion succeeds. Try changing `myRawValue` to a raw value that does not exist to see the message that conversion is not possible.

Listing 14.15 Trying a bad value

```
...
let myRawValue = 20 100
...
```

[Figure 14.1](#) shows the `else` block being executed:

Figure 14.1 Result of failed `TextAlignment` conversion

```
    } else {
        // Conversion failed
        print("\u{myRawValue} has no corresponding TextAlignment case")
    }
}
```

100 has no corresponding `TextAlignment` case

So far, you have been using **Int** as the type for your raw values. Swift allows a variety of types to be used, including all the built-in numeric types and **String**. Create a new enum that uses **String** as its raw value type.

Listing 14.16 Creating an enum with strings

```
...
enum ProgrammingLanguage: String {
    case swift      = "Swift"
    case objectiveC = "objective-c"
    case c          = "c"
    case cpp        = "c++"
    case java       = "java"
}

let myFavoriteLanguage = ProgrammingLanguage.swift
print("My favorite programming language is \u{(myFavoriteLanguage.r
```

You did not have to specify values when you first used a raw value of type **Int** – the compiler automatically set the first case to 0, the second case to 1, and so on. Here, you specified the corresponding raw **String** value for each case. This is not necessary: If you omit the raw value, Swift will use the name of the case itself. Modify **ProgrammingLanguage** to take out the raw values that match their case names.

Listing 14.17 Using default string raw values

```
...
enum ProgrammingLanguage: String {
    case swift      = "swift"
    case objectiveC = "objective-c"
    case c          = "c"
    case cpp        = "c++"
    case java       = "java"
}

let myFavoriteLanguage = ProgrammingLanguage.swift
print("My favorite programming language is \u{(myFavoriteLanguage.
```

Your declaration of devotion to Swift does not change.

Methods

Recall that a method is a function that is associated with a type. In some languages, methods can only be associated with classes (which we will discuss in [Chapter 15](#)). In Swift, methods can also be associated with enums. Create a new enum that represents the state of a lightbulb.

Listing 14.18 Lightbulbs can be on or off

```
...
enum Lightbulb {
    case on
    case off
}
```

One of the things you might want to know is the temperature of the lightbulb. (For simplicity, assume that the bulb heats up immediately when it is turned on and cools off to the ambient temperature immediately when it is turned off.) Add a method for computing the surface temperature.

Listing 14.19 Establishing temperature behaviors

```
...
enum Lightbulb {
    case on
    case off

    func surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperature ambient: Double)
        switch self {
            case .on:
                return ambient + 150.0

            case .off:
                return ambient
        }
}
```

Here, you add a function inside the definition of the **Lightbulb** enumeration. Because of the location of the definition of this function, it is now a method associated with the **Lightbulb** type. We would call it “a method on **Lightbulb**.” The function appears to take a single argument (`ambient`), but because it is a method, it also takes an implicit argument named `self` of type **Lightbulb**. All Swift methods have a `self` argument, which is used to access the instance on which the method is called – in this case, the instance of **Lightbulb**.

Create a variable to represent a lightbulb and call your new method.

Listing 14.20 Turning on the light

```
...
enum Lightbulb {
```

```

case on
case off

func surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperature ambient: Double)
    switch self {
        case .on:
            return ambient + 150.0

        case .off:
            return ambient
    }
}

var bulb = Lightbulb.on
let ambientTemperature = 77.0

var bulbTemperature = bulb.surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperature: ambientTemperature)
print("the bulb's temperature is \(bulbTemperature)")

```

First you create `bulb`, an instance of the **Lightbulb** type. When you have an instance of the type, you can call methods on that instance using the syntax `instance.methodName(parameters)`. You do exactly that here when you call `bulb.surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperature: ambientTemperature)`. The `bulb` variable is an instance of **Lightbulb**, `surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperature:)` is the name of the method you are calling, and `ambientTemperature` is a parameter you pass in to the method. You store the result of the method call, a **Double**, in the `bulbTemperature` variable. Finally, you print a string with the bulb's temperature to the console.

Another method that would be useful is one that toggles the lightbulb. To toggle the lightbulb, you need to modify `self` to change it from on to off or off to on. Try to add a `toggle()` method that takes no arguments and does not return anything.

Listing 14.21 Trying to toggle

```

...
enum Lightbulb {
    case on
    case off

    func surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperature ambient: Double)
        switch self {
            case .on:
                return ambient + 150.0

```

```

        case .off:
            return ambient
    }

func toggle() {
    switch self {
    case .on:
        self = .off

    case .off:
        self = .on
    }
}

...

```

After typing this, you will get a compiler error that states that you cannot assign to `self` inside a method. In Swift, an enumeration is a *value type*, and methods on value types are not allowed to make changes to `self` (more on value types in [Chapter 15](#)). If you want to allow a method on a value type to change `self`, you need to mark the method as *mutating*. Add this to your code.

Listing 14.22 Making `toggle()` a mutating method

```

...
mutating func toggle() {
    switch self {
    case .on:
        self = .off

    case .off:
        self = .on
    }
}
...
```

Now you can toggle your lightbulb and see what the temperature is when the bulb is off.

Listing 14.23 Turning off the light

```

...
var bulbTemperature = bulb.surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperat
                                              ambientTemperature)
print("the bulb's temperature is \(bulbTemperature)")

bulb.toggle()
```

```
bulbTemperature = bulb.surfaceTemperature(forAmbientTemperature: 60)
print("the bulb's temperature is \(bulbTemperature)")
```


Associated Values

Everything you have done so far with enumerations falls into the same general category of defining static cases that enumerate possible values or states. Swift also offers a much more powerful flavor of enumeration: cases with associated values. Associated values allow you to attach data to instances of an enumeration, and different cases can have different types of associated values.

Create an enumeration that allows for tracking the dimensions of a couple of basic shapes. Each kind of shape has different types of properties. To represent a square, you need a single value (the length of one side). To represent a rectangle, you need two values: a width and a height.

Listing 14.24 Setting up ShapeDimensions

```
...
enum ShapeDimensions {
    // square's associated value is the length of one side
    case square(side: Double)

    // rectangle's associated value defines its width and height
    case rectangle(width: Double, height: Double)
}
```

You have defined a new enumeration type, **ShapeDimensions**, with two cases. The square case has an associated value of type (**side: Double**). The rectangle case has an associated value of type (**width: Double, height: Double**). Both of these are named tuples (first seen in [Chapter 12](#)).

To create instances of **ShapeDimensions**, you must specify both the case and an appropriate associated value for the case.

Listing 14.25 Creating shapes

```
...
enum ShapeDimensions {
    // square's associated value is the length of one side
    case square(side: Double)

    // rectangle's associated value defines its width and height
    case rectangle(width: Double, height: Double)
}

var squareShape = ShapeDimensions.square(side: 10.0)
var rectShape = ShapeDimensions.rectangle(width: 5.0, height: 10.
```

Here, you create a square with sides 10 units long and a rectangle that is 5 units by 10 units.

You can use a switch statement to unpack and use an associated value. Add a method to

ShapeDimensions that computes the area of a shape.

Listing 14.26 Using associated values to compute area

```
...
enum ShapeDimensions {
    // square's associated value is the length of one side
    case square(side: Double)

    // rectangle's associated value defines its width and height
    case rectangle(width: Double, height: Double)

    func area() -> Double {
        switch self {
            case let .square(side: side):
                return side * side

            case let .rectangle(width: w, height: h):
                return w * h
        }
    }
}
...
```

In your implementation of **area()**, you switch on **self** just as you did earlier in the chapter. Here, the switch cases use Swift’s pattern matching to bind **self**’s associated value with a new variable (or variables).

Call the **area()** method on the instances you created earlier to see it in action.

Listing 14.27 Computing areas

```
...
var squareShape = ShapeDimensions.square(side: 10.0)
var rectShape = ShapeDimensions.rectangle(width: 5.0, height: 10.0)

print("square's area = \(squareShape.area())")
print("rectangle's area = \(rectShape.area())")
```

Not all enum cases need to have associated values. For example, you could add a **point** case. Geometric points do not have any dimensions. To add a **point**, leave off the associated value type.

Add a **point** to your enum and update the **area()** method to include its area.

Listing 14.28 Setting up a point

```
...
enum ShapeDimensions {
    // point has no associated value - it is dimensionless
    case point
```

```

// square's associated value is the length of one side
case square(side: Double)

// rectangle's associated value defines its width and height
case rectangle(width: Double, height: Double)

func area() -> Double {
    switch self {
        case .point:
            return 0

        case let .square(side: side):
            return side * side

        case let .rectangle(width: w, height: h):
            return w * h
    }
}

...

```

Now, create an instance of a point and confirm that **area()** works as expected.

Listing 14.29 What is the area of a point?

```

...
var squareShape = ShapeDimensions.square(side: 10.0)
var rectShape = ShapeDimensions.rectangle(width: 5.0, height: 10.0)
var pointShape = ShapeDimensions.point

print("square's area = \(squareShape.area())")
print("rectangle's area = \(rectShape.area())")
print("point's area = \(pointShape.area())")

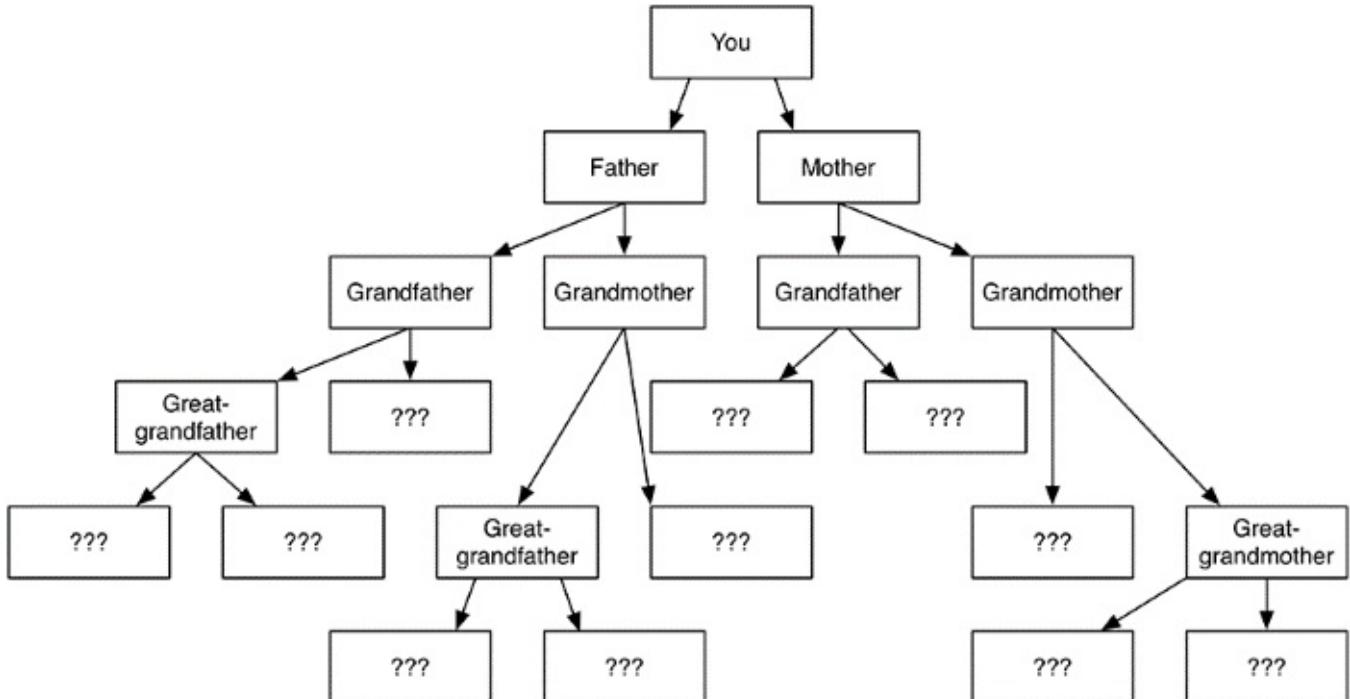
```


Recursive Enumerations

You now know how to attach associated values to enum cases. This brings up a curious question. Can you attach an associated value of an enum's own type to one of its cases? (Perhaps this question brings up another: Why would you want to?)

A data structure that comes up frequently in computer science is a tree. Most hierarchical data can naturally be represented as a tree. Think of a family tree: It contains people (the “nodes” of the tree) and ancestral relationships (the “edges” of the tree). The family tree branching stops when you reach an ancestor you do not know, as in [Figure 14.2](#).

Figure 14.2 A family tree



Modeling a family tree can be difficult because for any given person, you may know zero, one, or both of their parents. If you know one or both parents, you would like to keep track of their ancestors as well. Try to create an enum that will let you build up as much of your family tree as you know.

Listing 14.30 An attempt at `FamilyTree`

```
...
enum FamilyTree {
    case noKnownParents
    case oneKnownParent(name: String, ancestors: FamilyTree)
    case twoKnownParents(fatherName: String, fatherAncestors: FamilyTree, motherName: String, motherAncestors: FamilyTree)
}
```

Once you have typed this in, Xcode gives you an error that contains a suggested fix:
Recursive enum 'FamilyTree' is not marked 'indirect'. **FamilyTree** is recursive because its cases have an associated value that is also of type **FamilyTree**. But why does the

language care if an enum is recursive?

The answer to that question requires you to understand a little bit about how enumerations work under the hood. The Swift compiler has to know how much memory every instance of every type in your program will occupy. You do not (usually) have to worry about this, as the compiler figures it all out for you when it builds your program. Enumerations, however, are a little tricky.

The compiler knows that any instance of an enum will only ever be in one case at a time, although it may change cases as your program runs. Therefore, when the compiler is deciding how much memory an instance of enum requires, it will look at each case and figure out which case requires the most memory. The instance will require that much memory (plus a little bit more that the compiler will use to keep track of which case is currently assigned).

Look back at your **ShapeDimensions** enum. The point case has no associated data, so it requires no extra memory. The square case has an associated **Double**, so it requires one **Double**'s worth of memory (8 bytes). The rectangle case has two associated **Doubles**, so it requires 16 bytes of memory. The actual size of an instance of **ShapeDimensions** is 17 bytes: enough room to store rectangle, if necessary, plus 1 byte to keep track of which case the instance actually is.

Now consider your **FamilyTree** enum. How much memory is required for the `oneKnownParent` case? Enough memory for a **String** plus enough memory for an instance of **FamilyTree**. See the problem? The compiler cannot determine how big a **FamilyTree** is without knowing how big a **FamilyTree** is. Looking at it another way, **FamilyTree** would require an infinite amount of memory!

To solve this issue, Swift can introduce a layer of indirection. Instead of deciding how much memory `oneKnownParent` will require (which would lead back into infinite recursion), you can use the keyword `indirect` to instruct the compiler to instead store the enum's data behind a pointer. We do not discuss pointers much in this book because Swift does not make you deal with them. Even in this case, you do not have to do anything except opt in to making **FamilyTree** use pointers under the hood. Do that now, and you are well on your way to modeling a family tree.

Listing 14.31 Correct FamilyTree

```
...
indirect enum FamilyTree {
    case noKnownParents
    case oneKnownParent(name: String, ancestors: FamilyTree)
    case twoKnownParents(fatherName: String, fatherAncestors: Fa
                         motherName: String, motherAncestors: Fa
}
```

How does using a pointer solve the “infinite memory” problem? The compiler now knows to store a pointer to the associated data, putting the data somewhere else in memory rather than making the instance of **FamilyTree** big enough to hold the data. The size of an instance of **FamilyTree** is now 8 bytes on a 64-bit architecture – the size of one pointer.

It is worth noting that you do not have to mark the entire enumeration as indirect: You can also mark individual recursive cases as indirect. Make that change now.

Listing 14.32 FamilyTree indirect cases

```
...
indirect enum FamilyTree {
    case noKnownParents
    indirect case oneKnownParent(name: String, ancestors: FamilyTree)
    indirect case twoKnownParents(fatherName: String, fatherAncestors: FamilyTree,
                                  motherName: String, motherAncestors: FamilyTree)
}
```

Now that **FamilyTree** is accepted by the compiler, create an instance to model Fred's family tree. Fred does not know many of his ancestors, which is nice for you because typing out an instance of **FamilyTree** is a little onerous!

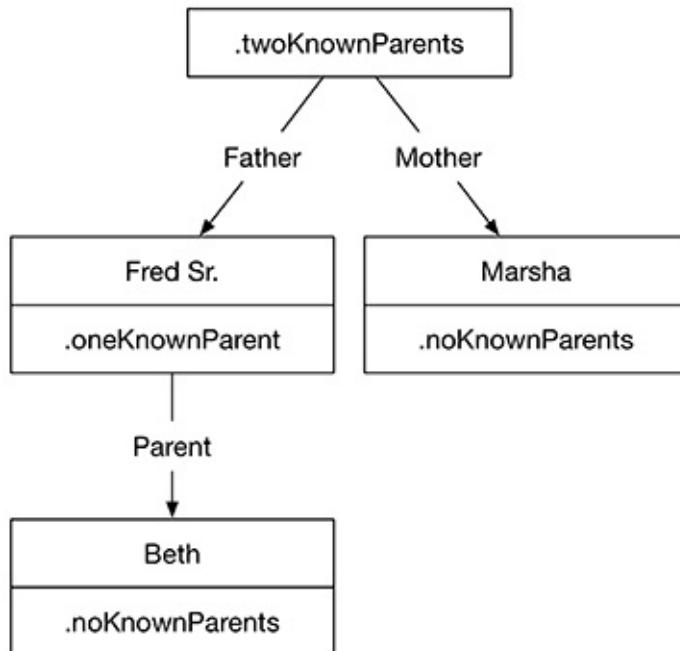
He knows both of his parents, so you need to use the `twoKnownParents` case. He only knows one of his father's parents, so you need to use the `oneKnownParent` case for his father's ancestors. He does not know either of his mother's parents or either of his great-grandparents on his father's side, so you need to use the `noKnownParents` case for both of those ancestor values.

Listing 14.33 Creating a FamilyTree

```
...
let fredAncestors = FamilyTree.twoKnownParents(
    fatherName: "Fred Sr.",
    fatherAncestors: .oneKnownParent(name: "Beth", ancestors: .noKnownParents),
    motherName: "Marsha",
    motherAncestors: .noKnownParents)
```

This code is described graphically by [Figure 14.3](#).

Figure 14.3 Fred's family tree



`fredAncestors` is a recursive enumeration that represents Fred's known family tree, with each node in the tree representing an instance of the same enumeration. As you can see, this sort of enumeration models nested information quite well.

Bronze Challenge

Add a **perimeter()** method to the **ShapeDimensions** enum. This method should compute the perimeter of a shape (the sum of the length of all its edges). Make sure you handle all the cases!

Silver Challenge

Add another case to the **ShapeDimensions** enum for a right triangle. You can ignore the orientation of the triangle. Just keep track of the lengths of its three sides. Adding a new case will cause your playground to give you an error in the **area()** method. Fix the error.

Structs and Classes

Structures (commonly referred to as structs) and classes are the pillars on which you build your applications. They provide important mechanisms to model the things you wish to represent in your code.

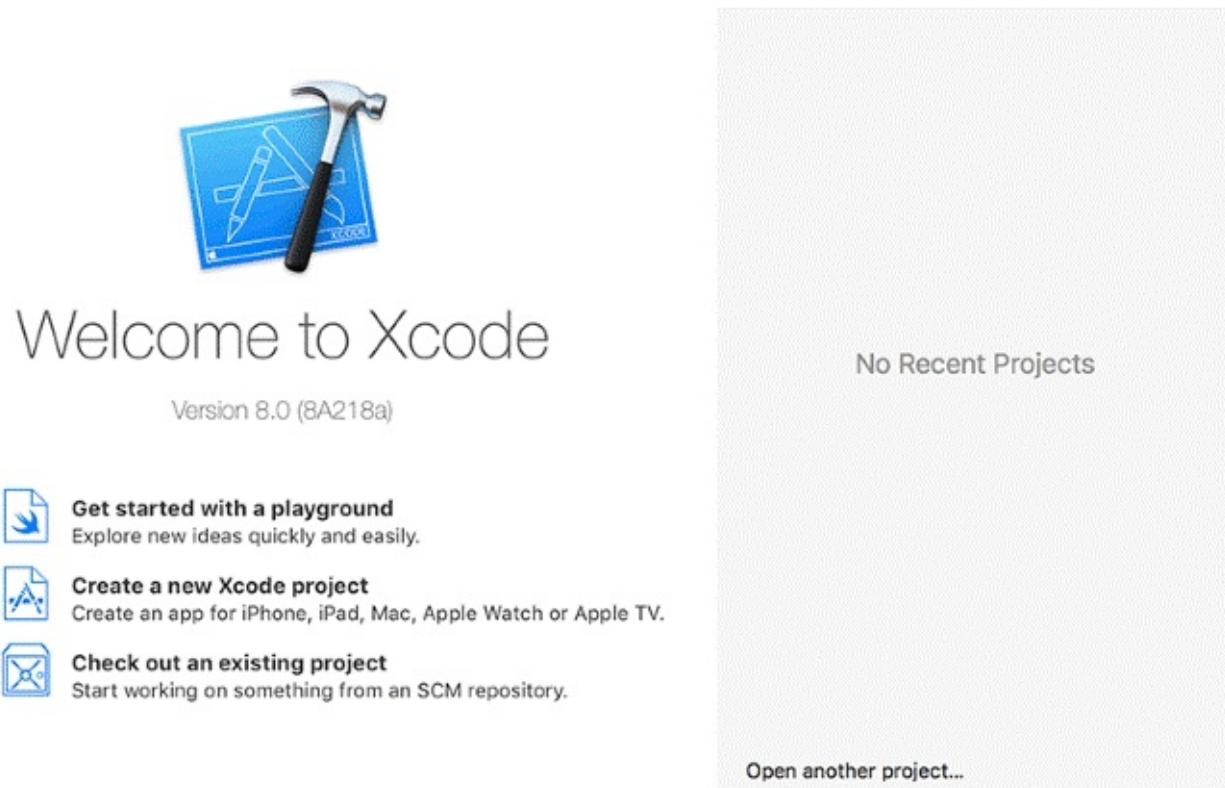
You are going to transition from the playground and create a *command-line tool*, which you will work in for the next several chapters. Your command-line tool project will represent a town undergoing a serious monster infestation. You will use both structs and classes to model these entities and will give them properties to store data and functions so that these entities can do some work.

As you will see, structs and classes have similarities and differences. Which to use for any particular situation is an important decision. This chapter will get you started with understanding their strengths, and in [Chapter 18](#) you will learn more about when to use each.

A New Project

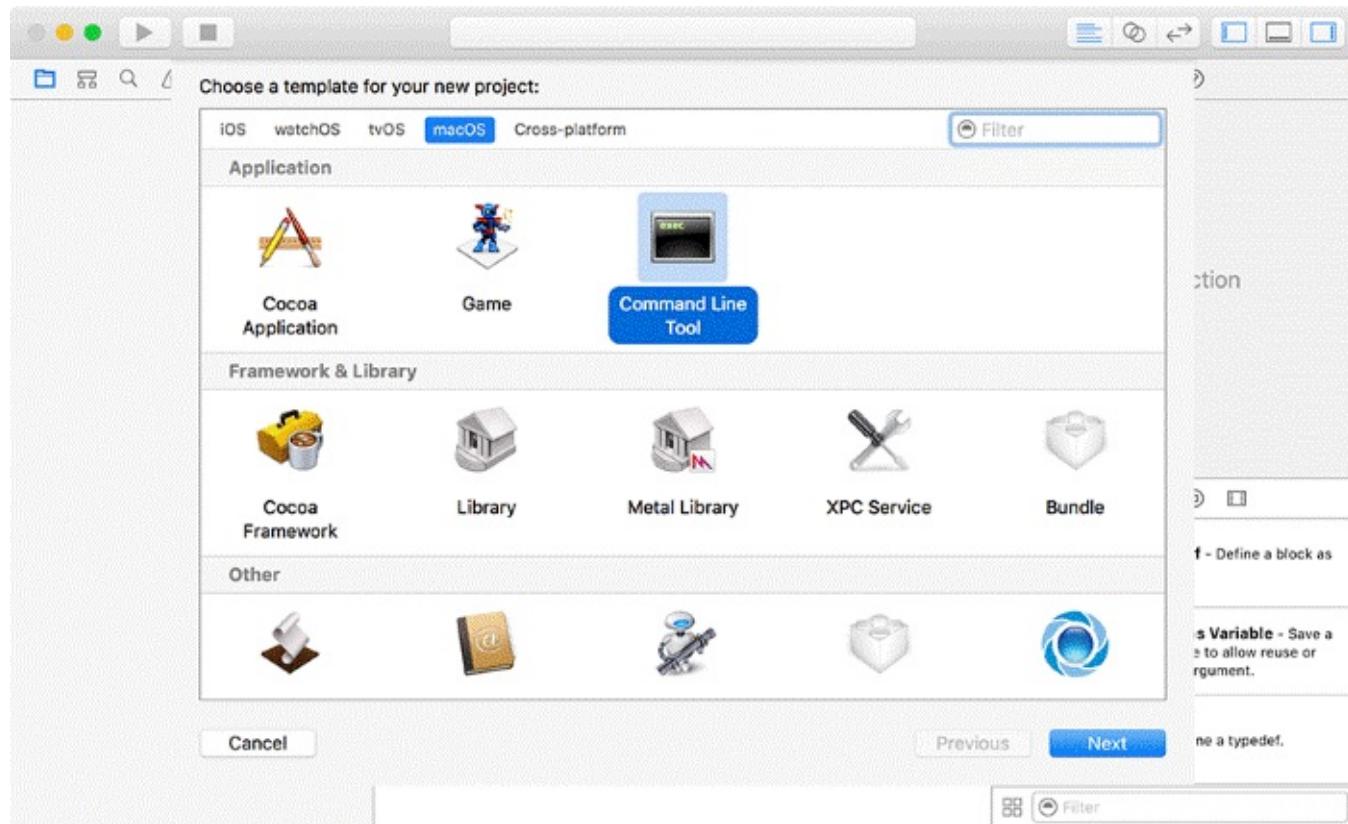
Create a new project by clicking on [Create a new Xcode project](#) in the Welcome window ([Figure 15.1](#)). If you already have Xcode running, click **File → New → Project...**.

Figure 15.1 Welcome window



Next, you will select a project *template*. A template formats your project with a number of presets and configurations common to a given style of application. Along the top of the window, notice that there are several options: iOS, watchOS, tvOS, macOS, and Cross-platform. Select macOS. Next, in the Application area of the window, choose the Command Line Tool template and click Next ([Figure 15.2](#)). This template will create a very basic project.

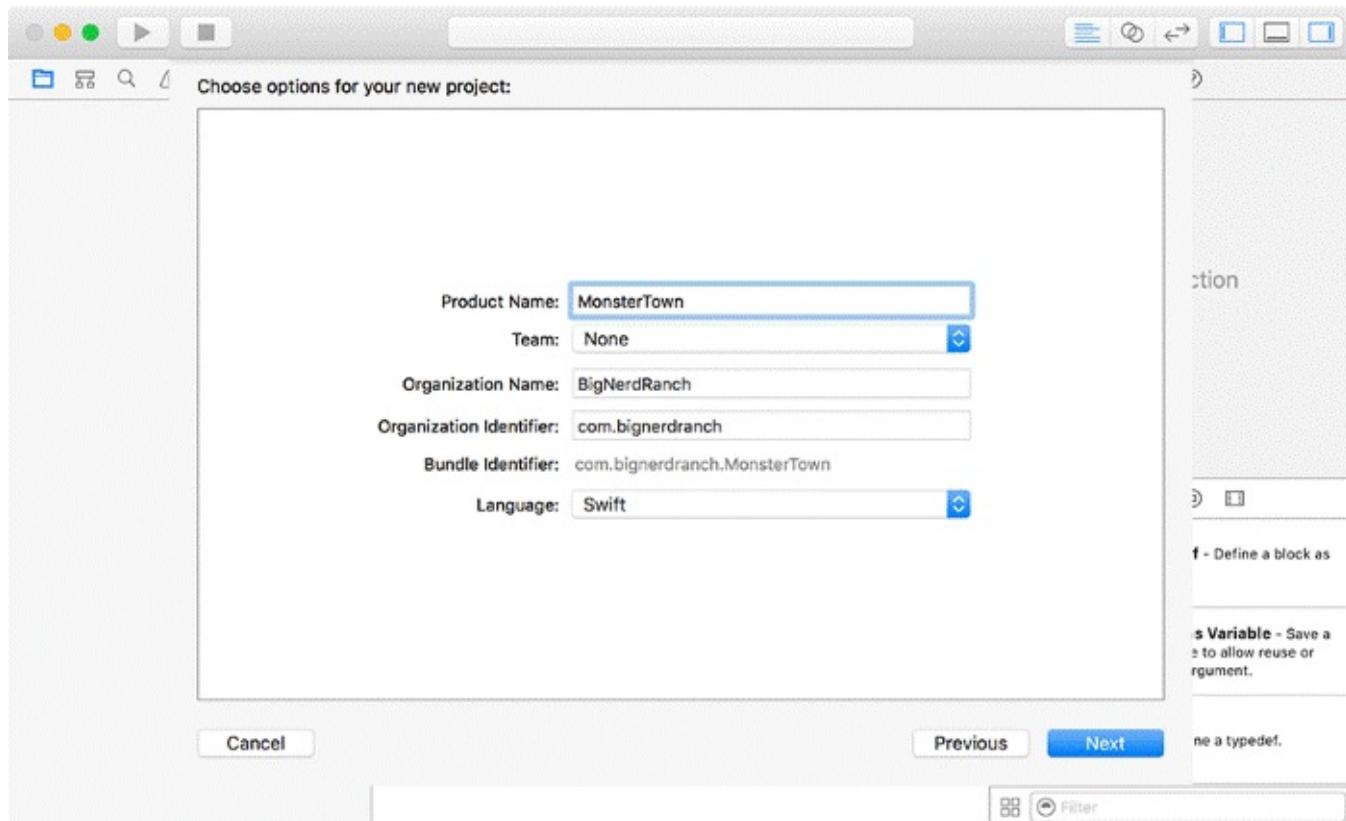
Figure 15.2 Choosing a template



Now you will choose options for your project, including a name (Figure 15.3). In the Product Name field, enter **MonsterTown**. Enter **BigNerdRanch** (or whatever you would like) for the project's Organization Name. The Organization Identifier fills in for you using *reverse Domain Name Service* notation (reverse DNS); this identifier is used with the product name to create the Bundle Identifier. The bundle ID is used to identify your application on iTunes Connect when you are ready to distribute your application. (Do not worry about the Team field; that is used for signing and distributing your application.)

Select Swift for the Language option and click Next.

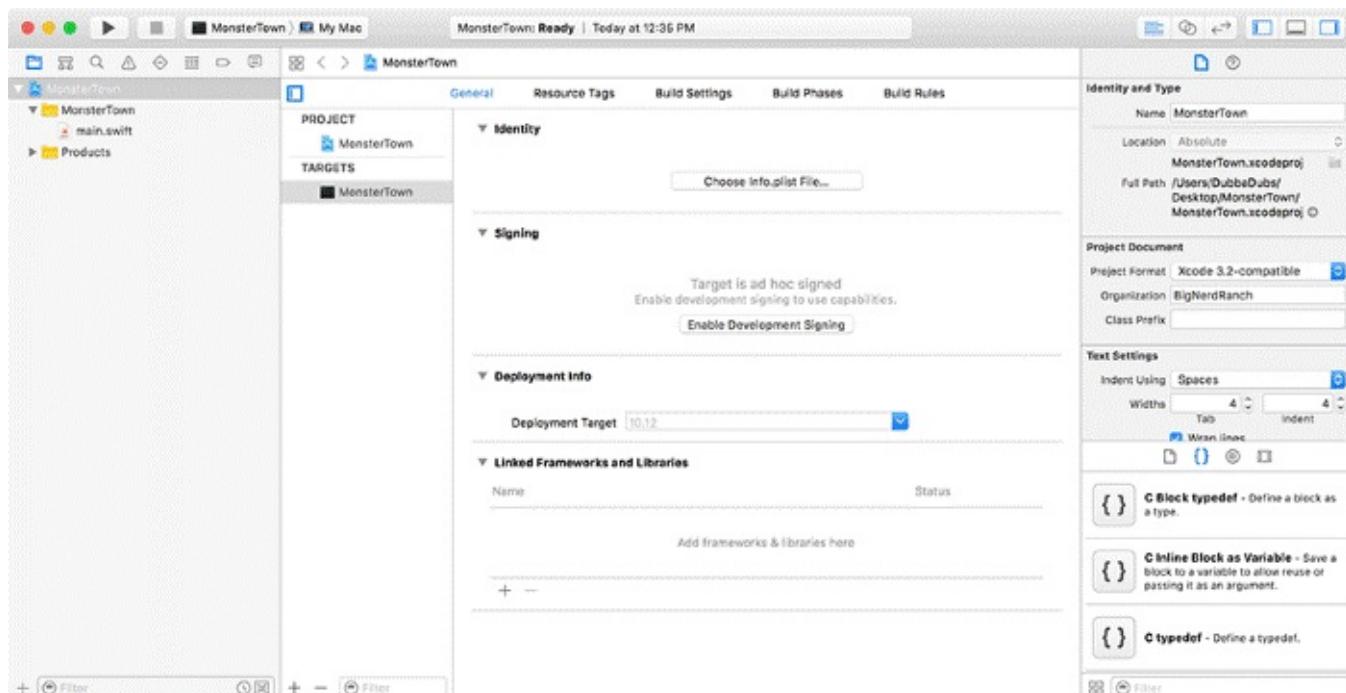
Figure 15.3 Naming your project



Last, Xcode asks you where to save the project. Select a good location and click Create.

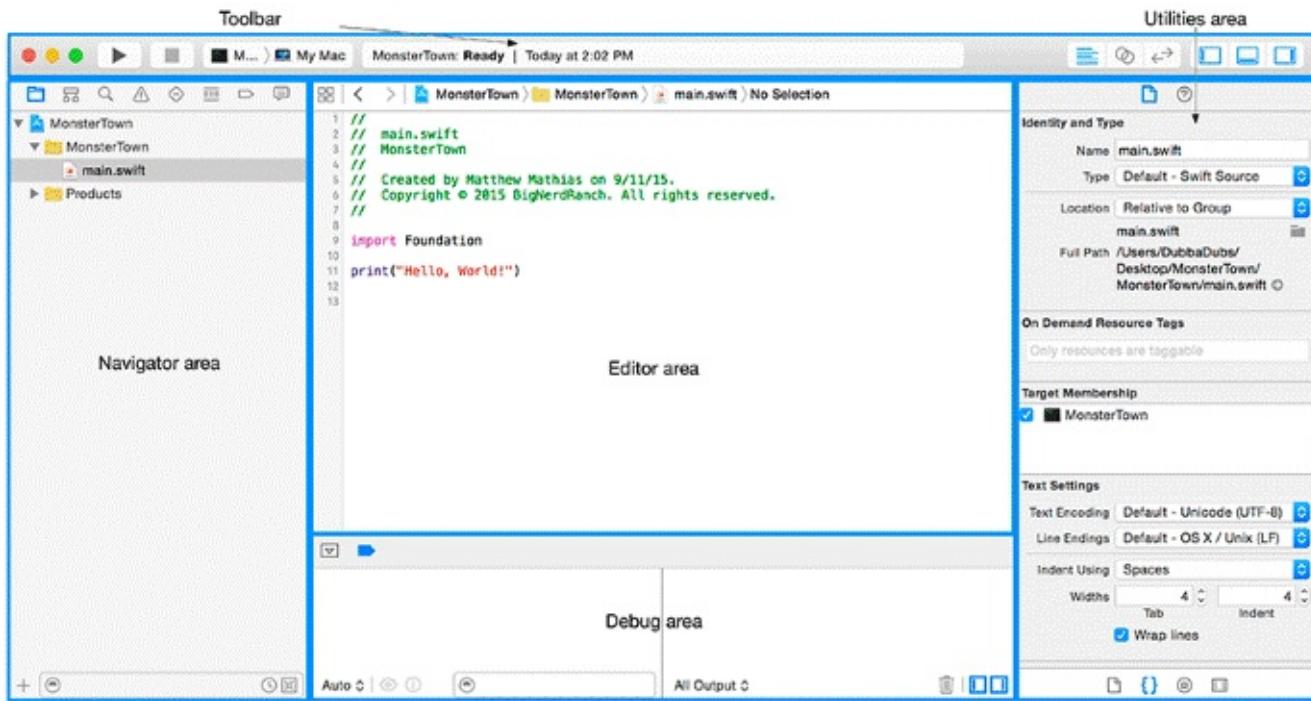
Your project opens in Xcode with the project file selected, as shown in [Figure 15.4](#). This file allows you to manage various settings for your application. For example, you can sign your application for deployment, link to frameworks to use in your development, and much more.

Figure 15.4 The project file



Let's take a moment to look at the organization of the Xcode application window. [Figure 15.5](#) provides a high-level overview of the most prominent sections.

Figure 15.5 Organization of Xcode



The pane on the far left is the *navigator area*. It provides several views that encapsulate how your project is organized. The view that opens by default is the *project navigator*. In the project navigator, you see a listing of your files, which at the moment only includes `main.swift`.

Moving one section to the right, you see the *editor area*. This is where you will add, view, and edit the code in a selected file.

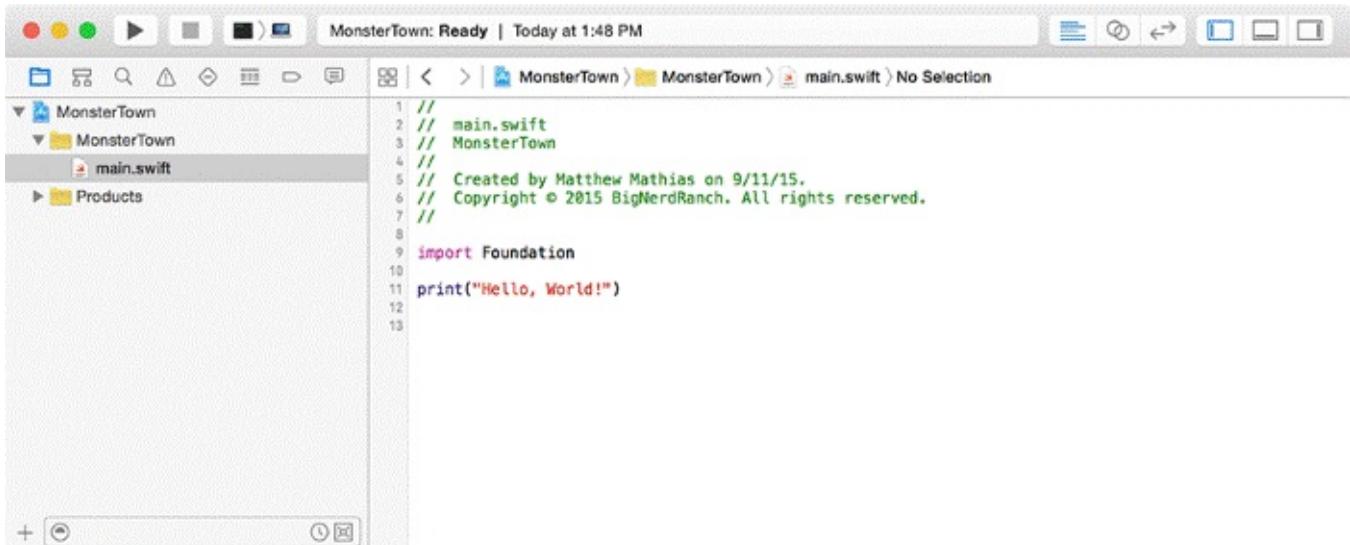
On the far right is the *utilities area*. The utilities area provides several inspectors that allow you to get more information, such as the *file inspector*, which gives information about a file's location, name, and so on.

At the bottom of the Xcode window is the *debug area*. You will use this area to debug your code when there are problems.

At the top of the window is the toolbar, which has Play and Stop buttons you will use to run and stop your programs. The toolbar also has three buttons on the far right to display and hide the navigator, utilities, and debug areas.

Notice that Xcode created a `main.swift` file for your application ([Figure 15.6](#)).

Figure 15.6 main.swift



The screenshot shows the Xcode interface with the title bar "MonsterTown: Ready | Today at 1:48 PM". The left sidebar shows a project structure with "MonsterTown" and "main.swift" selected. The main editor area displays the following Swift code:

```
1 // main.swift
2 // MonsterTown
3 //
4 // Created by Matthew Mathias on 9/11/15.
5 // Copyright © 2015 BigNerdRanch. All rights reserved.
6 //
7 //
8
9 import Foundation
10 print("Hello, World!")
```

In a command-line tool, `main.swift` represents the entry point of your program. `main.swift` typically contains “top-level” code, or code that is not contained within the implementation of any function or defined on a specific type (like a struct or a class). The execution of the code in this file is order dependent: It executes from the top to the bottom.

Because `main.swift` is where your program starts running, the code in this file typically does set-up work. As you will see, you will define types in other files and create instances of them in `main.swift`. For example, you will create a `Town.swift` file to hold a definition of a struct called `Town`. Then you will create an instance of `Town` in `main.swift`.

Types are frequently defined in their own files to help organize an application’s source code. This strategy makes it easier to find and debug code.

Notice that the `main.swift` file already has the following code:

```
import Foundation

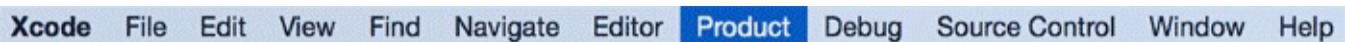
print("Hello, World!")
```

The `import Foundation` code brings the `Foundation` framework into the `main.swift` file. This framework consists of a number of classes primarily designed to do work in and with Objective-C. In the future, we will ignore this line of code unless you need it for context in the code listing or for using one of the types it provides. The `print("Hello, World!")` code should look familiar. It logs the string `Hello, World!` to the console.

Build and run your program. You can do this several ways:

- Click Product in the toolbar at the top of your screen (see [Figure 15.7](#)), then select Run.
- Press Command-R on your keyboard.
- Click the triangular play button in the upper lefthand corner.

Figure 15.7 Xcode toolbar



After you run your program, `Hello, World!` is logged to the console, along with information

from the compiler about how the program ended. That is great, but you have seen strings logged to the console before. Let's make your program more interesting by creating custom structs and classes. Before you move on, delete `print("Hello, World!")`; you will not need it.

Listing 15.1 Removing “Hello, World!” (`main.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
print("Hello, World!")
```

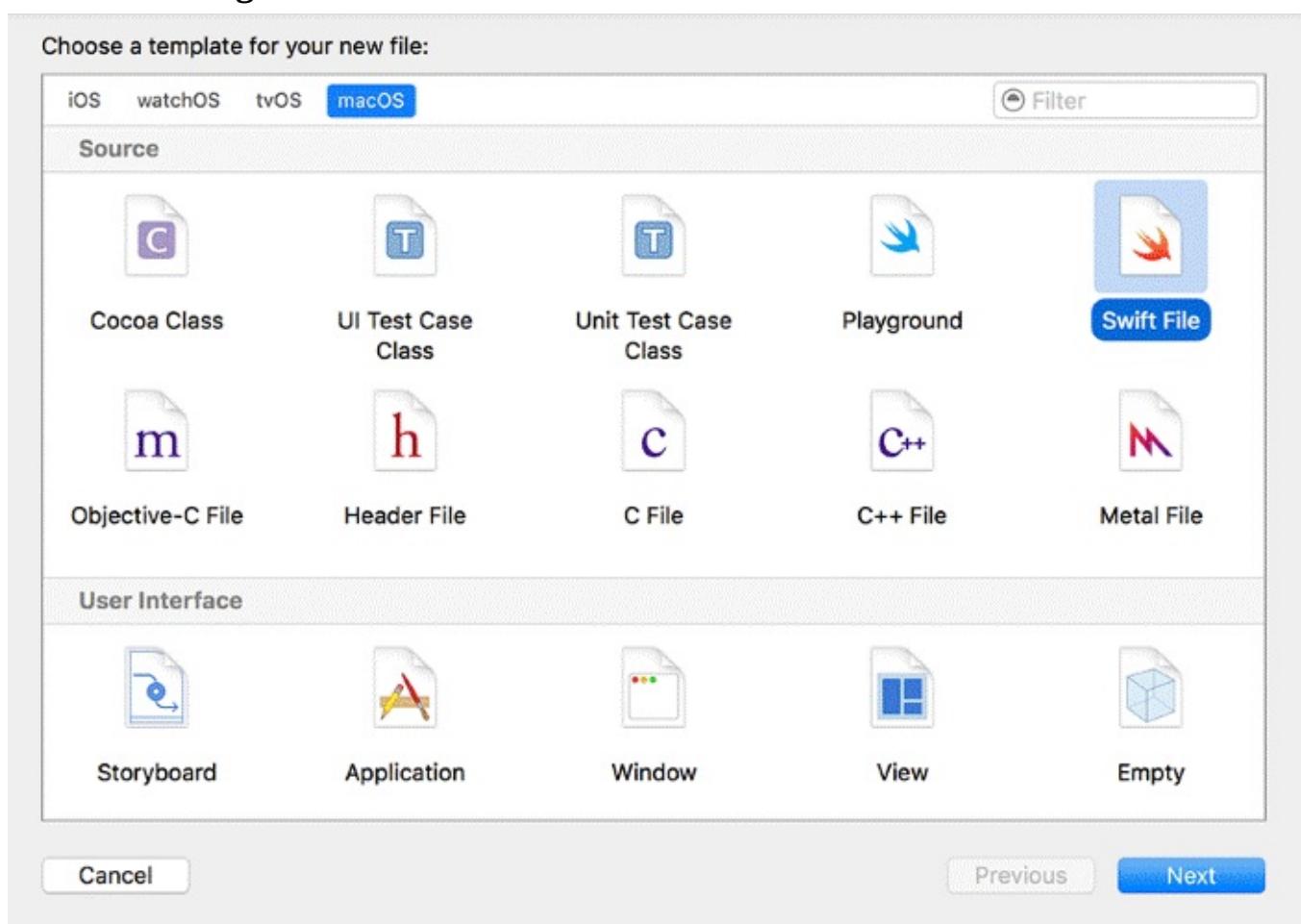

Structures

A *struct* is a type that groups a set of related chunks of data together in memory. You use structs when you would like to group data together under a common type. For example, you will create a struct called **Town** in **MonsterTown** to model a town with a monster problem.

Making **Town** a struct encapsulates its data within a single type, and placing its definition in its own file provides a convenient location to find its implementation. In previous chapters, you modeled a town in a playground. Because the example was relatively small, this was not all that limiting. A playground is great for rapidly prototyping some code, but it does not really match the sort of projects that you will be working with in real app development. It is better to encapsulate the definition of the town within its own type.

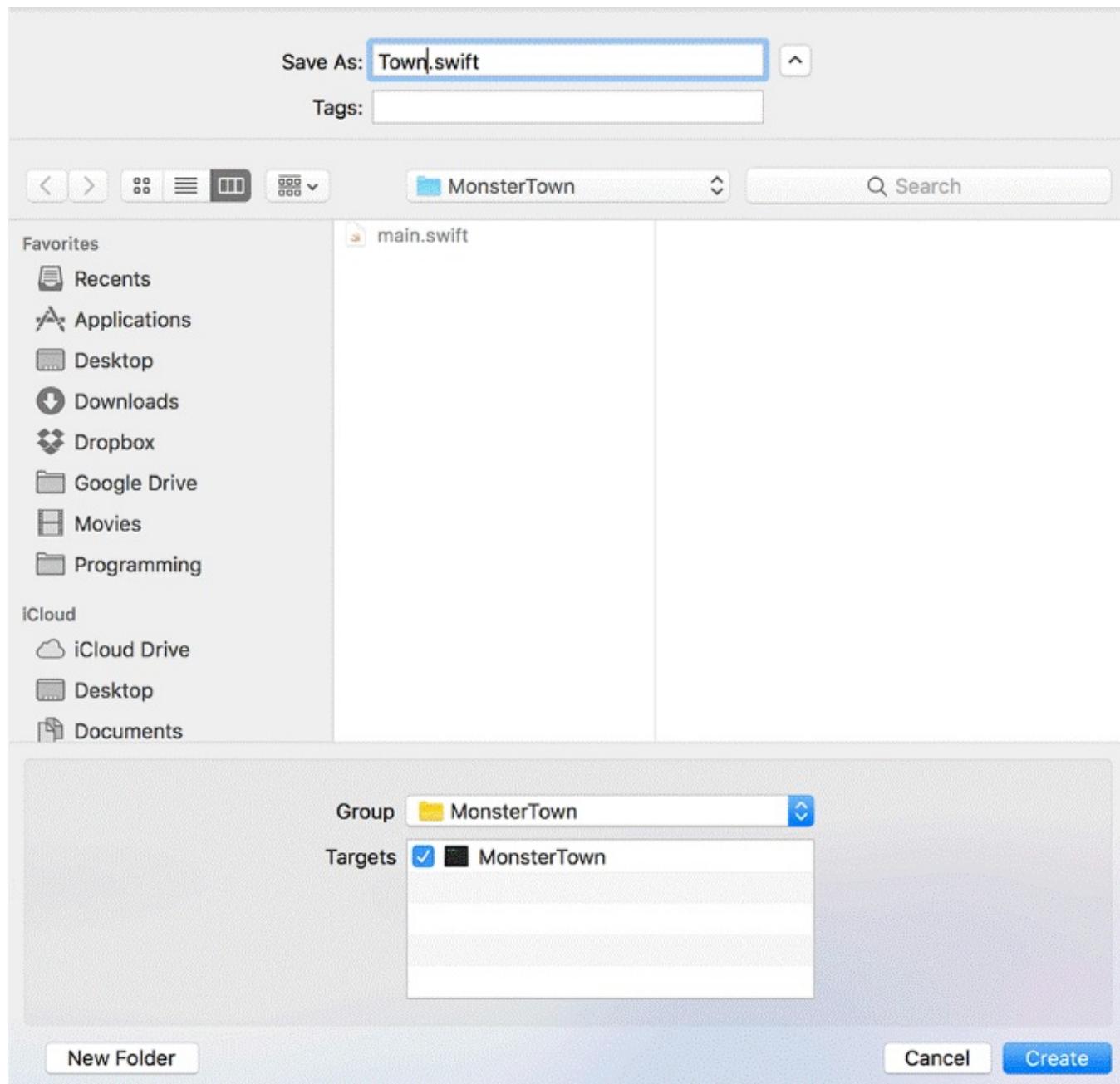
Add a new file to your project by clicking `File → New → File...`. You can also press Command-N on your keyboard. A new window, like the one shown in [Figure 15.8](#), prompts you to select a template for your new file. With `macOS` selected at the top, choose `Swift File` from the `Source` section and click `Next`.

Figure 15.8 Adding a Swift file



Next you are asked to name the new file and set its location. Call the file **Town** and make sure the box is checked to add it to the **MonsterTown** target ([Figure 15.9](#)). Click `Create`.

Figure 15.9 Town.swift



Your new file opens automatically. (If it does not, select `Town.swift` in the navigator area.) It is nearly blank: just the comments at the top and the `import Foundation` line.

Start declaring your **Town** struct.

Listing 15.2 Declaring a struct (`Town.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
struct Town {
```

```
}
```

The keyword `struct` signals that you are declaring a struct, in this case named **Town**. You will add code between the braces (`{}`) to define the behavior of this struct. For example, you

are about to add variables to your new struct so that it can hold on to some data that will help to model the characteristics of your town.

Technically, these variables are called *properties*, which is the subject of the next chapter. Properties can be variable or constant, as you have seen before using the var and let keywords. Add some properties to your struct.

Listing 15.3 Adding properties (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {  
    var population = 5_422  
    var numberOfStoplights = 4  
}
```

Here, you add two properties to **Town**: `population` and `numberOfStoplights`. Both of these properties are mutable – this makes sense, because a town’s population and number of stoplights are likely to change over time. These properties also have default values for the sake of simplicity. When a new instance of the **Town** struct is made, it will default to having a population of 5,422 and 4 stoplights.

Switch to your `main.swift` file and create a new instance of **Town** to see your struct in action.

Listing 15.4 Creating an instance of Town (`main.swift`)

```
var myTown = Town()  
print("Population: \(myTown.population),  
    number of stoplights: \(myTown.numberOfStoplights)")
```

(Note that the code in the `print()` call above is split into two lines due to page-size limitations. If you enter the code exactly as it is shown above, you will see an error. Avoid this by writing the `print()` call on one line.)

You accomplish three things with this code.

First, you create an instance of the **Town** type. You do this by entering the name of the type (here, **Town**) followed by empty parentheses (). Including the empty parentheses calls the default initializer for **Town** (more on initialization in [Chapter 17](#)).

Second, you set this new instance equal to a variable you call `myTown`.

Third, you use string interpolation to print the values of the **Town** struct’s two properties to the console. Notice that you use dot syntax to access the properties’ values. For example, the syntax `myTown.population` retrieves the population of the `myTown` instance.

Run your program. The output reads `Population: 5422, number of stoplights: 4` ([Figure 15.10](#)).

Figure 15.10 Describing myTown

The screenshot shows the Xcode interface with the following details:

- Project Navigator:** Shows the project structure with `MonsterTown` as the target, containing `main.swift` and `Town.swift`.
- Editor:** Displays the `main.swift` file content:

```
1 // main.swift
2 // MonsterTown
3 //
4 // Created by Matthew Mathias on 9/11/15.
5 // Copyright © 2015 BigNerdRanch. All rights reserved.
6 //
7 //
8 import Foundation
9
10 var myTown = Town()
11 print("Population: \(myTown.population), number of stoplights: \(myTown.numberOfStoplights)")
```
- Output Window:** Shows the console output:

```
Population: 5422, number of stoplights: 4
Program ended with exit code: 0
```
- Identity and Type:** A sidebar panel showing the file's properties: Name is `main.swift`, Type is `Default - Swift Source`, Location is `Relative to Group`, and Full Path is `/Users/DubaDubs/.../MonsterTown/main.swift`.
- Search Results:** Below the Identity and Type panel, it says "No Matches".

Instance Methods

The `print()` function above is a fine way to print a description of `myTown`. But a town should know how to describe itself. Create a function on the `Town` struct that prints the values of its properties to the console. Navigate to your `Town.swift` file and add the following function definition.

Listing 15.5 Letting Town describe itself (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {  
    var population = 5_422  
    var numberOfStoplights = 4  
  
    func printDescription() {  
        print("Population: \(population);  
              number of stoplights: \(numberOfStoplights)")  
    }  
}
```

`printDescription()` is a method because it is a function that is associated with a particular type. (Recall from [Chapter 14](#) that this is the definition of a method.) Thus far, you have mainly worked with what are called *global functions*. Global functions are not defined on any specific type, and for this reason they are also called *free functions*.

`printDescription()` takes no arguments and returns nothing. Its purpose is to log a description of a town's properties to the console. That makes `printDescription()` an *instance method*, because it is called on a specific instance of `Town`.

To use your new instance method, you need to call it on an instance of `Town`. Navigate back to `main.swift` and replace the `print()` function with your new instance method.

Listing 15.6 Calling your new instance method (`main.swift`)

```
var myTown = Town()  
print("Population: \(myTown.population),  
      number of stoplights: \(myTown.numberOfStoplights)")  
myTown.printDescription()
```

You use dot syntax to call a function on an instance, as in `myTown.printDescription()`. Run your program. The console output is the same as before.

Mutating methods

Your `printDescription()` method is great for displaying your town's current information. But what if you need a function that *changes* your town's information? If an instance method on a struct changes any of the struct's properties, it must be marked as mutating. In `Town.swift`, add a mutating method to the `Town` type to increase a town

instance's population.

Listing 15.7 Adding a mutating method to increase population (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {  
    var population = 5_422  
    var numberOfStoplights = 4  
  
    func printDescription() {  
        print("Population: \(population);  
              number of stoplights: \(numberOfStoplights)")  
    }  
  
    mutating func changePopulation(by amount: Int) {  
        population += amount  
    }  
}
```

Note that you mark the instance method **changePopulation(by:)** with the **mutating** keyword. As in [Chapter 14](#), this means that the method can change the values in the struct. Both structures and enumerations are value types (which you will read more about later in the chapter) and require the **mutating** keyword on methods that change the value of an instance's properties.

The method has one parameter, **amount**, that is of the **Int** type. You use this parameter to increase the town's population in the line `population += amount`. Switch over to `main.swift` to exercise this function.

Listing 15.8 Increasing the population (`main.swift`)

```
var myTown = Town()  
myTown.changePopulation(by: 500)  
myTown.printDescription()
```

As before, you use dot syntax to call the function on your town. If you build and run the program you will see that `myTown`'s population has been increased by 500 and the console reads `Population: 5922; number of stoplights: 4`.

Classes

Like structs, classes are used to model related data under a common type. You will use classes in `MonsterTown` to model various types of monsters that will be terrorizing your town. Classes differ from structs in a few very important ways, and this section will highlight those differences.

A Monster class

Now that you have a struct representing a town, it is time to make things a little more interesting. Your town is, unfortunately, infested with monsters. This is not good for property values.

Create a new Swift file called `Monster`. As before, click `File → New → File...` or press `Command-N`. Select the `Swift File` template from the `Source` section under `macOS`.

This file will contain the definition for a `Monster` class that will be used to model a monster's properties and town-terrorizing activities. Start by creating a new class.

Listing 15.9 Monster setup (`Monster.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
class Monster {
```

```
}
```

The syntax to define a new class instance is nearly identical to the syntax used to define a new struct instance. You begin with the keyword `class`, followed by the name you are assigning to your new class. And, as before, the definition of the class takes place between the braces: `{}`.

For reasons relating to inheritance (discussed in the next section), the class `Monster` is defined in very general terms. This means that the `Monster` class will describe the general behavior of a monster. Later you will create different kinds of monsters that will have specific behaviors.

Listing 15.10 Defining the Monster class (`Monster.swift`)

```
class Monster {
    var town: Town?
    var name = "Monster"

    func terrorizeTown() {
        if town != nil {
            print("\(name) is terrorizing a town!")
        } else {
            print("\(name) hasn't found a town to terrorize yet..")
    }
}
```

```
}
```

It is well known that monsters do one thing very well: They terrorize towns. The **Monster** class has a property for the town that a given monster is terrorizing. Because the monster may or may not have found a town to terrorize yet, the `town` property is an optional (**Town?**), and it starts out `nil`. You also create a property for the **Monster**'s name and give it a generic default value.

Next, you define a basic stub for a method called **terrorizeTown()**. This method will be called on an instance of **Monster** to represent the monster terrorizing a town.

Notice that you check whether the instance has a `town` using `if town != nil`. If it does, then **terrorizeTown()** will log to the console the name of the monster wreaking havoc. If the instance does not have a town yet, then the method will log that information.

As each sort of monster will terrorize a town differently, *subclasses* will provide their own implementation of this function. You will learn about subclasses in the next section.

Switch to `main.swift` to exercise the **Monster** class. Add an instance of this type, give it a town, and call the **terrorizeTown()** function on it.

Listing 15.11 Setting a generic monster loose (main.swift)

```
var myTown = Town()  
myTown.changePopulation(by: 500)  
myTown.printDescription()  
let genericMonster = Monster()  
genericMonster.town = myTown  
genericMonster.terrorizeTown()
```

First, you create an instance of the **Monster** class called `genericMonster`. This instance is declared as a constant because there is no need for it to be mutable. Next, you assign `myTown` to `genericMonster`'s `town` property. Finally, you call the **terrorizeTown()** method on the **Monster** instance. Run the program, and `Monster` is terrorizing a town! logs to the console.

Inheritance

One of the main features of classes that structures do not have is *inheritance*. Inheritance is a relationship in which one class, a *subclass*, is defined in terms of another, a *superclass*. The subclass *inherits* the properties and methods of its superclass. In a sense, inheritance defines the genealogy of class types.

The fact that classes can take advantage of inheritance is the primary reason you made the **Monster** type a class. You are going to create subclasses of the **Monster** class to represent different kinds of monsters. Let's start with a **Zombie** subclass to see this relationship in practical terms.

A Zombie subclass

Create a new Swift file called `Zombie`, following the same steps as you did to create `Town.swift` and `Monster.swift`.

This file will hold the definition of a new class describing a zombie. The `Zombie` class will inherit from the `Monster` class. Add the following class declaration to see how.

Listing 15.12 `Zombie` creation (`Zombie.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    var walksWithLimp = true  
  
    override func terrorizeTown() {  
        town?.changePopulation(by: -10)  
        super.terrorizeTown()  
    }  
}
```

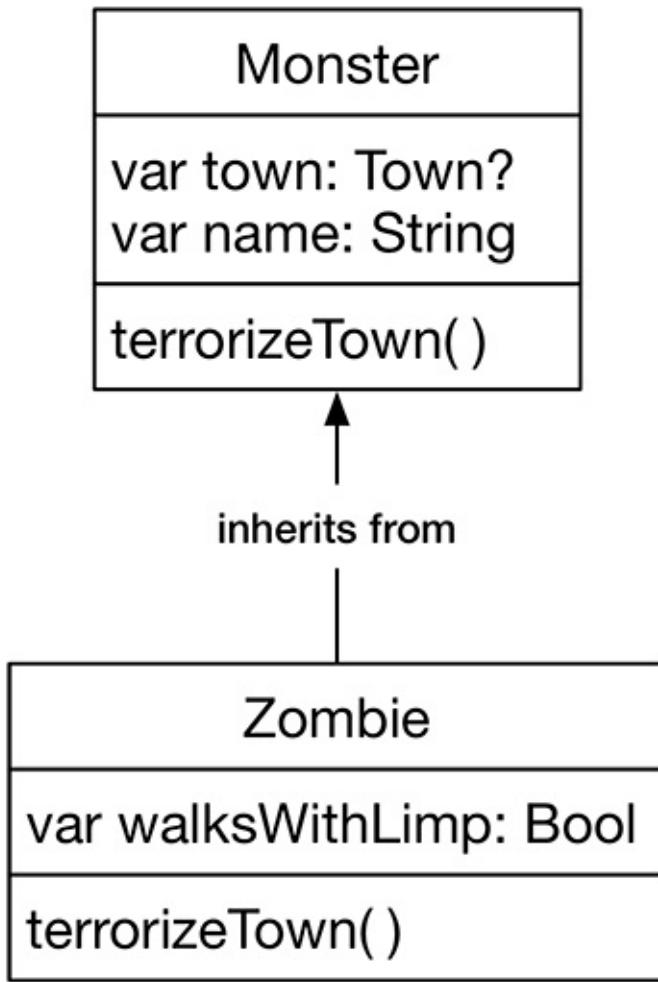
Your new class defines a type called `Zombie`. It inherits from the `Monster` type, which is indicated by the colon (:) and superclass name (`Monster`) after `Zombie`. Inheriting from `Monster` means that `Zombie` has all of `Monster`'s properties and methods, like the `town` property and the `terrorizeTown()` method used here.

`Zombie` also adds a new property. The property is called `walksWithLimp` and is of type `Bool`. This type is inferred from the property's default value: `true`.

Finally, `Zombie` overrides the `terrorizeTown()` method. Overriding a method means that a subclass provides its own definition of a method that is defined on its superclass. Note the use of the `override` keyword. Failing to use this keyword when overriding a method will result in a compiler error.

[Figure 15.11](#) shows `Zombie`'s relationship to `Monster`.

Figure 15.11 **Zombie** inheritance



Zombie inherits the properties `town` and `name` from the **Monster** class. It also inherits the `terrorizeTown()` method, but provides an override, which is why it is listed in both areas in the figure. Last, **Zombie** adds a property of its own: `walksWithLimp`.

Notice the line `super.terrorizeTown()` in [Listing 15.12](#). `super` is a prefix used to access a superclass's implementation of a method. In this case, you use `super` to call the **Monster** class's implementation of `terrorizeTown()`.

Because `super` is predicated on the idea of inheritance, it is not available to value types like enums or structs. It is invoked to borrow or override functionality from a superclass.

Recall that **Zombie**'s `town` property, inherited from the **Monster** class, is an optional of type `Town?`. You need to make sure that an instance of **Zombie** has a town to terrorize before calling any methods on the `town`. How can you check this?

One possible solution is to use optional binding. You might be tempted to try something like this:

```
if let terrorTown = town {  
    // Do something to terrorTown  
}
```

In the code above, if the **Zombie** instance has a `town`, then the value in the optional is

unwrapped and put into the constant `terrorTown`. After that, this value is ready to be terrorized, but with an important caveat: The value semantics of structs means that the `terrorTown` instance will not be the same as the `town` instance. Why? Because value types, including structs, are always copied when you pass them around in your code.

The problem with this is that any changes made on `terrorTown` will not be reflected in the `Zombie` instance's `town` property. In addition to this limitation, this code could also be more concise. In short, this is not an ideal solution.

As you saw in [Chapter 8](#), optional chaining allows a check like this to be done on a single line. It is just as expressive and is also more concise. Furthermore, the copy problem described above is avoided because the `Town` instance of interest is changed directly.

You have already used optional chaining in `MonsterTown`. Look back at [Listing 15.12](#). The code `town?.changePopulation(by: -10)` makes sure it is safe to call a function on the `town` instance. If the optional `town` has a value, then the method `changePopulation(by:)` is called on that instance, and the population is decreased by 10 people. In a moment, you will use optional chaining like this to call `printDescription()` on a zombie's town.

Preventing overriding

Sometimes you want to prevent subclasses from being able to override methods or properties. The need to do this is rare in practice, but it does come up. In these cases, you use the `final` keyword to prevent a method or property from being overridden.

Imagine, for example, that you specifically do not want subclasses of the `Zombie` type to provide their own implementation of the `terrorizeTown()` function. In other words, all subclasses of `Zombie` should terrorize their towns in the exact same way. Add the `final` keyword to this function's declaration.

Listing 15.13 Preventing overriding of `terrorizeTown()` (`Zombie.swift`)

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    var walksWithLimp = true  
  
    final override func terrorizeTown() {  
        town?.changePopulation(by: -10)  
        super.terrorizeTown()  
    }  
}
```

Now, subclasses of the `Zombie` class will not be able to override the `terrorizeTown()` method. Go ahead and create a new subclass of `Zombie` (in a new Swift file, as before) and name it `ZombieBoss`. Try to override the `terrorizeTown()` method.

Listing 15.14 Zombie bosses causing trouble (`ZombieBoss.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```

class ZombieBoss: Zombie {
    override func terrorizeTown() {
        print("terrorizing town...")
    }
}

```

You should see the following error on the line where you try to override the **terrorizeTown()** method: Instance method overrides a 'final' instance method. The error indicates that you cannot override **terrorizeTown()** because it is marked as **final** in the superclass.

Go ahead and delete the **ZombieBoss.swift** file. You will not be using it again. Select the file in the project navigator and press Delete on your keyboard. Choose **Move to Trash** in the pop-up.

Your town has a zombie problem

Now is a good time to exercise the **Zombie** type. Choose the **main.swift** file from the project navigator. Create an instance of the **Zombie** class. (Note that you delete the code that prints the town's description to free the console from clutter. You also delete the code that created a generic instance of the **Monster** type as you no longer need it.)

Listing 15.15 Who's afraid of fredTheZombie? (main.swift)

```

var myTown = Town()
myTown.changePopulation(by: 500)
myTown.printDescription()
let genericMonster = Monster()
genericMonster.town = myTown
genericMonster.terrorizeTown()
let fredTheZombie = Zombie()
fredTheZombie.town = myTown
fredTheZombie.terrorizeTown()
fredTheZombie.town?.printDescription()

```

You first create a new instance of the **Zombie** type named **fredTheZombie**. Next, you assign your preexisting instance of the **Town** type, **myTown**, to the **Zombie** type's property **town**. At this point, **fredTheZombie** is free to terrorize **myTown**, which it will do with alacrity. (Or, at least, as much alacrity as a zombie can muster.)

After **fredTheZombie** has terrorized the townsfolk, you check the results with the **printDescription()**. As discussed earlier, because **fredTheZombie**'s **town** property is an optional of type **Town?**, you have to unwrap it before you can call the **printDescription()** function on it. You do this with optional chaining: **fredTheZombie.town?**. This code ensures that **fredTheZombie** has a town before you try to

use **printDescription()**.

After **fredTheZombie** is done terrorizing its town, the console output should read:

Population: 5912; number of stoplights: 4.

What Should I Use?

The question of when to use a struct or a class is a difficult one. The answer involves understanding the differences between value types and reference types. We discuss the nuances of each in [Chapter 18](#) and provide guidance on when to use them.

Bronze Challenge

There is currently a bug in the **Zombie** type. If an instance of **Zombie** terrorizes a town with a population of 0, then its population will decrement to -10. This result does not make sense. Fix this bug by changing the **terrorizeTown()** method on the **Zombie** type to only decrement the town's population if its population is greater than 0. Also, make sure that the town's population is set to 0 if the amount to decrement is greater than the current population.

Silver Challenge

Create another subclass of the **Monster** type. Call this one **Vampire**.

Override the **terrorizeTown()** method so that every time an instance of the **Vampire** type terrorizes a town, it adds a new vampire thrall to an array of vampires on the **Vampire** type. This array of vampire thralls should be empty by default. Terrorizing a town should also decrement the town's population by 1.

Last, exercise this **Vampire** type in `main.swift`.

For the More Curious: Type Methods

In this chapter, you defined some instance methods that were called on instances of a type. For example, **terrorizeTown()** is an instance method that you can call on instances of the **Monster** type. You can additionally define methods that are called on the type itself. These are called type methods. Type methods are useful for working with type-level information.

Imagine a struct named **Square**:

```
struct Square {  
    static func numberOfSides() -> Int {  
        return 4  
    }  
}
```

For value types, you indicate that you are defining a type method with the **static** keyword. The method **numberOfSides()** simply returns the number of sides a **Square** can have.

In distinction, type methods on classes use the **class** keyword. Here is a type method on the **Zombie** class that represents the universal zombie catchphrase.

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    class func makeSpookyNoise() -> String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
  
    ...  
}
```

To use type methods, you simply call them on the type itself:

```
let sides = Square.numberOfSides() // sides is 4  
let spookyNoise = Zombie.makeSpookyNoise() // spookyNoise is "Brains..."
```

One implication of making **makeSpookyNoise()** a class method is that subclasses can override that method to provide their own implementation.

```
class GiantZombie: Zombie {  
    override class func makeSpookyNoise() -> String {  
        return "ROAR!"  
    }  
}
```

Here, the **GiantZombie** class subclasses **Zombie** and provides its own implementation of the class method. But what if you have a class type with a **class** method that you do not want to be overridden? Perhaps you feel that all zombies should make the same spooky noise. Let's revisit the **Zombie** class.

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    static func makeSpookyNoise() -> String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
}
```

```
}
```

```
...
```

```
}
```

The `static` keyword tells the compiler that you do not want subclasses to provide their own version of the `makeSpookyNoise()` method.

You could also use `final class` in place of the `static` keyword. They are functionally equivalent.

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    final class func makeSpookyNoise() -> String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
}
```

```
...
```

```
}
```

Type methods can work with type-level information on a given type. This means that type methods can call other type methods and can even work with type properties, which we will discuss in [Chapter 16](#). Note, however, that type methods cannot call instance methods or work with any instance properties because an instance is not available for use at the type level.

For the More Curious: Mutating Methods

After working through this chapter, you might be wondering about the `mutating` keyword. Why is it needed to allow you to modify a struct or enum? A useful place to start is to revisit functions that return functions.

Create a new playground called `Mutating`. Add a simple function to your playground that returns a **String** greeting.

Listing 15.16 A simple greeting function

```
func greet(name: String, withGreeting greeting: String) -> String
    return "\(greeting) \(name)"
}
```

The `greet(name:withGreeting:)` function takes two arguments: a `name` and a `greeting`. It constructs and returns a greeting based on these two arguments. This function is straightforward to use.

Listing 15.17 Using `greet(name:withGreeting:)`

```
func greet(name: String, withGreeting greeting: String) -> String
    return "\(greeting) \(name)"
}

let personalGreeting = greet(name: "Matt", withGreeting: "Hello, '
```

Now, write a new function to greet someone by name that returns a function.

Listing 15.18 Returning a function from `greeting(forName:)`

```
func greet(name: String, withGreeting greeting: String) -> String
    return "\(greeting) \(name)"
}

let personalGreeting = greet(name: "Matt", withGreeting: "Hello, '
```

```
func greeting(forName name: String) -> (String) -> String {
    func greeting(_ greeting: String) -> String {
        return "\(greeting) \(name)"
    }
    return greeting
}
```

The function `greeting(forName:)` takes one argument, the **String** `name`, and returns a function. This returned function itself takes a **String**, representing the `greeting`, and returns a **String** with a greeting for the given name.

You define a nested function called `greeting(_:)` inside of the implementation of

greeting(forName:). This nested function's type matches the type specified by **greeting(forName:)** – it takes a **String** and returns a **String**. Notice that you combine the greeting parameter with the name parameter from the two functions to construct the personalized greeting.

Finally, you return the **greeting(_:)** function.

Add the following code to exercise the function.

Listing 15.19 Using the function

```
func greet(name: String, withGreeting greeting: String) -> String
    return "\(greeting) \(name)"
}

let personalGreeting = greet(name: "Matt", withGreeting: "Hello,
print(personalGreeting)

func greeting(forName name: String) -> (String) -> String {
    func greeting(_ greeting: String) -> String {
        return "\(greeting) \(name)"
    }
    return greeting
}

let greetMattWith = greeting(forName: "Matt")
let mattGreeting = greetMattWith("Hello, ")
print(mattGreeting)
```

You call the **greeting(forName:)** function and pass in the desired name to greet ("Matt"). The result is assigned to a constant named **greetMattWith**. **greetMattWith** holds a function that matches the return type of **greeting(forName:)** – it takes a **String** and returns a **String**. The specific name, "Matt", is passed along in the enclosing scope of the **greeting(_:)** function that is returned by **greeting(forName:)**.

To make a personalized greeting for a specific name, you call the **greetMattWith(_:)** function and pass in a greeting (here, "Hello, ") to its only parameter. The result of this function is assigned to **mattGreeting**, which you log to the console. You should see the same result log to the console.

As you may recall from [Chapter 13](#), Swift supplies a way to return closures directly. This feature provides a mechanism for writing the **greeting(forName:)** function without a nested function. Replace **greeting(forName:)** with a new function called **greeting(_:)** that uses a closure instead of a nested function.

Listing 15.20 A more concise version

```
func greet(name: String, withGreeting greeting: String) -> String
    return "\(greeting) \(name)"
}
```

```

let personalGreeting = greet(name: "Matt", withGreeting: "Hello,
print(personalGreeting)

func greeting(forName name: String) -> (String) -> String {
    func greeting(_ greeting: String) -> String {
        return "\(greeting) \(name)"
    }
    return greeting
}

let greetMattWith = greeting(forName: "Matt")
let mattGreeting = greetMattWith("Hello,")

func greeting(_ greeting: String) -> (String) -> String {
    return { (name: String) -> String in
        return "\(greeting) \(name)"
    }
}

let friendlyGreetingFor = greeting("Hello,")
let mattGreeting = friendlyGreetingFor("Matt")
print(mattGreeting)

```

Notice that this implementation is a bit more concise, and it gives the same result.

Calling this function works similarly to your earlier implementation. You call **greeting(_ :)** and pass in a **String** greeting to its first argument. The resulting function is assigned to a constant called **friendlyGreetingFor**. Next, you call the function in **friendlyGreetingFor** and pass in a name to greet.

Check the console. The results should be the same.

Now that you recall returning functions from functions, let's return to the **mutating** keyword. Create a new struct called **Person**.

Listing 15.21 Creating a Person

```

...
let friendlyGreetingFor = greeting("Hello,")
let mattGreeting = friendlyGreetingFor("Matt")
print(mattGreeting)

struct Person {
    var firstName = "Matt"
    var lastName = "Mathias"

    mutating func changeTo(firstName: String, lastName: String) {

```

```

        self.firstName = firstName
        self.lastName = lastName
    }
}

```

There is nothing very special or unfamiliar taking place here. The **Person** struct has properties for a person's first and last names. It also defines a mutating function to change these properties.

Create a new instance of the **Person**.

Listing 15.22 Creating a new instance of Person

```

...
let friendlyGreetingFor = greeting("Hello, ")
let mattGreeting = friendlyGreetingFor("Matt")
print(mattGreeting)

struct Person {
    var firstName = "Matt"
    var lastName = "Mathias"

    mutating func changeTo(firstName: String, lastName: String)
        self.firstName = firstName
        self.lastName = lastName
    }
}

var p = Person()

```

There is nothing new here either, but here is where things start to get interesting. It turns out that Swift's instance methods, the very ones that you learned about in this chapter, are actually type-level methods that return functions. Type in the following code to see this in action.

Listing 15.23 Instance methods are type methods that return functions

```

...
let friendlyGreetingFor = greeting("Hello, ")
let mattGreeting = friendlyGreetingFor("Matt")
print(mattGreeting)

struct Person {
    var firstName = "Matt"
    var lastName = "Mathias"

    mutating func changeTo(firstName: String, lastName: String)
        self.firstName = firstName
        self.lastName = lastName
    }
}
```

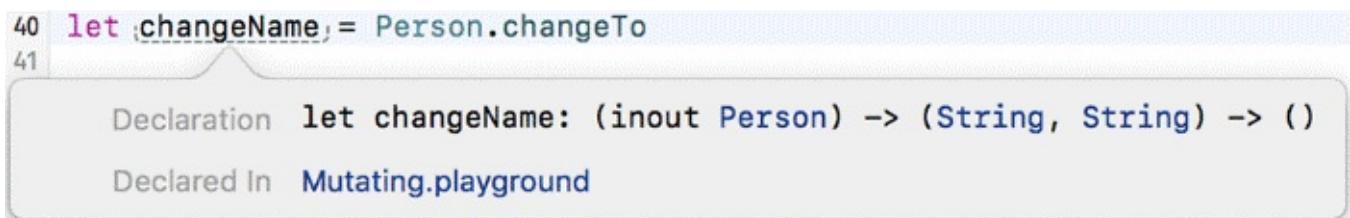
```
}
```

```
var p = Person()  
let changeName = Person.changeTo
```

You can access the `changeTo(firstName:lastName:)` method on the **Person** struct. Notice that you are not calling the method (i.e., you omit the `()` after `changeTo`). Instead, you are assigning it to a constant called `changeName`.

Just what is `changeName`? To find out, Option-click on it. You should see something like [Figure 15.12](#). (Incidentally, you should also see the same function signature in the playground's result sidebar.)

Figure 15.12 A mutating method signature



What does that signature mean? In short, it tells you that `changeName` is a function that takes a single argument and returns a function. More specifically, `changeName` holds a function whose only argument is an instance of the **Person** struct passed in as an `inout` parameter. This function returns a function that takes two arguments, a **String** for the new first name and a **String** for the new last name. The resulting function returns nothing.

Recall from [Chapter 12](#) that an `inout` parameter allows a function to modify the value passed into that parameter. The changes on the `inout` parameter made within the function also persist outside of the function after it is called. In other words, the modifications replace the parameter's original value.

Putting all of this information together, a mutating method is simply a method whose first argument is `self`, passed in as an `inout` parameter. Because value types are copied when they are passed, `self` is actually a copy of the value for nonmutating methods. To make changes, `self` needs to be declared as `inout`, and `mutating` is the way Swift allows you to accomplish that.

Type in the following to demonstrate this point and to see `changeName` in action.

Listing 15.24 `changeName` in action

```
...  
let friendlyGreetingFor = greeting("Hello,")  
let mattGreeting = friendlyGreetingFor("Matt")  
print(mattGreeting)  
  
struct Person {  
    var firstName = "Matt"  
    var lastName = "Mathias"
```

```
        mutating func changeTo(firstName: String, lastName: String)
            self.firstName = firstName
            self.lastName = lastName
        }
    }

var p = Person()
let changeName = Person.change
let changeNameFromMattTo = changeName(&p)
changeNameFromMattTo("John", "Gallagher")
p.firstName // "John"
```

The point of this section was to show what the keyword `mutating` does. In practice, you will likely not want to go to all of this trouble to mutate a struct. Go ahead and remove this new code, and make use of the name-changing method more directly. The result will be the same.

Listing 15.25 Reverting back to the instance method

```
let friendlyGreetingFor = greeting("Hello,")
let mattGreeting = friendlyGreetingFor("Matt")
print(mattGreeting)

struct Person {
    var firstName = "Matt"
    var lastName = "Mathias"

    mutating func changeTo(firstName: String, lastName: String)
        self.firstName = firstName
        self.lastName = lastName
    }
}

var p = Person()
let changeName = Person.change
let changeNameFromMattTo = changeName(&p)
```

```
changeNameFromMattTo("John", "Gallagher")
p.changeTo(firstName: "John", lastName: "Gallagher")
p.firstName // "John"
```


Properties

[Chapter 15](#) introduced properties in a limited way. Its focus was on structures and classes, but you also gave your types some basic stored properties so that they had data to represent. This chapter discusses properties in detail and will deepen your understanding of how to use them with your custom types.

Properties model the characteristics of the entity that a type represents. They do this by associating values with the type. The values properties can take may be constant or variable values. Classes, structures, and enumerations can all have properties.

Properties can be of two varieties: *stored* and *computed*. Stored properties can be given default values, and computed properties can return the result of some calculation based on available information. You can observe properties for changes and can execute specific code when the property is set to a new value. You can even establish rules that determine properties' visibility to other files in your application.

In short, properties have a lot of power and flexibility. Let's see what they can do.

Basic Stored Properties

Stored properties are properties in their most basic form. To see how they work, you will be expanding the behavior of the types you developed in [Chapter 15](#). Start by making a copy of your `MonsterTown` project: Find and click on the folder called `MonsterTown` in your filesystem. Press Command-C on your keyboard, then press Command-V to create the copy. Open the new folder and double-click `MonsterTown.xcodeproj` to launch Xcode and open your copied project.

Open `Town.swift`. Take a look at the declaration of your `population` property: `var population = 5_422`. This code signifies three important items:

- `var` marks this property as variable, which means that it can be mutated.
- `population` has a default value of `5_422`.
- `population` is a stored property whose value can be read and set.

How can you tell that `population` is a stored property? Because it holds on to a piece of information – the town’s population. That is what stored properties do: They store data.

`population` is a *read/write* property. You can both read the property’s value *and* set the property’s value. You can also make stored properties *read-only*, so that their values cannot be changed. Read-only properties are known by their more familiar name: constants.

Use `let` to create a read-only property storing information about the region that the town you are modeling is in. After all, towns cannot move, so they are always in the same region.

Listing 16.1 Adding a region constant (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {  
    let region = "South"  
    var population = 5_422  
    var numberOfStoplights = 4  
  
    func printDescription() {  
        print("Population: \(population);  
              number of stoplights: \(numberOfStoplights)")  
    }  
  
    mutating func changePopulation(by amount: Int) {  
        population += amount  
    }  
}
```

This implementation of `region` is fine for now, but it has a flaw. We will explain the problem and show you a better solution later in the chapter.

Nested Types

Nested types are types that are defined within another enclosing type. They are often used to support the functionality of a type and are not intended to be used separately from that type. You have seen nested functions already, which are similar.

Enumerations are frequently nested. In `Town.swift`, create a new enumeration called **Size**. You will be using this enumeration, in coordination with another new property to be added later, to calculate whether the town can be designated as small, medium, or large. Make sure that you define the enum within the definition for the **Town** struct.

Listing 16.2 Setting up the **Size** enum (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {
    let region = "South"
    var population = 5_422
    var numberOfStoplights = 4

    enum Size {
        case small
        case medium
        case large
    }

    func printDescription() {
        print("Population: \(population);
              number of stoplights: \(numberOfStoplights)")
    }

    mutating func changePopulation(by amount: Int) {
        population += amount
    }
}
```

Size will determine the size of the instance of the **Town** type. The instance of **Town** will need a value in its **population** property before this nested type is used. All of the properties you have worked with so far have calculated the property's value when the instance was created. The next section introduces a new sort of property that delays the computation of its value until the necessary information is available.

Lazy Stored Properties

Sometimes a stored property's value cannot be assigned immediately. The necessary information may be available, but computing the values of a property immediately would be costly in terms of memory or time. Or, perhaps a property depends on factors external to the type that will be unknown until after the instance is created. These circumstances call for *lazy loading*.

In terms of properties, lazy loading means that the calculation of the property's value will not occur until the first time it is needed. This delay defers computation of the property's value until after the instance is initialized. This means that lazy properties must be declared with var, because their values will change.

Create a new lazy property called `townSize`. Make it of type **Size**, because its value will be an instance of the **Size** enum. Again, make sure to define this new property inside of the **Town** type.

Listing 16.3 Setting up townSize (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {  
    ...  
    enum Size {  
        case small  
        case medium  
        case large  
    }  
    lazy var townSize: Size = {  
        switch self.population {  
        case 0...10_000:  
            return Size.small  
  
        case 10_001...100_000:  
            return Size.medium  
  
        default:  
            return Size.large  
        }  
    }()  
  
    func printDescription() {  
        print("Population: \(population);  
              number of stoplights: \(numberOfStoplights)")  
    }  
    ...  
}
```

`townSize` looks different than the properties that you have written before. Let's go through

this code step by step.

First, you mark `townSize` as `lazy`. This means that `townSize`'s value will only be calculated when it is first accessed. The need for this will become clear in a moment.

Next, you declare the type of the property as **Size**. You will not be setting the value of this property directly, as you have done with other properties. For example, you will not be writing code like `myTown.townSize = Size.small`. Instead, you will take advantage of the nested enum **Size** in coordination with a closure to calculate the town's size given its population.

`townSize` sets a default property value, the town's size, with the result returned by a closure (notice the opening brace: `lazy var townSize: Size = {}`). Recall that functions and closures are first-class types and that properties can reference functions and closures.

A closure works well here because the value of the town's `population` is needed to determine the town's size. The closure uses a `switch` statement to determine the size of the town. Put another way, the closure “switches over” the instance's `population` (`self.population`). The `self` reference in this line is important and we will return to it in a moment.

Inside of the `switch` statement, you specify three cases. A town with a population of `0...10_000` is a small town, and `10_001...100_000` is a medium-sized town. The third case is a default case that captures any `population` larger than 100,000 and describes it as a large town. The case bodies return an instance of the enum **Size** that matches the given population.

Notice that the closure for `townSize` ends with empty parentheses after the final brace: `}()`. These parentheses, combined with the `lazy` marking, ensure that Swift will call the closure and assign the result it returns to `townSize` when the property is accessed for the first time. If you had omitted the parentheses, you would simply be assigning a closure to the `townSize` property. With the parentheses, the closure will be executed the first time you access the `townSize` property.

Finally, let's return to the importance of the `self` reference in `self.population` and the need for `townSize` to be `lazy`. The closure needs to reference `self` to gain access to the instance's `population` property within the closure. For the closure to access `self` safely, the compiler has to know that `self` is fully initialized (more on this in [Chapter 17](#)). Marking `townSize` as `lazy` indicates to the compiler that this property does not need to have a value for `self` to be created, and it should instead be created the first time `townSize` is accessed if it does not exist. This tells the compiler that `self` will be ready and available to do work when the closure is called.

Switch to `main.swift` to exercise this `lazy` property.

Listing 16.4 Using the lazy `townSize` property (`main.swift`)

```
var myTown = Town()
let myTownSize = myTown.townSize
print(myTownSize)
myTown.changePopulation(by: 500)
```

```
let fredTheZombie = Zombie()
fredTheZombie.town = myTown
fredTheZombie.terrorizeTown()
fredTheZombie.town?.printDescription()
```

Here, you create a constant named `myTownSize` to hold `myTown`'s size information. This line accesses the lazy property `townSize` and causes its closure to execute. After the closure switches over `myTown`'s `population`, an instance of the `Size` enum is assigned to `myTownSize`. Next, you print the value of the `myTownSize` constant. As a result, when you run the program, small logs to the console.

It is important to note that properties marked with `lazy` are calculated only one time. This feature of `lazy` means that changing the value of `myTown`'s `population` will never cause `myTown`'s `townSize` to be recalculated. To see this, increase `myTown`'s `population` by 1,000,000 and then check `myTown`'s size by logging it to the console. Include `myTown`'s `population` to compare against what is reported for `townSize`.

Listing 16.5 Changing `myTown`'s `population` does not change `townSize` (`main.swift`)

```
var myTown = Town()
let myTownSize = myTown.townSize
print(myTownSize)
myTown.changePopulation(by: 500)(by: 1_000_000)
print("Size: \(myTown.townSize); population: \(myTown.population)")
let fredTheZombie = Zombie()
fredTheZombie.town = myTown
fredTheZombie.terrorizeTown()
fredTheZombie.town?.printDescription()
```

Run the program, and you will see in the console `Size: small; population: 1005422`. `myTown`'s size has not changed, even though its `population` increased dramatically. This discrepancy is due to `townSize`'s lazy nature. The property is only calculated when it is first accessed and is not recalculated thereafter.

This kind of discrepancy between `myTown`'s `population` and `townSize` is undesirable. It seems that `townSize` should not be marked `lazy`, if `lazy` means that `myTown` will not be able to recalibrate its `townSize` to reflect `population` changes.

In the right circumstances, lazy loading is a powerful tool. You will use it again in [Chapter 27](#). But, in this case, it is not the best tool for the job. A *computed property* is a better option.

Computed Properties

You can use computed properties with any class, struct, or enum that you define. Computed properties do not store values like the properties that you have been working with thus far. Instead, a computed property provides a *getter* and optional *setter* to retrieve or set the property's value. This difference allows the value of a computed property to change, unlike the value of a lazy stored property.

Replace your definition of the `townSize` property on the `Town` type with a computed read-only property. Unlike stored read-only properties, computed read-only properties are defined using `var`.

Listing 16.6 Using a computed property (`Town.swift`)

```
...
lazy var townSize: Size = {
    get {
        switch self.population {
            case 0...10_000:
                return Size.small

            case 10_001...100_000:
                return Size.medium

            default:
                return Size.large
        }
    }
}()
```

The changes here may look small. You delete `lazy` and the `=` in the first line, add a new second line with a `get` statement (and its ending brace, after the `switch` statement), and delete the parentheses in the final line. That is all. But those small changes have a big impact.

`townSize` is now defined as a computed property declared, like all computed properties, with the `var` keyword. It provides a custom getter that uses the same `switch` statement that you used before. Notice that you explicitly declare the type of the computed property to be `Size`. You must provide computed properties with their type information. This information helps the compiler know what the property's getter should return.

You access this property via dot syntax (`myTown.townSize`), so the code you already added to `main.swift` does not need to be changed. Accessing the property executes the getter for `townSize`, which results in using `myTown`'s `population` to calculate the `townSize`. Run your program again. You will see `Size: large; population: 1005422` logged to the console.

`townSize` is now a read-only computed property. In other words, `townSize` cannot be set

directly. It can only retrieve and return a value based upon the calculation you defined in the getter. A read-only property is perfect in this case because you want `myTown` to calculate its `townSize` based upon the instance's `population`, which may change at runtime.

A getter and a setter

Computed properties can also be declared with both a getter and a setter. A getter allows you to *read* data from a property. A setter allows you to *write* data to the property. Properties with both a getter and a setter are called *read/write*. Open your `Monster.swift` file and add a computed property to the declaration for `Monster`.

Listing 16.7 Creating a computed `victimPool` property with a getter and a setter (`Monster.swift`)

```
class Monster {
    var town: Town?
    var name = "Monster"
    var victimPool: Int {
        get {
            return town?.population ?? 0
        }
        set(newVictimPool) {
            town?.population = newVictimPool
        }
    }

    func terrorizeTown() {
        if town != nil {
            print("\(name) is terrorizing a town!")
        } else {
            print("\(name) hasn't found a town to terrorize yet.")
        }
    }
}
```

Imagine that you need each instance of `Monster` to keep track of its potential pool of victims. This number will match the `population` of the town that the monster is terrorizing. Accordingly, `victimPool` is a new computed property with both a getter and a setter. As before, you declare it as a `var` and give it specific type information. In this case, `victimPool` is an `Int`.

In the property's definition, you define a getter for the property via the same `get` that you use for `townSize`. The getter uses the `nil` coalescing operator to check whether the `Monster` instance has a town that it is currently terrorizing. If it does, then it returns the value of that town's population. If the instance has not yet found a town to terrorize, it simply returns 0.

The setter for the computed property is written within the set block. Notice the new syntax: `set(newVictimPool)`. Specifying `newVictimPool` within the parentheses means that you are supplying an explicitly named new value. You can refer to this variable within the setter's implementation. For example, you use optional chaining to ensure that the `Monster` instance has found a town, and then set that town's population to match `newVictimPool`. If you had not explicitly named the new value, Swift would have provided a variable for you called `newValue` to hold on to the same information.

Switch back to `main.swift` to use this new computed property. Add the code below to the bottom of the file.

Listing 16.8 Using victimPool (main.swift)

```
...
print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie.victimPool)")
fredTheZombie.victimPool = 500
print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie.victimPool);
      population: \(fredTheZombie.town?.population)")
```

The first new line exercises the getter for the computed property. Run the program and `victim pool: 1005412` logs to the console. The next new line (`fredTheZombie.victimPool = 500`) uses the setter to change `fredTheZombie`'s `victimPool`. Last, you once again log the `victimPool` to the console via the property's getter. In the console, the `victimPool` should be updated to be 500, and the town's population should match this change.

Notice that the output for the town's population is listed as `Optional(500)`. This looks different from the output for `victimPool`, and this is because `fredTheZombie`'s `town` property is optional. If you are curious about what is causing this difference, [Chapter 22](#) discusses how optionals are put together.

Property Observers

Swift provides an interesting feature called *property observation*. Property observers watch for and respond to changes in a given property. Property observation is available to any stored property that you define and is also available to any property that you inherit. You cannot use property observers with computed properties that you define. (But you have full control over the definition of a computed property's setter and getter and can respond to changes there.)

Imagine that the citizens of your beleaguered town are getting restless. They demand that the mayor do something to protect them from the monstrous pox patrolling the countryside. The mayor's first action is to track the attacks on the townspeople. Property observers are perfect for this task.

You can observe changes to a property in one of two ways:

- when a property is about to change, via `willSet`
- when a property did change, via `didSet`

To keep track of how many attacks the town is suffering, the mayor decides to pay close attention to when the `population` of the town changes. Use a `didSet` observer in `Town.swift` to be notified right after the property receives a new value.

Listing 16.9 Observing population changes (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {  
    ...  
    var population = 5_422 {  
        didSet(oldPopulation) {  
            print("The population has changed to \(population)  
                  from \(oldPopulation).")  
        }  
    }  
    ...  
}
```

The syntax for property observers looks similar to computed properties' getters and setters. The response to the change is defined within the braces. In the example above, you create a custom parameter name for the old population: `oldPopulation`. The `didSet` observer gives you a handle on the property's old value. (In distinction, the `willSet` observer gives you a handle on the new value of the property.) If you had not specified a new name, Swift would have given you the parameter `oldValue` automatically. (For a `willSet` observer, Swift generates a `newValue` parameter.)

This property observer logs the town's `population` information to the console every time it changes. This means that you should see a log for the population change after `fredTheZombie` terrorizes the town. Run the program and take a look at the console. It should look like the output shown below, with a log for every time the `population`

changes.

small

The population has changed to 1005422 from 5422.

Size: large; population: 1005422

The population has changed to 1005412 from 1005422.

Monster is terrorizing a town!

Population: 1005412; number of stoplights: 4

Victim pool: 1005412

The population has changed to 500 from 1005412.

Victim pool: 500; population: Optional(500)

Program ended with exit code: 0

Because you are logging changes to population with a property observer, you no longer need to log the population change in `main.swift` after you update the `victimPool`.

Remove that code from the call to `print()` at the bottom of `main.swift`.

Listing 16.10 Removing population from print() (main.swift)

```
...
print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie.victimPool)")
fredTheZombie.victimPool = 500
print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie.victimPool)÷
      population: \(fredTheZombie.town?.population)")
```


Type Properties

Up to now, you have been working with instance properties. Whenever you create a new instance of a type, that instance gets its own properties that are distinct from other instances of that type. Instance properties are useful for storing and computing values on an instance of a type, but what about values that belong to the type itself?

You can also define *type properties*. These are properties that are universal to the type – the values in these properties will be shared across all of the type’s instances. These properties store information that will be the same across all instances. For example, all instances of a **Square** type will have exactly four sides, so the number of sides for **Square** might be stored in a type property.

Value types (i.e., structures and enumerations) can take both stored and computed type properties. As with type methods, type properties on value types begin with the `static` keyword.

Recall that earlier in the chapter you created a constant read-only property on the **Town** type for the town’s `region`. This use of a constant instance property made every instance of **Town** be in the same region: the South. A type property works better for the `region` property because you are modeling the region “South” as universal to the type. Change **Town** to reflect this revision.

Listing 16.11 Making `region` a stored type property (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {  
    static let region = "South"  
    ...  
}
```

Stored type properties have to be given a default value. This requirement makes sense because types do not have initializers (which are the topic of [Chapter 17](#)). This means that the stored type property has to have all the information it needs to vend its value to any caller. Here, `region` is given the value `South`.

Classes can also have stored and computed type properties, which use the same `static` syntax as structs. Subclasses cannot override a type property from their superclass. If you want a subclass to be able to provide its own implementation of the property, you use the `class` keyword instead.

In the For the More Curious: Type Methods section in [Chapter 15](#), we showed you a type method on the **Zombie** type to make a spooky noise:

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    class func makeSpookyNoise() -> String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }
```

Notice that `makeSpookyNoise()` does not take any arguments. This makes it a great candidate for being a computed type property and not a method. Open `Zombie.swift` and

add a computed type property for a zombie's catchphrase.

Listing 16.12 Creating the `spookyNoise` computed type property (`Zombie.swift`)

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    class var spookyNoise: String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
    var walksWithLimp = true  
    ...  
}
```

The definition of a type-level computed property is very similar to a type method's. The main differences are that you use the `var` keyword, rather than `func`, and you do not use the parentheses.

One new aspect of the code above is that you use shorthand getter syntax. If you are not providing a setter for a computed property, you can omit the get block of the computed property's definition and simply return the computed value as needed.

Switch to `main.swift`. Add a line at the bottom of the file to print the `Zombie` type's `spookyNoise` property to the console.

Listing 16.13 “Brains...” (`main.swift`)

```
...  
print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie.victimPool)")  
fredTheZombie.victimPool = 500  
print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie.victimPool)")  
print(Zombie.spookyNoise)
```

Run the program. Spooky.

To see that class type properties can be overridden by subclasses, add a `spookyNoise` computed type property to `Monster`.

Listing 16.14 Generic Monster noise (`Monster.swift`)

```
class Monster {  
    class var spookyNoise: String {  
        return "Grrr"  
    }  
    var town: Town?  
    var name = "Monster"  
    ...  
}
```

Switch back to `Zombie.swift` and you will notice that the compiler is now giving you an error. If you click the red exclamation mark on the lefthand side of the editor area, the error will display (see [Figure 16.1](#)).

Figure 16.1 Override error

```
9 class Zombie: Monster {  
10    class var spookyNoise: String {  
11        return "Brains..."  
12    }  
13 }  
14  
15 // Overriding declaration requires an 'override' keyword
```

Zombie is now overriding a computed type property from its superclass. Because you used the `class` keyword for this type property, it is perfectly fine for subclasses to provide their own definition of `spookyNoise`. You just need to add the keyword `override` to **Zombie**'s definition of `spookyNoise`.

Make this change and the compiler error disappears.

Listing 16.15 Override `spookyNoise` (`Zombie.swift`)

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    override class var spookyNoise: String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
    var walksWithLimp = true  
    ...  
}
```

Build and run your program, and everything should work as it did before.

We mentioned above that classes can have static properties at the type level. These properties work a bit differently than class properties on a type.

A defining characteristic of all monsters is that they are terrifying. Add a static property to the **Monster** class to represent this fact.

Listing 16.16 All Monsters are terrifying (`Monster.swift`)

```
class Monster {  
    static let isTerrifying = true  
    class var spookyNoise: String {  
        return "Grrr"  
    }  
    ...  
}
```

You add a new static property on **Monster** to represent the fact that all monsters are terrifying by definition. Because you added this property to **Zombie**'s superclass **Monster**, it is also available on **Zombie**. Add the following to `main.swift` to see this in action.

Listing 16.17 Run away from `Zombie` (`main.swift`)

```
...  
print(Zombie.spookyNoise)  
if Zombie.isTerrifying {  
    print("Run away!")  
}
```

As you can see, you access the `isTerrifying` property on the **Zombie** via dot syntax. If

the **Zombie** is terrifying, you run away.

Build and run your program. The console warns you to Run away!

One of the major differences between static and class type properties is that static properties cannot be overridden by a subclass. Making this type property a static constant is very definitive: Monsters are terrifying, and subclasses cannot change that.

Access Control

You do not always want elements of your program's code to be visible to all other elements. In fact, you will frequently want to have much more granular control over your code's access. You can grant components of your code specific levels of access to other components of your code. This is called *access control*.

For example, you might want to hide or expose a method on a class. Suppose you have a property that is used only within a class's definition. It could be problematic if another, external type modified that property by mistake. With access control, you can manage the visibility of that property to hide it from other parts of the program. Doing so will encapsulate the property's data and prevent external code from meddling with it.

Access control is organized around two important and related concepts: *modules* and *source files*. In terms of your project's files and organization, these are the central building blocks of your application.

A module is code that is distributed as a unit. You probably recall seeing `import Cocoa` at the top of your playgrounds and `import Foundation` in your Swift files. These are frameworks, which bundle together a number of related types that perform a series of related tasks. For example, Cocoa is a framework designed to facilitate the development of macOS applications. Modules are brought into another module using Swift's `import` keyword, as suggested by the above examples.

Source files, on the other hand, are more discrete units. They represent a single file and live within a specific module. It is good practice to define a single type within a source file. This is not a requirement, but doing so helps keep your project organized.

Swift provides five levels of access ([Table 16.1](#)).

Table 16.1 Swift access control

Access Level	Description	Visible to...	Subclassable within...
open	Entities are visible and subclassable to all files in the module as well as those that import the module.	defining module and importing modules	defining module and importing modules
public	Entities are visible to all files in the module and those that import the module.	defining module and importing modules	defining module
internal (the default)	Entities are visible to all files in the same module.	defining module	defining module
fileprivate	Entities are visible only within their defining source file.	defining file	defining file
private	Entities are visible only within their defining scope.	scope	scope

open access is the least restrictive and private access is the most restrictive level of access control. In general, a type's access level must be consistent with the access levels of its properties and methods. A property cannot have a less restrictive level of access control than its type. For example, a property with an access control level of internal cannot be declared on a type with private access. Likewise, the access control of a function cannot be less restrictive than the access control listed for its parameters. If you violate these requirements, the compiler will issue an error to help you correct the mistake.

Swift specifies internal as the default level of access control for your app. Having a default level of access means that you do not need to specifically declare access controls for every type, property, and method in your code. internal makes sense as a default, because you will typically be using the language to write Cocoa and iOS applications, both of which typically use a single module for the source code. Thus, you only need to declare a level of access control when you need to specify access that is more or less visible than internal.

Let's see the private level of access in action. Create an `isFallingApart` Boolean property defined on the **Zombie** type. Give it a default value of false. This property will keep track of an instance's physical integrity (zombies, after all, sometimes lose bits). This property really does not need to be exposed to the rest of the program because it is an implementation detail of the **Zombie** class. Therefore, set it to private.

Listing 16.18 Falling apart is a private matter (Zombie.swift**)**

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    override class var spookyNoise: String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
    var walksWithLimp = true  
    private var isFallingApart = false  
  
    final override func terrorizeTown() {  
        if !isFallingApart {  
            town?.changePopulation(by: -10)  
        }  
        super.terrorizeTown()  
    }  
}
```

After you create the property, you make use of it in the `terrorizeTown()` function. You check to see whether `isFallingApart` is `false`. If it is `false`, then the instance is free to terrorize its town. If the instance is falling apart, then it will not be able to terrorize its town.

`isFallingApart` is visible within `terrorizeTown()` because the property was declared as `private`. That means `isFallingApart` is accessible to any entity defined within the same scope. Because `isFallingApart` is a property on **Zombie**, any property or method defined at this same level will be able to access this new property. However, `isFallingApart` is *not* accessible outside of the **Zombie** class. This property is a private implementation of the class.

Controlling getter and setter visibility

If a property has both a getter and a setter, you can control the visibility of the two independently. By default, however, the getter and setter have the same visibility. Here, `isFallingApart` has a private getter and a private setter.

However, you probably want other files in your project to be able to tell whether a **Zombie** is falling apart. You just do not want them to change its falling-apart-ness. Change the `isFallingApart` property to have an `internal` getter and a `private` setter.

Listing 16.19 Making the getter internal and the setter private (`Zombie.swift`)

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    ...  
    private internal private(set) var isFallingApart = false  
    ...  
}
```

You use the syntax `internal private(set)` to specify that the getter should be internal and the setter should be private. You could use `public`, `internal`, or `private` for either, with one restriction: The setter cannot be more visible than the getter. That means, for example, that if you make the getter `internal`, you cannot use `public(set)`, because `public` is more visible than `internal`. Furthermore, the **Zombie** class is defaulting to `internal` because you do not specify any level of access yourself. That means marking `isFallingApart`'s getter or setter with `public` will prompt the compiler to remind you with a warning that its defining class has internal visibility.

You can clean this code up a little. If you leave off a modifier for the getter, the access control defaults to `internal`, which is what you want here. Refactor **Zombie** to use the default visibility for the getter (`internal`) and `private` visibility for the setter.

Listing 16.20 Using default getter visibility (`Zombie.swift`)

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    ...  
    internal private(set) var isFallingApart = false  
    ...  
}
```

Using the default does not change anything except the amount of typing you have to do. The getter for `isFallingApart` is still visible to the other files in your project, and the setter is still visible only within the **Zombie** class.

This chapter introduced a lot of material. Take some time to let all of the ideas sink in. You learned about:

- property syntax
- stored versus computed properties

- read-only and read/write properties
- lazy loading and lazy properties
- property observers
- type properties
- access control

Properties are a central concept in Swift programming. It is a good idea to get comfortable with all of these ideas. The challenges below will help you master the important concepts.

Bronze Challenge

Your town's mayor is busy. Every birth and relocation does not require the mayor's attention. After all, the town is in crisis! Only log changes to the town's population if the new population is less than the old value.

Silver Challenge

Make a new type called **Mayor**. It should be a struct. The **Town** type should have a property called **mayor** that holds an instance of the **Mayor** type.

Have your town inform the **mayor** every time the property for **population** changes. If the town's **population** decreases, have the instance of the **Mayor** log this statement to the console: I'm deeply saddened to hear about this latest tragedy. I promise that my office is looking into the nature of this rash of violence. If the population increases, then the **mayor** should do nothing.

(Hint: You should define a new instance method on the **Mayor** type to complete this challenge.)

Gold Challenge

Mayors are people too. An instance of the **Mayor** type will naturally get nervous whenever its town loses some population due to a **Zombie** attack. Create a stored instance property on the **Mayor** type called **anxietyLevel**. It should be of type **Int** and should start out with a default value of 0.

Increment the **anxietyLevel** property every time a **Mayor** instance is notified of a **Zombie** attack. Last, as a mayor will not want to outwardly display anxiety, mark this property as **private**. Verify that this property is not accessible in **main.swift**.

Initialization

Initialization is the operation of setting up an instance of a type. It entails giving each stored property an initial value and may involve other preparatory work. After this process, the instance is prepared and available to use.

The types that you have been creating up to this point have all been created in more or less the same way. The values for the properties were either given default stored values or were computed on demand. Initialization was not customized, and we did not give it much consideration.

It is very common to want control over how an instance of a type is created. For example, it would be ideal for the instance to have all of the correct values in its properties immediately. Previously, you have given default values to an instance's stored properties and changed these properties' values after you created the instance. This strategy is inelegant. *Initializers* help you create an instance with the appropriate values.

Initializer Syntax

Structures and classes are required to have initial values for their stored properties by the time initialization completes. This requirement explains why you have been giving all of your stored properties default values. If you had not, the compiler would have given you errors saying that the type's properties were not ready to use. Defining an initializer on the type is another way to ensure that properties have values when the instance is created.

The syntax for writing an initializer is a little different from what you have already seen. Initializers are written with the `init` keyword. Even though they are methods on a type, initializers are not preceded with the `func` keyword. Initializer syntax looks like this:

```
struct CustomType {  
    init(someValue: SomeType) {  
        // Initialization code here...  
    }  
}
```

This general syntax does not differ among structures, enumerations, and classes. In the example above, the initializer has one parameter called `someValue` of type **SomeType**. While initializers typically have one or more parameters, they can also have zero parameters (in which case there is a set of empty parentheses after the `init` keyword).

The initializer's implementation is defined within the braces, just as you have been doing with regular functions and methods throughout this book. But unlike other methods, initializers do not return values. Instead, initializers are tasked with giving values to a type's stored properties.

Struct Initialization

Structures can have both default and custom initializers. When working with structs, you will typically want to take advantage of the default initializer provided, but there are some circumstances in which you will want to customize the initialization process.

Default initializers for structs

Remember how you have been getting instances of your **Town** type? You gave the type's stored properties default values. What you did not know is that you were taking advantage of an *empty initializer* (an initializer without parameters) provided to you by the Swift compiler automatically. When you entered code like `var myTown = Town()`, that syntax called the empty initializer and set the new instance's properties to the default values you specified.

Another form of default initializer is the *memberwise initializer*. A memberwise initializer has a parameter for each stored property on the type. In this case, you do not ask the compiler to fill in the values of the new instance's properties based on default values you specified elsewhere. Instead, the free memberwise initializer includes arguments for all of the stored properties that need values. (We call it "free" because it is provided by the Swift compiler automatically – you do not need to define it.)

Remember, one of the principal goals of initialization is to give all of the type's stored properties values so that the new instance is ready to use. The compiler will enforce the requirement that your new instance has values in its stored properties. If you do not provide an initializer for your custom struct, you must provide the necessary values through default values or memberwise initialization.

Make a copy of the `MonsterTown` project from the last chapter, so you have all the current code. Open the copy and navigate to `main.swift`.

In `main.swift`, replace your use of the empty initializer on the **Town** type with a call to the free memberwise initializer. Add a call to `printDescription()`, too, but do not run the program to see what is logged to the console just yet.

Listing 17.1 Using a memberwise initializer (`main.swift`)

```
...  
var myTown = Town(){population: 10_000, numberOfStoplights: 6}  
myTown.printDescription()  
...
```

Next, visit the `Town.swift` file. Notice that its properties for `population` and `numberOfStoplights` have default values. These default values differ from the arguments you have provided to **Town**'s memberwise initializer.

Now run your program. Is the output what you expected? `myTown`'s description reads `Population: 10_000; number of stoplights: 6` in the console. Those are not the default

values you gave to the **Town** type's stored properties. How did these properties' values change from the default values?

The instance `myTown` is now created with the free memberwise initializer. The **Town** type's stored properties are listed in the initializer, which allows you to specify new values for the instance's properties. As the console reveals, the values you gave to the initializer replace the default values.

Notice that **Town**'s property names are used as external parameter names in the call to this initializer. Swift provides default external parameter names to every initializer automatically, one for each parameter given by the initializer. This convention is important because Swift's initializers all have the same name: `init`. Therefore, you cannot use the function name to identify which specific initializer should be called. The parameter names, and their types, help the compiler to differentiate between initializers so that it knows which initializer to call.

Default memberwise initializers on structs are helpful because Swift provides them to you automatically. You get them for free. This benefit of structs makes them particularly attractive. Nonetheless, it is common that you will want to customize the initialization of your type. That is where custom initializers come in.

Custom initializers for structs

It is time to write your own initializer for the **Town** type. Custom initializers are powerful, and with great power comes great responsibility. When you write your own initializer, Swift will not give you any free initializers (say good-bye to the default memberwise initializer!). You are responsible for ensuring that instances' properties are all given their appropriate values.

First you need to do some housecleaning. You are going to remove all the default values you have given to properties. These were helpful before you knew about initializers, as they ensured that the properties for instances of your type had values when an instance was created. Now, however, they do not really add much value to the **Town** struct. Additionally, you will change `region` back to an instance property – the monster infestation is starting to spread outside the South. Last, you will add the town's `region` to the description that is logged by `printDescription` because a town's `region` can now vary from instance to instance.

Open the `Town.swift` file and make these changes.

Listing 17.2 Cleaning house (`Town.swift`)

```
struct Town {
    static let region = "South"

    var population = 5_422 {
        didSet(oldPopulation) {
            print("The population has changed to \(population)
                  from \(oldPopulation).")
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
}

var numberOfStoplights = 4

...

func printDescription() {
    print("Population: \(population); number of stoplights:
          \(numberOfStoplights); region: \(region)")
}

...

```

After deleting the default values for these types, you may have noticed that the compiler issued an error in three places, all indicating `Type annotation missing in pattern`. Previously, you took advantage of type inference for these properties, which worked well with the default values you gave them. Without the default values, the compiler does not know what type information to give to the properties. You need to explicitly declare their types.

Listing 17.3 Declaring types (`Town.swift`)

```

struct Town {
    let region: String

    var population: Int {
        didSet(oldPopulation) {
            print("The population has changed to \(population)
                  from \(oldPopulation).")
        }
    }
    var numberOfStoplights: Int
}
...
```

Now it is time to create your custom initializer. Later, you will call this initializer from another initializer defined within this same type. For now, add the following initializer to your `Town` type.

Listing 17.4 Adding a memberwise initializer (`Town.swift`)

```

...
var numberOfStoplights: Int
init(region: String, population: Int, stoplights: Int) {
    self.region = region
    self.population = population
    numberOfStoplights = stoplights
}
enum Size {
    case small
    case medium
}
```

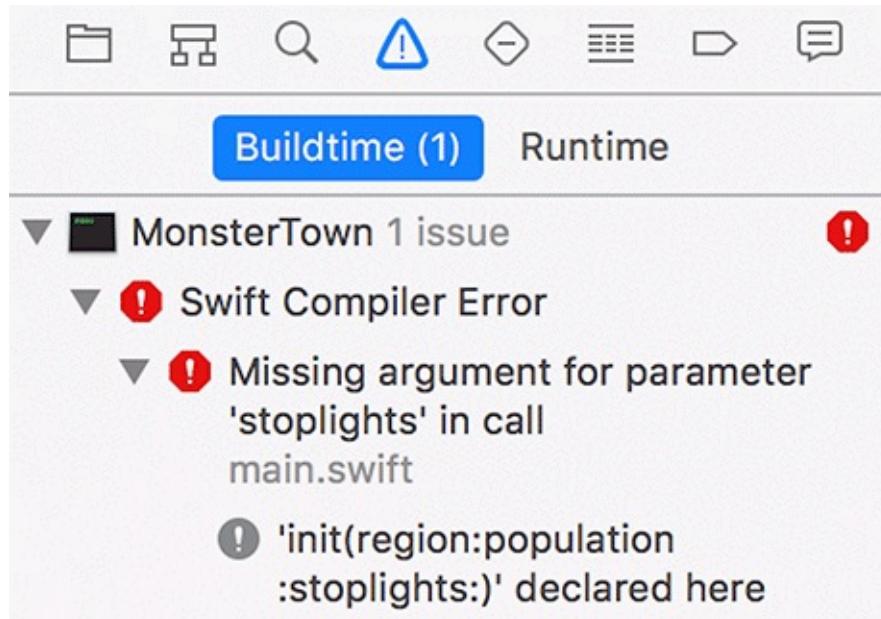
```
    case large  
}
```

...
The `init(region:population:stoplights:)` initializer here takes three arguments, one for each of the stored properties on the `Town` type. You take the values given to the arguments of the initializer and pass them to the actual properties of the type. For example, the value passed to the `region` argument of the initializer is set as the value for the `region` property. Because the parameter name in the initializer is the same as the property name, you need to explicitly access the property via `self`. The `numberOfStoplights` property does not have this issue, so you simply set the value of the initializer's argument for `stoplights` to the `numberOfStoplights` property.

Notice that you set the value for the `region` property even though it was declared as a constant. The Swift compiler allows you to initialize a constant property at one point during initialization. Remember, the goal of initialization is to ensure that a type's properties have values after initialization completes.

At this point, you may be noticing that Xcode's issue navigator has opened on the left, informing you of an error ([Figure 17.1](#)). (If the issue navigator does not open automatically, open it by clicking the fourth icon from the left in the navigator area.) You will see that the issue is located in `main.swift` and relates to the initializer that the compiler was giving you by default.

Figure 17.1 Showing errors in issue navigator



Switch to `main.swift` to fix the problem. (To get back to the project navigator, click the folder icon at the top.)

The memberwise initializer that the compiler previously gave you used the actual property name for `numberOfStoplights` for the argument name in the initializer. In `Town`'s initializer, you shortened this parameter name to be `stoplights`. Change the parameter name in `main.swift`. You also need to add the `region` parameter.

Listing 17.5 Making sure the parameters align (`main.swift`)

```
...  
var myTown = Town(region: "West",  
                  population: 10_000,  
numberOfStoplights stoplights: 6)  
...
```

Build and run the program. The error should disappear, and you should see console log output beginning with Population: 10_000; number of stoplights: 6; region: West.

Initializer delegation

You can define initializers to call other initializers on the same type. This procedure is called *initializer delegation*. It is typically used to provide multiple paths for creating an instance of a type.

In value types (i.e., enumerations and structures), initializer delegation is relatively straightforward. Because value types do not support inheritance, initializer delegation only involves calling another initializer defined on the type. It is somewhat more complicated for classes, as you will soon see.

Switch to `Town.swift` to write a new initializer on this type that makes use of initializer delegation.

Listing 17.6 Using initializer delegation (`Town.swift`)

```
...  
init(region: String, population: Int, stoplights: Int) {  
    self.region = region  
    self.population = population  
    numberOfStoplights = stoplights  
}  
init(population: Int, stoplights: Int) {  
    self.init(region: "N/A", population: population, stoplights:  
}  
enum Size {  
    case small  
    case medium  
    case large  
}  
...
```

Here, you define a new initializer on the `Town` type. But this initializer is different from the previous one that you created. It only takes two arguments: `population` and `stoplights`. What about the `region` property? How is that getting set?

Look at this new initializer's implementation. You call **Town**'s other initializer on `self` in the line `self.init(region: "N/A", population: population, stoplights: stoplights)`. Notice that you pass in the supplied arguments for `population` and `stoplights`. Because you do not have an argument for `region`, you have to supply your own value. In this case, you specify the string "`N/A`" to signify that there was no region information given to the initializer.

Initializer delegation helps avoid duplication of code. Instead of retyping the same code to assign the values passed in to the initializer's arguments to the type's properties, you can simply call across to another initializer on the type. Avoiding duplication of code does more than save you from typing the same thing twice. It can also help avoid bugs. When you have the same code in two places, you have to remember to change both places any time you make a change.

We say that initializer delegation “defines a path” by which a type creates an instance. One initializer calls across to another on a given type to provide specific pieces that are needed to create an instance. Eventually, initializer delegation ends up in an initializer that has all it needs to fully prepare an instance for use.

Because you defined your own memberwise initializer, the compiler will give you no free initializers. This is not all that limiting; it can even be a benefit. For example, you might want to use this new initializer if there is no region information available for a given town that you would like to create. In that case, you would use your handy new initializer with arguments for `population` and `stoplights` to set the corresponding properties while also giving `region` a placeholder value.

Make use of this new initializer in `main.swift`.

Listing 17.7 Using the new initializer (`main.swift`)

```
...  
var myTown = Town(region: "West", population: 10_000, stoplights  
myTown.printDescription()  
...
```

If you build and run your application, the result is the same, but with one key difference. You are no longer setting the instance's `region` to anything specific, so you will see that `N/A` is logged to the console for `region`'s value.

Class Initialization

The general syntax for initialization in classes looks very similar to initialization in value types. Nonetheless, there are some different rules for classes that must be observed. These additional rules are mainly due to the fact that classes can inherit from other classes, which necessarily adds some complexity to initialization.

In particular, classes add the concepts of *designated* and *convenience* initializers. An initializer on a class is either one or the other. Designated initializers are responsible for making sure that an instance's properties all have values before initialization completes, thus making the instance ready to use. Convenience initializers supplement designated initializers by calling across a class to its designated initializer. The role of convenience initializers is typically to create an instance of a class for a very specific use case.

Default initializers for classes

You have already seen examples of using a class's default initializer. Classes get a default, empty initializer if you provide default values to all properties and do not write your own initializer. Classes do not get a free memberwise initializer like structs. This explains why you gave your classes default values before: It allowed you to take advantage of the free empty initializer. Thus, you were able to get an instance of the **Zombie** class with code like `let fredTheZombie = Zombie()`, with the empty parentheses indicating that you were using the default initializer.

Initialization and class inheritance

Open `Monster.swift` and modify the class to give it an initializer. Also, remove the default value of "Monster" from the `name` property.

Listing 17.8 Initializing Monster (`Monster.swift`)

```
class Monster {  
    ...  
    var town: Town?  
    var name = "Monster"  
    var name: String  
    var victimPool: Int {  
        get {  
            return town?.population ?? 0  
        }  
        set(newVictimPool) {  
            town?.population = newVictimPool  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```

}
init(town: Town?, monsterName: String) {
    self.town = town
    name = monsterName
}
func terrorizeTown() {
    if town != nil {
        print("\(name) is terrorizing a town!")
    } else {
        print("\(name) hasn't found a town to terrorize yet.")
    }
}

```

}

This initializer has two arguments: one for an optional instance of the **Town** type and another for the name of the monster. The values for these arguments are assigned to the class's properties within the initializer's implementation. Once again, note that the argument for the **town** in the initializer matches the property name on the class, so you have to set the property's value by accessing it through **self**. You do not have to do this for **name** because the initializer's parameter has a different name.

Now that you have added this initializer, you may notice that the toolbar is indicating that there is a compiler error (see [Figure 17.2](#)). Click on the red icon and you will find that it is in **main.swift**. Switch to this file to examine the error.

Figure 17.2 Toolbar error



You should see that your previous use of **Zombie()** to get an instance of this class is no longer satisfying the compiler. Why not? The error states: `Missing argument for parameter 'town' in call.`

The error signifies that the compiler is expecting **Zombie**'s initializer to include a parameter for **town**. This expectation may seem strange because you did not provide an initializer to the **Zombie** class that required **town**. In fact, you have provided no initializer to this class whatsoever. Instead, you have been relying on the empty initializer the compiler gives you for free when your properties have default values.

That is the source of the error: **Zombie** no longer gets the free empty initializer that you were making use of earlier. Why not? *Automatic initializer inheritance*.

Automatic initializer inheritance

Classes do not typically inherit their superclass's initializers. This feature of Swift is intended to prevent subclasses from inadvertently providing initializers that do not set values on all the properties of the subclass type, because subclasses frequently add properties that do not exist

in the superclass. Requiring subclasses to have their own initializers helps prevent types from being partially initialized with incomplete initializers.

Nonetheless, there are circumstances in which a class *does* automatically inherit its superclass's initializers. If your subclass provides default values for all new properties it adds, then there are two scenarios in which it will inherit its superclass's initializers:

- If the subclass does not define any designated initializers, it will inherit its superclass's designated initializers.
- If the subclass implements all of its superclass's designated initializers – either explicitly or via inheritance – it will inherit all of its superclass's convenience initializers.

Your **Zombie** type falls within the first of these two scenarios. It is inheriting the **Monster** type's sole designated initializer because it provides default values for all new properties it adds and it does not define its own designated initializer. And because the **Zombie** type is inheriting an initializer, the compiler is no longer providing the free empty initializer you were using before.

The signature for the initializer **Zombie** inherits is `init(town:monsterName:)`, with parameters for `town` and `monsterName`. Update `fredTheZombie`'s initialization to include these parameters and remove the error.

Listing 17.9 Updating `fredTheZombie`'s initialization (`main.swift`)

```
...
let fredTheZombie = Zombie(town: myTown, monsterName: "Fred")
fredTheZombie.town = myTown
fredTheZombie.terrorizeTown()
fredTheZombie.town?.printDescription()
...

```

Now, when you create an instance of the **Monster** or **Zombie** type, you give the instance a value for its `town` and `name` properties. Build and run the application. The errors should be gone, and the results are the same.

Designated initializers for classes

Classes use designated initializers as their primary initializers. As part of this role, designated initializers are responsible for ensuring that the class's properties are all given values before initialization is ended. If a class has a superclass, then its designated initializer must also call its superclass's designated initializer.

You have already written a designated initializer for the **Monster** class:

```
init(town: Town?, monsterName: String) {
    self.town = town
    name = monsterName
}
```

Designated initializers are *unadorned*, meaning that designated initializers are denoted by no special keywords placed before **init**. This syntax distinguishes designated initializers from convenience initializers, which use the keyword `convenience`.

The **Monster** class's initializer ensures that all of its properties are given values before initialization completes. Currently, the **Zombie** type gives default values to all of its properties (except for the ones inherited from **Monster**). Thus, the initializer you defined for **Monster** works fine for **Zombie**. Nonetheless, it would be better if **Zombie** defined its own initializer so that you could customize its initialization.

Start by removing the default values for **Zombie**'s properties.

Listing 17.10 Removing default values (Zombie.swift**)**

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    override class var spookyNoise: String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
  
var walksWithLimp = true  
var walksWithLimp: Bool  
private(set) var isFallingApart = false  
private(set) var isFallingApart: Bool  
  
    final override func terrorizeTown() {  
        if !isFallingApart {  
            town?.changePopulation(-10)  
        }  
        super.terrorizeTown()  
    }  
    ...  
}
```

Removing these default values triggers a compiler error: Class 'Zombie' has no initializers. With no default values assigned, the **Zombie** class needs an initializer to give its properties values before initialization completes.

Add a new initializer to the **Zombie** class to solve this problem.

Listing 17.11 Adding a zombie initializer (Zombie.swift**)**

```
class Zombie: Monster {  
    override class var spookyNoise: String {  
        return "Brains..."  
    }  
  
    var walksWithLimp: Bool  
    private(set) var isFallingApart: Bool  
    init(limp: Bool, fallingApart: Bool, town: Town?, monsterName:
```

```

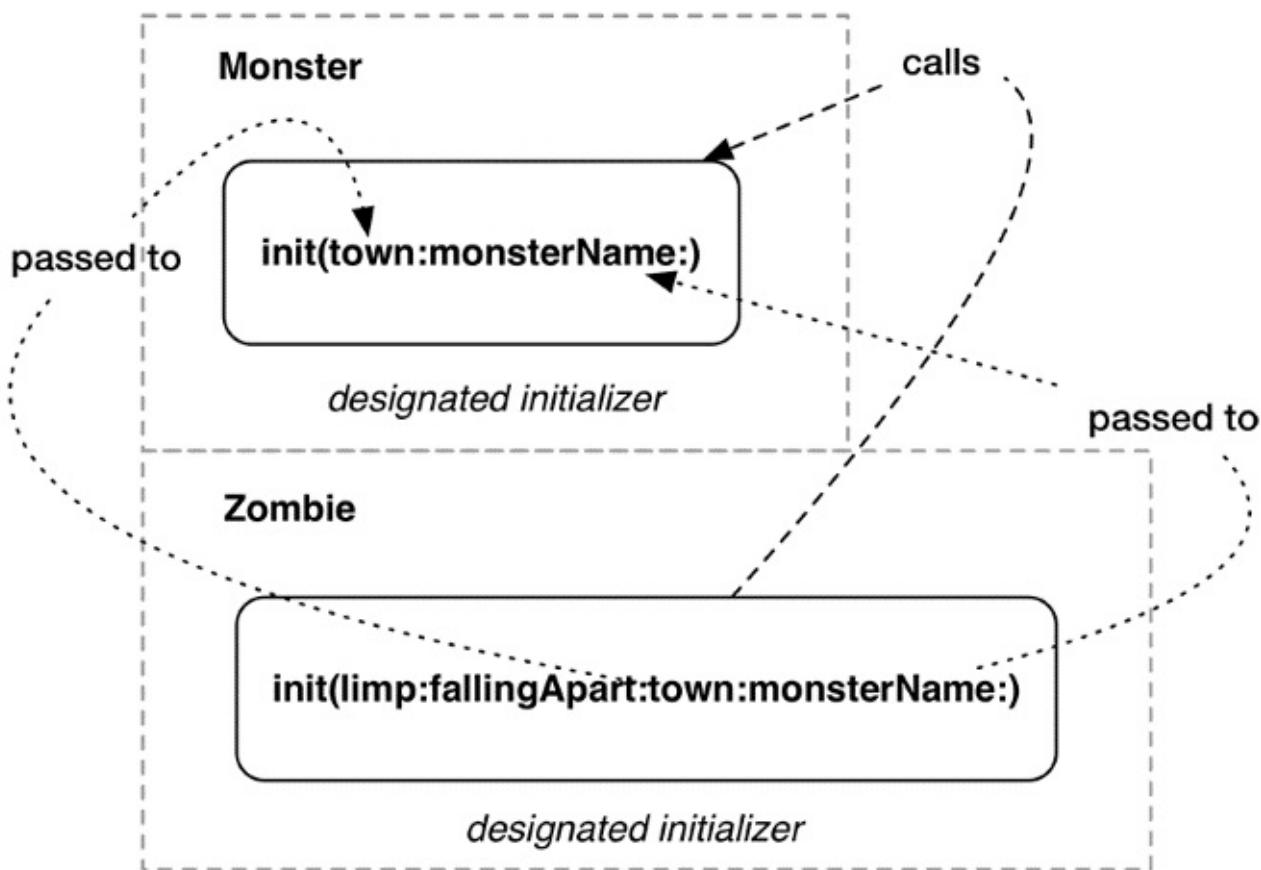
        walksWithLimp = limp
        isFallingApart = fallingApart
        super.init(town: town, monsterName: monsterName)
    }
    final override func terrorizeTown() {
        if !isFallingApart {
            town?.changePopulation(-10)
        }
        super.terrorizeTown()
    }
}

```

Your new initializer takes care of the error because you are now ensuring that the **Zombie**'s properties have values by the end of initialization. There are two parts to what you have added here. First, the new initializer sets the values of the `walksWithLimp` and `isFallingApart` properties via the `limp` and `fallingApart` arguments. These properties are specific to the **Zombie** class, so the designated initializer initializes them with appropriate values.

Second, you call the designated initializer of **Zombie**'s superclass. As you saw in [Chapter 15](#), `super` points to a subclass's superclass. Thus, the syntax `super.init(town: town, monsterName: monsterName)` passes the values of the parameters `town` and `monsterName` from the initializer on the **Zombie** class to the designated initializer on the **Monster** class. Doing so calls this initializer on **Monster**, which will ensure that the **Zombie**'s properties for `town` and `name` will be set. [Figure 17.3](#) shows this relationship graphically.

Figure 17.3 Calling `super.init`



You might be wondering why you called the superclass's initializer last. Because **Zombie**'s initializer is the designated initializer on the **Zombie** class, it is responsible for initializing all of the properties it introduced. After these properties have been given values, the designated initializer of a subclass is responsible for calling its superclass's initializer so that it can initialize *its* properties.

There is a new error to fix in `main.swift`. Switch to this file, and you will see that there is an error from the compiler telling you that the initializer for **Zombie** is missing an argument. Fix this by updating `fredTheZombie`'s initializer to include all the arguments in the initializer you added to **Zombie**.

Listing 17.12 Does Fred walk with a limp? Is it falling apart? (`main.swift`)

```
...  
let fredTheZombie = Zombie(  
    limp: false, fallingApart: false, town: myTown, monsterName:  
...  
fredTheZombie
```

`fredTheZombie` is now getting initialized with all of the information that it needs to be ready for use.

Convenience initializers for classes

Unlike designated initializers, convenience initializers are not responsible for making sure all of a class's properties have a value. Instead, they do the work that they are defined to do and then hand off that information to either another convenience initializer or a designated initializer. All convenience initializers call across to another initializer on the same class. Eventually, a convenience initializer must call through to its class's designated initializer. The relationship between convenience and designated initializers on a given class defines a path by which a class's stored properties receive initial values.

Make a convenience initializer on the **Zombie** type. This initializer will provide arguments for whether the **Zombie** instance walks with a limp and whether the instance is falling apart. It will omit parameters for `town` and `monsterName`; callers of this initializer will only need to be responsible for providing arguments to this initializer's parameters.

Listing 17.13 Using a convenience initializer (`Zombie.swift`)

```
...
init(limp: Bool, fallingApart: Bool, town: Town?, monsterName: String) {
    walksWithLimp = limp
    isFallingApart = fallingApart
    super.init(town: town, monsterName: monsterName)
}
convenience init(limp: Bool, fallingApart: Bool) {
    self.init(limp: limp, fallingApart: fallingApart, town: nil,
              if walksWithLimp {
                  print("This zombie has a bad knee.")
    }
}
final override func terrorizeTown() {
    if !isFallingApart {
        town?.changePopulation(-10)
    }
}
...
}
```

You mark an initializer as a convenience initializer with the `convenience` keyword. This keyword tells the compiler that the initializer will need to delegate to another initializer on the class, eventually calling to a designated initializer. After this call, an instance of the class is ready for use.

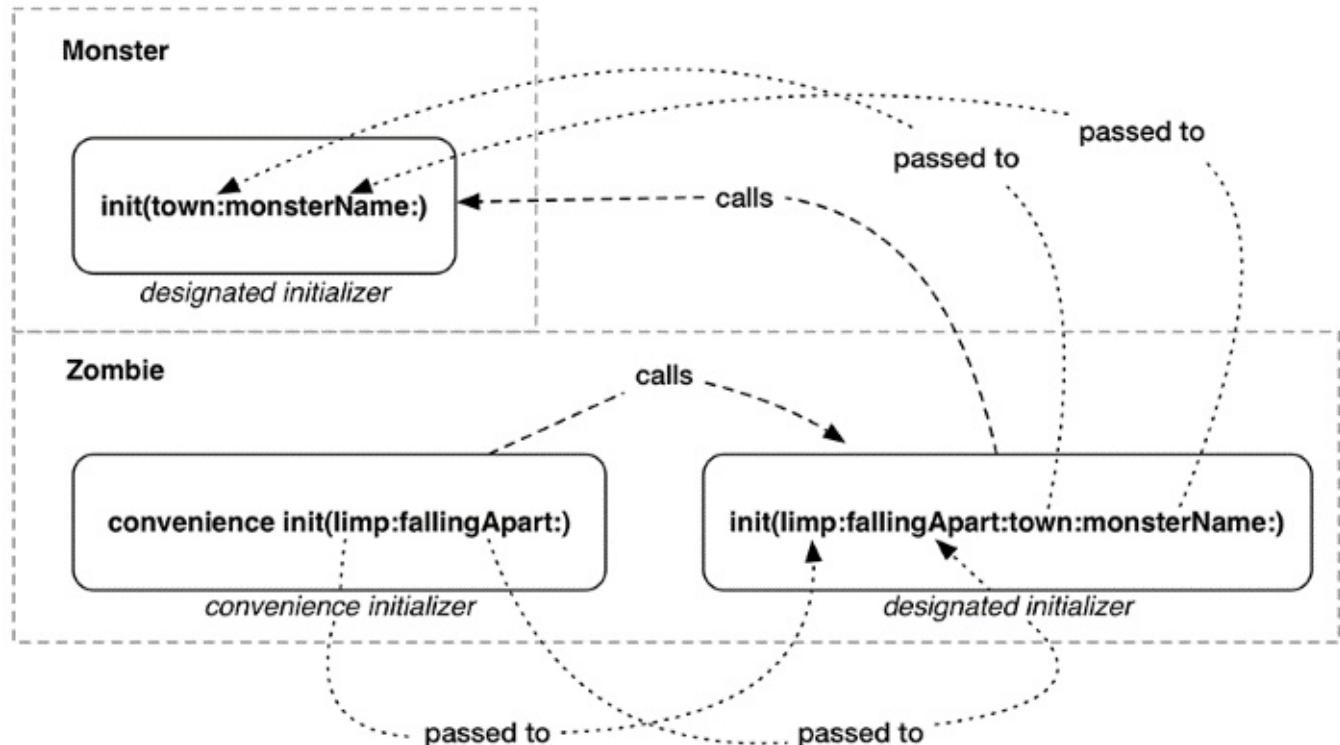
Here, the convenience initializer calls the designated initializer on the **Zombie** class. It passes in the values for the parameters it received: `limp` and `fallingApart`. For `town` and `monsterName`, the parameters that the convenience initializer did not receive values for, you pass `nil` and "Fred" to **Zombie**'s designated initializer.

After the convenience initializer calls the designated initializer, the instance is fully prepared for use. Thus, you can check the value of the `walksWithLimp` property on the instance. If you had tried to do this check before calling across to the **Zombie**'s designated initializer, the compiler would have issued an error: Use of 'self' in delegating initializer before

`self.init` is called. This error tells you that the delegating initializer is trying to use `self`, which is needed to access the `walksWithLimp` property, before it is ready for use.

[Figure 17.4](#) shows the relationships between the convenience and designated initializers.

Figure 17.4 Initializer delegation



You can now create instances of the **Zombie** type with this convenience initializer. Remember, however, that instances of **Zombie** created with this convenience initializer will have `nil` for the `town` property and "Fred" for the `name` property. Switch to `main.swift` and use it to create an instance.

Listing 17.14 Creating a convenient zombie (`main.swift`)

```
...
let fredTheZombie = Zombie(
    limp: false, fallingApart: false, town: myTown, monsterName: fredTheZombie.terrorizeTown()
fredTheZombie.town?.printDescription()

var convenientZombie = Zombie(limp: true, fallingApart: false)
...
```

Build and run your program, and you will see that `convenientZombie` has a bad knee.

Required initializers for classes

A class can require its subclasses to provide a specific initializer. For example, suppose you want all subclasses of the **Monster** class to provide values for the monster's name and the

town it is terrorizing (or `nil`, if the monster has not yet found a town). To do so, you mark the initializer with the keyword `required` to indicate that all subclasses of this type must provide the given initializer.

Switch to `Monster.swift` to make this change.

Listing 17.15 Making `town` and `monsterName` required (`Monster.swift`)

```
class Monster {  
    ...  
  
    var victimPool: Int {  
        ...  
    }  
    required init(town: Town?, monsterName: String) {  
        self.town = town  
        name = monsterName  
    }  
  
    func terrorizeTown() {  
        ...  
    }  
}
```

The sole designated initializer on the `Monster` class is now required. Subclasses must implement this initializer.

Unfortunately, the change triggers a compiler error, as revealed by Xcode's toolbar. Select the red icon to display the issue navigator and see what is wrong. The error reads '`required` initializer `'init(town:monsterName:)`' must be provided by subclass of '`Monster`'. It is telling you that you are not yet implementing this newly required initializer on the `Zombie` class. Navigate to `Zombie.swift` to implement the initializer.

Listing 17.16 Adding the required initializer (`Zombie.swift`)

```
...  
convenience init(limp: Bool, fallingApart: Bool) {  
    self.init(limp: limp, fallingApart: fallingApart, town: nil,  
    if walksWithLimp {  
        print("This zombie has a bad knee.")  
    }  
}  
required init(town: Town?, monsterName: String) {  
    walksWithLimp = false  
    isFallingApart = false  
    super.init(town: town, monsterName: monsterName)  
}  
final override func terrorizeTown() {  
    if !isFallingApart {
```

```

        town?.changePopulation(-10)
    }
    super.terrorizeTown()
}
...

```

To implement a superclass's required initializer, you prefix the subclass's implementation of the initializer with the `required` keyword. Unlike other functions that you must override if you inherit them from your superclass, you do not mark `required` initializers with the `override` keyword. It is implied by marking the initializer with `required`.

Your implementation of this `required` initializer makes it a designated initializer for the **Zombie** class. Why, you ask? Good question.

Recall that designated initializers are responsible for initializing the type's properties and for delegating up to the superclass's initializer. This implementation does exactly those two things. You can therefore use this initializer to instantiate the **Zombie** class.

At this point, you might be wondering, “How many designated initializers does **Zombie** have?” The answer is two: `init(limp:fallingApart:town:monsterName:)` and `init(town:monsterName:)`. Having more than one designated initializer is completely fine and is not uncommon.

Deinitialization

Deinitialization is part of the process of removing instances of a class from memory when they are no longer needed. Conceptually, it is the opposite of initialization. Deinitialization is limited to reference types and is not available for value types.

In Swift, a deinitializer is called immediately prior to when the instance is removed from memory. It provides an opportunity to do any final maintenance before the instance is deallocated.

The details of memory management are covered in greater detail in [Chapter 24](#), but it makes sense to introduce the idea of deinitialization while we are discussing initialization.

A class can only have one deinitializer. Deinitializers are written with `deinit` and take no arguments. Let's see a deinitializer in action in the **Zombie** class.

Listing 17.17 One less zombie (`Zombie.swift`)

```

...
required init(town: Town?, monsterName: String) {
    walksWithLimp = false
    isFallingApart = false
    super.init(town: town, monsterName: monsterName)
}

```

```

deinit {
    print("Zombie named \u201c(name)\u201d is no longer with us.")
}

final override func terrorizeTown() {
    if !isFallingApart {
        town?.changePopulation(-10)
    }
    super.terrorizeTown()
}
...

```

Your new deinitializer simply logs a farewell to the **Zombie** instance that is about to be deallocated from memory. Notice that the deinitializer accesses the **Zombie**'s name. Deinitializers have full access to an instance's properties and methods.

Open `main.swift` to trigger the **Zombie**'s `deinit` method. You will set `fredTheZombie` to be `nil` at the end of the file. Doing so will trigger the process of removing this instance from memory.

Only optional types can be or become `nil` in Swift. Therefore, you have to declare `fredTheZombie` as an optional – `Zombie?` – before you can make it `nil`. This change also means that you have to use optional chaining to unwrap the optional's value. Finally, you also need to declare `fredTheZombie` with `var` instead of `let` so that the instance can become `nil`.

Listing 17.18 Fred, we hardly knew ye (`main.swift`)

```

...
let var fredTheZombie: Zombie? = Zombie(
    limp: false, fallingApart: false, town: myTown, monsterName:
fredTheZombie!fredTheZombie?.terrorizeTown()
fredTheZombie!fredTheZombie?.town?.printDescription()

var convenientZombie = Zombie(limp: false, fallingApart: false)

print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie!fredTheZombie?.victimPool)")
fredTheZombie!fredTheZombie?.victimPool = 500
print("Victim pool: \(fredTheZombie!fredTheZombie?.victimPool)")
print(Zombie.spookyNoise)
if Zombie.isTerrifying {
    print("Run away!")
}
fredTheZombie = nil

```

Build and run the program now. You will see that you bid `fredTheZombie` farewell when the instance is deallocated.

Failable Initializers

Sometimes it is useful to define a type whose initialization can fail. In these cases, you need a way to report to the caller that you were not able to initialize the instance. You use *failable initializers* to handle these scenarios.

There are a number of reasons why you might want initialization to fail. A type's initializer may be given invalid parameters. For example, you might want to have an initializer fail if someone tries to initialize an instance of **Town** with a negative population. Or perhaps a type's initialization depends on an external resource that is not available, as in `let image = UIImage(named: "nonexisting-image")`. This code would fail to create a **UIImage** instance because the image resource does not exist. When this happens, **UIImage**'s failable initializer would return `nil` to indicate that initialization has failed.

A failable Town initializer

Failable initializers return an optional instance of the type. You append a question mark after the keyword `init` to indicate that an initializer is failable (i.e., `init?`). You can also use an exclamation point after `init` to create a failable initializer that returns an implicitly unwrapped optional (i.e., `init!`). Returning an implicitly unwrapped optional would mean that you could avoid all of the optional unwrapping syntax that Swift provides to make optionals safe to use. For this reason, while returning an implicitly unwrapped optional is a bit easier to use, it is markedly less safe and should be used with caution.

If an instance of **Town** is being created with a population of 0, then initialization should fail – you cannot have a town without a population. Open `main.swift` and change the initialization of `myTown` to have a value of 0 for its `population` parameter.

Listing 17.19 myTown, population zero (main.swift)

```
var myTown = Town(population: 10_000, stoplights: 6)
myTown.printDescription()
...
```

This does not cause an error – yet. Switch to `Town.swift` to give the **Town** struct a failable initializer.

Town has two initializers. Remember that you delegated from the `init(population:stoplights:)` initializer to the `init(region:population:stoplights:)` initializer in this type. For now, just make the `init(region:population:stoplights:)` failable.

Listing 17.20 Using a failable initializer (Town.swift)

```
struct Town {
    ...
    init?(region: String, population: Int, stoplights: Int)
```

```

        guard population > 0 else {
            return nil
        }
        self.region = region
        self.population = population
        numberOfStoplights = stoplights
    }
...
}

```

You now use the failable initializer syntax in **init?**

(region:population:stoplights:). After this declaration, you check to see whether the given value for **population** is less than or equal to 0. If **population** is less than or equal to 0, then you return **nil** and the initializer fails. In the context of failable initializers, “fail” means that the initializer will create an optional instance of the **Town** type with a value of **nil**. This is good. It is preferable to have an instance set to **nil** rather than an instance with bad data in its properties.

At this point, you should notice a few errors in your program. Take a moment to consider what is going on before you build and run the program.

The initializer **init(population:stoplights:)** currently delegates to a failable initializer. This suggests that **init(population:stoplights:)** may get **nil** back from the designated initializer. Receiving **nil** back from the designated initializer will be unexpected, because **init(population:stoplights:)** is not failable itself.

Fix this problem by also making **init(population:stoplights:)** a failable initializer.

Listing 17.21 Making both Town initializers failable (`Town.swift`)

```

struct Town {
    ...
    init?(region: String, population: Int, stoplights: Int) {
        guard population > 0 else {
            return nil
        }
        self.region = region
        self.population = population
        numberOfStoplights = stoplights
    }

    init?(population: Int, stoplights: Int) {
        self.init(region: "N/A", population: population, stoplig
    }
...
}

```

Run the program. You will see that there are still a number of errors that you have to fix. You can find these errors in `main.swift`.

The line of code `myTown.printDescription()` has an error that reads: `Value of optional type 'Town?' not unwrapped; did you mean to use '!' or '?'`? Remember that making the initializers on the `Town` struct failable means that they now return optionals: `Town?` instead of `Town`. That means you have to unwrap the optionals before using them.

Use optional chaining to fix the errors in `main.swift`.

Listing 17.22 Using optional chaining (`main.swift`)

```
var myTown = Town(population: 0, stoplights: 6)
myTownmyTown?.printDescription()
let myTownSize = myTownmyTown?.townSize
print(myTownSize)
myTownmyTown?.changePopulation(1_000_000)
print("Size: \(\del{myTown}myTown?.townSize);"
      population: \(\del{myTown}myTown?.population)")
...

```

As you can see, representing `nil` in Swift tends to have a fairly extensive impact on your code. These changes can add complexity and more code to your project. Both increase the chances of making a troublesome mistake.

We recommend that you minimize your use of optionals to those cases in which you absolutely need them.

Build and run the program now. You removed the errors, so the project runs fine. It is time to say farewell to `MonsterTown`. You will be moving on to a new project – free of zombies – in the next chapter.

Initialization Going Forward

“How am I going to remember all this?” We hear you. Initialization in Swift is a very defined process with a lot of rules. Thankfully, the compiler will remind you of what you need to do to comply and write a valid initializer. Rather than memorizing all of the rules to initialization, it is useful to think of Swift initialization in terms of value types and classes.

For value types, such as structs, initialization is principally responsible for ensuring that all of the instance’s stored properties have been initialized and given appropriate values. This statement is true for classes as well, but initialization is a bit more complicated in this case.

Initialization for classes can be thought of as unfolding in two sequential phases.

In the first phase, a class’s designated initializer is eventually called (either directly or by delegation from a convenience initializer). At this point, all of the properties declared on the class are initialized with appropriate values inside of the designated initializer’s definition. Next, a designated initializer delegates up to its superclass’s designated initializer. The designated initializer on the superclass then ensures that all of its own stored properties are initialized with appropriate values, which is a process that continues until the class at the top of the inheritance chain is reached. The first phase is now complete.

The second phase begins, providing an opportunity for a class to further customize the values held by its stored properties. For example, a designated initializer can modify properties on `self` after it calls to the superclass’s designated initializer. Designated initializers can also call instance methods on `self`. Finally, initialization reenters the convenience initializer, providing it with an opportunity to perform any customization on the instance.

The instance is fully initialized after these two phases, and all of its properties and methods are available for use.

The goal of this very definite initialization process is to guarantee the successful initialization of a class. The compiler secures this procedure and will issue errors if you do not adhere to any step in the process. In the end, it is not important that you remember each step in the process so long as you follow the compiler’s guidance. Over time, the details of initialization will become more secure in your mind.

Silver Challenge

Currently, the required initializer on the **Monster** class is implemented as a designated initializer on the **Zombie** subclass. Make this initializer a convenience initializer on the **Zombie** class instead. This change will involve delegating across the **Zombie** class to its designated initializer.

Gold Challenge

The **Monster** class can be initialized with any **String** instance for the `monsterName` parameter, even an empty **String**. Doing so would lead to an instance of **Monster** with no name. Even though Frankenstein's monster had no name, you want all of yours to be individually identified. Fix this problem in the **Monster** class by ensuring that `monsterName` cannot be empty.

Your solution will involve giving **Monster** a failable initializer. Also note that this change will have an impact on initialization in the **Zombie** subclass. Make the necessary adjustments in this class as well.

For the More Curious: Initializer Parameters

Like functions and methods, initializers can provide explicit external parameter names. External parameter names distinguish between the parameter names available to callers and the local parameter names used in the initializer's implementation. Because initializers follow different naming conventions than functions (i.e., initializer names are always `init`), the parameters' names and types help to determine which initializer should be called. Thus, Swift provides external parameter names for all of the initializer's arguments by default.

You can provide your own external parameter names as needed. For example, imagine a **WeightRecordInLBS** struct that should be able to be initialized with kilograms.

```
struct WeightRecordInLBS {
    let weight: Double

    init(kilograms kilos: Double) {
        weight = kilos * 2.20462
    }
}
```

This initializer supplies `kilograms` as an explicit external parameter and gives `kilos` as a local parameter. In its implementation, you simply convert `kilos` to pounds by multiplying with the correct conversion. You would then use this initializer like so: `let wr = WeightRecordInLBS(kilograms: 84)`.

You can even use `_` as an explicit external parameter name if you do not want to expose a parameter name. For example, our fictitious **WeightRecordInLBS** struct obviously defines a weight record in terms of pounds. Thus, it would make sense for the initializer to default to taking pounds in its argument.

```
struct WeightRecordInLBS {
    let weight: Double

    init(_ pounds: Double) {
        weight = pounds
    }

    init(kilograms kilos: Double) {
        weight = kilos * 2.20462
    }
}
```

The new initializer above can be used in the following manner: `let wr = WeightRecordInLBS(185)`. Because this type rather explicitly represents a weight record in pounds, there is no need for a named parameter in the argument list. Using `_` can make your code more concise, which is convenient when it is quite explicit what will be passed in to the argument.

Value vs Reference Types

This chapter builds on the lessons you have been learning about value types, like structs, and references types, like classes. You will explore the differences between the two by comparing their differing behaviors in a variety of scenarios. At the end of this chapter, you should have a good understanding of when to use a value type or a reference type.

Value Semantics

Create a new playground called `ValueVsRefs`. Your playground has the usual template code:

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"
```

You have seen this code many times before: You have a mutable instance of type `String` set to the value of "Hello, playground". Make a new string by giving the value of `str` to another instance.

Listing 18.1 Making a new string

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"
var playgroundGreeting = str
```

`playgroundGreeting` has the same value as `str`. They both hold the string "Hello, playground", which you can verify in the results sidebar. But what happens when you change the value of `playgroundGreeting`? Will it also change the value of `str`? Change `playgroundGreeting` to find out.

Listing 18.2 Updating `playgroundGreeting`

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"
var playgroundGreeting = str
playgroundGreeting += "! How are you today?"
str
```

As you can see, even though `playgroundGreeting`'s value has been updated, `str`'s value has not changed. Why not? The answer has to do with *value semantics*.

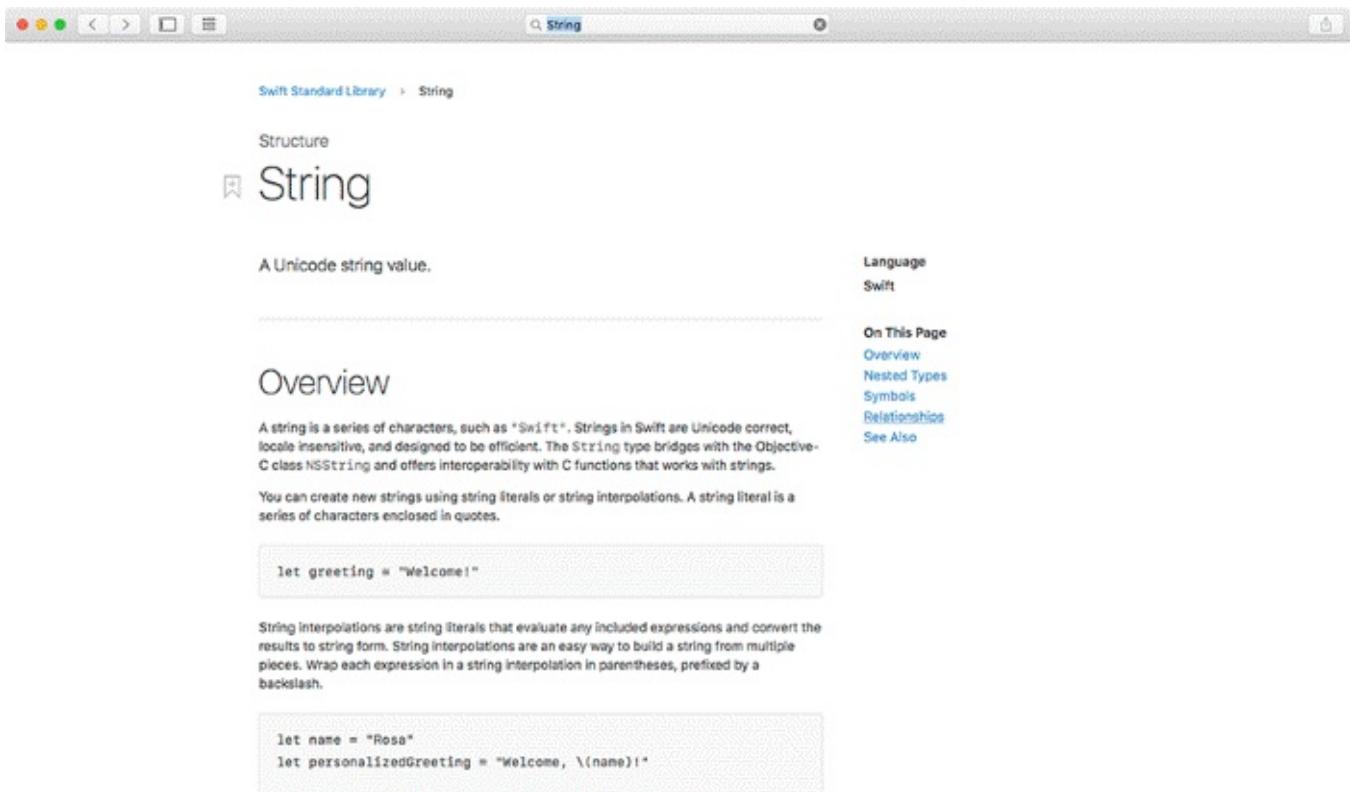
To better understand the meaning of value semantics, Option-click on `playgroundGreeting`. You should see the pop-up shown in [Figure 18.1](#).

Figure 18.1 playgroundGreeting information



This pop-up shows some useful information. For example, `playgroundGreeting` is of type **String**. Click on the word “String” in the pop-up and it will reveal the documentation for the **String** type (Figure 18.2).

Figure 18.2 String documentation

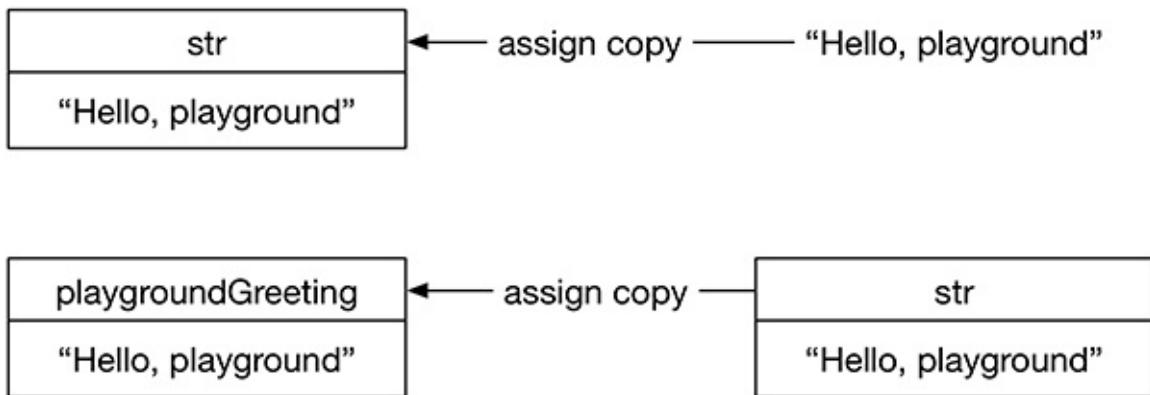


At the top of this document, **String** is listed as a structure. This means that **String** is implemented as a struct in Swift’s standard library. Furthermore, this means that **String** is a *value type*. Value types are always *copied* when they are assigned to an instance or passed as an argument to a function.

When you assigned `str` to `playgroundGreeting`, you gave a *copy* of `str`’s value to `playgroundGreeting`. They do not point to the same underlying instance. Thus, when you changed `playgroundGreeting`’s value, it had no impact on `str`’s value. They are

distinct from each other. [Figure 18.3](#) shows this relationship graphically.

Figure 18.3 Value semantics and copy behavior



Swift's basic types – **Array**, **Dictionary**, **Int**, **String**, and so on – are all implemented as structs, so they are all value types. This design choice made at the level of the standard library should indicate to you how important value types are to Swift. You should always consider modeling your data with a struct first, and only move on to using a class if needed.

Let's look at how *reference semantics* work to get a better understanding of when it is appropriate to use them.

Reference Semantics

Reference semantics work differently than value semantics. With value types, you get a copy of the instance when you assign it to a new constant or variable. The same is true when you pass an instance of a value type as the argument to a function. An instance of a reference type, however, behaves differently in that these two actions actually create an additional *reference* to the same underlying instance.

Let's add a new class to model a Greek god to the playground to see just what this means.

Listing 18.3 Adding a Greek god class

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"
var playgroundGreeting = str
playgroundGreeting += "! How are you today?"
str

class GreekGod {
    var name: String
    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name
    }
}
```

The class **GreekGod** is small – it supplies a single stored property to hold on to a god or goddess's name. Make a new instance of this class.

Listing 18.4 Making a Greek god

```
...
class GreekGod {
    var name: String
    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name
    }
}
let hecate = GreekGod(name: "Hecate")
```

You now have a new instance of **GreekGod** with the name “Hecate,” goddess of the crossroads. Make a new constant called `anotherHecate` and assign `hecate` to it.

Listing 18.5 Getting a reference to a Greek god

```
...
class GreekGod {
    var name: String
    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name
    }
}
```

```
}
```

```
let hecate = GreekGod(name: "Hecate")
```

```
let anotherHecate = hecate
```

At this point, you have two constants – but they both point to the same instance of the **GreekGod** class. Change `anotherHecate`'s name to illustrate this point.

Listing 18.6 Changing a Greek god's name

```
...
```

```
class GreekGod {
```

```
    var name: String
```

```
    init(name: String) {
```

```
        self.name = name
```

```
    }
```

```
}
```

```
let hecate = GreekGod(name: "Hecate")
```

```
let anotherHecate = hecate
```



```
anotherHecate.name = "AnotherHecate"
```

```
anotherHecate.name
```

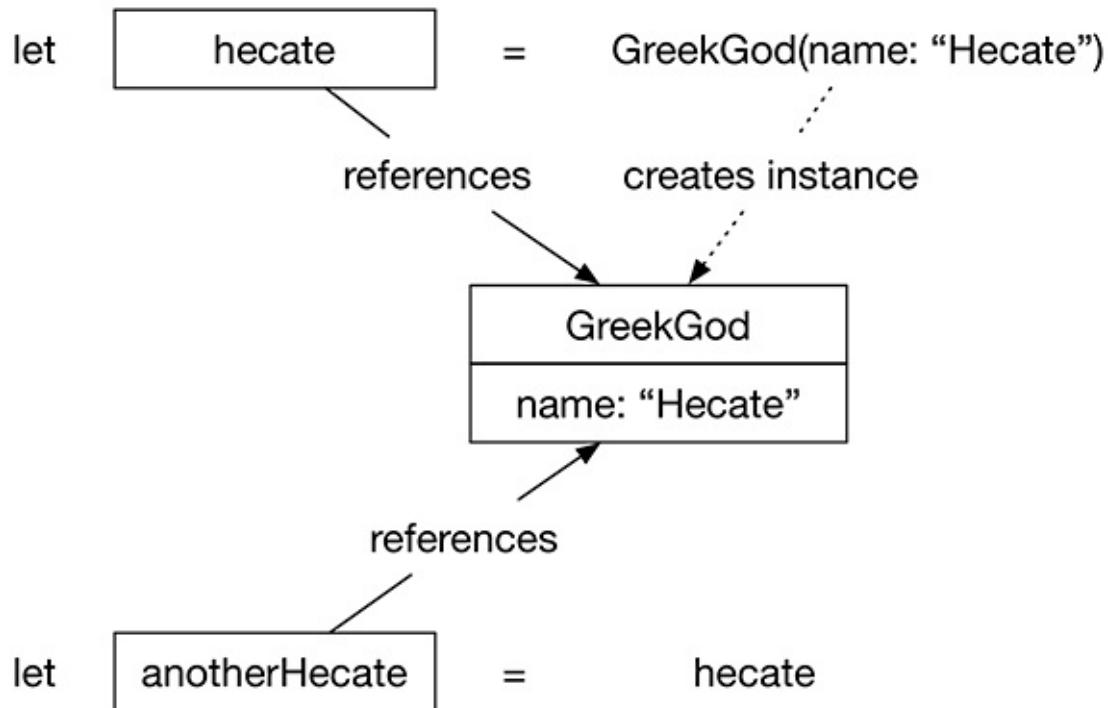
```
hecate.name
```

The code in [Listing 18.6](#) changes the name of only `anotherHecate` and leaves `hecate`'s name alone. But the `name` property for both of the goddesses has changed to "AnotherHecate" in the results sidebar. What happened?

The code `GreekGod(name: "Hecate")` created an instance of the **GreekGod** class. When you assign an instance of a class to a constant or variable, as you did with `hecate`, that constant or variable gets a reference to the instance. And as you can see, a reference works differently than a copy.

With a reference, the constant or variable *refers* to an instance of the class in memory. Therefore, both `hecate` and `anotherHecate` refer to the *same* instance of the **GreekGod** class. [Figure 18.4](#) shows this relationship.

Figure 18.4 Reference semantics



Because `hecate` and `anotherHecate` refer to the same instance of `GreekGod`, a change in one will be reflected in the other.

Constant Value and Reference Types

Value and reference types behave differently when they are constants. Create a new struct called **Pantheon** so that you have a value type of your own to work with.

Listing 18.7 Making the Greek Pantheon

```
...
class GreekGod {
    var name: String
    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name
    }
}
let hecate = GreekGod(name: "Hecate")
let anotherHecate = hecate

anotherHecate.name = "AnotherHecate"
anotherHecate.name
hecate.name

struct Pantheon {
    var chiefGod: GreekGod
}
```

The new struct represents the Greek pantheon. It has one stored property to reflect the foremost god in the pantheon. Greek gods are always squabbling, so you made this property mutable with `var`.

Make a new instance of **Pantheon** with `hecate` as the `chiefGod`.

Listing 18.8 Hecate's Pantheon

```
...
class GreekGod {
    var name: String
    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name
    }
}
let hecate = GreekGod(name: "Hecate")
let anotherHecate = hecate

anotherHecate.name = "AnotherHecate"
anotherHecate.name
hecate.name

struct Pantheon {
```

```
    var chiefGod: GreekGod  
}
```

let pantheon = Pantheon(chiefGod: hecate)

You now have an instance of **Pantheon** with hecate at its head. Note that this instance is created with `let`, so it is a constant. Try to change `pantheon`'s `chiefGod` property.

Listing 18.9 A new chief god

```
...  
struct Pantheon {  
    var chiefGod: GreekGod  
}
```

```
let pantheon = Pantheon(chiefGod: hecate)  
let zeus = GreekGod(name: "Zeus")  
pantheon.chiefGod = zeus
```

First, you create a new instance of **GreekGod** named `zeus`. Second, you assign that new instance to the `chiefGod` property on `pantheon`. You should see a compiler error on that line: Cannot assign to property: 'pantheon' is a 'let' constant.

This error is telling you that `pantheon` is an immutable instance, which means you cannot change it. Value types that are declared as constants cannot have their properties changed, even if these properties are declared with `var` in the type's implementation. You can think of the instances of a value type as representing a single whole value, like an integer. If you declare an integer as a constant, then you cannot change some part of it later on.

Remove this assignment to the `chiefGod` property to silence the compiler error. Leave `zeus` alone; you will be using him in the next example.

Listing 18.10 Demoting Zeus

```
...  
struct Pantheon {  
    var chiefGod: GreekGod  
}
```

```
let pantheon = Pantheon(chiefGod: hecate)  
let zeus = GreekGod(name: "Zeus")  
pantheon.chiefGod = zeus
```

This works differently for reference types. Try to change the `name` property on `zeus`.

Listing 18.11 Changing Zeus's name

```
...  
struct Pantheon {  
    var chiefGod: GreekGod  
}
```

```
let pantheon = Pantheon(chiefGod: hecate)
let zeus = GreekGod(name: "Zeus")
zeus.name = "Zeus Jr."
zeus.name
```

This is not *that* Zeus; this is one of his many sons. You need to update his name with the requisite “Jr.” Despite **zeus** being declared with `let`, you will see that the compiler is absolutely fine with this name change.

Why can’t you change the value of a property on a constant that is an instance of a value type, but you *can* change the value of a property on a constant that is an instance of a reference type?

Because **zeus** is an instance of a reference type, it refers to the instance of **GreekGod** that was made via this code: `GreekGod(name: "Zeus")`. When you change the value that the `name` property stores, you are not actually changing what **zeus** really is, which is a *reference* to a **GreekGod**. Because you made `name` a mutable stored property when you defined the **GreekGod** class (via its `var` declaration), you are free to change it however much you like. No matter how many times you change **zeus**’s `name`, **zeus** still refers to the same instance.

Using Value and Reference Types Together

You may be wondering, “Can I put a value type inside of a reference type? Can I put a reference type inside of a value type?” The answer to both of these questions is “Yes,” and you did the latter by adding a property of the class **GreekGod** to **Pantheon**. However, although we led you to do this without warning, you must be very careful about using a reference type inside of a value type. (Using a value type inside a reference type does not present any particular problems.) Consider the following example that changes the name of hecate.

Listing 18.12 The Romans are coming

```
...
let pantheon = Pantheon(chiefGod: hecate)
let zeus = GreekGod(name: "Zeus")
zeus.name = "Zeus Jr."
zeus.name

pantheon.chiefGod.name // "AnotherHecate"
let greekPantheon = pantheon
hecate.name = "Trivia"
greekPantheon.chiefGod.name // ???
```

When you log the value of `pantheon.chiefGod.name`, the results sidebar bar lists “AnotherHecate”. You next assign a copy of `pantheon` to a new constant named `greekPantheon`. Remember that **Pantheon** is a value type, so you should expect `greekPantheon` to receive a copy of `pantheon`. Then you change `hecate`’s name to “Trivia.” (The Greeks have given way to the Romans, and all of the names are changing.) Last, you check the name of `greekPantheon`’s `chiefGod` and get a surprise.

The `chiefGod`’s name is now `Trivia`, which may be surprising if you expected `greekPantheon` to have a copy of `pantheon`. How did this happen?

Remember that the `chiefGod` property is of type **GreekGod**. **GreekGod** is a class, and is therefore a reference type. When you created the `pantheon` with `hecate` as the `chiefGod` (`Pantheon(chiefGod: hecate)`), you gave the `pantheon`’s `chiefGod` a reference to the same instance of **GreekGod** to which `hecate` refers. Consequently, modifying the name of `hecate` will also change the name of the `pantheon`’s `chiefGod`.

This example demonstrates the complications of placing a reference type within a value type. You should expect instances of value types to be copied when assigned to a new variable or constant or passed into a function. Somewhat confusingly, however, a value type with a reference type in a property will pass along that same reference to the new variable or constant. That reference will still point to the same instance as the original reference, and changes to any of them will be reflected in all of them. To avoid this confusion, we urge you to avoid using reference type properties inside of value types in almost all cases. If you find yourself needing a reference type property in your struct, then it is best to use an immutable

instance.

Copying

The concept of making copies has been lurking behind nearly every topic covered in this chapter. Developers often want to know if copying an instance yields a *shallow* or a *deep* copy. Swift does not provide any language-level support for making a deep copy, which means copies in Swift are shallow.

To get a sense of what these concepts mean, let's look at an example. Create a new instance of **GreekGod** and put that and the existing instances into an array.

Listing 18.13 Adding some gods

```
...
let athena = GreekGod(name: "Athena")

let gods = [athena, hecate, zeus]
```

You created a new Greek god named `athena` and added that instance, `hecate`, and `zeus` to a new array. You should see these gods contained within the new array listed in the results sidebar.

Make a copy of the array `gods`, change the name of `zeus`, and compare `gods` to its copy.

Listing 18.14 Copying gods

```
...
let athena = GreekGod(name: "Athena")

let gods = [athena, hecate, zeus]
let godsCopy = gods
gods.last?.name = "Jupiter"
gods
godsCopy
```

`last` refers to the last element in an array. It is an optional because the array may be empty. Your results sidebar should look like [Figure 18.5](#).

Figure 18.5 Comparing gods and godsCopy

```
let athena = GreekGod(name: "Athena")

let gods = [athena, hecate, zeus]
let godsCopy = gods
gods.last?.name = "Jupiter"
gods
godsCopy
```

GreekGod
[{"name": "Athena"}, {"name": "Trivia"}, {"name": "Zeus Jr."}]
[{"name": "Athena"}, {"name": "Trivia"}, {"name": "Zeus Jr."}]
0
[{"name": "Athena"}, {"name": "Trivia"}, {"name": "Jupiter"}]
[{"name": "Athena"}, {"name": "Trivia"}, {"name": "Jupiter"}]

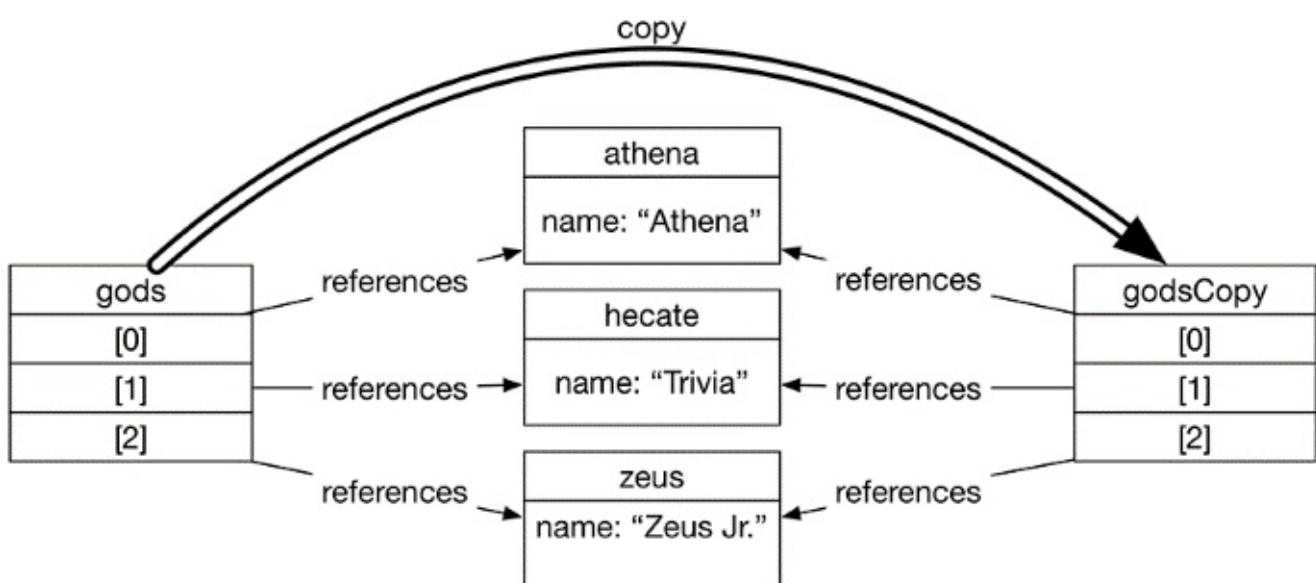
Notice that both `gods` and its copy have the same contents after you change `zeus`'s name property (via `gods.last?.name = "Jupiter"`). Why did changing the name of the last god in the `gods` array change the name of the last god in `godsCopy`? After all, arrays are structs, which means that they are value types. The expectation for value types is that `godsCopy` is a distinct copy of `gods`. Yet a change to an item in one is reflected in the other; why?

Remember that `gods` contains instances of **GreekGod**. **GreekGod** is a class, and that means it is a reference type. It also means that `godsCopy` and `gods` have references to the same instances of **GreekGod**. This is very similar to `pantheon` and `greekPantheon` sharing references to a **GreekGod**.

Pulling it all together, `last` will get the last element in the `gods` array, which is `zeus`. So, when you change the name on this instance, you are changing it for the instance of **GreekGod** to which `zeus` refers. Thus, the change to `zeus` is reflected in both arrays.

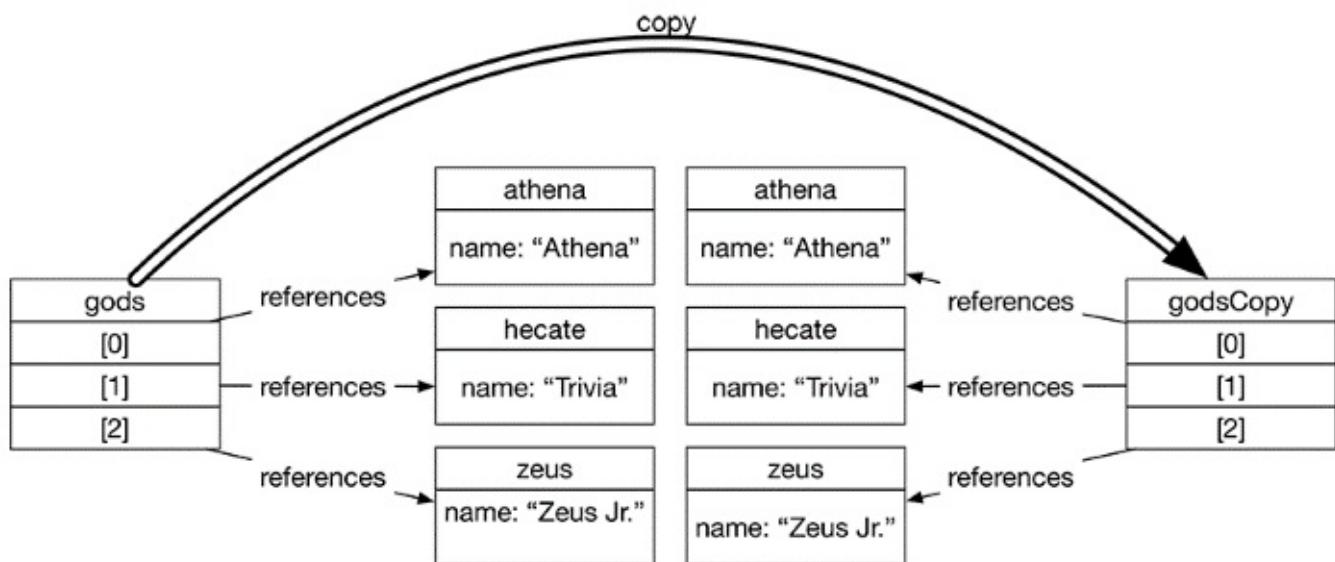
This form of copying is referred to as *shallow copying*. Shallow copying does not create a distinct copy of an instance; instead, it provides a duplicate of the instance's reference. [Figure 18.6](#) is a graphical visualization of this.

Figure 18.6 Shallow copy of an array of gods



A *deep copy*, on the other hand, would duplicate the instance at the destination of a reference. That would mean that `godsCopy`'s indices would not reference the same instances of **GreekGod**. Instead, a deep copy of `gods` would create a new array with references to its own instances of **GreekGod**. That form of copying would look something like [Figure 18.7](#).

Figure 18.7 Deep copy of an array of gods



Swift does not supply any means to perform a deep copy. If you would like this behavior, then you will need to make it yourself.

Equality vs Identity

Now that you understand the difference between value and reference types, you are ready to learn about equality and identity. *Equality* refers to two instances having the same values for their observable characteristics, such as two instances of the **String** type that have the same text. *Identity*, on the other hand, refers to whether two variables or constants point to the same instance in memory. Take a look at this sample code.

```
let x = 1
let y = 1
x == y // True
```

Two constants, `x` and `y`, are created. They are both of type **Int** and hold on to the same value, 1. Not surprisingly, the equality check, done via `==`, evaluates to `true`. This makes sense because `x` and `y` hold on to exactly the same value.

This is exactly what we want to know from an equality check: Do two instances have the same values? All of Swift's basic data types (**String**, **Int**, **Float**, **Double**, **Array**, and **Dictionary**) can be checked for equality.

`athena` and `hecate` are both reference types because they point to an instance of the **GreekGod** class. Thus, you can check for identity on these two constants using the identity operator (`==`) to see whether they point to the same instance. Here is what that would look like:

```
athena === hecate // False
```

This identity check fails because `athena` and `hecate` do not point to the same location in memory.

What if you want to check for identity on `x` and `y`? You might think you could use the identity operator, as in `x === y`. But this code will generate an error from the compiler. Why? The reason for the error is that value types are passed by value. Because the **Int** type is implemented in Swift as a struct, both `x` and `y` are value types. Therefore, you cannot compare these two constants based upon their location in memory.

What if you tried to check for equality on `athena` and `hecate` with `athena == hecate`? You would see a compiler error. The compiler is telling you that it does not know how to call the `==` function on the **GreekGod** class. If you want to check for equality on classes that you make, you have to teach your classes how by implementing the `==` function. Doing so entails conforming to a protocol called **Equatable**, which you will read about in [Chapter 22](#).

As a final note, it is important to realize that two constants or variables may be equal (i.e., they have the same values) yet not be identical (i.e., they may point to distinct instances of a given type). But it does not work the other way around: If two variables or constants point to the same instance in memory, then they will be equal as well.

What Should I Use?

Structures and classes are well suited for defining many custom types. Before Swift, structs were so distinct from classes in OS X and iOS development that the use-cases for both types were obvious. In Swift, however, the functionality added to structs makes their behavior more similar to that of classes. This similarity makes the decision of which to use somewhat more complicated.

But do not despair. There are important differences between structs and classes that give some guidance on which to use when. Strict rules are hard to define because there are many factors to consider, but here are some general guidelines.

1. If you want a type to be passed by value, use a struct. Doing so will ensure that the type is copied when assigned or passed into a function's argument.
2. If the type does not need to support subclasses inheriting from it, then use a struct. Structs do not support inheritance, and so they cannot be subclassed.
3. If the behavior you would like to represent in a type is relatively straightforward and encompasses a few simple values, consider starting out with a struct. You can always change the type to be a class later.
4. Use a class in all other cases.

Structs are commonly used when modeling shapes (e.g., rectangles have a width and a height), ranges (e.g., a race has a start and an end), and points in a coordinate system (e.g., a point in a two-dimensional space has an x and y value). They are also great for defining data structures: The **String**, **Array**, and **Dictionary** types are all defined as structs in Swift's standard library.

There are some other cases in which you might want to use a class instead of a struct, but they will be somewhat less common than the above. For example, if you want to take advantage of passing a reference around, but do not want a class to be subclassed, you might ask yourself whether or not you should use a struct (to avoid inheritance) or a class (to have reference semantics). The answer here is to use a `final class { ... }`. Marking a class as `final` will prevent the class from being subclassed, and will also offer you the desired reference semantics for instances of the class.

In general, we suggest starting out with a struct unless you absolutely know you need the benefits of a reference type. Value types are easier to reason about because you do not need to worry about what happens to an instance when you change values on a copy.

For the More Curious: Copy on Write

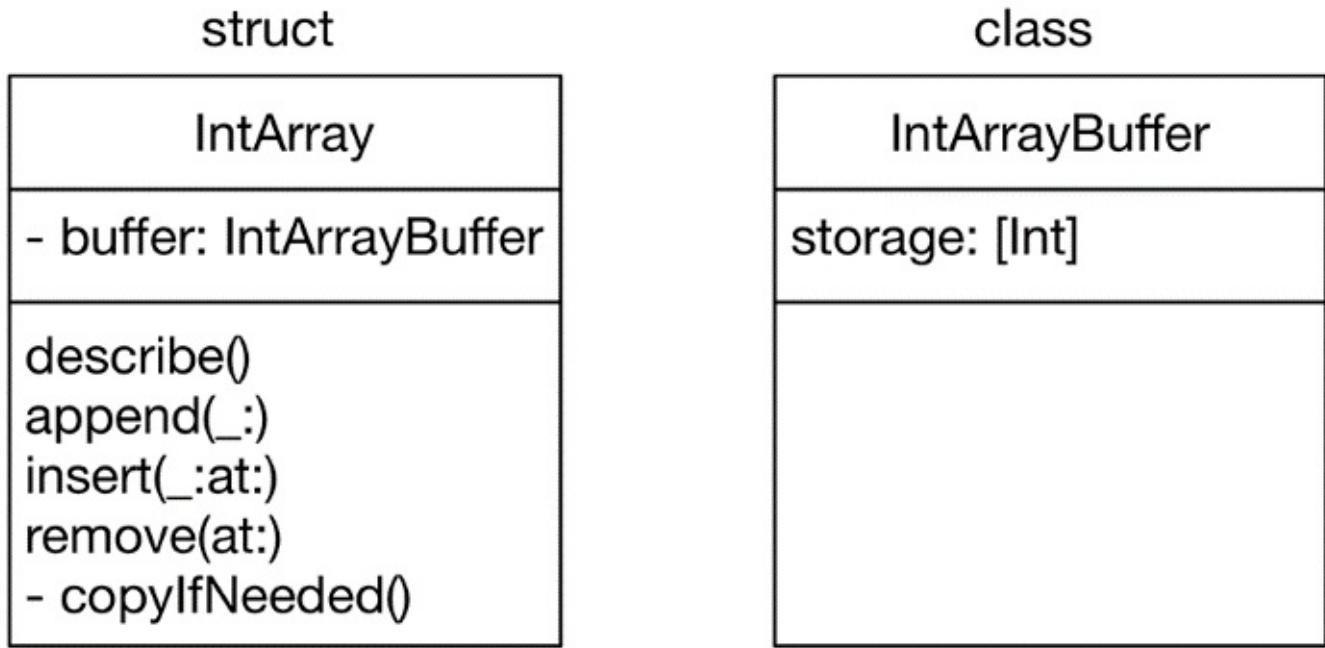
At this point, you may be wondering whether the copy behavior of Swift's value types has any performance implications. For example, if you get a new copy of an **Array** every time you pass it into a function or assign it to a new constant or variable, won't you have a wasteful number of copies floating about? In reality, it depends on your data and how you are using it. In practice, the value types in Swift's standard library implement something called *copy on write*.

Copy on write, or COW, refers to the implicit sharing of value types' underlying storage. This optimization allows instances of a value type to share their underlying storage, meaning that each instance does not have its own copy of the data. Instead, each instance maintains its own reference to the store. If the instance needs to mutate the storage, or write to it, *then* the instance gets its own distinct copy. This means value types avoid creating superfluous copies of data.

To better understand this idea, you will create a very simple implementation of an array to hold instances of type **Int**. This implementation will illustrate the concepts at hand, but will fall short of an actual implementation of Swift's **Array** type. You will see how to create a more complete implementation of a custom collection type in [Chapter 22](#).

[Figure 18.8](#) provides a sketch of how your **IntArray** will be implemented to support COW.

Figure 18.8 Diagram of IntArray



This kind of figure is called a *structure diagram*, and it uses something called Unified Modeling Language (UML). UML provides a standardized language to describe and visualize a system in software engineering. If the diagram is well formed, you should be able to look at it and write its corresponding code. For example, the `-` preceding `buffer` and `copyIfNeeded()` in **IntArray**'s description means that these members of the struct are private.

IntArray will be a struct that has one property named **buffer** that is of type **IntArrayBuffer**. **buffer** will be a private property because you do not want your underlying storage to be visible externally. **IntArrayBuffer** will be a class with one property named **storage** that is an array of integers. Your buffer type will be private as well because it is merely an implementation detail of **IntArray**, which means it should not be available externally either.

It may feel strange to use an array of integers as the storage. After all, aren't you doing all of this to make an array that can store integers? Well, yes, but a more realistic implementation of an array would use concepts covered later in the book. Stay tuned; in [Chapter 22](#) you will see how to develop a more realistic version of a collection type. For now, the main point to focus on is that **IntArrayBuffer** serves as a reference type modeling **IntArray**'s underlying storage.

IntArray will provide three public methods central to an array's behavior: **append(_ :)**, **insert(_ : at :)**, and **remove(at :)**. **IntArray** will also have a **describe()** method so that you will be able to observe changes to the underlying storage.

After you set up your initial implementation, you will add the private **copyIfNeeded()** method to **IntArray**. This is where you will implement the copy on write behavior of your **IntArray** type.

It is time to implement your array and its underlying buffer. Create a new playground and name it **IntArray**. Begin by implementing your buffer class.

Listing 18.15 Implementing IntArrayBuffer

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

fileprivate class IntArrayBuffer {
    var storage: [Int]

    init() {
        storage = []
    }

    init(buffer: IntArrayBuffer) {
        storage = buffer.storage
    }
}
```

IntArrayBuffer is a **fileprivate** class. This means that the class would need to locate its implementation within the same file as **IntArray**. Because you are writing this code in a playground, it will be visible to your array implementation.

The variable **storage** has the type **[Int]**, which is initialized to be an empty array in the parameter-less initializer. You also supply an initializer that takes an **IntArrayBuffer**

instance as an argument. This is only added for convenience, as you will use it inside of your **IntArray** implementation.

Now it is time to write your **IntArray** type. Create a struct right below your **IntArrayBuffer** class.

Listing 18.16 Initial implementation of IntArray

```
...
fileprivate class IntArrayBuffer {
    var storage: [Int]

    init() {
        storage = []
    }

    init(buffer: IntArrayBuffer) {
        storage = buffer.storage
    }
}

struct IntArray {
    private var buffer: IntArrayBuffer

    init() {
        buffer = IntArrayBuffer()
    }

    func describe() {
        print(buffer.storage)
    }
}
```

IntArray has a fairly small implementation at this point. It has a private property named **buffer** that is of type **IntArrayBuffer**. This property maintains the backing storage for **IntArray**. You also wrote a small initializer that takes no arguments and uses the empty initializer on **IntArrayBuffer** to set up the array's storage. Last, you provide a simple **describe()** method to print out the contents of the buffer's **storage** property. This will help you keep track of changes to the array so that you can see how COW works.

Your implementation of **IntArray** is limited at this point. All it does is set up a buffer as its backing storage. That is important work, but it leaves the array lacking its main features. You need to write some methods to insert, append, and remove data from the array.

Listing 18.17 Defining IntArray's API

```
...
fileprivate class IntArrayBuffer {
```

```

var storage: [Int]

init() {
    storage = []
}

init(buffer: IntArrayBuffer) {
    storage = buffer.storage
}
}

struct IntArray {
    private var buffer: IntArrayBuffer

    init() {
        buffer = IntArrayBuffer()
    }

    func describe() {
        print(buffer.storage)
    }

    func insert(_ value: Int, at index: Int) {
        buffer.storage.insert(value, at: index)
    }

    func append(_ value: Int) {
        buffer.storage.append(value)
    }

    func remove(at index: Int) {
        buffer.storage.remove(at: index)
    }
}

```

The methods **insert(_:at:)**, **append(_:)**, and **remove(at:)** all call through to methods defined on the **Array** type in the standard library. This helps to underline the value of using **[Int]** as the backing storage of the buffer. While the buffer's implementation is not quite realistic, it allows you to keep things simple and focus on COW's behavior.

Exercise your new **IntArray** by creating an instance and adding some integers to it.

Listing 18.18 Exercising IntArray

```

...
struct IntArray {
    private var buffer: IntArrayBuffer

```

```

init() {
    buffer = IntArrayBuffer()
}

func describe() {
    print(buffer.storage)
}

func insert(_ value: Int, at index: Int) {
    buffer.storage.insert(value, at: index)
}

func append(_ value: Int) {
    buffer.storage.append(value)
}

func remove(at index: Int) {
    buffer.storage.remove(at: index)
}
}

var integers = IntArray()
integers.append(1)
integers.append(2)
integers.append(4)
integers.describe()

```

You created an instance of **IntArray** and used **append(_ :)** to give a few values to the array.

But your implementation of COW is not complete. Make a copy of **integers** and insert a new value into the copy to see why.

Listing 18.19 Making a copy of IntArray

```

...
struct IntArray {
    private var buffer: IntArrayBuffer

    init() {
        buffer = IntArrayBuffer()
    }

    func describe() {
        print(buffer.storage)
    }
}

```

```

func insert(_ value: Int, at index: Int) {
    buffer.storage.insert(value, at: index)
}

func append(_ value: Int) {
    buffer.storage.append(value)
}

func remove(at index: Int) {
    buffer.storage.remove(at: index)
}

var integers = IntArray()
integers.append(1)
integers.append(2)
integers.append(4)
integers.describe()
var ints = integers
ints.insert(3, at: 2)
integers.describe()
ints.describe()

```

You created a new instance of **IntArray** named `ints` and set it to be equal to `integers`. Next, you used the `insert(_:at:)` to insert the value 3 at index 2 to complete the sequence. Last, you called `describe()` on both `integers` and `ints` to compare their storage.

Take a look at your console and you will see the problem. The two calls to `describe()` show that the storage for both `integers` and `ints` contains the same data. Why did this happen? After all, you defined **IntArray** to be a struct. Structs are supposed to be copied, right?

The problem is that **IntArray** uses a class as its backing storage. As you learned earlier in this chapter, that means both `integers` and `ints` point to the same reference type holding their data. If you change one of these arrays, the change is reflected in both, because the change is made to the storage they share.

To fix this problem, you need to ensure that the array's data is copied when it needs to be mutated. In other words, it is fine for copies of `integers` to point to the same underlying storage so long as none of the copies needs to change the shared data. Implement a new method on **IntArray** called `copyIfNeeded()` to do just this.

Listing 18.20 Adding COW to IntArray

```

...
struct IntArray {
    private var buffer: IntArrayBuffer

```

```

init() {
    buffer = IntArrayBuffer()
}

func describe() {
    print(buffer.storage)
}

private mutating func copyIfNeeded() {
    if !isKnownUniquelyReferenced(&buffer) {
        print("Making a copy of \(buffer.storage)")
        buffer = IntArrayBuffer(buffer: buffer)
    }
}

func insert(_ value: Int, at index: Int) {
    buffer.storage.insert(value, at: index)
}

func append(_ value: Int) {
    buffer.storage.append(value)
}

func remove(at index: Int) {
    buffer.storage.remove(at: index)
}
}

...
print("copying integers to ints")
var ints = integers
print("inserting into ints")
ints.insert(3, at: 2)
...

```

You added a new method called **copyIfNeeded()**. This method is declared as `mutating` because it creates a new instance of **IntArrayBuffer** and assigns it to **IntArray**'s `buffer` property. To do so, you used the **init(buffer:)** initializer on **IntArray** that you created above. This initializer creates a new `buffer` instance with the same set of values for its `storage` property as the previous buffer. You also include a call to **print()** to log some information about the change to the console.

Note, however, that a new `buffer` is only created if you need one. The conditional (`if !isKnownUniquelyReferenced(&buffer)`) checks to see whether the `buffer` has only

one reference to it. (Pay no mind to the requirement that you pass `buffer` into the function as an `inout` parameter. That is only an implementation detail; the function does not actually modify the argument passed to it.)

If the `buffer` is referenced only once, then the function returns `true`. In that case, you do not want to create a new instance because you do not need one; there are no other instances sharing a reference to the underlying data. On the other hand, if the `buffer` is not uniquely referenced, then that means that the `buffer`'s `storage` is referenced by more than one instance of `IntArray`. Thus, changes to the `buffer` will be reflected in all instances of this type. You make a new `buffer` in this case.

You also added some calls to `print()` so that you can log what is happening to the console. These logs will help keep track of when the underlying `buffer` is copied. The `buffer` should only be copied when a new value is inserted into `ints` with `ints.insert(3, at: 2)`.

If you look at your console, you will see that no change has occurred. Both `integers` and `ints` have the same values in their buffers. To see the benefit of `copyIfNeeded()`, you will need to call it within `mutating` methods. This makes sense because a `mutating` method changes the instance it was called on, and you will therefore want to have a unique `buffer` for this instance.

Listing 18.21 Adding COW to `IntArray`, redux

```
...
struct IntArray {
    private var buffer: IntArrayBuffer

    init() {
        buffer = IntArrayBuffer()
    }

    func describe() {
        print(buffer.storage)
    }

    private mutating func copyIfNeeded() {
        if !isKnownUniquelyReferenced(&buffer) {
            print("Making a copy of \(buffer.storage)")
            buffer = IntArrayBuffer(buffer: buffer)
        }
    }

    mutating func insert(_ value: Int, at index: Int) {
        copyIfNeeded()
        buffer.storage.insert(value, at: index)
    }
}
```

```

mutating func append(_ value: Int) {
    copyIfNeeded()
    buffer.storage.append(value)
}

mutating func remove(at index: Int) {
    copyIfNeeded()
    buffer.storage.remove(at: index)
}
...

```

Notice that you marked the **insert(_:at:)**, **append(_:)**, and **remove(at:)** methods as **mutating**. These methods now mutate the struct. How exactly could that happen?

The trick to understand here is that you have to use the new **buffer** when you want to **mutate** an instance. Every time you make a call to insert, append, or remove some data from the instance's storage, you need to create a new instance of **IntArrayBuffer** if the existing instance is not uniquely referenced. In that case, **copyIfNeeded()** will create a new instance of **IntArrayBuffer** and assign it to the **IntArray**'s **buffer** property.

Therefore, by adding calls to **copyIfNeeded()** to these methods, you are telling the compiler that they may change a property on the struct. (Refer back to [Chapter 15](#) for a discussion on **mutating**.)

The beauty of this strategy is that instances will share their underlying storage until they need to be distinct. Copying an instance of **IntArrayBuffer** will not entail much overhead on memory because copies point to the same **storage** until a change is made and the instances need to refer to their own data. If you check the console, you will see that **integers** and **ints** no longer have the same contents.

Swift's collections already provide COW. You should not typically need to write your own COW types. For example, a struct made up of arrays, dictionaries, and strings gets COW behavior for free because its component parts already implement it via the standard library. This discussion was meant to give you an intuition for how COW works and to alleviate any concern about memory pressure resulting from the copy behavior of value types.

Part V

Advanced Swift

Swift provides advanced language features that give developers more sophisticated tools to control their applications. This part of the book introduces concepts that will be essential to the more experienced Swift developer. *Protocols*, *extensions*, and *generics* provide mechanisms for developing idiomatic code that leverages the strengths of Swift.

Protocols

In [Chapter 16](#), you learned about using access controls to hide information. Hiding information is a form of *encapsulation*, which allows you to design your software in such a way that you can change one part without affecting the rest. Swift also supports another form of encapsulation: a *protocol*, which allows you to specify and work with the *interface* of a type without knowing the type itself. An interface is a set of properties and methods that a type provides.

Protocols are a more abstract concept than many of the topics you have learned about so far. To get a handle on protocols and how they work, you will create a function that formats data into a table that looks like a simple spreadsheet. Next, you will use a protocol to make that function flexible enough to handle different *data sources*. Mac and iOS apps commonly separate the presentation of data from the source that provides the data. This separation is an extremely useful pattern that allows Apple to provide classes that handle presentation while leaving it up to you to determine how data should be stored.

Formatting a Table of Data

Create a new playground called **Protocols**. Begin with a function that takes an array whose individual elements are themselves arrays – an array of arrays, in other words – and prints the strings in a table. Each element of the data array is an array of **Strings** that represents the column data for a single row, so the total number of rows is `data.count`.

Listing 19.1 Setting up a table

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

func printTable(_ data: [[String]]) {
    for row in data {
        // Start the output string
        var out = "|"

        // Append each item in this row to the string
        for item in row {
            out += " \\" + (item) + "|"
        }

        // Done - print it!
        print(out)
    }
}

let data = [
    ["Joe", "30", "6"],
    ["Karen", "40", "18"],
    ["Fred", "50", "20"],
]

printTable(data)
```

The console shows a simple table displaying the data:

Joe	30	6	
Karen	40	18	
Fred	50	20	

Next, you will add the ability to label the columns. The column names will be passed in separately from the data because they are distinct – you might decide to format the column names differently, for example.

Listing 19.2 Labeling the columns

```

...
func printTable(_ data: [[String]], withColumnLabels columnLabel
    // Create first row containing column headers
    var firstRow = "|"

    for columnLabel in columnLabels {
        let columnHeader = " \(columnLabel) |"
        firstRow += columnHeader
    }
    print(firstRow)

    for row in data {
        // Start the output string
        var out = "|"

        // Append each item in this row to the string
        for item in row {
            out += " \(item) |"
        }

        // Done - print it!
        print(out)
    }
}

let data = [
    ["Joe", "30", "6"],
    ["Karen", "40", "18"],
    ["Fred", "50", "20"],
]

```

`printTable(data, withColumnLabels: "Employee Name", "Age", "Year")`

You should see the column labels as the first row in your debug area.

Employee Name	Age	Years of Experience
Joe	30	6
Karen	40	18
Fred	50	20

The columns' widths are all different, so the table is very ugly. You can fix this by keeping track of the width of each column label, then padding each data element with extra spaces.

Listing 19.3 Aligning the columns

```

...
func printTable(_ data: [[String]], withColumnLabels columnLabel
    // Create first row containing column headers

```

```

var firstRow = "|"

// Also keep track of the width of each column
var columnWidths = [Int]()

for columnLabel in columnLabels {
    let columnHeader = " \(columnLabel) |"
    firstRow += columnHeader
    columnWidths.append(columnLabel.characters.count)
}

print(firstRow)

for row in data {
    // Start the output string
    var out = "|"

    // Append each item in this row to the string
    for item in row {
        out += " \(\item) |"
    for (j, item) in row.enumerated() {
        let paddingNeeded = columnWidths[j] - item.characters.count
        let padding = repeatElement(" ", count:
            paddingNeeded).joined(separator: "")
        out += " \(padding)\(\item) |"
    }

    // Done - print it!
    print(out)
}

}

...

```

As you are constructing the first row, you also record the width of each column header in the `columnWidths` array. Then, when you append each item to the output row, you calculate how much shorter the item is than the column header and store that into `paddingNeeded`. You then construct a string with `paddingNeeded` spaces by using `repeatElement(_:count:)`, which creates a collection of individual spaces, and that collection's `joined(separator:)` method to join them into a single string.

Check your debug area again. You now have a well-formatted table of data.

Employee Name	Age	Years of Experience
Joe	30	6
Karen	40	18
Fred	50	20

However, there is at least one major problem with the

printTable(_:withColumnLabels:) function: It is very difficult to use! You have to have separate arrays for the column labels and the data, and you have to manually make sure that the number of column labels matches the number of elements in the data array.

You are much more likely to want to represent information like this using structures and classes. Replace the part of the code where you call

printTable(_:withColumnLabels:) with some *model objects*, which are types that represent the data your app works with.

Listing 19.4 Using model objects

```
...  
let data = [  
    ["Joe", "30", "6"],  
    ["Karen", "40", "18"],  
    ["Fred", "50", "20"],  
]  
  
printTable(data, withColumnLabels: "Employee Name", "Age", "Year")  
struct Person {  
    let name: String  
    let age: Int  
    let yearsOfExperience: Int  
}  
  
struct Department {  
    let name: String  
    var people = [Person]()  
  
    init(name: String) {  
        self.name = name  
    }  
  
    mutating func add(_ person: Person) {  
        people.append(person)  
    }  
}  
  
var department = Department(name: "Engineering")  
department.add(Person(name: "Joe", age: 30, yearsOfExperience: 6)  
department.add(Person(name: "Karen", age: 40, yearsOfExperience:  
department.add(Person(name: "Fred", age: 50, yearsOfExperience: 2)
```

You now have a **Department**, and you would like to be able to print out the details of its people using the **printTable(_:withColumnLabels:)** function. You could modify the function to take a **Department** instead of the two arguments it takes now. However, the

current implementation of **printTable(_:withColumnLabels:)** could be used to print any kind of tabular data, and it would be nice to keep that feature. A protocol can help preserve this functionality.

Protocols

A *protocol* allows you to define the interface you want a type to satisfy. A type that satisfies a protocol is said to *conform* to the protocol.

Define a protocol that specifies the interface you need for the **printTable(_:withColumnLabels:)** function. The function needs to know how many rows and columns there are, what the label for each column is, and what data should be displayed in each cell. It does not matter to the Swift compiler where in your playground file you put this protocol. But it probably makes the most sense to put it just before **printTable(_:withColumnLabels:)**, because you are going to use the protocol in the function.

Listing 19.5 Defining a protocol

```
...
protocol TabularDataSource {
    var numberOfRows: Int { get }
    var numberOfColumns: Int { get }

    func label(forColumn column: Int) -> String

    func itemFor(row: Int, column: Int) -> String
}

func printTable(_ data: [[String]], withColumnLabels columnLabel
...
}
...

```

The syntax for a protocol should look familiar to you. It is very similar to defining a structure or a class, except that all the computed property and function definitions are omitted. The **TabularDataSource** protocol states that any conforming type must have two properties: **numberOfRows** and **numberOfColumns**. The syntax **{ get }** signifies that these properties can be read. If the property were intended to be read/write, you would use **{ get set }**. Note that marking a protocol property with **{ get }** does not exclude the possibility that a conforming type might have a property that is read/write. It only indicates that the protocol requires it to be readable. Finally, **TabularDataSource** specifies that a conforming type must have the two methods listed – **label(forColumn:)** and **itemFor(row:column:)** – with the exact types that are listed.

A protocol defines the minimum set of properties and methods a type must have. The type can have more than what the protocol lists – extra properties and methods are fine as long as all the requirements of the protocol are present.

Make **Department** conform to the **TabularDataSource** protocol. Begin by declaring that it conforms.

Listing 19.6 Declaring that Department conforms to TabularDataSource

```
...  
struct Department: TabularDataSource {  
...  
}
```

The syntax for conforming to a protocol is to add : ProtocolName after the name of the type. (This looks similar to the way you declare a superclass. We will cover how protocols and superclasses can be used together later.)

Your playground file now has an error. Click the error icon to see the details. You have claimed that **Department** conforms to **TabularDataSource**, but **Department** is missing all the properties and methods that **TabularDataSource** requires. Add implementations of them all.

Listing 19.7 Adding required properties and methods

```
...  
struct Department: TabularDataSource {  
    let name: String  
    var people = [Person]()  
  
    init(name: String) {  
        self.name = name  
    }  
  
    mutating func add(_ person: Person) {  
        people.append(person)  
    }  
  
    var numberOfRows: Int {  
        return people.count  
    }  
  
    var numberOfColumns: Int {  
        return 3  
    }  
  
    func label(forColumn column: Int) -> String {  
        switch column {  
        case 0: return "Employee Name"  
        case 1: return "Age"  
        case 2: return "Years of Experience"  
        default: fatalError("Invalid column!")  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```

func itemFor(row: Int, column: Int) -> String {
    let person = people[row]
    switch column {
        case 0: return person.name
        case 1: return String(person.age)
        case 2: return String(person.yearsOfExperience)
        default: fatalError("Invalid column!")
    }
}
...

```

A **Department** has a row for each person, so its `numberOfRows` property returns the number of people in the department. Each person has three properties that should be displayed, so `numberOfColumns` returns 3. `label(forColumn:)` and `itemFor(row:column:)` are a little more interesting: You use a `switch` statement to return one of the three column headers. (Why is there a `default` case? Refer back to [Chapter 5](#) if you are unsure.)

The error in your playground is gone now that **Department** conforms to **TabularDataSource**. However, you still need to modify `printTable(_:_withColumnLabels:)` to accept and work with a **TabularDataSource**, because now you do not have any way of calling this function with your `department`. Protocols do not just define the properties and methods a conforming type must supply. They can also be used as types themselves: You can have variables, function arguments, and return values that have the type of a protocol.

Change `printTable(_:_withColumnLabels:)` to take a data source of type **TabularDataSource**, now that the protocol provides all the same data as the old arguments did (including all the column labels and the amount of data available).

Listing 19.8 Making `printTable(_:_)` take a **TabularDataSource**

```

...
func printTable(_ data: [[String]], withColumnLabels columnLabels: [String]) {
    func printTable(_ dataSource: TabularDataSource) {
        // Create first row containing column headers
        var firstRow = "|"

        // Also keep track of the width of each column
        var columnWidths = [Int]()

        for columnLabel in columnLabels {
            for i in 0 ..< dataSource.numberOfColumns {
                let columnLabel = dataSource.label(forColumn: i)
                let columnHeader = " \\" + columnLabel + "|"
                firstRow += columnHeader
            }
        }
        print(firstRow)
    }
}

```

```

        columnWidths.append(columnLabel.characters.count)
    }
print(firstRow)

for row in data {
    for i in 0 ..< dataSource.numberOfRows {
        // Start the output string
        var out = "|"

        // Append each item in this row to the string
        for (j, item) in row.enumerated() {
            for j in 0 ..< dataSource.numberOfColumns {
                let item = dataSource.itemFor(row: i, column: j)
                let paddingNeeded = columnWidths[j] - item.character
                let padding = repeatElement(" ", count:
                                              paddingNeeded).joined(separator: "")
                out += " \\"(padding)\\"(item) |"
            }
        }

        // Done - print it!
        print(out)
    }
}
...

```

The **Department** type now conforms to **TabularDataSource**, and **printTable(_:_)** has been modified to accept a **TabularDataSource**. Therefore, you can print your department. Add a call to **printTable(_:_)**.

Listing 19.9 Printing Department

```

...
var department = Department(name: "Engineering")
department.addPerson(Person(name: "Joe", age: 30, yearsOfExperie
department.addPerson(Person(name: "Karen", age: 40, yearsOfExper
department.addPerson(Person(name: "Fred", age: 50, yearsOfExperi

```

printTable(department)

Confirm in the debug area that the output still reflects the department you created:

Employee Name	Age	Years of Experience
Joe	30	6
Karen	40	18
Fred	50	20

Protocol Conformance

As noted earlier, the syntax for protocol conformance looks exactly the same as the syntax you use to declare a class's superclass, as seen in [Chapter 15](#). This brings up a few questions:

1. What types can conform to protocols?
2. Can a type conform to multiple protocols?
3. Can a class have a superclass and still conform to protocols?

All types can conform to protocols. You made a structure (**Department**) conform to a protocol. Enums and classes can also conform to protocols. The syntax for declaring that an enum conforms to a protocol is exactly the same as it is for a struct: a colon and the protocol name follow the declaration of the type. (Classes can be a little more complicated. We will get to them in a moment.)

It is also possible for a type to conform to multiple protocols. One of the protocols defined by Swift is named **CustomStringConvertible**, which types can implement when they want to control how their instances are converted into string representations. Other functions, like **print()**, will check to see if the values being printed conform to **CustomStringConvertible** when deciding how to display them.

CustomStringConvertible has a single requirement: The type must have a gettable property named **description** that returns a **String**. Modify **Department** so that it conforms to both **TabularDataSource** and **CustomStringConvertible**, using a comma to separate the protocols.

Listing 19.10 Conforming to CustomStringConvertible

```
...
struct Department: TabularDataSource, CustomStringConvertible {
    let name: String
    var people = [Person]()

    var description: String {
        return "Department (\(name))"
    }
}
...
```

Here, you implement **description** as a read-only, computed property. You can now see the name of your department when you print it.

Listing 19.11 Printing the department's name

```
...
printTable(department)
print(department)
```

Finally, classes can also conform to protocols. If the class does not have a superclass, the syntax is the same as for structs and enums:

```
class ClassName: ProtocolOne, ProtocolTwo {  
    // ...  
}
```

If the class does have a superclass, the name of the superclass comes first, followed by the protocol (or protocols).

```
class ClassName: SuperClass, ProtocolOne, ProtocolTwo {  
    // ...  
}
```


Protocol Inheritance

Swift supports *protocol inheritance*. A protocol that inherits from another protocol requires conforming types to provide implementations for all the properties and methods required by both itself and the protocol it inherits from. This is different from class inheritance, which defines a close relationship between the superclass and subclass. Protocol inheritance merely adds any requirements from the parent protocol to the child protocol. For example, modify **TabularDataSource** so that it inherits from the **CustomStringConvertible** protocol.

Listing 19.12 Making TabularDataSource inherit from CustomStringConvertible

```
protocol TabularDataSource: CustomStringConvertible {
    var numberOfRows: Int { get }
    var numberOfColumns: Int { get }

    func label(forColumn column: Int) -> String

    func itemFor(row: Int, column: Int) -> String
}
...
...
```

Now, any type that conforms to **TabularDataSource** must also conform to **CustomStringConvertible**, meaning it has to supply all the properties and methods listed in **TabularDataSource** as well as the **description** property required by **CustomStringConvertible**. Use this in **printTable(_:_)** to print a heading on the table. You will no longer need the call to **print()** you added in [Listing 19.11](#), so delete it.

Listing 19.13 Printing a table heading

```
...
func printTable(dataSource: TabularDataSource) {
    print("Table: \(dataSource.description)")

    ...
}

printTable(department)
print(department)
```

Now the printout in your debug area includes a description of the table.

```
Table: Department (Engineering)
| Employee Name | Age | Years of Experience |
|               Joe | 30 |                      6 |
|             Karen | 40 |                     18 |
|              Fred | 50 |                     20 |
```

Protocols are allowed to inherit from multiple other protocols, just as types can conform to

multiple protocols. The syntax for multiple protocol inheritance is what you probably expect – separate additional parent protocols with commas, like so:

```
protocol MyProtocol: MyOtherProtocol, CustomStringConvertible {  
    // ... requirements of MyProtocol  
}
```


Protocol Composition

Protocol inheritance is a powerful tool that lets you easily create a new protocol that adds requirements to an existing protocol or set of protocols. Nevertheless, using protocol inheritance can potentially lead you to make poor decisions in creating your types. In fact, that is exactly what has happened with **TabularDataSource** when you made it inherit from **CustomStringConvertible** because you wanted to be able to print a description of the data source. (In fairness, you did it because we told you to.) There is not anything inherently **CustomStringConvertible** about a tabular data source. Go back and fix that misguided attempt to print data sources.

Listing 19.14 TabularDataSource should not be CustomStringConvertible

```
protocol TabularDataSource: CustomStringConvertible {  
    ...  
}
```

The compiler now rightly complains when you try to get the `description` of the data source passed to `printTable(_:_)`. You can use *protocol composition* to solve this problem without polluting **TabularDataSource** with the unrelated requirement that it be convertible to a string. Protocol composition allows you to state that a type must conform to multiple protocols.

Listing 19.15 Making printTable's argument conform to CustomStringConvertible

```
...  
func printTable(dataSource: TabularDataSource & CustomStringConv  
    print("Table: \(dataSource.description)")  
    ...  
}
```

The syntax for protocol composition uses the `&` infix operator to signal to the compiler that you are combining multiple protocols into a single requirement. The example above requires that `dataSource` conform to both **TabularDataSource** and **CustomStringConvertible**.

Consider another possibility. You could create a new protocol that inherits from both **TabularDataSource** and **CustomStringConvertible**, like so:

```
protocol PrintableTabularDataSource: TabularDataSource, CustomSt  
}
```

You could then use that protocol as the type of the argument to `printTable(_:_)`. Both **PrintableTabularDataSource** and **TabularDataSource & CustomStringConvertible** require conforming types to implement all properties and methods required by **TabularDataSource** and **CustomStringConvertible**. What is the difference between them?

The difference is that **PrintableTabularDataSource** is a distinct type. To use it, you

would have to modify **Department** to state that it conforms to **PrintableTabularDataSource** – even though it already fulfills all the requirements. On the other hand, **TabularDataSource & CustomStringConvertible** does not create a new type. It only indicates that **printTable(_:_)**'s argument conforms to both of the protocols listed. So you do not have to go back and annotate **Department**. It already conforms to both **TabularDataSource** and **CustomStringConvertible**, so it also conforms to **TabularDataSource & CustomStringConvertible**.

Mutating Methods

Recall from [Chapter 14](#) and [Chapter 15](#) that methods on value types (structs and enums) cannot modify `self` unless the method is marked as `mutating`. Methods in protocols default to nonmutating. In the **Lightbulb** enum from [Chapter 14](#), the `toggle()` method was mutating.

```
enum Lightbulb {  
    case on  
    case off  
    ...  
    mutating func toggle() {  
        switch self {  
        case .on:  
            self = .off  
  
        case .off:  
            self = .on  
        }  
    }  
}
```

Suppose you want to define in a protocol that an instance is “toggleable”:

```
protocol Toggleable {  
    func toggle()  
}
```

Declaring that **Lightbulb** conforms to **Toggleable** would result in a compiler error. The message you get includes a note that explains the problem:

```
error: type 'Lightbulb' does not conform to protocol 'Toggleable'  
note: candidate is marked 'mutating' but protocol does not allow  
mutating func toggle() {  
    ^
```

The note points out that in **Lightbulb**, the `toggle()` method is marked as mutating, but the **Toggleable** protocol expects a nonmutating function. You can fix this problem by marking `toggle()` as mutating in the protocol definition:

```
protocol Toggleable {  
    mutating func toggle()  
}
```

A class that conforms to the **Toggleable** protocol would not need to mark its `toggle()` method as mutating. Methods on classes are always allowed to change properties of `self` because they are reference types.

Silver Challenge

The `printTable(_ :)` function has a bug – it crashes if any of the data items are longer than the label of their column. Try changing Joe’s age to 1,000 to see this happen. Fix the bug. (For an easier version of this challenge, just make the function not crash. For a harder version, make sure all the rows and columns of the table are still aligned correctly.)

Gold Challenge

Create a new type, **BookCollection**, that conforms to **TabularDataSource**. Calling **printTable(_ :)** on a book collection should show a table of books with columns for titles, authors, and average reviews on Amazon. (Unless all the books you use have very short titles and author names, you will need to have completed the previous challenge!)

Error Handling

How often has a piece of software you have been using crashed or done something it was not supposed to do? The majority of the time, these issues are caused by incorrect error handling. Error handling is one of the unsung heroes of software development: Nobody thinks of it as a priority, and if it is done correctly nobody notices. But it is absolutely critical – users of your software will certainly notice (and complain!) if it is done poorly. In this chapter you will explore the tools that Swift provides to catch and handle errors.

Classes of Errors

There are two broad categories of error that can occur: *recoverable errors* and *nonrecoverable errors*.

Recoverable errors are typically events that can occur that you must be ready for and handle. Common examples of recoverable errors are:

- trying to open a file that does not exist
- trying to communicate with a server that is down
- trying to communicate when a device does not have an internet connection

Swift provides you with a rich set of tools for dealing with recoverable errors. You have become accustomed to Swift enforcing safety rules at compile time, and handling errors is no different. When you call a function that might fail with a recoverable error, Swift will require you to acknowledge and deal with that possibility.

Nonrecoverable errors are just a special kind of bug. You have already encountered one: force-unwrapping an optional that contains `nil`. Another example is trying to access an element past the end of an array. These nonrecoverable errors will cause your program to trap.

Recall from [Chapter 4](#) that when your program traps, it immediately stops executing. A trap is a low-level command to the OS to immediately stop the currently executing program. If you are running the program from Xcode, it will stop in the debugger and show you where the error occurred. For a user running your program, however, a trap looks the same as a crash – the program immediately shuts down.

Why is Swift so heavy-handed with this class of error? The name gives a hint: These errors are not recoverable, meaning there is nothing your program could do to fix the problem. Think about unwrapping an optional, for example. When you force-unwrap an optional, you expect to get a value, and the rest of your code is written assuming that there is a value to work with. If the optional is `nil`, there is no value. The only reasonable thing Swift can do is immediately stop the program. If your program did continue, either it would crash when it tried to access a nonexistent value or, worse, it could continue to run but produce incorrect results. (Both of these possibilities come up in less-safe languages like C.)

In this chapter, you will build a very simple two-phase compiler. In doing so, you will implement a function that can evaluate basic mathematical expressions. For example, you will provide the input string "`10 + 3 + 5`", and the function will return the integer `18`. Along the way, you will use Swift's facilities for dealing with both recoverable and nonrecoverable errors.

Lexing an Input String

The first phase of your expression-evaluating compiler is *lexing*. Lexing is the process of turning some input into a sequence of *tokens*. A token is something with meaning, like a number or a plus sign (the two tokens your compiler will recognize). Lexing is sometimes referred to as “tokenizing” because you are turning some meaningless-to-the-compiler input (like a string) into a sequence of meaningful tokens.

Create a new playground named `ErrorHandling`. Define an enumeration that has cases for the two kinds of token.

Listing 20.1 Declaring the Token type

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

enum Token {
    case number(Int)
    case plus
}
```

Next, start building your lexer. To lex an input string, you will need to access the individual characters in the input string one by one. You will need to keep track of your current position in the collection of characters as well. Create the `Lexer` class and give it these two properties.

Listing 20.2 Creating Lexer

```
import Cocoa

enum Token {
    case number(Int)
    case plus
}

class Lexer {
    let input: String.CharacterView
    var position: String.CharacterView.Index

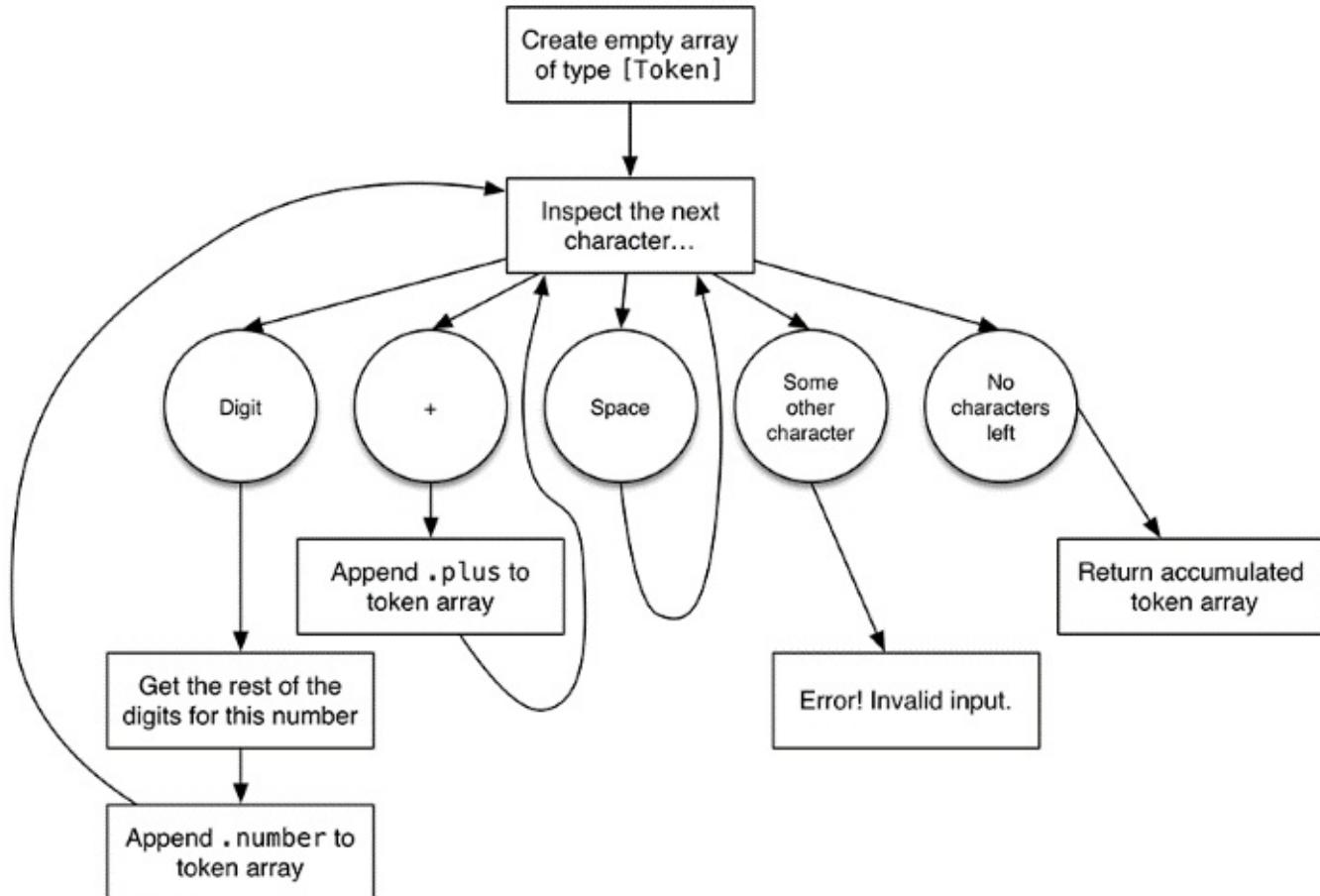
    init(input: String) {
        self.input = input.characters
        self.position = self.input.startIndex
    }
}
```

Recall from [Chapter 7](#) that every string has a `characters` property, which is a collection of `Characters`. The type of the `characters` property is `String.CharacterView`. Every `String.CharacterView` has `startIndex` and `endIndex` properties that let you step

through the characters. You initialize the `input` property to the input **String**'s `characters` property and initialize the `position` property to the beginning of that character view.

Lexing the input characters is a straightforward process. The steps you will implement are outlined in [Figure 20.1](#).

Figure 20.1 Lexing algorithm



You begin by creating an empty array to hold **Tokens**. You then inspect the first character. If it is a digit, you continue to scan forward through the input string, collecting all the subsequent digits into a single number, then appending a `.number` to the token array. If the character is a `+`, you append a `.plus` to the **Token** array. If the character is a space, you ignore it. In all three of those cases, you then move on to the next character in the input string, repeating the same decision-making process. At any point as you are scanning through the input string, encountering a character that does not fall into one of the above three cases is considered an error: The input is invalid. When you reach the end of the input string, the lexing phase is finished.

To implement this algorithm, **Lexer** will need two basic operations: a way to peek at the next character from the input and a way to advance the current position. Peeking at the next character requires a way to indicate that the lexer has reached the end of its input, so make it return an optional.

Listing 20.3 Implementing `peek()`

```

class Lexer {
    let input: String.CharacterView
    var position: String.CharacterView.Index

    init(input: String) {
        self.input = input.characters
        self.position = self.input.startIndex
    }

    func peek() -> Character? {
        guard position < input.endIndex else {
            return nil
        }
        return input[position]
    }
}

```

You use a guard statement to ensure that you have not reached the end of the input, returning `nil` if you have. If there is input remaining, you return the character at the current position.

Now that the lexer can peek at the current character, it also needs a way to advance to the next character. Advancing is very simple. `position` is an index from the `input` collection, and every collection knows how to compute new indices relative to old ones. Get the index *after* the current value of `position` using `input's index(after:)` method and assign that back into `position` itself.

Listing 20.4 Implementing `advance()`

```

...
class Lexer {

    ...

    func peek() -> Character? {
        guard position < input.endIndex else {
            return nil
        }
        return input[position]
    }

    func advance() {
        position = input.index(after: position)
    }
}

```

Before moving on, there is an opportunity here to introduce a check for a nonrecoverable error. As you implement the rest of **Lexer**, you will be calling **peek()** and **advance()**. **peek()** can be called any time, but **advance()** should only be called if you are not already at the end of the input. Add an *assertion* to **advance()** that checks for this condition.

Listing 20.5 Adding an assertion to advance()

```
class Lexer {  
    ...  
    func advance() {  
        assert(position < input.endIndex, "Cannot advance past ei  
        position = input.index(after: position)  
    }  
}
```

What does **assert(_:_:)** do? Its first argument is a condition to check. If the condition evaluates to `true`, nothing happens. If the condition evaluates to `false`, however, your program will trap in the debugger with the message you provide as the second argument.

Calls to the `assert(_:_:)` function will only be evaluated if your program is built in debug mode. Debug mode is the default when you are working in a playground or running a project in Xcode. Release mode is what Xcode uses when you build an app for submission to the App Store. Among other things, building in release mode turns on a number of compiler optimizations and removes all calls to `assert(_:_:)`.

If you want to keep your assertions around even in release mode, you can use `precondition(_:_:)` instead. It takes the same arguments and has the same effect as `assert(_:_:)`, but it is not removed when your app is built for release.

Why did you use **assert(_:_:)** instead of guard or some other error-handling mechanism? **assert(_:_:)** and its partner **precondition(_:_:)** are tools to help you catch nonrecoverable errors. As you are implementing your lexing algorithm, you are advancing an index from the beginning of the input to the end. You should never attempt to advance past the input's `endIndex`. Adding this assertion will help you catch any mistake you make that introduces a bug of this kind, because the assertion will cause the debugger to stop execution at this point, helping you identify the error. The alternatives to this assertion are to not advance the lexer's position or send an error back to the user of your lexer, neither of which makes sense.

Now that **Lexer** has the building blocks you need, it is time to start implementing the lexing algorithm. The output of lexing will be an array of **Tokens**, but it is also possible for lexing to fail. To indicate that a function or method might emit an error, add the keyword `throws` after the parentheses containing the arguments. (This implementation of `lex()` is incomplete and will not compile, but you will finish it shortly.)

Listing 20.6 Declaring the throwing `lex()` method

```
...
class Lexer {
    ...
    func advance() {
        assert(position < input.endIndex, "Cannot advance past end of input")
        position = input.index(after: position)
    }
}
```

```

}

func lex() throws -> [Token] {
    var tokens = [Token]()

    while let nextCharacter = peek() {
        switch nextCharacter {
        case "0" ... "9":
            // Start of a number - need to grab the rest

        case "+":
            tokens.append(.plus)
            advance()

        case " ":
            // Just advance to ignore spaces
            advance()

        default:
            // Something unexpected - need to send back an error
        }
    }

    return tokens
}
}

```

You have now implemented most of the lexing algorithm. You start by creating an array, `tokens`, that will hold every **Token** you lex. You use a `while let` condition to loop until you reach the end of the input. For each character you look at, you go into one of the four cases. You already implemented what to do if the character is a plus (append `.plus` to `tokens` and then advance to the next character) or a space (ignore it and advance to the next character).

There are two cases left to implement. Let's start with the `default` case. If this case matches, then a character you were not expecting is next. That means you need to *throw* an error. In Swift, you use the `throws` keyword to send, or “throw,” an error back to the caller.

What can you throw? You must throw an instance of a type that conforms to the **Error** protocol. Most of the time, errors you want to throw will lend themselves to being defined as enumerations, and this is no exception.

What should you name your **Error**-conforming enumeration? One option would be to name it **LexerError**. **LexerError** would be acceptable, but it also adds another type just for designating lexing errors, which is not ideal. A separate type would suggest that **LexerError** has meaning beyond and outside **Lexer**. Recall from [Chapter 16](#) that you can

nest types. You can use a nested **Lexer.Error** enumeration that makes it clear that the error cases it provides are directly related to **Lexer**.

Declare an enumeration nested inside the **Lexer** class that will let you express lexing errors.

Listing 20.7 Declaring **Lexer.Error**

```
...
class Lexer {
    enum Error {
        case invalidCharacter(Character)
    }

    let input: String.CharacterView
    var position: String.CharacterView.Index
    ...
}
```

Lexer.Error needs to conform to the **Error** protocol. A direct attempt to add this conformance will fail, but try it anyway to see the error.

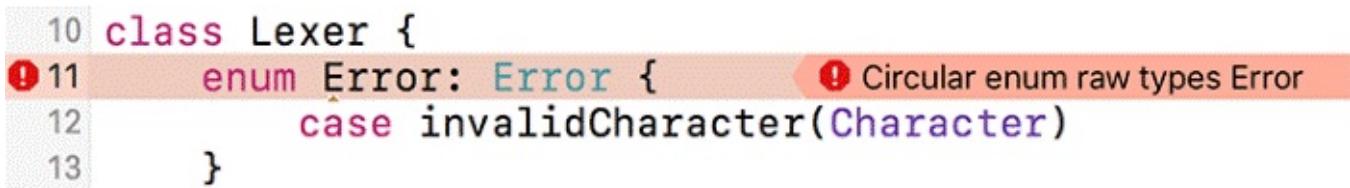
Listing 20.8 Attempting to make **Lexer.Error conform to **Error****

```
...
class Lexer {
    enum Error: Error {
        case invalidCharacter(Character)
    }

    let input: String.CharacterView
    var position: String.CharacterView.Index
    ...
}
```

The error you get from the compiler (see [Figure 20.2](#)) may be difficult to understand.

Figure 20.2 Error attempting to make **Lexer.Error conform to **Error****



A screenshot of Xcode showing a code editor with Swift code. The code defines a **Lexer** class with an **Error** enumeration. The **Error** enumeration has one case, **invalidCharacter**, which takes a **Character** parameter. The line **enum Error: Error {** is highlighted in orange, and a red exclamation mark icon with the text "Circular enum raw types Error" is shown to its right, indicating a compiler error.

```
10 class Lexer {
11     enum Error: Error {
12         case invalidCharacter(Character)
13     }
}
```

The key phrase to pick up on is “circular enum.” The compiler is confused because it thinks you are trying to declare an **Error** type using itself. How can you tell the compiler that you want to use the **Error** protocol from the Swift standard library?

Swift does not have explicit namespaces, unlike languages such as C++. Instead, all types and functions are implicitly namespaced to the module they are defined in. You typically do not need to think about which module you are working in. If you are writing an iOS app, for example, the entire app lives in one module.

Declaring **Lexer.Error** is one of the rare cases where being aware of modules is useful. Types and functions that are part of the Swift standard library live in the **Swift** module. You can specify that you want the **Swift** module's **Error** type by its full name: **Swift.Error**. Add the full name to fix your declaration of **Lexer.Error**.

Listing 20.9 Making **Lexer.Error conform to **Error****

```
...
class Lexer {
    enum Error: Swift.Error {
        case invalidCharacter(Character)
    }
...
}
```

Command-click on the **Swift.Error** protocol to see its definition from the Swift standard library. You will find that it is an empty protocol. That is, it does not require any properties or methods to be present. Any type you write can conform to **Error** just by stating that it does, but enumerations are by far the most common **Errors**. (Click the back arrow in the Xcode toolbar to return to your playground.)

Now that you have a throwable type, implement the **default** case in the **lex()** method to throw an instance of your new **Error** enum.

Listing 20.10 Throwing an error

```
...
class Lexer {
    ...
    func lex() throws -> [Token] {
        var tokens = [Token]()

        while let nextCharacter = peek() {
            switch nextCharacter {
                case "0" ... "9":
                    // Start of a number - need to grab the rest

                case "+":
                    tokens.append(.plus)
                    advance()

                case " ":
                    // Just advance to ignore spaces
                    advance()

                default:
                    // Something unexpected - need to send back an error
                    throw Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(nextCharacter)
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        }
    }

    return tokens
}
}

```

Like `return`, `throw` causes the function to immediately stop executing and go back to its caller.

Finally, the lexer needs to be able to extract integers from the input. Create a method named `getNumber()` that builds up integers one digit at a time using the same `peek()` and `advance()` tools you are using in `lex()`.

Next, update `lex()` by adding a call to `getNumber()` and appending the number to the array of tokens.

Listing 20.11 Implementing `Lexer.getNumber()`

```

...
class Lexer {

    ...

    func getNumber() -> Int {
        var value = 0

        while let nextCharacter = peek() {
            switch nextCharacter {
                case "0" ... "9":
                    // Another digit - add it into value
                    let digitValue = Int(String(nextCharacter))!
                    value = 10 * value + digitValue
                    advance()

                default:
                    // A nondigit - go back to regular lexing
                    return value
            }
        }

        return value
    }

    func lex() throws -> [Token] {
        var tokens = [Token]()

        while let nextCharacter = peek() {
            switch nextCharacter {

```

```

        case "0" ... "9":
            // Start of a number - need to grab the rest
            let value = getNumber()
            tokens.append(.number(value))

        case "+":
            tokens.append(.plus)
            advance()

        case " ":
            // Just advance to ignore spaces
            advance()

        default:
            throw Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(nextCharacter)
    }
}

return tokens
}
}

```

At this point, all your errors should be gone.

getNumber() loops over input characters, accumulating digits into a single integer value. Note that you do something we have cautioned against – force-unwrapping an optional – in `Int(String(nextCharacter))!`. However, it is perfectly safe in this case. Because you know that `nextCharacter` contains a single digit, converting it to an **Int** will always succeed and never return `nil`. As soon as **getNumber()** encounters a character that is not a digit (or the end of the input), it stops and returns the accumulated value.

Lexer is complete, and it is time to put it to the test. Write a new function that takes an input string and tries to lex it, then call it with a couple of trial inputs. (This function will not work quite yet – as you type it in, try to figure out why.)

Listing 20.12 Evaluating the lexer

```

...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)
    let tokens = lexer.lex()
    print("Lexer output: \(tokens)")
}

evaluate("10 + 3 + 5")
evaluate("1 + 2 + abcdefg")

```

evaluate(_ :) takes an input **String**, creates a **Lexer**, and lexes the input into **Tokens**. But the compiler does not allow what you have entered. Note the error message on the line where you call **lex()**, reading `call` can throw, but it is not marked with 'try' and the error is not handled. The compiler is telling you that because the **lex()** method is marked as throws, calls to **lex()** must be prepared to handle an error.

Catching Errors

To handle errors, Swift uses a control construct you have not yet seen: do/catch, with at least one try statement inside of the do. We will explain in a moment. First, modify **evaluate(_:)** to use this control flow to handle errors coming from **lex()**.

Listing 20.13 Error handling in evaluate(_:)

```
...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)

    do {
        let tokens = try lexer.lex()
        print("Lexer output: \(tokens)")
    } catch {
        print("An error occurred: \(error)")
    }
}
```

What do all these new keywords mean? do introduces a new scope, much like an if statement. Inside of the do scope, you can write code as normal, like calling **print()**. In addition, you can call functions or methods that are marked as throws. Each such call must be indicated with the try keyword.

At the end of the do block, you write a catch block. If any of the try calls inside the do block throw an error, the catch block will run, with the thrown error value bound to the constant **error**.

You should now be seeing the output of running **evaluate(_:)** in the debug area.

```
Evaluating: 10 + 3 + 5
Lexer output: [Token.number(10), Token.plus,
              Token.number(3), Token.plus, Token.number(5)]
Evaluating: 1 + 2 + abcdefg
An error occurred: Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter("a")
```

The catch block you wrote above did not specify a particular kind of error, so it will catch any thrown **Error**. You can add additional catch blocks to catch specific kinds of errors. In this case, you know that the lexer could throw a **Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter** error, so add a catch block for it.

Listing 20.14 Catching an invalidCharacter error

```
...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)
```

```

do {
    let tokens = try lexer.lex()
    print("Lexer output: \tokens")
} catch Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(let character) {
    print("Input contained an invalid character: \character")
} catch {
    print("An error occurred: \error")
}
}

```

You added a catch block that is specifically looking for the **Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter** error. catch blocks support pattern matching, just like switch statements, so you were able to bind the invalid character to a constant for use within the catch block. You should see a more specific error message now:

```

Evaluating: 10 + 3 + 5
Lexer output: [Token.number(10), Token.plus,
              Token.number(3), Token.plus, Token.number(5)]
Evaluating: 1 + 2 + abcdefg
Input contained an invalid character: a

```

Congratulations, the lexing phase of your compiler is complete! Before moving on to parsing, delete the call to **evaluate(_:_)** that is causing an error.

Listing 20.15 Removing bad input

```

...
evaluate("10 + 3 + 5")
evaluate("1 + 2 + abcdefg")

```


Parsing the Token Array

Now that your lexer is complete, you can turn an input string into an array of **Tokens**, each of which is either a **.number** or a **.plus**. The next step is to write a parser whose job is to evaluate a series of tokens delivered to it from the lexer. For example, feeding [**.number(5)**, **.plus**, **.number(3)**] through your parser should give you the answer 8. The algorithm to parse this sequence of tokens is more restrictive than the algorithm you used for lexing, because the order in which the tokens appear is very important. The rules are:

- The first token must be a number.
- After parsing a number, either the parser must be at the end of input, or the next token must be **.plus**.
- After parsing a **.plus**, the next token must be a number.

The setup of your parser will be very similar to the lexer, although a bit simpler. The parser does not need separate **peek()** and **advance()** methods. They can be combined into one **getNextToken()** method that returns the next **Token** or **nil** if all tokens have been consumed.

Create the **Parser** class with a **getNextToken()** method.

Listing 20.16 Beginning the implementation of Parser

```
...
class Lexer {
    ...
}

class Parser {
    let tokens: [Token]
    var position = 0

    init(tokens: [Token]) {
        self.tokens = tokens
    }

    func getNextToken() -> Token? {
        guard position < tokens.count else {
            return nil
        }
        let token = tokens[position]
        position += 1
        return token
    }
}
```

```
func evaluate(_ input: String) {  
    ...  
}  
...  
}
```

A **Parser** is initialized with an array of tokens and begins with a **position** of 0. The **getNextToken()** method uses guard to check that there are more tokens remaining and, if there are, returns the next one, advancing **position** past the token it returns.

Two of the three rules for our parser used the phrase “must be a number.” A good place to start implementing the parser is with a method to get a number. If the next token must be a number, there are two different error cases that need to be considered. The parser might be at the end of the token array, which means there is no number left. Or the next token might be a **.plus** instead of a number. For example, someone may have fed the parser the input string "10 + + 5".

Define an error enumeration conforming to **Error** for both of these cases.

Listing 20.17 Defining possible Parser errors

```
...  
class Parser {  
    enum Error: Swift.Error {  
        case unexpectedEndOfInput  
        case invalidToken(Token)  
    }  
  
    let tokens: [Token]  
    var position = 0  
    ...  
}  
...  
}
```

Now that you can express the possible errors you might encounter when trying to get a number, add a method that gets the value of the next **.number** token or throws an error if it cannot.

Listing 20.18 Implementing Parser.getNumber()

```
...  
class Parser {  
    ...  
  
    func getNextToken() -> Token? {  
        guard position < tokens.count else {  
            return nil  
        }  
        let token = tokens[position]  
        position += 1  
        return token  
    }  
}
```

```

        return token
    }

func getNumber() throws -> Int {
    guard let token = getNextToken() else {
        throw Parser.Error.unexpectedEndOfInput
    }

    switch token {
        case .number(let value):
            return value
        case .plus:
            throw Parser.Error.invalidToken(token)
    }
}
}

...

```

The **getNumber()** method has the signature `throws -> Int`, so you know it is a function that normally returns an **Int** but could throw an error. You use a `guard` statement to check that there is at least one more token available. Note that inside the `else` block of a `guard`, you can use `throw` instead of `return`. This is because `guard` just requires that its `else` block causes the function to stop executing and return to its caller. After ensuring that you have a token, you use a `switch` statement to either extract the number's value (if the token is a **.number**) or throw an **invalidToken** error (if it is a **.plus**).

Now that you have **getNumber()**, implementing the rest of the parsing algorithm is straightforward. Add a **parse()** method that does just that.

Listing 20.19 Implementing Parser.parse()

```

...
class Parser {

    ...

func parse() throws -> Int {
    // Require a number first
    var value = try getNumber()

    while let token = getNextToken() {
        switch token {

            // Getting a plus after a number is legal
            case .plus:
                // After a plus, we must get another number
                let nextNumber = try getNumber()
                value += nextNumber
        }
    }
}

```

```

    // Getting a number after a number is not legal
    case .number:
        throw Parser.Error.invalidToken(token)
    }
}

return value
}
}
...

```

Your implementation of **parse()** matches the algorithm outlined above for parsing. The input must start with a number (the initialization of **value**). After parsing a number, you enter a loop over the rest of the tokens. If the next token is **.plus**, then you require that the *next* token is a **.number**. When you get to the end of the tokens, the **while** loop ends and you return **value**.

There is something new here, though. You mark the calls to **getNumber()** with the **try** keyword, which Swift requires because **getNumber()** is a throwing method. However, you do not use a **do/catch** block. Why does Swift allow you to use **try** here without a **do** block?

Swift requires that any call marked with **try** “handles the error.” It would be easy to assume that “handling the error” means catching the error, as in **evaluate(_:)**. But there is another perfectly reasonable way to handle an error: Throw it again. That is what happens in this case. Because **parse()** is itself a throwing method, you are allowed to **try** calls inside it without using **do/catch**. If any of the **try** calls fail, the error is “rethrown” out of **parse()**.

Your parser is now complete. Update **evaluate(_:)** to call the parser and to handle the specific errors that **Parser** might throw.

Listing 20.20 Updating evaluate(_:) to use Parser

```

...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)

    do {
        let tokens = try lexer.lex()
        print("Lexer output: \(tokens)")

        let parser = Parser(tokens: tokens)
        let result = try parser.parse()
        print("Parser output: \(result)")

    } catch Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(let character) {
        print("Input contained an invalid character: \(character")
    }
}

```

```
        } catch Parser.Error.unexpectedEndOfInput {
            print("Unexpected end of input during parsing")
        } catch Parser.Error.invalidToken(let token) {
            print("Invalid token during parsing: \\" + (token) + "\\")
        } catch {
            print("An error occurred: \\" + (error) + "\\")
        }
    }
    ...
}
```

You should now see your two-phase compiler successfully evaluating the input expression:

Evaluating: 10 + 3 + 5

Lexer output: [Token.number(10), Token.plus,
 Token.number(3), Token.plus, Token.number(5)]

Parser output: 18

Try changing the input. Add more or fewer numbers. Try some inputs that will pass your lexer (i.e., that only contain legal tokens) but should cause your parser to throw errors. A couple of simple examples are "10 + 3 5" and "10 + ".

Handling Errors by Sticking Your Head in the Sand

You have seen that every call to a function that might throw an error must be marked with `try` and that any call with `try` must either be inside a `do/catch` block or inside a function that itself is marked with `throws`. These rules work together to make sure you are handling any potential errors. Try modifying your `evaluate(_:)` function to break one of these rules.

Listing 20.21 Modifying `evaluate(_:)` illegally

```
...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)
    let tokens = try lexer.lex()

    do {
                let tokens = try lexer.lex()
        print("Lexer output: \(tokens)")

        let parser = Parser(tokens: tokens)
        let result = try parser.parse()
        print("Parser output: \(result)")
    } catch Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(let character) {
        print("Input contained an invalid character: \(character)")
    } catch Parser.Error.unexpectedEndOfInput {
        print("Unexpected end of input during parsing")
    } catch Parser.Error.invalidToken(let token) {
        print("Invalid token during parsing: \(token)")
    } catch {
        print("An error occurred: \(error)")
    }
}
```

You moved the `try lexer.lex()` call outside of the `do` block, so now the compiler is giving you an error. The compiler error says that `Errors thrown from here are not handled`. It is possible to tell the Swift compiler that you do not want to handle potential errors. Change `try` to `try!` to see this in action.

Listing 20.22 Using `try!` in `evaluate(_:)`

```
...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)
    let tokens = trytry! lexer.lex()
```

```
...  
}  
...
```

Your code now compiles, but you should be concerned. What is Swift going to do if an error is thrown by `lexer.lex()`? The exclamation mark at the end of the `try!` keyword should be a big hint. Just like force-unwrapping an optional, using the forceful keyword `try!` will cause your program to trap if an error is thrown.

Earlier, you had a call to `evaluate(_:)` that caused the lexer to throw an error. Add that call back in and see what happens.

Listing 20.23 Lexing bad input with `try!`

```
...  
evaluate("10 + 3 + 5")  
evaluate("1 + 2 + abcdefg")
```

Instead of seeing the invalid token error message, your program now traps on the `try! lexer.lex()` line.

We recommended avoiding force-unwrapped and implicitly unwrapped optionals. We even more strongly recommend avoiding `try!`. You should only use `try!` when there is no way for your program to handle an error and you really do want your program to trap (or crash, if it is running on a user's device) if an error occurs.

There is a third variant of `try` that lets you ignore the error without trapping if an error occurs. You can call a throwing function with `try?`, getting a return value that is an optional of whatever type the function usually returns. This means you need to use something like `guard` to check that the optional really contains a value.

Change your trapping `try!` into a combination of `guard` and `try?`.

Listing 20.24 Using `try?` in `evaluate(_:)`

```
...  
func evaluate(_ input: String) {  
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")  
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)  
    let tokens = try! lexer.lex()  
    guard let tokens = try? lexer.lex() else {  
        print("Lexing failed, but I don't know why")  
        return  
    }  
    ...  
}
```

`try?` is not as evil as `try!`, but we still recommend avoiding it most of the time. When you call a function with `try?`, you have to handle the possibility of getting back `nil`. You use a

guard to return from **evaluate(_:)**. However, it is usually better to handle any errors in a catch, because you will have access to the error that the function threw.

`try?` will be most useful when you have a meaningful alternative to use when the function you are calling fails. **evaluate(_:)** does not have such an alternative, so restore it to its previous error-handling glory.

Listing 20.25 Restoring **evaluate(_:)**

```
...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)
    guard let tokens = try? lexer.lex() else {
        print("Lexing failed, but I don't know why")
        return
    }
    do {
        let tokens = try lexer.lex()
        print("Lexer output: \(tokens)")

        let parser = Parser(tokens: tokens)
        let result = try parser.parse()
        print("Parser output: \(result)")
    } catch Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(let character) {
        print("Input contained an invalid character: \(character)")
    } catch Parser.Error.unexpectedEndOfInput {
        print("Unexpected end of input during parsing")
    } catch Parser.Error.invalidToken(let token) {
        print("Invalid token during parsing: \(token)")
    } catch {
        print("An error occurred: \(error)")
    }
}
...

```


Swift Error-Handling Philosophy

Swift is designed to encourage safe, easy-to-read code, and its error-handling system is no different. Any function that could fail must be marked with `throws`. This makes it obvious from the type of a function whether you need to handle potential errors.

Swift also requires you to mark all calls to functions that might fail with `try`. This gives a great benefit to anyone reading Swift code. If a function call is annotated with `try`, you know it is a potential source of errors that must be handled. If a function call is not annotated with `try`, you know it will never emit errors that you need to handle.

If you have used C++ or Java, it is important to note the differences between Swift error handling and exception-based error handling. Even though Swift uses some of the same terminology, particularly `try`, `catch`, and `throw`, Swift does not implement error handling using exceptions. When you mark a function with `throws`, that effectively changes its return type from whatever type it normally returns to “either whatever type it normally returns or an instance of the `Error` protocol.”

Finally, there is one other important philosophical error-handling decision built into Swift. A function that `throws` does *not* state what kinds of errors it might throw. This has two practical impacts. First, you are always free to add more potential `Errors` that a function might throw without changing the API of the function. Second, when you are handling errors with `catch`, you must always be prepared to handle an error of some unknown type.

The compiler enforces this second point. Try modifying `evaluate(_ :)` by removing the final `catch` block.

Listing 20.26 Avoiding handling unknown `ErrorTypes` in `evaluate(_ :)`

```
...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)

    do {
        let tokens = try lexer.lex()
        print("Lexer output: \(tokens)")

        let parser = Parser(tokens: tokens)
        let result = try parser.parse()
        print("Parser output: \(result)")
    } catch Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(let character) {
        print("Input contained an invalid character: \(character)")
    } catch Parser.Error.unexpectedEndOfInput {
        print("Unexpected end of input during parsing")
    } catch Parser.Error.invalidToken(let token) {
        print("Invalid token during parsing: \(token)")
```

```

} catch {
    print("An error occurred: \(error)")
}
...

```

The compiler is now giving you errors on both lines in the do block where you made try calls. The error message should sound familiar: Errors thrown from here are not handled because the enclosing catch is not exhaustive. As it does for switch statements, Swift performs exhaustiveness checks on your do/catch blocks, requiring you to handle any potential **Error**.

Fix **evaluate(_ :)** by restoring the catch block that will handle any error.

Listing 20.27 Exhaustive error handling in evaluate(_ :)

```

...
func evaluate(_ input: String) {
    print("Evaluating: \(input)")
    let lexer = Lexer(input: input)

    do {
        let tokens = try lexer.lex()
        print("Lexer output: \(tokens)")

        let parser = Parser(tokens: tokens)
        let result = try parser.parse()
        print("Parser output: \(result)")

    } catch Lexer.Error.invalidCharacter(let character) {
        print("Input contained an invalid character: \(character)")
    } catch Parser.Error.unexpectedEndOfInput {
        print("Unexpected end of input during parsing")
    } catch Parser.Error.invalidToken(let token) {
        print("Invalid token during parsing: \(token)")
    } catch {
        print("An error occurred: \(error)")
    }
}
...

```


Bronze Challenge

Your expression evaluator currently only supports addition. That is not very useful! Add support for subtraction. You should be able to call `evaluate("10 + 5 - 3 - 1")` and see it output `11`.

Silver Challenge

The error messages printed out by **evaluate(_:)** are useful, but not as useful as they could be. Here are a couple of erroneous inputs and the error messages they produce:

```
evaluate("1 + 3 + 7a + 8")
> Input contained an invalid character: a
```

```
evaluate("10 + 3 3 + 7")
> Invalid token during parsing: .number(3)
```

Make these messages more helpful by including the character position where the error occurred. After completing this challenge, you should see error messages like this:

```
evaluate("1 + 3 + 7a + 8")
> Input contained an invalid character at index 9: a
```

```
evaluate("10 + 3 3 + 7")
> Invalid token during parsing at index 7: 3
```

Hint: You will need to associate error positions with your existing error cases. To convert a **String.CharacterView.Index** into an integral position, you can use the **distance(from:to:)** method on the character view. For example, if **input** is a **String.CharacterView** and **position** is a **String.CharacterView.Index**, the following will compute how many characters separate the beginning of the string and **position**.

```
let distanceToPosition = input.distance(from: input.startIndex,
```


Gold Challenge

Time to step it up a notch. Add support for multiplication and division to your calculator. If you think this will be as easy as adding subtraction, think again! Your evaluator should give higher precedence to multiplication and division than it does to addition and subtraction. Here are some sample inputs and their expected output.

```
evaluate("10 * 3 + 5 * 3") // Should print 45  
evaluate("10 + 3 * 5 + 3") // Should print 28  
evaluate("10 + 3 * 5 * 3") // Should print 55
```

If you get stuck, try researching “recursive descent parsers.” That is the kind of parser you have been implementing. Here is a hint to get you started: Instead of parsing a single number and then expecting a **.plus** or **.minus**, try parsing a term computed from numbers and multiplication/division operators, and *then* expecting a **.plus** or **.minus**.

Extensions

Imagine that you are developing an application that uses a particular type in the Swift standard library – say the **Double** type – quite frequently. It would make your development easier if the **Double** type supported some additional methods based on how you are using it in your app. Unfortunately, you do not have **Double**'s implementation available, so you cannot add functionality directly to it yourself. What can you do?

Swift provides a feature called *extensions* that is designed for just these cases. Extensions allow you to add functionality to an existing type. You can extend structs, enums, and classes.

You can use extensions to extend types with:

- computed properties
- new initializers
- protocol conformance
- new methods
- embedded types

In this chapter you will use extensions to add functionality to an existing type whose definition and implementation details are not available to you. You will also use extensions to add functionality to a custom type of your own creation. In both cases you will add functionality to these types in a modular fashion, meaning that you will group similar functionality in a single extension.

Extending an Existing Type

Create a new playground named `Extensions`. You will be modeling the behavior of a car in this playground.

Velocity is an important characteristic of any vehicle. Because velocity can have decimal values, it is reasonable to represent it as a **Double**.

Given that you will be using the **Double** type frequently, it would be useful to refer to it in a way that is contextually relevant. Swift's `typealias` keyword provides a way to give another name to an existing type. Give the **Double** type an alternate name.

Listing 21.1 Establishing a type alias

```
import Cocoa  
  
var str = "Hello, playground"
```

typealias Velocity = Double

The `typealias` keyword allows you to define **Velocity** as an alternative type name for **Double**. This interchangeability will help to contextualize **Double** in the extensions you will write in this chapter by making it more relevant to your use.

Now that you have a `typealias` set up, extend the type to support conversion between commonly used units for speed. Swift's extensions do not allow you to add stored properties to a type. You will use an extension to add two computed properties.

Listing 21.2 Extending Velocity to support mph and kph

```
...  
typealias Velocity = Double  
extension Velocity {  
    var kph: Velocity { return self * 1.60934 }  
    var mph: Velocity { return self }  
}
```

The `extension` keyword signifies that you are extending the **Velocity** type. You add two computed properties to **Velocity**: `kph` and `mph`. These properties on **Velocity** represent a vehicle's speed in kilometers per hour (`kph`) and miles per hour (`mph`). Note that the extension treats `mph` as the default unit: That computed property simply returns `self`, while `kph` performs the conversion.

While the interchangeability provided by a `typealias` can be a benefit, it can also be a bit tricky. You may encounter a case in this file in which you will want to use the **Double** type and not the **Velocity** type. Because **Velocity** can be used interchangeably with **Double**, the extension you defined on **Velocity** is also available for the **Double** type. Adding the extension to **Double** using the **Velocity** `typealias` gives helpful context. It documents that the computed properties are only meaningful when used with the **Velocity** `typealias`, even though they are available to all **Doubles**.

Recall that one of the goals of this chapter is to define the behavior of a vehicle. Protocols are one of Swift's most helpful features for defining the interface for a type. You can add protocol conformance to a type with an extension.

Create a new protocol called **Vehicle** to describe some of the basic characteristics of a vehicle.

Listing 21.3 Adding protocol conformance with an extension

```
...
typealias Velocity = Double
extension Velocity {
    var kph: Velocity { return self * 1.60934 }
    var mph: Velocity { return self }
}
protocol Vehicle {
    var topSpeed: Velocity { get }
    var numberOfDoors: Int { get }
    var hasFlatbed: Bool { get }
}
```

Vehicle declares three properties: `topSpeed`, `numberOfDoors`, and `hasFlatbed`. Each property only requires the conforming type to implement a getter for the property. A type conforming to this protocol will be required to provide these properties, which describe some general characteristics of a vehicle.

Extending Your Own Type

You will need to create a new type before you can add protocol conformance to it through an extension. Make a new struct to represent a **Car** type. You will later use an extension on **Car** to add conformance to the **Vehicle** protocol.

Listing 21.4 A **Car** struct

```
...
typealias Velocity = Double
extension Velocity {
    var kph: Velocity { return self * 1.60934 }
    var mph: Velocity { return self }
}
protocol Vehicle {
    var topSpeed: Velocity { get }
    var numberofDoors: Int { get }
    var hasFlatbed: Bool { get }
}
struct Car {
    let make: String
    let model: String
    let year: Int
    let color: String
    let nickname: String
    var gasLevel: Double {
        willSet {
            precondition(newValue <= 1.0 && newValue >= 0.0,
                        "New value must be between 0 and 1.")
        }
    }
}
```

Here you define a new struct called **Car**. The **Car** type defines a number of stored properties that will be specific to a given instance. All of the properties are constants, with one exception: **gasLevel**.

gasLevel is a mutable stored property with a property observer on it. The **willSet** observer will be called every time you are going to set a new value for **gasLevel**. You use a **precondition()** inside of this implementation to ensure that the **newValue** being assigned to the **gasLevel** property is between 0 and 1. These values indicate how full an instance's gas tank is in terms of percentage points.

Using extensions to add protocol conformance

Extensions can provide a great mechanism to group related chunks of functionality. Grouping related pieces of functionality in a single extension can help to make your code more readable and maintainable. This pattern also helps a type keep its interface uncluttered.

Extend the **Car** type to conform to the **Vehicle** protocol.

Listing 21.5 Extending Car to conform to Vehicle

```
...
struct Car {
    let make: String
    let model: String
    let year: Int
    let color: String
    let nickname: String
    var gasLevel: Double {
        willSet {
            precondition(newValue <= 1.0 && newValue > 0.0,
                        "New value must be between 0 and 1.")
        }
    }
}
extension Car: Vehicle {
    var topSpeed: Velocity { return 180 }
    var numberOfDoors: Int { return 4 }
    var hasFlatbed: Bool { return false }
}
```

Your new extension extends **Car** to conform to **Vehicle**. The syntax for conforming to a protocol is the same as you have seen before, but this time you use an extension to accomplish this protocol conformance in extension `Car: Vehicle`.

You implement the protocol's required properties inside of the extension's body. Each property is given a simple getter. For the sake of convenience, you simply return some default values for each of the protocol's properties.

Adding an initializer with an extension

Recall that structs give you a free memberwise initializer if you do not provide your own. If you want to write a new initializer for your struct, but do not want to lose the memberwise initializer, you can add the initializer to your type with an extension. Add an initializer to **Car** in a new extension on the type.

Listing 21.6 Extending Car with an initializer

```
...
extension Car: Vehicle {
```

```

        var topSpeed: Velocity { return 180 }
        var number0fDoors: Int { return 4 }
        var hasFlatbed: Bool { return false }
    }
extension Car {
    init(make: String, model: String, year: Int) {
        self.init(make: make,
                  model: model,
                  year: year,
                  color: "Black",
                  nickname: "N/A",
                  gasLevel: 1.0)
    }
}

```

The new extension on the **Car** type adds an initializer that accepts arguments only for an instance's `make`, `model`, and `year`. This new initializer's arguments are passed into the free memberwise initializer on the **Car** struct, and you also provide default values for the missing arguments. The combination of these two initializers ensures that an instance of the **Car** type will have values for all of its properties.

The memberwise initializer is preserved on **Car** because the new initializer is defined and implemented on an extension. This pattern can be quite helpful.

To see the new initializer defined in the extension work, create an instance of **Car**.

Listing 21.7 An instance of Car

```

...
extension Car {
    init(make: String, model: String, year: Int) {
        self.init(make: make,
                  model: model,
                  year: year,
                  color: "Black",
                  nickname: "N/A",
                  gasLevel: 1.0)
    }
}
var c = Car(make: "Ford", model: "Fusion", year: 2013)

```

The code above creates a new instance `c`. This instance is created with the initializer defined in an extension on **Car**. Take a look in the results sidebar. You should see that `c`'s properties have the values you gave to the new initializer. The default values you gave to the memberwise initializer should be visible as well.

Nested types and extensions

Swift's extensions can also add nested types to an existing type. Say, for example, that you want to add an enumeration to your **Car** struct to help classify the kind of car an instance might be. Create a new extension on the **Car** type to add a nested type.

Listing 21.8 Creating an extension with a nested type

```
...
var c = Car(make: "Ford", model: "Fusion", year: 2013)
extension Car {
    enum Kind {
        case coupe, sedan
    }
    var kind: Kind {
        if numberOfDoors == 2 {
            return .coupe
        } else {
            return .sedan
        }
    }
}
```

This new extension on **Car** adds a nested type called **Kind**. **Kind** is an enumeration that has two cases: one for a **coupe** and one for a **sedan**. The extension also adds a computed property on **Car** called **kind**, which will represent the kind of car.

kind returns values of the nested enumeration based on how many doors the instance has. If the instance has two doors, then it is a **coupe**; otherwise, it is a **sedan**.

Exercise the new nested type in the extension by accessing the computed property **kind** on the instance you created previously.

Listing 21.9 Accessing kind

```
...
extension Car {
    enum Kind {
        case coupe, sedan
    }
    var kind: Kind {
        if numberOfDoors == 2 {
            return .coupe
        } else {
            return .sedan
        }
    }
}
```

```
}
```

```
c.kind
```

You should see sedan logged to the results sidebar.

Extensions with functions

You can use an extension to give an existing type a function. For example, you may have noticed that **Car** does not have a function to fill its gas. Make an extension to add this functionality to **Car**.

Listing 21.10 Using an extension to add functions

```
...
c.kind
extension Car {
    mutating func emptyGas(by amount: Double) {
        precondition(amount <= 1 && amount > 0,
                    "Amount to remove must be between 0 and 1.")
        gasLevel -= amount
    }

    mutating func fillGas() {
        gasLevel = 1.0
    }
}
```

Your new extension adds two functions to the **Car** type: **emptyGas(by:)** and **fillGas()**. Note that both functions are marked with the **mutating** keyword. Why? Remember that the **Car** type is a struct. If a function wants to change the value of any of the struct's properties, then it must be declared with the **mutating** keyword.

The **emptyGas(by:)** function takes one argument: the amount of gas to remove from the tank. You use a **precondition()** inside the **emptyGas(by:)** function to ensure that the amount removed from the tank is between 0 and 1. The implementation of the **fillGas()** function simply sets the **gasLevel** property on the **Car** to be full, or 1.0.

Exercise these new functions on your existing type.

Listing 21.11 Lowering and filling the gas tank

```
...
extension Car {
    mutating func emptyGas(by amount: Double) {
        precondition(amount <= 1 && amount > 0,
                    "Amount to remove must be between 0 and 1.")
        gasLevel -= amount
    }
```

```
mutating func fillGas() {  
    gasLevel = 1.0  
}  
}  
c.emptyGas(by: 0.3)  
c.gasLevel  
c.fillGas()  
c.gasLevel
```

After you use the **emptyGas(by:)** function, you should see that the gas level is **0.7** in the sidebar. After you fill the gas level, you see that the gas level is now **1.0**.

Bronze Challenge

Extend the **Int** type to have a **timesFive** computed property. The computed property should return the result of multiplying the integer by 5. You should be able to use it like so:
`5.timesFive // 25`

Bronze Challenge

Sometimes you write code that looks and feels right at the time, but in using it later you find that something is not quite right. This is the case with the extension you used to make **Car** conform to **Vehicle**.

When you made **Car** conform to the **Vehicle** protocol, you added a `numberOfDoors` computed property that always returns 4. This effectively makes `numberOfDoors` a constant on **Car**. As a consequence, the `if/else` condition in `kind` will always return `.sedan`. There is no other possibility due to how **Car** conforms to **Vehicle**.

Refactor **Car** to have a constant stored property named `numberOfDoors`. Note: This change will mean that you need to make other changes. Use the compiler errors to guide your solution.

Silver Challenge

The **emptyGas(by:)** method has some bugs. For example, if the current `gasLevel` is less than the amount to remove, then the new value for this property will be negative. A negative value does not make sense and will actually stop the program from running (recall the **precondition()** in `gasLevel`'s property observer). Revise **emptyGas(by:)**'s implementation to ensure that `gasLevel` is not decremented to be a negative value.

So far, all the properties and functions you have written have worked on concrete types like **Int**, **String**, and **Monster**. And you may have noticed that Swift allows you to create arrays that contain any type at all. You can create arrays of built-in Swift types, like **[Int]** and **[Double]**, as well as arrays of types you create, like **[Monster]** and **[Person]**. How is **Array** implemented? How can you write code that can work with a variety of types in the same way? The answer to both of these questions is “generics.”

Swift *generics* allow you to write types and functions that use types that are not yet known to you or the compiler. Many of the built-in types you have used throughout this book, including optionals, arrays, and dictionaries, are implemented using generics. In this chapter, you will investigate how to write generic types (much like an array). You will also see how you can use generics to write flexible functions and how generics are related to protocols.

Generic Data Structures

You are going to create a generic *stack*, which is a venerable data structure in computer science. A stack is a last-in, first-out data structure. It supports two basic operations. You can *push* an item onto the stack, which adds the item to the stack, and you can *pop* to remove the most recently pushed item off of the stack.

Create a new playground called **Generics** and make a **Stack** structure that only stores integers.

Listing 22.1 Setting up a Stack

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

struct Stack {
    var items = [Int]()

    mutating func push(_ newItem: Int) {
        items.append(newItem)
    }

    mutating func pop() -> Int? {
        guard !items.isEmpty else {
            return nil
        }
        return items.removeLast()
    }
}
```

This struct has three elements of interest. The `items` stored property is an array you are using to hold on to the items currently in a stack. The `push(_:)` method pushes a new item onto the stack by appending it to the end of the `items` array. Finally, the `pop()` method pops the top item off of the stack by calling the `removeLast()` method of an array, which simultaneously removes the last item and returns it. Note that `pop()` returns an optional `Int` because the stack might be empty (in which case there is nothing to pop).

Create a **Stack** instance to see it in action.

Listing 22.2 Creating an instance of Stack

```
...
var intStack = Stack()
intStack.push(1)
intStack.push(2)

print(intStack.pop()) // Prints Optional(2)
```

```
print(intStack.pop()) // Prints Optional(1)
print(intStack.pop()) // Prints nil
```

You create a new **Stack** instance, push two values on, then try to pop three values off. As expected, the **pop()** calls return the integers you pushed in reverse order, and **pop()** returns **nil** when the stack no longer has any items left.

Your **Stack** is useful for storing **Ints**, but it is currently limited to that type. It would be better if **Stack** were more general. Modify **Stack** to be a generic data structure that can hold any type, not just **Int**.

Listing 22.3 Making Stack generic

```
...
struct Stack<Element> {
    var items = [IntElement]()
    mutating func push(_ newItem: IntElement) {
        items.append(newItem)
    }
    mutating func pop() -> Int?Element? {
        guard !items.isEmpty else {
            return nil
        }
        return items.removeLast()
    }
}
...
```

You add a *placeholder type*, named **Element**, to the declaration of **Stack**. Swift's syntax for declaring a generic uses angle brackets (**<>**) and immediately follows the name of the type. The name between the angle brackets represents the placeholder type: **<Element>**. The placeholder type **Element** can be used inside the **Stack** structure anywhere a concrete type could be used. You can see this usage as you replaced all of the occurrences of **Int** with **Element**, including in a property declaration, the type of the argument in **push(_:**), and the type of the return value of **pop()**.

There is now a compiler error where you create a **Stack** because you have not specified what type should be substituted for the placeholder type **Element**. The process of the compiler substituting a concrete type for a placeholder is called *specialization*. The full details of specialization are outside the scope of this book, but the short summary is that it allows the compiler to make your app faster, because the compiler is able to output code knowing the specific type in use. Fix the error by specifying that **intStack** should be an instance of **Stack** specialized for **Int**. You will use the same angle bracket syntax to do this.

Listing 22.4 Specializing intStack

```
...
```

```
var intStack = Stack<Int>()
```

```
...
```

This resolves the compiler error.

You can now create **Stacks** of any kind of type. Create a **Stack** of **Strings**.

Listing 22.5 Creating a Stack of strings

```
...  
print(intStack.pop()) // Prints Optional(1)  
print(intStack.pop()) // Prints nil  
  
var stringStack = Stack<String>()  
stringStack.push("this is a string")  
stringStack.push("another string")  
  
print(stringStack.pop()) // Prints Optional("another string")
```

It is important to note that even though `intStack` and `stringStack` are both **Stack** instances, they do not have the same type. `intStack` is a **Stack<Int>**; it would be a compile-time error to pass anything other than an **Int** to `intStack.push(_ :)`. Likewise, `stringStack` is a **Stack<String>**, which is distinct from **Stack<Int>**.

Generic data structures are both common and extremely useful. Classes and enumerations can also be made generic using the same syntax you used here for structures. In addition, types are not the only element of Swift that can be generic. Functions and methods can also be generic.

Generic Functions and Methods

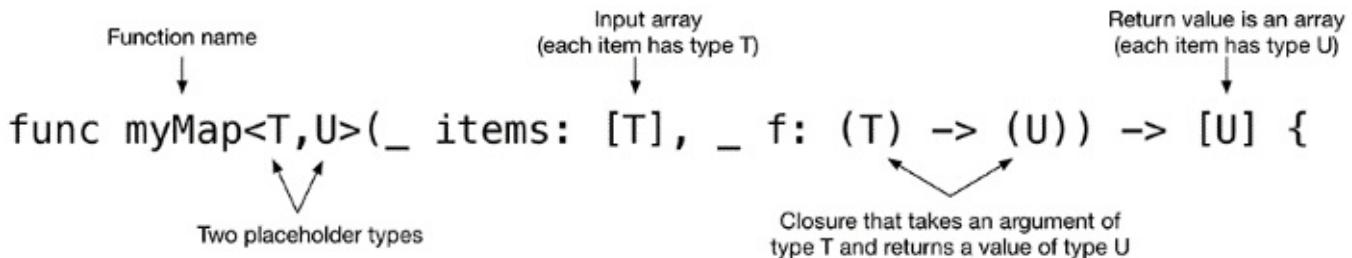
Remember the `map(_:_)` method defined on `Array` from [Chapter 13](#)? `map(_:_)` applies a closure to each element in the array and returns an array of the results. Given what you just learned about generics, you can now implement a version of this function yourself. Add the following code to your playground.

Listing 22.6 Your own `map` function

```
...
func myMap<T, U>(_ items: [T], _ f: (T) -> (U)) -> [U] {
    var result = [U]()
    for item in items {
        result.append(f(item))
    }
    return result
}
```

The declaration of `myMap(_:_:_)` may look pretty ugly if you have not been exposed to generics in other languages. Instead of the concrete types you are familiar with, it just has `T` and `U`, and there are more symbol and punctuation characters than letters! But the only new thing is that it declares two placeholder types, `T` and `U`, not just one. [Figure 22.1](#) shows a breakdown of that line.

Figure 22.1 `myMap` declaration



`myMap(_:_:_)` can be used the same way `map(_:_)` is used. Create an array of strings, then map it to an array of their character view's lengths.

Listing 22.7 Mapping arrays

```
...
func myMap<T, U>(_ items: [T], _ f: (T) -> (U)) -> [U] {
    ...
}

let strings = ["one", "two", "three"]
let stringLengths = myMap(strings) { $0.characters.count }
print(stringLengths) // Prints [3, 3, 5]
```

The closure passed to `myMap(_:_:_)` must take a single argument that matches the type contained in the `items` array, but the type of its return value can be anything. In this call to `myMap(_:_:_)`, `T` is replaced by `String` and `U` is replaced by `Int`. (Note that in real

projects there is no need to declare your own mapping function – just use the built-in `map(_:_:)`.)

Methods can also be generic, even inside of types that are already themselves generic. The `myMap(_:_:_:)` function you wrote only works on arrays, but it seems reasonable to want to map a `Stack`. Create a `map(_:_:)` method on `Stack`.

Listing 22.8 Mapping on a Stack

```
...
struct Stack<Element> {
    var items = [Element]()

    mutating func push(_ newItem: Element) {
        items.append(newItem)
    }

    mutating func pop() -> Element? {
        guard !items.isEmpty else {
            return nil
        }
        return items.removeLast()
    }

    func map<U>(_ f: (Element) -> U) -> Stack<U> {
        var mappedItems = [U]()
        for item in items {
            mappedItems.append(f(item))
        }
        return Stack<U>(items: mappedItems)
    }
}
...
```

The `map(_:_:)` method only declares one placeholder type, `U`, but it uses both `Element` and `U`. The `Element` type is available because `map(_:_:)` is inside of the `Stack` structure, which makes the placeholder type `Element` available. The body of `map(_:_:)` is almost identical to `myMap(_:_:_:)`, differing only in that it returns a new `Stack` instead of an array. Try out your new method.

Listing 22.9 Using `map(_:_:)`

```
...
var intStack = Stack<Int>()
intStack.push(1)
intStack.push(2)
var doubledStack = intStack.map { 2 * $0 }
```

```
print(intStack.pop()) // Prints Optional(2)
print(intStack.pop()) // Prints Optional(1)
print(intStack.pop()) // Prints nil

print(doubledStack.pop()) // Prints Optional(4)
print(doubledStack.pop()) // Prints Optional(2)
...
```


Type Constraints

One of the most important things to keep in mind when writing generic functions and data types is that, by default, you do not know anything about the concrete type that is going to be used. You created stacks of **Int** and **String**, but you could also create stacks of any other type at all. The practical impact of this lack of knowledge is that there is very little you can do with the value of a placeholder type. For example, you cannot check whether two of them are equal; this code would not compile:

```
func checkIfEqual<T>(_ first: T, _ second: T) -> Bool {  
    return first == second  
}
```

This function could be called with any type at all, including types for which equality does not make sense, such as closures. (It is hard to describe what it would mean for two closures to be “equal.” Swift does not allow the comparison.)

Generic functions would be relatively uncommon if you were never able to assume anything about the placeholder types. To solve this problem, Swift allows the use of *type constraints*, which place restrictions on the concrete types that can be passed to generic functions. There are two kinds of type constraints: a constraint that a type be a subclass of a given class, or a constraint that a type conform to a protocol (or a protocol composition).

For example, **Equatable** is a Swift-provided protocol that states that two values can be checked for equality. (You will read more about **Equatable** in [Chapter 25](#).) To see how type constraints work, write a **checkIfEqual(_:_:)** function including a constraint that **T** must be **Equatable**.

Listing 22.10 Using a type constraint to allow checking for equality

```
...  
func checkIfEqual<T: Equatable>(_ first: T, _ second: T) -> Bool {  
    return first == second  
}  
  
print(checkIfEqual(1, 1))  
print(checkIfEqual("a string", "a string"))  
print(checkIfEqual("a string", "a different string"))
```

You use the same `: Protocol` syntax you saw in [Chapter 19](#) to declare that the placeholder **T** must conform to **Equatable**. This allows you to check the instances passed in to the function for equality.

Every placeholder type can have a type constraint. For example, write a function that checks whether two **CustomStringConvertible** values have the same description.

Listing 22.11 Using a type constraint to check **CustomStringConvertible** values

```
...  
func checkIfDescriptionsMatch<T: CustomStringConvertible, U: Cust
```

```
    _ first: T, _ second: U) -> Bool {
    return first.description == second.description
}

print(checkIfDescriptionsMatch(Int(1), UInt(1)))
print(checkIfDescriptionsMatch(1, 1.0))
print(checkIfDescriptionsMatch(Float(1.0), Double(1.0)))
```

The constraint that both **T** and **U** are **CustomStringConvertible** guarantees that both `first` and `second` have a property named `description` that returns a **String**. (If they do not, the compiler will issue an error.) Even though the two arguments may have different types, you can still compare their descriptions.

Associated Type Protocols

Now that you know that types, functions, and methods can be made generic, it is natural to ask whether protocols can be made generic as well. The answer is “no.” However, protocols support a similar and related feature: *associated types*.

Let’s explore protocols with associated types by examining a couple of protocols defined by the Swift standard library. The two protocols you will use are **IteratorProtocol** and **Sequence**, which together allow you to make your own types that can be iterated over in `for-in` loops. First, the **IteratorProtocol** protocol:

```
protocol IteratorProtocol {
    associatedtype Element

    mutating func next() -> Element?
}
```

IteratorProtocol requires a single mutating method, `next()`, which returns a value of type **Element?**. With **IteratorProtocol**, you can call `next()` repeatedly and it produces new values each time. If the iterator is no longer able to produce new values, `next()` returns `nil`.

Inside a protocol, `associatedtype Element` states that conforming types must provide a concrete type that will be used as the **Element** type. Conforming types specify what **Element** should be by providing a `typealias` for **Element** inside their definitions. At the top of your playground, create a new struct called **StackIterator** that conforms to **IteratorProtocol**.

Listing 22.12 Creating StackIterator

```
import Cocoa

struct StackIterator<T>: IteratorProtocol {
    typealias Element = T

    var stack: Stack<T>

    mutating func next() -> Element? {
        return stack.pop()
    }
}

struct Stack<Element> {
    ...
}

...
```

StackIterator wraps up a **Stack** and generates values by popping items off of the stack.

The type of the **Element** that **next()** returns is **T**, so you set the typealias appropriately.

Create a new stack, add some items, then create an iterator and loop over its values to see **StackIterator** in action.

Listing 22.13 Using StackIterator

```
...
var myStack = Stack<Int>()
myStack.push(10)
myStack.push(20)
myStack.push(30)

var myStackIterator = StackIterator(stack: myStack)
while let value = myStackIterator.next() {
    print("got \(value)")
}
```

StackIterator is a little more verbose than it needs to be. Swift can infer the type of a protocol's associated types, so you can remove the explicit typealias by indicating that **next()** returns a **T?**.

Listing 22.14 Tightening up StackIterator

```
import Cocoa

struct StackIterator<T>: IteratorProtocol {
    typealias Element = T

    var stack: Stack<T>

    mutating func next() -> Element? T? {
        return stack.pop()
    }
}
...
```

The next associated type protocol you will examine is **Sequence**. The definition of **Sequence** is large, but the critical part is small:

```
protocol Sequence {
    associatedtype Iterator: IteratorProtocol
    func makeIterator() -> Iterator
}
```

Sequence has an associated type named **Iterator**. The `: IteratorProtocol` syntax is a type constraint on the associated type. It has the same meaning as type constraints on generics: For a type to conform to **Sequence**, it must have an associated type **Iterator** that conforms to the protocol **IteratorProtocol**. **Sequence** also requires conforming types to implement a single method, **makeIterator()**, which returns a value of the associated

type **IteratorProtocol**. Because you already have a suitable iterator for stacks, modify **Stack** to conform to **Sequence**.

Listing 22.15 Making Stack conform to Sequence

```
...
struct Stack<Element>: Sequence {
    var items = [Element]()

    mutating func push(_ newItem: Element) {
        items.append(newItem)
    }

    mutating func pop() -> Element? {
        guard !items.isEmpty else {
            return nil
        }
        return items.removeLast()
    }

    func map<U>(_ f: (Element) -> U) -> Stack<U> {
        var mappedItems = [U]()
        for item in items {
            mappedItems.append(f(item))
        }
        return Stack<U>(items: mappedItems)
    }

    func makeIterator() -> StackIterator<Element> {
        return StackIterator(stack: self)
    }
}
...

```

You again use Swift's type inference to avoid having to explicitly state `typealias Iterator = StackIterator<Element>`, although it would not be an error to do so.

The **Sequence** protocol is what Swift uses internally for its `for-in` loops. Now that **Stack** conforms to **Sequence**, you can loop over its contents.

Listing 22.16 Looping through myStack

```
...
var myStackIterator = StackIterator(stack: myStack)
while let value = myStackIterator.next() {
    print("got \(value)")
}
```

```
for value in myStack {  
    print("for-in loop: got \\"+value+"")  
}
```

StackIterator pops values off of its stack every time **next()** is called, which is a fairly destructive operation. (Note that the order of items you see from the `for-in` loop is the same as if you popped items off the top of the stack – the reverse of the order the items were pushed on.) When a **StackIterator** returns `nil` from **next()**, its stack property is empty. However, you were able to create an iterator by hand from `myStack` and then use `myStack` again in a `for-in` loop. This reuse is possible because **Stack** is a value type, which means every time a **StackIterator** is created, it gets a copy of the stack, leaving the original untouched.

A final note: If a protocol has an associated type, you cannot use that protocol as a concrete type. For example, you cannot declare a variable with the type **IteratorProtocol** or declare a function that accepts an argument of type **IteratorProtocol**, because **IteratorProtocol** has an associated type. However, protocols with associated types are fundamental to using `where` clauses in generic declarations.

Type Constraint where Clauses

Write a new method that takes every element of an array and pushes it onto a stack.

Listing 22.17 Pushing items from an array onto a stack

```
...
struct Stack<Element>: Sequence {
    ...
    mutating func pushAll(_ array: [Element]) {
        for item in array {
            self.push(item)
        }
    }
}

...
for value in myStack {
    print("for-in loop: got \(value)")
}

myStack.pushAll([1, 2, 3])
for value in myStack {
    print("after pushing: got \(value)")
}
```

`pushAll(_:_)` is useful, but it is not as general as it could be. You now know that any type that conforms to **Sequence** can be used in a `for-in` loop, so why should this method require an array? It should be able to accept any kind of sequence – even another **Stack**, now that **Stack** conforms to **Sequence**.

However, a first attempt at this will produce a compile-time type error where you call `self.push(_:_)`.

Listing 22.18 Close, but no cigar

```
...
struct Stack<Element>: Sequence {
    ...
    mutating func pushAll(_ array: [Element]) {
        mutating func pushAll<S: Sequence>(_ sequence: S) {
            for item in array sequence {
                self.push(item)
            }
        }
    }
}
```

You made **pushAll(_ :)** generic with placeholder type **S**, which is some type that conforms to the **Sequence** protocol. The constraint on **S** guarantees that you can loop over it with the **for - in** syntax. However, this is not sufficient. To push the items you get from sequence onto the stack, you need to guarantee that the type of the items coming from the sequence matches the type of the stack's elements. That is, you need to add an additional constraint that the elements produced by **S** are themselves of type **Element**.

Swift supports constraints of this kind using a **where** clause.

Listing 22.19 Using a where clause to guarantee type

```
...
struct Stack<Element>: Sequence {
    ...
    mutating func pushAll<S: Sequence>(_ sequence: S)
        where S.Iterator.Element == Element {
        for item in sequence {
            self.push(item)
        }
    }
}
...

```

pushAll(_ :) is a generic method with one placeholder type. This placeholder type, **S**, has a constraint that the concrete type used must conform to the **Sequence** protocol. (Keep in mind that because it is a method on **Stack**, which is itself generic with placeholder type **Element**, **pushAll(_ :)** also has access to the **Element** placeholder type.)

Following the placeholder types, the **where** clause imposes further restrictions.

S.Iterator.Element refers to the **Element** type associated to the **Iterator** type associated to **S**. The constraint **S.Iterator.Element == Element** requires that the concrete type used for the **Element** associated type must match the concrete type used for your **Stack**'s **Element** placeholder.

The syntax for generic **where** clauses can be difficult to read at first glance, but an example should make it clearer. If your stack is holding **Ints**, the argument to **pushAll(_ :)** must be a sequence that produces **Ints**. Two types you already know that are **Int**-producing sequences are **Stack<Int>** and **[Int]**. Try them out.

Listing 22.20 Pushing items to the stack

```
...
var myOtherStack = Stack<Int>()
myOtherStack.pushAll([1, 2, 3])
myStack.pushAll(myOtherStack)
for value in myStack {
    print("after pushing items onto stack, got \(value)")
}
```

You created a new, empty stack of integers: **myOtherStack**. Next, you pushed all the

integers from an array onto `myOtherStack`. Finally, you pushed all the integers from `myOtherStack` onto `myStack`. You were able to use the same generic method in both cases because arrays and stacks both conform to **Sequence**.

Generics are an extremely powerful feature of Swift. If generics have not sunk in, do not fret – they are a complex and abstract concept. Take your time, go back over the **Stack** class you wrote throughout this chapter, and try your hand at the challenges.

Bronze Challenge

Add a **filter(_:)** method to your **Stack** structure. It should take a single argument, a closure that takes an **Element** and returns a **Bool**, and return a new **Stack<Element>** that contains any elements for which the closure returns **true**.

Silver Challenge

Write a generic function called **findAll(_:_:)** that takes an array of any type **T** that conforms to the **Equatable** protocol and a single element (also of type **T**).

findAll(_:_:) should return an array of integers corresponding to every location where the element was found in the array. For example, `findAll([5, 3, 7, 3, 9], 3)` should return `[1, 3]` because the item 3 exists at indices 1 and 3 in the array. Try your function with both integers and strings.

Gold Challenge

Modify the `findAll(_:_:)` function you wrote for the silver challenge to accept a generic **Collection** instead of an array. Hint: You will need to change the return type from **[Int]** to an array of an associated type of the **Collection** protocol.

For the More Curious: Understanding Optionals

Optionals are a mainstay of all nontrivial Swift programs, and the language has a lot of features that make it relatively easy to work with them. Under the hood, however, there is nothing particularly special about the **Optional** type. It is a generic enum with two cases:

```
enum Optional<Wrapped> {
    case None
    case Some(Wrapped)
}
```

As you probably expect, the **None** case corresponds to an optional that is currently **nil**, and the **Some** case corresponds to an optional that has a value of type **Wrapped**. Because the **Some** case is generic, you are able to create optional versions of any type at all.

Most of your interactions with optionals will use optional binding and optional chaining, but you can also treat them like any other enumeration. For example, if **maybeAnInt** is an **Int?**, you could switch over its two cases:

```
switch maybeAnInt {
case .None:
    print("maybeAnInt is nil")

case let .Some(value):
    print("maybeAnInt has the value \(value)")
}
```

This is not usually necessary, but it is nice to know that optionals are not magic. They are built on top of the same Swift features that are available to you.

For the More Curious: Parametric Polymorphism

In [Chapter 15](#), you learned about class inheritance. Any function that expects an argument of a class can also accept arguments that are subclasses of that class. This ability to accept either a class or any subclass of it is often referred to as *polymorphism*, but is more accurately known as *runtime polymorphism* or *subclass polymorphism*. Polymorphism, meaning “many forms,” allows you to write a single function that can accept different types.

Runtime polymorphism is a powerful tool, and the frameworks Apple provides for development use it frequently. Unfortunately, it also has drawbacks. Classes that are related by inheritance are tied together tightly: It can be difficult to change one without affecting the others. There is also a small but observable performance penalty to runtime polymorphism due to how the compiler must implement functions that accept class arguments.

Swift’s ability to add constraints to generics allows you to use another form of polymorphism: *compile-time polymorphism*, also known as *parametric polymorphism*. Generic functions with constraints are still true to the definition of polymorphism: You can write a single function that accepts different types.

Compile-time polymorphic functions address both of the issues listed above that plague runtime polymorphism. Many different types can conform to a protocol, allowing them to be used in any generic function that requires a type conforming to that protocol – but the types can be otherwise unrelated, making it easy to change any one of them without affecting the others. Additionally, compile-time polymorphism generally does not have a performance penalty.

In the playground, you called **pushAll(_:_:)** once with an array and once with a stack. The compiler actually produced two different versions of **pushAll(_:_:)** in the executable, meaning the method itself does not have to do anything at runtime to handle the different argument types.

Swift is entering into a programming community that has traditionally used class inheritance and runtime polymorphism extensively. Generics and compile-time polymorphism are starting to play a large role, however. The next time you start to write a class hierarchy, consider whether the problem you are trying to solve might be better served with a solution featuring protocols and generics. [Chapter 23](#) will discuss even more tools for protocol-based designs.

Protocol Extensions

The dominant software design philosophy of the past few decades has been object-oriented programming (OOP). OOP is powerful and well known; people have an intuition for what this style means for code. Traditionally, OOP uses classes to model data and methods to modify the properties on instances of those classes and to communicate with instances of other classes. Swift supports OOP, though its approach to this programming style is nontraditional given that enums and structs can replace many typical uses of classes in OOP.

Swift also addresses some of OOP's flaws. In OOP, inheritance, in particular, has to be used with great care. It is easy to end up with a code base full of difficult-to-understand classes due to a deep inheritance hierarchy. Swift introduces a new opportunity for designing reusable and composable types: Instead of using classes and inheritance, you can use protocols and generics. Protocols allow patterns that solve the same problems that inheritance solves in OOP, even when using value types. One of the most powerful tools to enable this kind of design is the *protocol extension*.

Modeling Exercise

Before you can begin exploring protocol extensions, you need a protocol and some conforming types to experiment with. You will write some very basic code that will let you track exercises.

Create a new playground called `ProtocolExtensions`. Begin with an **Exercise** protocol.

Listing 23.1 The **Exercise** protocol

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

protocol Exercise {
    var name: String { get }
    var caloriesBurned: Double { get }
    var minutes: Double { get }
}
```

The **Exercise** protocol has three readable properties: the exercise’s name, the number of calories burned, and the minutes spent performing the exercise. You are following the convention set by the Swift standard library, in which protocol names are nouns (like **Exercise**) or, for protocols that describe capabilities, end with one of the suffixes “-able,” “-ible,” or “-ing”. The other protocols you have seen follow this convention, such as **Sequence**, **Equatable**, and **CustomStringConvertible**.

Create two structs to track workouts: one for using an elliptical trainer and a second for running.

Listing 23.2 **EllipticalWorkout** and **TreadmillWorkout** exercises

```
...
protocol Exercise {
    var name: String { get }
    var caloriesBurned: Double { get }
    var minutes: Double { get }
}

struct EllipticalWorkout: Exercise {
    let name = "Elliptical Workout"
    let caloriesBurned: Double
    let minutes: Double
}

struct TreadmillWorkout: Exercise {
    let name = "Treadmill Workout"
}
```

```
let caloriesBurned: Double  
let minutes: Double  
let laps: Double  
}
```

You define two new structs that both conform to **Exercise**. Each has a name that is constant for all instances. Each has `caloriesBurned` and `minutes` properties that will be set when the instance is created. **TreadmillWorkout** also has a `laps` property to keep track of how many laps you completed. `laps` is not required to conform to **Exercise**, but recall from [Chapter 19](#) that extra properties or methods are perfectly acceptable.

Create an instance of each of these new types.

Listing 23.3 Instances of EllipticalWorkout and TreadmillWorkout

```
...  
struct EllipticalWorkout: Exercise {  
    let name = "Elliptical Workout"  
    let caloriesBurned: Double  
    let minutes: Double  
}  
  
let ellipticalWorkout = EllipticalWorkout(caloriesBurned: 335, mi  
  
struct TreadmillWorkout: Exercise {  
    let name = "Treadmill Workout"  
    let caloriesBurned: Double  
    let minutes: Double  
    let laps: Double  
}  
  
let runningWorkout = TreadmillWorkout(caloriesBurned: 350, minute:
```

Now that you have a protocol and some conforming types, you can start to add more functionality to these types.

Extending Exercise

A natural question to ask about an instance of **Exercise** is how many calories were burned per minute of exercise. You can use your knowledge of generics and where clauses to write a function that will perform that calculation.

Listing 23.4 Computing calories burned per minute, generically

```
...
func caloriesBurnedPerMinute<E: Exercise>(for exercise: E) -> Double
    return exercise.caloriesBurned / exercise.minutes
}

print(caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for: ellipticalWorkout))
print(caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for: runningWorkout))
```

caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for:) is a generic function whose placeholder type is required to be a type that conforms to the **Exercise** protocol. You made **caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for:)** generic so that you can call it with an instance of any type that conforms to **Exercise**, including **EllipticalWorkout** and **TreadmillWorkout**. The body of the function uses two of **Exercise**'s properties to compute the calories burned per minute.

There is nothing wrong with **caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for:)**, per se. But if you have an instance of **Exercise**, you have to remember that the **caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for:)** function exists. It would be more natural if every **Exercise** had a **caloriesBurnedPerMinute** property – but you do not want to have to copy and paste the same implementation into both **EllipticalWorkout** and **TreadmillWorkout** (and any new **Exercises** you might create).

Instead, write an extension on the **Exercise** protocol to add this new property.

Listing 23.5 Adding **caloriesBurnedPerMinute** to **Exercise**

```
...
func caloriesBurnedPerMinute<E: Exercise>(for exercise: E) -> Double
    return exercise.caloriesBurned / exercise.minutes
}
extension Exercise {
    var caloriesBurnedPerMinute: Double {
        return caloriesBurned / minutes
    }
}
...
```

Protocol extensions use the same extension keyword as extensions on nonprotocol types. Protocol extensions can add new computed properties and methods that have implementations, but they cannot add new requirements to the protocol. Protocol extensions

also cannot add stored properties, as protocols in general do not support stored properties. Much like the restrictions when you wrote generic functions, the implementations inside a protocol extension can only access other properties and methods that are guaranteed to exist, as `caloriesBurned` and `minutes` are in this case. Properties and methods added in a protocol extension become available on all types that conform to the protocol.

You deleted the `caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for:)` function, so your playground is now showing an error. Replace the calls to this function with an access of the new `caloriesBurnedPerMinute` property.

Listing 23.6 Accessing `caloriesBurnedPerMinute`

```
...
print(caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for: ellipticalWorkout))
print(caloriesBurnedPerMinute(for: runningWorkout))
print(ellipticalWorkout.caloriesBurnedPerMinute)
print(runningWorkout.caloriesBurnedPerMinute)
```

The results are the same.

Protocol Extension where Clauses

Extensions allow you to add new methods and computed properties to any type, not just types you have defined. Likewise, protocol extensions allow you to add new methods and computed properties to any protocol. However, as we said earlier, the properties and methods you add in a protocol extension can only use other properties and methods that are guaranteed to exist.

Do you remember the built-in protocol **Sequence** from [Chapter 22](#)? It has an associatedtype named **Iterator**, which must itself conform to **IteratorProtocol**. And **IteratorProtocol** has an associatedtype named **Element** that indicates the type of elements produced by the generator.

When writing a protocol extension on **Sequence**, there are not very many properties and methods that would be useful. You can use a where clause to restrict the protocol extension to only **Sequences** whose **Element** is a particular type.

Write a protocol extension on **Sequence**, constraining it to sequences with elements of type **Exercise**.

Listing 23.7 Extending Sequences containing Exercises

```
...
extension Sequence where Iterator.Element == Exercise {
    func totalCaloriesBurned() -> Double {
        var total: Double = 0
        for exercise in self {
            total += exercise.caloriesBurned
        }
        return total
    }
}
```

The where clause syntax for protocol extensions is the same as the where clause syntax for generics. You add a **totalCaloriesBurned()** method to compute the total number of calories burned in all exercises contained in the sequence. In the implementation, you loop over every exercise in **self**, which is allowed because **self** is some kind of **Sequence**. You then access the **caloriesBurned** property of each element, which is allowed because the where clause restricts this method to sequences whose elements are **Exercise**.

To use your extension, create an array of **Exercises**. **Array** conforms to **Sequence**, so you can call your new **totalCaloriesBurned()** method.

Listing 23.8 Calling totalCaloriesBurned() on an array of Exercises

```
...
extension Sequence where Iterator.Element == Exercise {
    func totalCaloriesBurned() -> Double {
        var total: Double = 0
        for exercise in self {
```

```
        total += exercise.caloriesBurned
    }
    return total
}
}
```

```
let mondayWorkout: [Exercise] = [ellipticalWorkout, runningWorkout]
print(mondayWorkout.totalCaloriesBurned())
```

The **totalCaloriesBurned()** method is available on this array because it is of type **[Exercise]**, so you get the result `685.0`. If you were to create an array of type **[Int]**, on the other hand, the **totalCaloriesBurned()** method would not be available. It would not show up in Xcode's autocomplete, and if you were to type it in manually your program would not compile.

Default Implementations with Protocol Extensions

Both of the protocol extensions you have written so far add new properties or methods to protocols. You can also use protocol extensions to provide default implementations for the protocol's own requirements.

Recall from [Chapter 19](#) that the **CustomStringConvertible** protocol has a single requirement: a readable **String** property named **description**. Change **Exercise** to inherit from **CustomStringConvertible**, meaning it also requires the **description** property.

Listing 23.9 Making Exercise inherit from CustomStringConvertible

```
import Cocoa
```

```
protocol Exercise: CustomStringConvertible {
    var name: String { get }
    var caloriesBurned: Double { get }
    var minutes: Double { get }
}
```

```
...
```

Your playground now has two errors because neither **EllipticalWorkout** nor **TreadmillWorkout** has the required **description** property.

You could go back and modify both types to add a **description**, but that seems silly when **Exercise** already has enough properties to provide a reasonable **String** representation. Use a protocol extension to add a default implementation of **description** to all types that conform to **Exercise**.

Listing 23.10 Adding a default implementation of description to Exercise

```
protocol Exercise: CustomStringConvertible {
    var name: String { get }
    var caloriesBurned: Double { get }
    var minutes: Double { get }
}

extension Exercise {
    var description: String {
        return "Exercise(\(name), burned \(caloriesBurned) calories in \(minutes) minutes)"
    }
}
```

The playground no longer has any errors. Your extension provides a default implementation of **description**, so types that conform to **Exercise** do not have to provide it themselves.

Print out both of your **Exercise** instances to see their descriptions.

Listing 23.11 Seeing the default description implementation

```
...
print(ellipticalWorkout.caloriesBurnedPerMinute)
print(runningWorkout.caloriesBurnedPerMinute)

print(ellipticalWorkout)
print(runningWorkout)
...
```

In the debug area of your playground, you should see the following output; it is exactly as you would expect from your implementation of **description**.

```
Exercise(Elliptical Workout, burned 335.0 calories in 30.0 minute)
Exercise(Treadmill Workout, burned 350.0 calories in 25.0 minute)
```

When a protocol provides default implementations for some (or all) of its properties or methods, conforming types are not required to implement them. But they can choose to implement them if the default implementation is not suitable.

Your **TreadmillWorkout** type also knows how many miles were run, but that information is not included in the description. Implement the **description** property on **TreadmillWorkout**, which will take precedence over the default implementation supplied by your extension on **Exercise**. Stylistically, it is cleaner to separate this property from the core functionality of **TreadmillWorkout** by placing it in an extension. This kind of separation is common in real-world apps, even when the extension is defined in the same file as the type it is extending, because it makes it clear that the particular set of properties and methods are being added to the type to conform to a protocol.

Listing 23.12 Overriding a protocol's default implementation

```
...
struct TreadmillWorkout: Exercise {
    let name = "Treadmill Workout"
    let caloriesBurned: Double
    let minutes: Double
    let laps: Double
}

extension TreadmillWorkout {
    var description: String {
        return "TreadmillWorkout(\(caloriesBurned) calories and
               \(laps) laps in \(minutes) minutes)"
    }
}
```

Now that **TreadmillWorkout** implements **description** itself, you should see in the

output that the default implementation is only used when printing `ellipticalWorkout`.
`Exercise(Elliptical Workout, burned 335.0 calories in 30.0 minut`
`TreadmillWorkout(350.0 calories and 4.2 miles in 25.0 minutes)`

Naming Things: A Cautionary Tale

There is an edge case with protocol extensions that may prove to be a great source of frustration if you are not careful. In the previous section, you added `description` to the requirements of `Exercise` (by making `Exercise` inherit from the `CustomStringConvertible` protocol), added a default implementation for `description`, and added a specific implementation to `TreadmillWorkout` that took precedence over the default implementation. This worked correctly because `description` was required by the `Exercise` protocol. But what happens if you write a protocol extension to add a property or method, then add a property or method with the same name (but a different implementation) to a conforming type?

The answer is that it depends on how the instance is being accessed – does the compiler know its specific type, or does it only know that it is an instance of the protocol? If this sounds confusing, that is OK – this is a little confusing! Let's look at an example.

Use a protocol extension to implement a `title` property on `Exercise`. Print out the titles of all the workouts in `mondayWorkout`.

Listing 23.13 Extending `Exercise` to add a `title`

```
...
extension Exercise {
    var title: String {
        return "\(name) - \(minutes) minutes"
    }
}

for exercise in mondayWorkout {
    print(exercise.title)
}
```

You add an implementation of `title` that includes the `Exercise`'s name and duration. You should see the following output.

```
Elliptical Workout - 30.0 minutes
Treadmill Workout - 25.0 minutes
```

Now go back and implement a `title` property on `EllipticalWorkout`. The title of `EllipticalWorkout` instances will include the brand name of the elliptical trainer used in the workout.

Listing 23.14 Adding a `title` to `EllipticalWorkout`

```
...
struct EllipticalWorkout: Exercise {
    let name = "Elliptical Workout"
    let title = "Workout using the Go Fast Elliptical Trainer 300"
    let caloriesBurned: Double
```

```
    let minutes: Double  
}
```

...

Check the output of your for loop.

Elliptical Workout - 30.0 minutes

Treadmill Workout - 25.0 minutes

Nothing changed. To make sure you did not mistype something, try printing out `ellipticalWorkout`'s title directly.

Listing 23.15 Printing `ellipticalWorkout`'s title

```
...  
for exercise in mondayWorkout {  
    print(exercise.title)  
}
```

print(`ellipticalWorkout.title`)

You should see the following output.

Elliptical Workout - 30.0 minutes

Treadmill Workout - 25.0 minutes

Workout using the Go Fast Elliptical Trainer 3000

Yikes! The same value of `ellipticalWorkout` is giving two different values for `title` when you log its value to the console. In [Listing 23.13](#), `title` is printed to the console as `Elliptical Workout - 30.0 minutes`. In [Listing 23.15](#), `title` is printed as `Workout using the Go Fast Elliptical Trainer 3000`. It seems the implementation provided by **EllipticalWorkout** is not taking precedence over the implementation in the extension on **Exercise**. Why is this the case?

The answer depends on two things. First, `title` is not required by the **Exercise** protocol. Instead, you have only provided a default implementation for `title` via a protocol extension. This means that when the compiler sees `ellipticalWorkout.title` in [Listing 23.13](#), it sees `ellipticalWorkout` as being an instance of type **Exercise**. (Remember, you looped through `mondayWorkout`, which is of type **[Exercise]**.)

Therefore, the compiler will use the version of `title` that it knows to be available to the **Exercise**. The compiler does not check for an implementation on the underlying **EllipticalWorkout** precisely because `title` is not required by **Exercise**.

Second, the compiler will stick exactly to the type information that you provide. In [Listing 23.13](#), you told the compiler that the instances in the array are of type **Exercise**, so it used the default implementation of `title` provided to it via the protocol extension. In [Listing 23.15](#), you told the compiler that the instance in question was of type **EllipticalWorkout**, which provides its own implementation of `title`, so that is the version it used.

At the risk of being repetitive, it is OK if this is confusing. Here is what is most important to

understand: Be careful when you are considering writing a protocol extension that adds properties or methods that are not default implementations for requirements of the protocol. The runtime behavior may not be what you expect if conforming types also implement those same properties and methods.

Bronze Challenge

Clean up the messiness introduced with the `title` properties. Add `title` to the **Exercise** protocol and make sure you see the output you expect.

Gold Challenge

This challenge is unique in that it does not have a specific problem or solution. Instead, it is an encouragement to spend some time reading interfaces written by the Swift team at Apple. Remember that you can Command-click on a type, function, method, or even operator to jump to a view in Xcode that shows you how the element is declared.

You first encountered the `map(_:)` method in [Chapter 13](#), where you called it on arrays. `map(_:)` is not just a method on arrays, though. `map(_:)` is defined in a protocol extension on all **Sequences** by the Swift standard library.

The Swift standard library contains a large number of properties and methods provided by protocol extensions. Many of them also include `where` clauses that restrict their use based on various criteria.

The Swift standard library uses many of the advanced features you have learned about. It may be difficult to read, especially at first, and especially if Swift is your first exposure to programming or generics. However, it is worth investing some time to look at how the library is organized. Try Command-clicking on **Sequence** in your playground and skimming through some of the extensions defined there. See if you can figure out what some of the `where` clauses mean. Do some experiments and explore!

Memory Management and ARC

All computer programs use memory. Most computer programs use memory dynamically: As a program runs, it allocates and deallocates memory as needed. Swift's stance on memory management is relatively unique. Most memory issues are handled for you automatically, but Swift does not use a garbage collector (a common tool for automatic memory management in programming languages). Instead, Swift uses a system of reference counting. In this chapter, you will investigate how that system works and learn what you need to be aware of to avoid memory leaks.

Memory Allocation

The memory allocation and management for value types – enumerations and structures – is very simple. When you create a new instance of a value type, an appropriate amount of memory is automatically set aside for your instance. Anything you do to pass the instance around, including passing it to a function and storing it in a property, creates a copy of the instance. Swift reclaims the memory when the instance no longer exists. You do not have to do anything to manage the memory of value types.

This chapter is about managing the memory for reference types – specifically, class instances. When you create a new class instance, memory is allocated for the instance to use, just as it is for value types. However, the difference is in what happens when you pass the class instance around. Passing a class instance to a function or storing it in a property creates an additional reference to the same memory, rather than copying the instance itself. Having multiple references to the same memory means that when any one of them changes the class instance, that change is apparent to all of the references.

Swift does not require you to manually manage memory, as languages like C do. Instead, every class instance has a *reference count*, which is the number of references to the memory making up the class instance. The instance remains alive as long as the reference count is greater than 0. As soon as the reference count becomes 0, the instance is deallocated and your **deinit** method will run.

In the not-too-distant past, apps that were developed in Objective-C used manual reference counting. Manual reference counting required you, the programmer, to manage the reference counts of all your class instances. Every class had a method to *retain* the object (incrementing its reference count) and a method to *release* the instance (decrementing its reference count). As you can probably imagine, manual reference counting was the source of many bugs: If you retained an instance too many times, it would never get deallocated (causing what is called a memory leak), but if you released an instance too many times, a crash would usually result.

In 2011, Apple introduced *Automatic Reference Counting* (ARC) for Objective-C. Under ARC, the compiler is responsible for analyzing your code and inserting retain and release calls in all of the appropriate places. Swift is also built on top of ARC. You do not have to do anything to manage the reference count of class instances – the compiler does that for you. However, it is still important for you to understand how the system works. There are some common mistakes that can cause memory management problems.

Strong Reference Cycles

Create a new command-line tool named CyclicalAssets. Add a new file to your project named `Person.swift` and insert the following definition of the **Person** class.

Listing 24.1 Defining the Person class (`Person.swift`)

```
import Foundation

class Person: CustomStringConvertible {
    let name: String

    var description: String {
        return "Person(\(name))"
    }

    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name
    }

    deinit {
        print("\(self) is being deallocated")
    }
}
```

The **Person** class has a single property that you set in its initializer. It conforms to the **CustomStringConvertible** protocol by implementing the `description` computed property. You add an implementation of `deinit` so you can see when a person is being deallocated – i.e., when its memory is being reclaimed because the reference count has dropped to 0.

Now, modify `main.swift` to create an optional **Person**.

Listing 24.2 Creating an optional Person (`main.swift`)

```
import Foundation

print("Hello, world!")
var bob: Person? = Person(name: "Bob")
print("created \(bob)")

bob = nil
print("the bob variable is now \(bob)")
```

Here, you create a new **Person?**, print out its name, then set it to `nil`. (You made it an optional so that you could set it to `nil` and therefore see the `deinit` execute.) Build and run your program. You should see the following output:

```
created Optional(Person(Bob))
```

```
Person(Bob) is being deallocated  
the bob variable is now nil  
Program ended with exit code: 0
```

The bob variable is an optional that contains a class instance – a reference type. By default, all references that you create are *strong references*, which means they increment the reference count of the instance they refer to. Therefore, the **Person** whose name is Bob has a reference count of 1 after it is created and assigned to the bob variable. When you set bob to nil, Bob's reference count is decremented. You then see the Person(Bob) is being deallocated message, because the reference count has dropped to 0.

Next, create a new Swift file called `Asset.swift` and insert an **Asset** class.

Listing 24.3 Defining the Asset class (`Asset.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
class Asset: CustomStringConvertible {  
    let name: String  
    let value: Double  
    var owner: Person?  
  
    var description: String {  
        if let actualOwner = owner {  
            return "Asset(\(name)), worth \(value), owned by \(act  
        } else {  
            return "Asset(\(name)), worth \(value), not owned by a  
        }  
    }  
  
    init(name: String, value: Double) {  
        self.name = name  
        self.value = value  
    }  
  
    deinit {  
        print("\(self) is being deallocated")  
    }  
}
```

The **Asset** class is very similar to the **Person** class. **Asset** has name and value properties, conforms to **CustomStringConvertible**, and prints a message when it is deallocated. It also has a variable stored property, owner, which will refer to the **Person** who owns the asset. owner is optional because it is reasonable for an asset to exist without someone owning it.

Create a few assets in `main.swift`.

Listing 24.4 Creating assets (`main.swift`)

```
import Foundation

var bob: Person? = Person(name: "Bob")
print("created \(bob)")

var laptop: Asset? = Asset(name: "Shiny Laptop", value: 1_500.0)
var hat: Asset? = Asset(name: "Cowboy Hat", value: 175.0)
var backpack: Asset? = Asset(name: "Blue Backpack", value: 45.0)

bob = nil
print("the bob variable is now \(bob)")

laptop = nil
hat = nil
backpack = nil
```

You again use optionals so that you can set the instances to be `nil`, which fires off the `deinit` methods. Build and run. As expected, all of the assets are deallocated and do not have owners:

```
created Optional(Person(Bob))
Person(Bob) is being deallocated
the bob variable is now nil
Asset(Shiny Laptop, worth 1500.0, not owned by anyone) is being deallocated
Asset(Cowboy Hat, worth 175.0, not owned by anyone) is being deallocated
Asset(Blue Backpack, worth 45.0, not owned by anyone) is being deallocated
Program ended with exit code: 0
```

People can own things; your **Person** class will model this quality by having a property for assets. Go back to `Person.swift` and add a property and method for people to gain assets.

Listing 24.5 Letting a Person own assets (`Person.swift`)

```
import Foundation

class Person: CustomStringConvertible {
    let name: String
    var assets = [Asset]()

    var description: String {
        return "Person(\(name))"
    }

    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name
    }
}
```

```

deinit {
    print("\(self) is being deallocated")
}

func takeOwnership(of asset: Asset) {
    asset.owner = self
    assets.append(asset)
}
}

```

You add **assets**, an array of **Assets** that the person owns, and **takeOwnership(of:)**, a method to give an asset to a person. Taking ownership of an asset means the person adds it to their **assets** array and sets the asset's **owner** property to refer back to this person. In **main.swift**, give Bob ownership of a couple of assets.

Listing 24.6 Bob is taking ownership (main.swift)

```

...
var laptop: Asset? = Asset(name: "Shiny Laptop", value: 1_500.0)
var hat: Asset? = Asset(name: "Cowboy Hat", value: 175.0)
var backpack: Asset? = Asset(name: "Blue Backpack", value: 45.0)

bob?.takeOwnership(of: laptop!)
bob?.takeOwnership(of: hat!)

bob = nil
...

```

Build and run again. The output may be surprising:

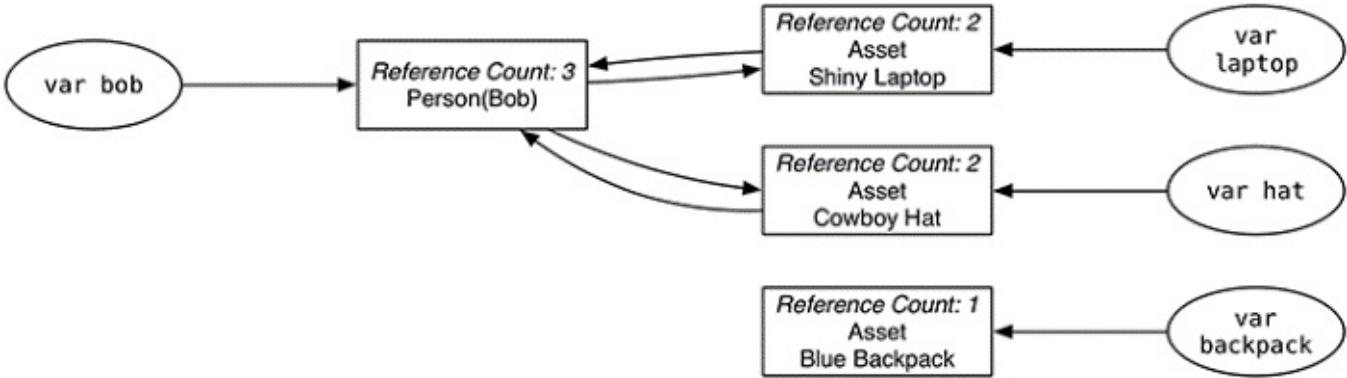
```

created Optional(Person(Bob))
the bob variable is now nil
Asset(Blue Backpack, worth 45.0, not owned by anyone) is being deallocated
Program ended with exit code: 0

```

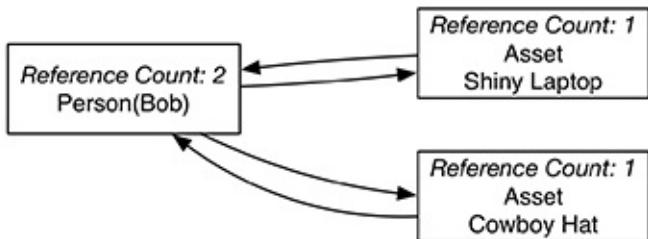
The only instance being deallocated now is the backpack – its reference count dropped to 0 when you set `backpack = nil`. The laptop, hat, and Bob himself are no longer being deallocated. Why not? Take a look at [Figure 24.1](#), which shows who has a reference to whom before any of the variables are set to `nil` in **main.swift**.

Figure 24.1 CyclicalAssets before



Each instance of **Person** and **Asset** is depicted within a rectangle labeled with its current reference count. Remember, `bob` is not the instance itself, but is instead a reference to an instance of the **Person** class. The reference count in the rectangle is exactly the number of arrows pointing to the instance; i.e., the number of references to the instance. After you set all the variables in `main.swift` to `nil`, those references go away, leaving what you see in [Figure 24.2](#).

Figure 24.2 CyclicalAssets after



You have created two *strong reference cycles*, which is the term for when two instances have strong references to each other. Bob has a reference to the laptop (via his `assets` property), and the laptop has a reference to Bob (via its `owner` property). Same for Bob and the hat. The memory for these instances is no longer reachable – all the variables pointing to them are gone – but the memory will never be reclaimed because each instance has a reference count greater than 0.

Strong reference cycles are one kind of *memory leak*. Your application allocated the memory necessary to store Bob and his two assets, but it did not return that memory to the system even after your program no longer needed it.

Do not worry about causing problems with your computer: When a program like `CyclicalAssets` stops running, all memory (including any leaked memory) is reclaimed by the OS. However, memory leaks are still serious, and even more so in iOS than in macOS. iOS keeps track of how much memory apps use, and it can kill apps that use too much. When an app leaks memory, that memory still counts as part of the app's total memory usage, even though it is no longer needed or useful.

Breaking Strong Reference Cycles with weak

The solution to a strong reference cycle is to break the cycle. You could manually break the cycles by looping over each asset and setting its owner to `nil` immediately after you set `bob` to `nil`, but that is tedious and error prone. Instead, Swift provides a keyword to get the same effect automatically. Modify **Asset** to make the `owner` property a *weak reference* instead of a strong reference.

Listing 24.7 Making the `owner` property a weak reference (`Asset.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
class Asset: CustomStringConvertible {
    let name: String
    let value: Double
    weak var owner: Person?
    ...
}
```

A weak reference is a reference that does not increase the reference count of the instance it refers to. In this case, making `owner` a weak reference means that when you assign Bob as the owner of the laptop and the hat, Bob's reference count does not increase. The only strong reference to Bob is the `bob` variable in `main.swift`.

Now, when you set the `bob` variable to `nil`, the reference count on Bob drops to 0, so it is deallocated. When Bob is deallocated, he no longer holds a strong reference to his assets, so their reference counts drop to 0 as well. Running your program again confirms that all the objects are deallocated.

```
created Optional(Person(Bob))
Person(Bob) is being deallocated
the bob variable is now nil
Asset(Shiny Laptop, worth 1500.0, not owned by anyone) is being deallocated
Asset(Cowboy Hat, worth 175.0, not owned by anyone) is being deallocated
Asset(Blue Backpack, worth 45.0, not owned by anyone) is being deallocated
Program ended with exit code: 0
```

What happens to a weak reference if the instance it refers to is deallocated? The weak reference is set to `nil`. You can see this by logging to the console before and after `bob` is set to be `nil` in `main.swift`.

Listing 24.8 Who owns the hat? (`main.swift`)

```
...
bob?.takeOwnership(of: laptop!)
bob?.takeOwnership(of: hat!)

print("While Bob is alive, hat's owner is \(hat!.owner)")
bob = nil
```

```
print("the bob variable is now \$(bob)")  
print("After Bob is deallocated, hat's owner is \$(hat!.owner)")  
...
```

Running your program again demonstrates weak variables in action:

```
created Optional(Person(Bob))  
While Bob is alive, hat's owner is Optional(Person(Bob))  
Person(Bob) is being deallocated  
the bob variable is now nil  
After Bob is deallocated, hat's owner is nil  
Asset(Shiny Laptop, worth 1500.0, not owned by anyone) is being  
Asset(Cowboy Hat, worth 175.0, not owned by anyone) is being dea  
Asset(Blue Backpack, worth 45.0, not owned by anyone) is being c  
Program ended with exit code: 0
```

There are two requirements for weak references:

- Weak references must always be declared as var, not let.
- Weak references must always be declared as optional.

Both of these requirements are the result of weak references being changed to nil if the instance they point to is deallocated. The only types that can become nil are optionals, so weak references must be optional. And instances declared with let cannot change, so weak references must be declared with var.

In most cases, strong reference cycles like the one you just resolved are easy to avoid.

Person is a class that owns assets, so it makes sense that it would keep strong references to the assets. **Asset** is a class that is owned by a **Person**. If it wants a reference to its owner, that reference should be weak. After all, a person owns an asset – an asset does not own a person!

There is another way to create reference cycles that is much more subtle: capturing self in a closure.

Reference Cycles in Closures

Time to add an accountant class that will keep track of a **Person**'s net worth. Create a new Swift file called `Accountant.swift` and define your new class.

Listing 24.9 Defining an Accountant (`Accountant.swift`)

```
import Foundation

class Accountant {
    typealias NetworthChanged = (Double) -> Void

    var networthChangedHandler: NetworthChanged? = nil
    var networth: Double = 0.0 {
        didSet {
            networthChangedHandler?(networth)
        }
    }

    func gained(_ asset: Asset) {
        networth += asset.value
    }
}
```

Accountant defines a typealias, **NetworthChanged**, which is a closure that takes a **Double** (the new net worth value) and returns nothing. It has two properties: `networthChangedHandler`, which is an optional closure to call when the net worth changes, and `networth`, the current net worth of a person. `networth` has a `didSet` property observer that calls the `networthChangedHandler` closure if it is non-nil. Finally, the `gained(_ :)` function should be called to tell the accountant that the value of a new asset should be added to the net worth value.

Update `Person.swift` to have an accountant to track a **Person**'s net worth.

Listing 24.10 Adding an Accountant to the Person class (`Person.swift`)

```
import Foundation

class Person: CustomStringConvertible {
    let name: String
    let accountant = Accountant()
    var assets = [Asset]()

    var description: String {
        return "Person(\(name))"
    }
}
```

```

init(name: String) {
    self.name = name

    accountant.networthChangedHandler = {
        networth in

            self.networthDidChange(to: networth)
            return
    }
}

deinit {
    print("\(self) is being deallocated")
}

func takeOwnership(of asset: Asset) {
    asset.owner = self
    assets.append(asset)
    accountant.gained(asset)
}

func networthDidChange(to networth: Double) {
    print("The net worth of \(self) is now \(networth)")
}
}

```

You add an `accountant` property that has a default value of a new `Accountant`. `Person` has a strong reference to its `Accountant`, which is perfectly reasonable. In `init()`, you set the `networthChangedHandler` on the `accountant` to call your new `networthDidChange(to:)` method, which logs the person's new net worth. Finally, you update `takeOwnership(of:)` to notify the `accountant` of new assets. Build and run your program. You should see the following:

```

created Optional(Person(Bob))
The net worth of Person(Bob) is now 1500.0
The net worth of Person(Bob) is now 1675.0
While Bob is alive, hat's owner is Optional(Person(Bob))
the bob variable is now nil
After Bob is deallocated, hat's owner is Optional(Person(Bob))
Asset(Blue Backpack, worth 45.0, not owned by anyone) is being c
Program ended with exit code: 0

```

You get the log messages of the net worth changing, so all of the `accountant` code you added appears to be working correctly. However, the strong reference cycle is back: Bob, the laptop, and the hat are not being deallocated. Why aren't these instances being removed from memory?

Your new code includes a not-so-obvious strong reference cycle. **Person** has a strong reference to **Accountant** via its property, but **Accountant** does not have a strong reference back to **Person** – at least not at first glance. To get a hint about what is going on, try modifying the `init()` method of **Person** (this will cause a compiler error).

Listing 24.11 Modifying `init()` (`Person.swift`)

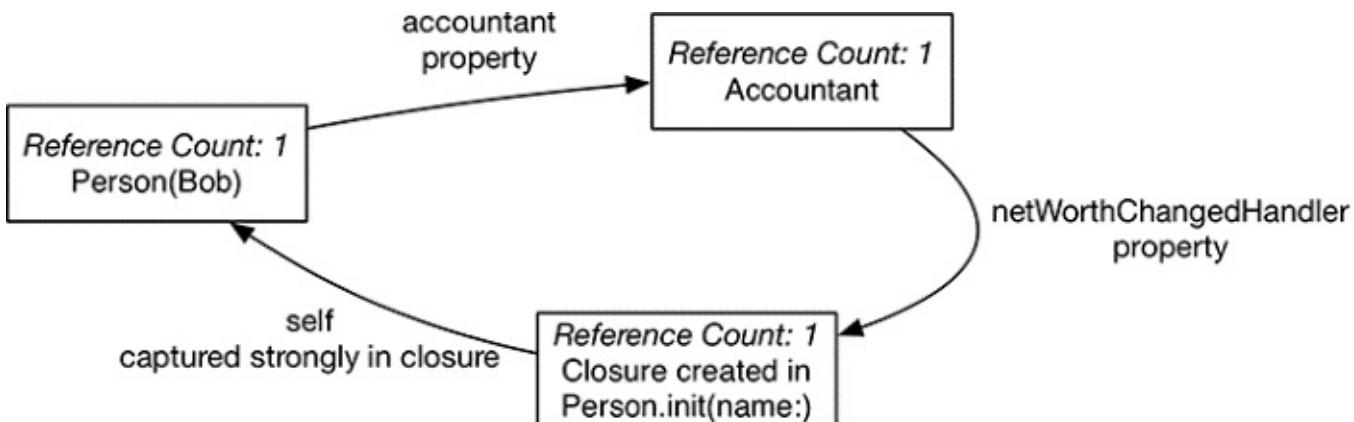
```
...  
    init(name: String) {  
        self.name = name  
  
        accountant.networthChangedHandler = {  
            networth in  
  
            self.networthDidChange(to: networth)  
            return  
        }  
    }  
}
```

Try to build your program now. The error message you receive states `Call to method 'networthDidChange' in closure requires explicit 'self.'` to make capture semantics explicit. What are the “capture semantics” of a closure?

Recall from [Chapter 13](#) that closures can capture variables defined in their enclosing scope. By default, captures in closures are made by taking a strong reference to the variables they use. `networthDidChange(to:)` is a method on **Person**, which is the type of `self` within the scope of the closure. Therefore, calling that method within the closure would give the closure a strong reference to the instance of **Person** it captures – `self`.

This explains why you are leaking memory: **Accountant** actually *does* have a strong reference back to **Person**! **Accountant**’s `netWorthChangedHandler` is holding a strong reference to its owning **Person** via that **Person**’s `self`, as shown in [Figure 24.3](#). Because both instances are holding a strong reference to each other, a cycle exists and neither will ever be deallocated.

Figure 24.3 Person to Accountant to Person strong reference cycle



Take another look at the error message: ... to make capture semantics explicit. Swift could allow you to use `self` implicitly in closures, but doing so would make it very easy to

accidentally create strong reference cycles, as you have done here. Instead, the language usually requires you to be explicit about your use of `self`, forcing you to consider whether a reference cycle is a possibility. (In cases where the compiler knows a reference cycle is impossible, you do not need to be explicit with `self`. You will see an example of this soon.)

To change the capture semantics of a closure to capture references weakly, you can use a *capture list*. Modify `Person.swift` to use a capture list when creating the closure.

Listing 24.12 Using a capture list (`Person.swift`)

```
...
    init(name: String) {
        self.name = name

        accountant.networthChangedHandler = {
            [weak self] networth in

                self?.networthDidChange(to: networth)
                return
        }
    }
...
}
```

The capture list syntax is a list of variables inside square brackets (`[]`) immediately before the list of the closure arguments. The capture list you wrote here tells Swift to capture `self` weakly instead of strongly. Now that the **Accountant**'s closure no longer strongly references the **Person**, the strong reference cycle is broken.

Note the use of `self?` in the body of the closure. Because `self` is captured weakly and all weak instances must be optional, `self` inside the closure is optional.

Run your program again and confirm that all the instances are being deallocated appropriately:

```
created Optional(Person(Bob))
The net worth of Person(Bob) is now 1500.0
The net worth of Person(Bob) is now 1675.0
While Bob is alive, hat's owner is Optional(Person(Bob))
Person(Bob) is being deallocated
the bob variable is now nil
After Bob is deallocated, hat's owner is nil
Asset(Shiny Laptop, worth 1500.0, not owned by anyone) is being
Asset(Cowboy Hat, worth 175.0, not owned by anyone) is being dea
Asset(Blue Backpack, worth 45.0, not owned by anyone) is being c
Program ended with exit code: 0
```


Escaping and Non-escaping Closures

Swift also allows you to use closures that cannot possibly create strong reference cycles. This kind of closure, called a non-escaping closure, does not require you to explicitly refer to `self`. Closures declared as function parameters are non-escaping by default. Closures in other contexts, such as properties like `netWorthChangedHandler`, are escaping.

What does *escaping* mean? Escaping means that a closure passed to a function may be called after the function returns. That is, it *escapes* the scope of the function it is passed to. If a closure does not escape, the compiler knows that it cannot be called after the function returns, so no strong reference cycle is possible.

You can see this in action. Imagine that you do not want a **Person** to fully take ownership of an asset until after its **Accountant** has recorded the value of the asset. You could solve this problem by adding a completion closure to **Accountant**'s `gained(_:_)` method.

Listing 24.13 Adding a completion closure to `gained(_:_)` (`Accountant.swift`)

```
import Foundation

class Accountant {
    ...
    func gained(_ asset: Asset, completion: () -> Void) {
        netWorth += asset.value
        completion()
    }
}
```

After the accountant increments its client's net worth, it calls the `completion` closure. Update **Person**'s `takeOwnership(of:)` method, moving the changes to the person's assets into the completion closure.

Listing 24.14 Using the completion closure (`Person.swift`)

```
import Foundation

class Person: CustomStringConvertible {
    ...
    func takeOwnership(of asset: Asset) {
        asset.owner = self
        assets.append(asset)
        accountant.gained(asset) {
            asset.owner = self
            assets.append(asset)
        }
    }
    ...
}
```

Note that you did not have to say `self.assets.append(asset)`. The compiler knows that the closure passed to `gained(_:completion:)` is non-escaping, so it allows you to refer to properties and methods on `self` implicitly. Build and run your app. The output should be identical to the last time you ran it.

How do you tell the compiler that a closure needs to be escaping? Add a method to `Person` that allows callers to set a different handler closure for changes to the person's net worth. (This first attempt will not compile, but try it anyway to see the error.)

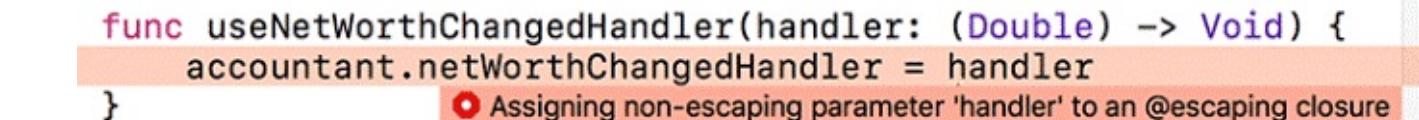
Listing 24.15 Adding `useNetWorthChangedHandler(_:)` (`Person.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
class Person: CustomStringConvertible {  
    ...  
    func useNetWorthChangedHandler(handler: (Double) -> Void) {  
        accountant.netWorthChangedHandler = handler  
    }  
}
```

This produces an error that you are trying to mix escaping and non-escaping closures ([Figure 24.4](#)).

Figure 24.4 Assigning non-escaping parameter error



```
func useNetWorthChangedHandler(handler: (Double) -> Void) {  
    accountant.netWorthChangedHandler = handler  
}
```

Assigning non-escaping parameter 'handler' to an @escaping closure

You are trying to assign `handler` into the `accountant.netWorthChangedHandler` property. Storing a closure into a property means you could call it after the function returns. This means that the closure is trying to escape the scope of the function. Since closures default to non-escaping, the compiler refuses to allow this assignment.

Fix this error by marking `handler` as an escaping closure.

Listing 24.16 Making `handler` escaping (`Person.swift`)

```
import Foundation
```

```
class Person: CustomStringConvertible {  
    ...  
    func useNetWorthChangedHandler(handler: @escaping (Double) -> Void) {  
        accountant.netWorthChangedHandler = handler  
    }  
}
```

The `@escaping` attribute tells the compiler that `handler` can escape the `useNetWorthChangedHandler(_:)` method. This fixes the error you saw above.

Go back to `main.swift` and use this new method.

Listing 24.17 Using `useNetWorthChangedHandler(_:)` (`main.swift`)

```
...  
bob?.useNetWorthChangedHandler { networth in  
    print("Bob's net worth is now \(networth)")  
}  
bob?.takeOwnership(of: laptop!)  
bob?.takeOwnership(of: hat!)  
...
```

Build and run your app. You should see your new net worth handler in action.

```
created Optional(Person(Bob))  
Bob's net worth is now 1500.0  
Bob's net worth is now 1675.0  
While Bob is alive, hat's owner is Optional(Person(Bob))  
Person(Bob) is being deallocated  
the bob variable is now nil  
After Bob is deallocated, hat's owner is nil  
Asset(Shiny Laptop, worth 1500.0, not owned by anyone) is being  
Asset(Cowboy Hat, worth 175.0, not owned by anyone) is being dea  
Asset(Blue Backpack, worth 45.0, not owned by anyone) is being c  
Program ended with exit code: 0
```


Bronze Challenge

The idea of asset ownership by a **Person** is incomplete. **Person** has a way to take ownership of an asset, but no way to give up ownership of an asset. Update **Person** so that an instance can relinquish an asset. (Hint: You will probably need to update **Accountant**, too, if you want a valid net worth value.)

Silver Challenge

Create another **Person** in `main.swift`. Immediately after you give Bob ownership of the laptop, try giving your new **Person** ownership of the same laptop. Now both people own the laptop! Fix this bug.

For the More Curious: Can I Retrieve the Reference Count of an Instance?

Unfortunately, Swift does not give you access to the actual reference count of any instances. (Although recall from [Chapter 18](#) that you can ask if a variable is the only reference to an instance via the `isKnownUniquelyReferenced(_:_)` function.)

Even if you could ask an instance what its reference count is, the answer you get might not be what you expect. Throughout this chapter, we said things like, “At this point, the reference count is 2.” That was a white lie.

Conceptually, it is perfectly reasonable for you to think of reference counts the way we described. Under the hood, the compiler is free to insert additional calls to retain (increment the reference count) and release (decrement the reference count). As long as it does its job correctly, there is no harm to your program. If you could ask what the actual reference count of an instance is, the answer would depend on what sort of analysis the compiler had done at that point. Additionally, there are some classes in Apple’s system libraries that behave in strange ways when it comes to reference counting (the details of which are beyond the scope of this book).

The important things for you to remember are how to recognize the potential for strong reference cycles and how to use `weak` to break them.

Equatable and Comparable

Much of programming depends on comparing values. It is important to know whether two values are equal or, if not, *how* one value compares to another: Is this value less than or greater than that value?

In fact, you have been doing this with Swift's basic types throughout this book. Does this string equal another string? Is this integer smaller than that integer? All of Swift's basic types know how to compare themselves to other instances of the same type. Why?

The answer is closely related to the purpose of value types. Instances of these types represent specific *values*. There is an intrinsic expectation here that values can and should be comparable. We intuitively want to know how one integer compares to another integer.

For this reason, it is good practice for your custom value types to know how to compare themselves to other instances. Swift provides two protocols for testing equality and comparability: **Equatable** and **Comparable**. This chapter will show you how you can make a custom type conform to these protocols. This will involve implementing a few functions that will show instances of your type how to compare themselves to other instances of the same type. Create a new playground called **Comparison** to begin.

Conforming to Equatable

Create a new type that does not yet conform to the **Equatable** protocol.

Listing 25.1 Defining Point

```
import Cocoa

var str = "Hello, playground"

struct Point {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int
}
```

The struct above defines a **Point** type. **Point**'s x and y properties describe a location on a two-dimensional plane.

At the moment, **Point** does not know how to determine whether one instance is equal to another. Create two instances of this type to see what happens when you check whether the two are equal.

Listing 25.2 Creating two Points

```
...

struct Point {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int
}

let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
```

You create two new points, a and b, using the free memberwise initializer provided by the compiler. You give both points the same values for their x and y properties. Now try to use the `==` operator to test for equality between these two points.

Listing 25.3 Is a the same as b?

```
...

struct Point {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int
}

let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let abEqual = (a == b)
```

This check for equality does not work. In fact, it generates an error from the compiler. This

error stems from the fact that you have not yet taught your **Point** struct how to test for equality between two instances.

Teaching this to your struct will involve making **Point** conform to the **Equatable** protocol. Add the following code to your struct's declaration.

Listing 25.4 Adding a protocol conformance declaration

```
...
struct Point: Equatable {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int
}
```

```
let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let abEqual = (a == b)
```

Now you have a new error. This time, the error is on the line where you declare the **Point** struct. The error will say that **Point** does not conform to the **Equatable** protocol. In short, this means that the compiler does not know how to check if a and b are equal.

To figure out how to conform to the **Equatable** protocol, open the documentation. Option-click on **Equatable** and, in the pop-up, click on the link at the bottom to the “Protocol Reference” to bring up the full reference.

The documentation tells you that you are required to implement the `==` operator. `==` already has a definition; several, in fact. You can use `==` to compare strings, doubles, integers, dictionaries, and so on. Because **Point** is a type that you have created yourself, you need to provide another implementation of `==` so that Swift knows how to compare two instances of that type.

The **Equatable** protocol specifies that the `==` function is a `static` method on the conforming type. Implement `==` to compare two instances of the **Point** type and test for equality by checking to see whether the instances have the same values in both the `x` and `y` properties.

Listing 25.5 Changing the implementation of ==

```
...
struct Point: Equatable {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int

    static func ==(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
        return (lhs.x == rhs.x) && (lhs.y == rhs.y)
    }
}
```

```
let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let abEqual = (a == b)
```

You now have a new implementation of the `==` operator. (Note that an operator is just a function with a special name.) This definition has two arguments: an `lhs` argument for the lefthand side and an `rhs` for the righthand side of the equality check. Both of these arguments are expected to be of type **Point**.

The function's implementation is straightforward. It compares the `x` and `y` values for both instances of the **Point** type that are passed into the function's arguments. Then it returns a **Bool** indicating whether the instances are equal.

Take a look at your playground's results sidebar. You should see that the errors are gone and that your test for equality between `a` and `b` succeeds. The two points are equal because both of their `x` and `y` values are the same. (Try changing just the `x` values so that they do not match. You should see that the two points are no longer equal. Make sure to change the values back to their previous values before proceeding.)

Interlude: infix operators

It may feel strange to declare `==` as a `static` method. In [Chapter 15](#) you learned that `static` methods are defined on the type. But you do not call this method on the **Point** type, like `Point.==(a, b)`. Indeed, operators like `==` are declared at the global level in Swift.

The `==` operator is declared like so in the Swift standard library:

```
precedencegroup ComparisonPrecedence {
    higherThan: LogicalConjunctionPrecedence
}
```

```
infix operator == : ComparisonPrecedence
```

Do not worry about what a `precedencegroup` is right now. Check for a discussion on those topics in the For the More Curious: Custom Operators section at the end of this chapter. Do note that the `==` operator is declared as an `infix` operator. This means that you place the operator between the two instances it is supposed to compare when you call the method. Hence, you called **Point**'s implementation of `==` via this code in the example above: `(a == b)`.

Swift's compiler knows to look for definitions of operators within a type. For example, the **Equatable** protocol is able to declare that conforming types implement a `static` method. If you create your own protocol and list an operator as a requirement for conforming types, the compiler will issue a warning if you do not declare the method as `static` within the protocol.

```
protocol MyEquatable {
    func ==(lhs: Self, rhs: Self) -> Bool
```

```
// Operator '==' declared in protocol must be 'static'  
}
```

Buy one method, get another free!

Your **Point** struct now conforms to **Equatable**, so you can test **Points** for equality, as you have just seen. And there is more. Swift's standard library provides a default implementation of the **!=** function that depends on the definition of **==**. Therefore, if your type conforms to **Equatable** by implementing its own version of **==**, then it also has a working implementation of the **!=** function.

Try it out by adding the following test.

Listing 25.6 Is a not the same as b?

```
...  
struct Point: Equatable {  
    let x: Int  
    let y: Int  
  
    static func ==(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {  
        return (lhs.x == rhs.x) && (lhs.y == rhs.y)  
    }  
}  
  
let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)  
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)  
let abEqual = (a == b)  
let abNotEqual = (a != b)
```

The results sidebar should update to show that this test for inequality yields `false`. In other words, the two points *are* equal, which means that they are *not* unequal.

Conforming to Comparable

Now that your **Point** type conforms to the **Equatable** protocol, you may be interested in more nuanced forms of comparison. For example, perhaps you want to know if a point is less than another point. You accomplish this functionality by conforming to the **Comparable** protocol.

Open the documentation for **Comparable**. Because you have not entered **Comparable** yet (so you cannot Option-click on its name), click on the Help menu and select Documentation and API Reference. Search for “Comparable” to determine what is needed. You will find that you need to implement one operator: the `<` infix operator. Add the following code to your struct to make it conform to **Comparable**.

Listing 25.7 Conforming to Comparable

```
...
struct Point: Equatable, Comparable {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int

    static func ==(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
        return (lhs.x == rhs.x) && (lhs.y == rhs.y)
    }

    static func <(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
        return (lhs.x < rhs.x) && (lhs.y < rhs.y)
    }
}

let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let abEqual = (a == b)
let abNotEqual = (a != b)
```

You have added a new declaration to your **Point** that says that it conforms to the **Comparable** protocol. You also added an implementation of the `<` operator. This implementation works similarly to your implementation of `==`. It checks whether the point passed in on the lefthand side is less than the point passed in on the righthand side. If the `x` and `y` values for the point on the lefthand side are both smaller than the values on the righthand side, the function will return `true`. Otherwise, the function will return `false`, indicating that the point on the lefthand side is not less than the righthand side.

Create two new points to test this function.

Listing 25.8 Testing the `<` function

```
struct Point: Equatable, Comparable {
    let x: Int
```

```

let y: Int

static func ==(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
    return (lhs.x == rhs.x) && (lhs.y == rhs.y)
}

static func <(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
    return (lhs.x < rhs.x) && (lhs.y < rhs.y)
}
}

let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let abEqual = (a == b)
let abNotEqual = (a != b)
let c = Point(x: 2, y: 6)
let d = Point(x: 3, y: 7)

let cdEqual = (c == d)
let cLessThanD = (c < d)

```

You create two new points with different values for `x` and `y`. You check to see whether `c` and `d` are equal, which returns `false`: The two points are not the same. Last, you exercise your `<` operator to determine whether `c` is less than `d`. In this case, the comparison evaluates to `true`. The point `c` is less than the point `d` because both its `x` and `y` values are smaller than `d`'s.

As with conforming to the **Equatable** protocol, implementing one function can give you much more functionality. The Swift standard library defines the `>`, `>=`, and `<=` operators in terms of the `<` and `==` operators. This is why **Comparable** only requires that you overload the `<` operator. If your type conforms to **Comparable**, then it will get implementations of these operators for free.

Test this functionality by adding a series of new comparisons.

Listing 25.9 Exercising comparisons

```

...
struct Point: Equatable, Comparable {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int

    static func ==(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
        return (lhs.x == rhs.x) && (lhs.y == rhs.y)
    }

    static func <(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
        return (lhs.x < rhs.x) && (lhs.y < rhs.y)
    }
}

```

```
    }  
}  
  
let a = Point(x: 3, y: 4)  
let b = Point(x: 3, y: 4)  
let abEqual = (a == b)  
let abNotEqual = (a != b)  
let c = Point(x: 2, y: 6)  
let d = Point(x: 3, y: 7)  
  
let cdEqual = (c == b)  
let cLessThanD = (c < d)
```

```
let cLessThanEqualD = (c <= d)  
let cGreaterThanOrD = (c > d)  
let cGreaterThanOrEqualD = (c >= d)
```

These last three comparisons check whether:

- c is less than or equal to d
- c is greater than d
- c is greater than or equal to d

As anticipated, these comparisons evaluate to true, false, and false, respectively.

Comparable's Inheritance

Comparable actually inherits from **Equatable**. You may be able to guess the implication of this inheritance. To conform to the **Comparable** protocol, you must also conform to the **Equatable** protocol by supplying an implementation of the `==` operator. This relationship also means that a type does not have to explicitly declare conformance to **Equatable** if it declares conformance to **Comparable**. Remove the explicit declaration of conformance to **Equatable** from your **Point** struct.

Listing 25.10 Removing the unnecessary conformance declaration

```
...
struct Point: Equatable, Comparable {
    let x: Int
    let y: Int

    static func ==(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
        return (lhs.x == rhs.x) && (lhs.y == rhs.y)
    }

    static func <(lhs: Point, rhs: Point) -> Bool {
        return (lhs.x < rhs.x) && (lhs.y < rhs.y)
    }
}
...
```

You should see that the playground works just as it did before.

One final note on style. While it is not wrong to explicitly declare conformance to both **Equatable** and **Comparable**, it is unnecessary. If your type conforms to **Comparable**, then it must conform to **Equatable** as well. This point is a detail listed in the documentation, which makes it an expected consequence of conforming to **Comparable**. Adding the explicit conformance to **Equatable** does not add that much more information.

On the other hand, it may make sense to have a type explicitly conform to all protocols involved when conforming to a custom protocol that inherits from another protocol. Although it is still unnecessary, it may make your code more readable and easier to maintain, because your custom protocol is not listed in the official documentation.

Bronze Challenge

Make it possible to add two points together. The addition of two points should return a new **Point** that adds the given points' x values and y values. You will need to provide an implementation of the **+** operator that takes two **Point** instances.

Gold Challenge

Create a new **Person** class with two properties: `name` and `age`. For convenience, create an initializer that provides arguments for both of these properties.

Next, create two new instances of the **Person** class. Assign those instances to two constants named `p1` and `p2`. Also create an array named `people` to hold these instances and then put them inside the array.

You will occasionally need to find the index of an instance of a custom type within an array. Call the `index(of:)` method on your array to do so. The argument takes the value of some element in the collection whose index you would like to find. Use the method to find the index of `p1` inside of the `people` array.

You will get an error. Take some time to understand the error, then resolve it. You should be able to assign the result of `index(of:)` to a constant named `p1Index`. Its value should be `0`.

Platinum Challenge

Point's current conformance to **Comparable** yields some confusing results.

```
let c = Point(x: 3, y: 4)
let d = Point(x: 2, y: 5)

let cGreaterThanD = (c > d) // false
let cLessThanD = (c < d)    // false
let cEqualToD = (c == d)    // false
```

As the above example demonstrates, the trouble arises in comparing two points when one point's `x` and `y` properties are not both larger than the other point's. In actuality, it is not reasonable to compare two points in this manner.

Fix this problem by changing **Point**'s conformance to **Comparable**. Calculate each point's Euclidean distance from the origin instead of comparing `x` and `y` values. This implementation should return true for `a < b` when `a` is closer to the origin than `b`.

Use the formula shown in [Figure 25.1](#) to calculate a point's Euclidean distance.

Figure 25.1 Euclidean distance

$$distance(a, b) = \sqrt{(a_x - b_x)^2 + (a_y - b_y)^2}$$

For the More Curious: Custom Operators

Swift allows developers to create custom operators. This feature means that you can create your own operator to signify that one instance of the **Person** type has married another instance. Say, for example, you want to create a **+++** function to marry one instance to another.

Create a new **Person** class like so:

Listing 25.11 Setting up a Person class

```
...
class Person {
    var name: String
    weak var spouse: Person?

    init(name: String, spouse: Person?) {
        self.name = name
        self.spouse = spouse
    }
}
```

The class has two properties: one for a name and another for a spouse. It also has an initializer that will give values to those properties. Note that the **spouse** property is an optional to indicate that a person may not have a spouse.

Next, create two instances of this class.

Listing 25.12 Creating two instances of person

```
...
class Person {
    var name: String
    weak var spouse: Person?

    init(name: String, spouse: Person?) {
        self.name = name
        self.spouse = spouse
    }
}

let matt = Person(name: "Matt", spouse: nil)
let drew = Person(name: "Drew", spouse: nil)
```

Now, declare your new infix operator. It has to be declared at global scope. Also, define how the new operator function will work.

Listing 25.13 Declaring a custom operator

```
...
```

```
class Person {  
    var name: String  
    weak var spouse: Person?  
  
    init(name: String, spouse: Person?) {  
        self.name = name  
        self.spouse = spouse  
    }  
}  
  
let matt = Person(name: "Matt", spouse: nil)  
let drew = Person(name: "Drew", spouse: nil)
```

infix operator +++

```
func +++(lhs: Person, rhs: Person) {  
    lhs.spouse = rhs  
    rhs.spouse = lhs  
}
```

The new operator **+++** will be used to marry two instances of the **Person** class. As an infix operator, it will be used between two instances. The implementation of **+++** will assign each instance to the other's **spouse** property.

+++ does not state a **precedencegroup**, which means it is assigned to the **DefaultPrecedence** group.

```
precedencegroup DefaultPrecedence {  
    higherThan: TernaryPrecedence  
}
```

So, what does **higherThan** refer to in the code above? **higherThan** defines the priority of the operator's relative relationship to another **precedencegroup**. In this particular case, **DefaultPrecedence** has a priority that is higher than **TernaryPrecedence**, another **precedencegroup**. This is the **precedencegroup** for the ternary operator (see [Chapter 3](#) for a discussion of the ternary operator). That means your new operator, **+++ (lhs:rhs:)**, will have higher priority than and will be executed before the ternary operator.

Think of how multiplication has higher priority than addition in expressions like $4 + 3 * 3 - 1$. Because multiplication has higher priority, $4 + 3 * 3 - 1$ is 12. If addition had higher priority than multiplication, then the answer would be 20.

precedencegroups offer a number of other options to define the custom operator. In addition to **higherThan**, another important option that you will often see is **associativity**.

associativity defines how operations of the same priority group together. It takes one of

two values, `left` or `right`. For example, the operators `+` and `-` both use the same `precedencegroup` (`AdditionPrecedence`) and therefore have the same priority. Both are also left associative. The associativity and precedence for the mathematical operators mean that the order of execution in the equation above is $(4 + (3 * 3)) - 1$. That is, $3 * 3$ is evaluated first, because it has the highest priority, and its product associates to the left. That yields $(4 + 9) - 1$, which is $13 - 1$, which is 12.

Because `+++` is intended to marry two **Person** instances together, it does not need to be chained together with multiple calls. For example, you would not see this code: `matt +++ drew +++ someOtherInstance`. Thus, you can take advantage of the default values for precedence and associativity.

Exercise your new operator.

Listing 25.14 Using the custom operator

```
...
class Person {
    var name: String
    weak var spouse: Person?

    init(name: String, spouse: Person?) {
        self.name = name
        self.spouse = spouse
    }
}

let matt = Person(name: "Matt", spouse: nil)
let drew = Person(name: "Drew", spouse: nil)

infix operator +++

func +++(lhs: Person, rhs: Person) {
    lhs.spouse = rhs
    rhs.spouse = lhs
}

matt +++ drew
matt.spouse?.name
drew.spouse?.name
```

The code `matt +++ drew` serves to marry the two instances. Check that this process worked by examining the playground's results sidebar.

While this operator works, and it is not too difficult to determine what is going on by looking at it, we generally recommend that you avoid declaring custom operators. It is good practice to only create custom operators for your own types when the operator will be recognizable to anyone who may read your code. That typically means restricting your custom operators to

the realm of well-known mathematical operators. (In fact, Swift only allows you to use a well-defined collection of mathematical symbols to create custom operators. For example, you cannot refactor the `+++` operator to be the emoji “face throwing a kiss” (i.e., U+1F61A).)

Someone reviewing your code in the future may not know exactly what you meant by `+++`. (You might even forget, yourself.) After all, it is fairly ambiguous in this case.

Moreover, it is not as though this custom operator accomplishes something more elegantly or efficiently than a `marry(_:)` method would. For example, a `marry(_:)` method might look like this:

```
func marry(_ spouse: Person) {  
    self.spouse = spouse  
    spouse.spouse = self  
}
```

This code is far more readable, and it is quite clear what the code is doing. These qualities will make it easier to maintain in the future.

Part VI

Event-Driven Applications

In this part of the book, you will apply your knowledge of Swift to develop your first Mac and iOS applications. Along the way, you will see the basics of interoperating between Swift and Objective-C, Apple's precursor to Swift.

Your First Cocoa Application

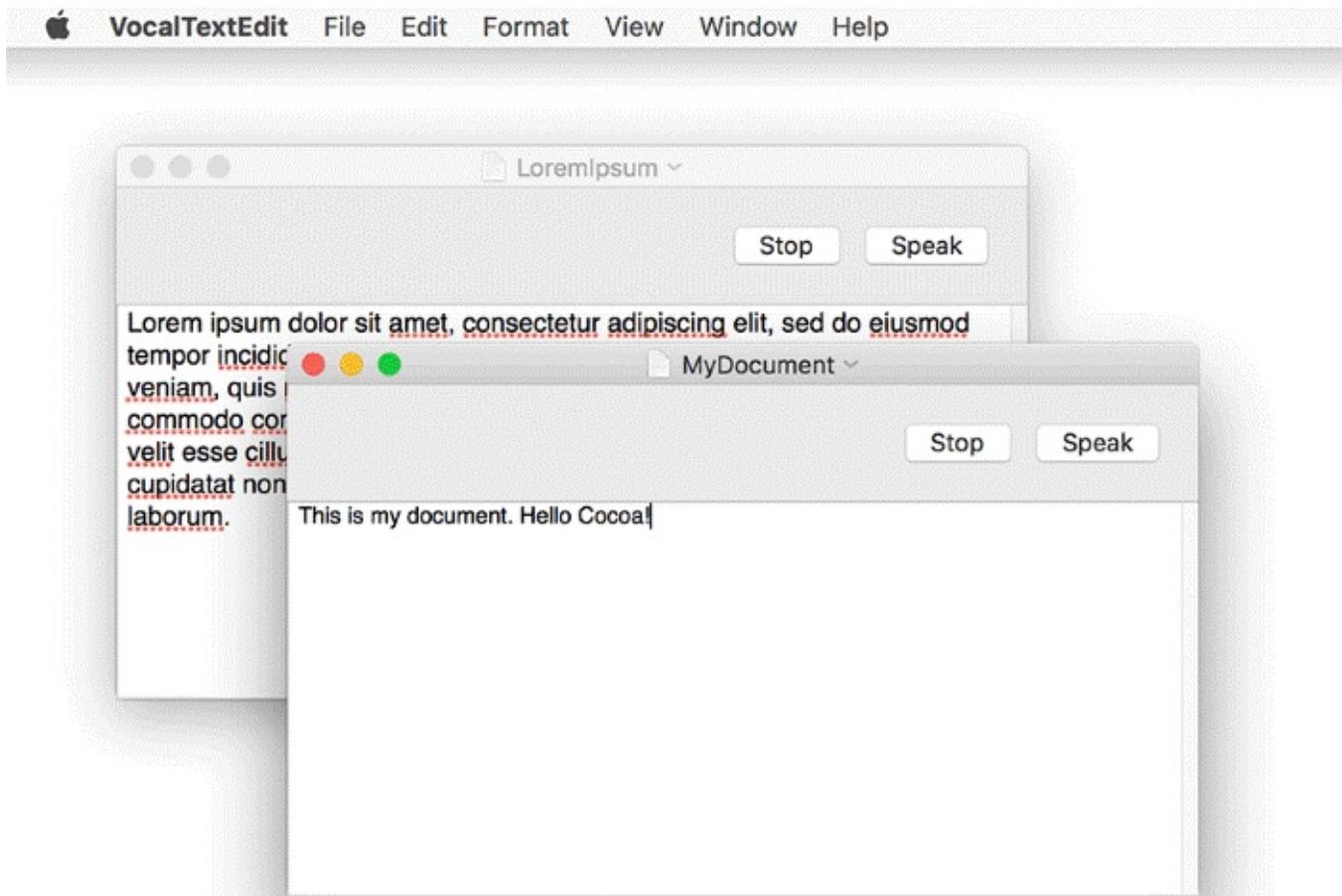
One of Swift's most compelling features is its ability to interact with Objective-C, the language in which Mac and iOS apps have traditionally been written. We are not going to cover the full story of how the two languages live side by side in one app, but the next three chapters will give you a taste. Swift makes it possible to use Objective-C libraries like Cocoa, the native API for developing desktop Mac apps.

Swift is able to talk to Cocoa (and other Objective-C frameworks) using techniques broadly described as *bridging*. Bridging is the process by which a function or instance in one language can be called from or given to the other language. Bridging goes in both directions: Swift can call Objective-C functions, and Objective-C can call Swift functions (with some restrictions). Most of the time, the compiler handles all the details of bridging for you, but occasionally it needs you to step in and give it some help. You will see some examples of that shortly.

In this chapter, you are going to create `VocalTextEdit`, a desktop application for Mac. `VocalTextEdit` is a very simple text editor that has the bonus feature of being able to read your document aloud to you. This application is very simple; it will give you only a taste of how Cocoa development works. For a much more thorough exploration of Cocoa, see the most recent edition of *Cocoa Programming for OS X: The Big Nerd Ranch Guide*.

`VocalTextEdit` will be a *document-based application*. This allows users to have multiple windows open at the same time, each representing a different file. When you are done, your application will look like [Figure 26.1](#).

Figure 26.1 Complete VocalTextEdit application

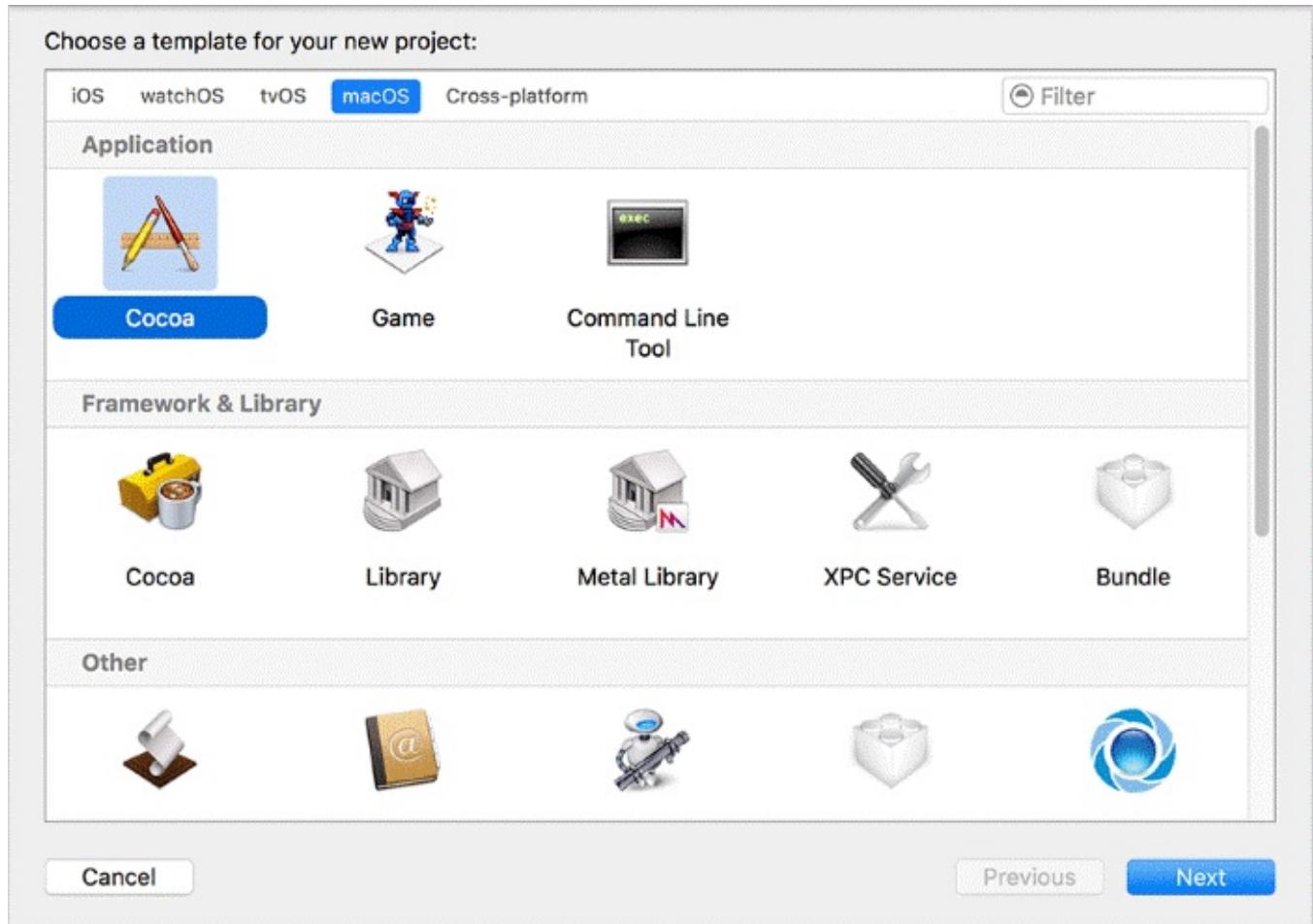


The bottom portion of each VocalTextEdit document window should look familiar: It is a simple text editor. The `Speak` button at the top allows the user to have the computer speak the contents of the text document. The `Stop` button stops any active speaking. VocalTextEdit, as a user would expect from a document-based application, also supports the normal save and open operations as well as autosaving.

Getting Started with VocalTextEdit

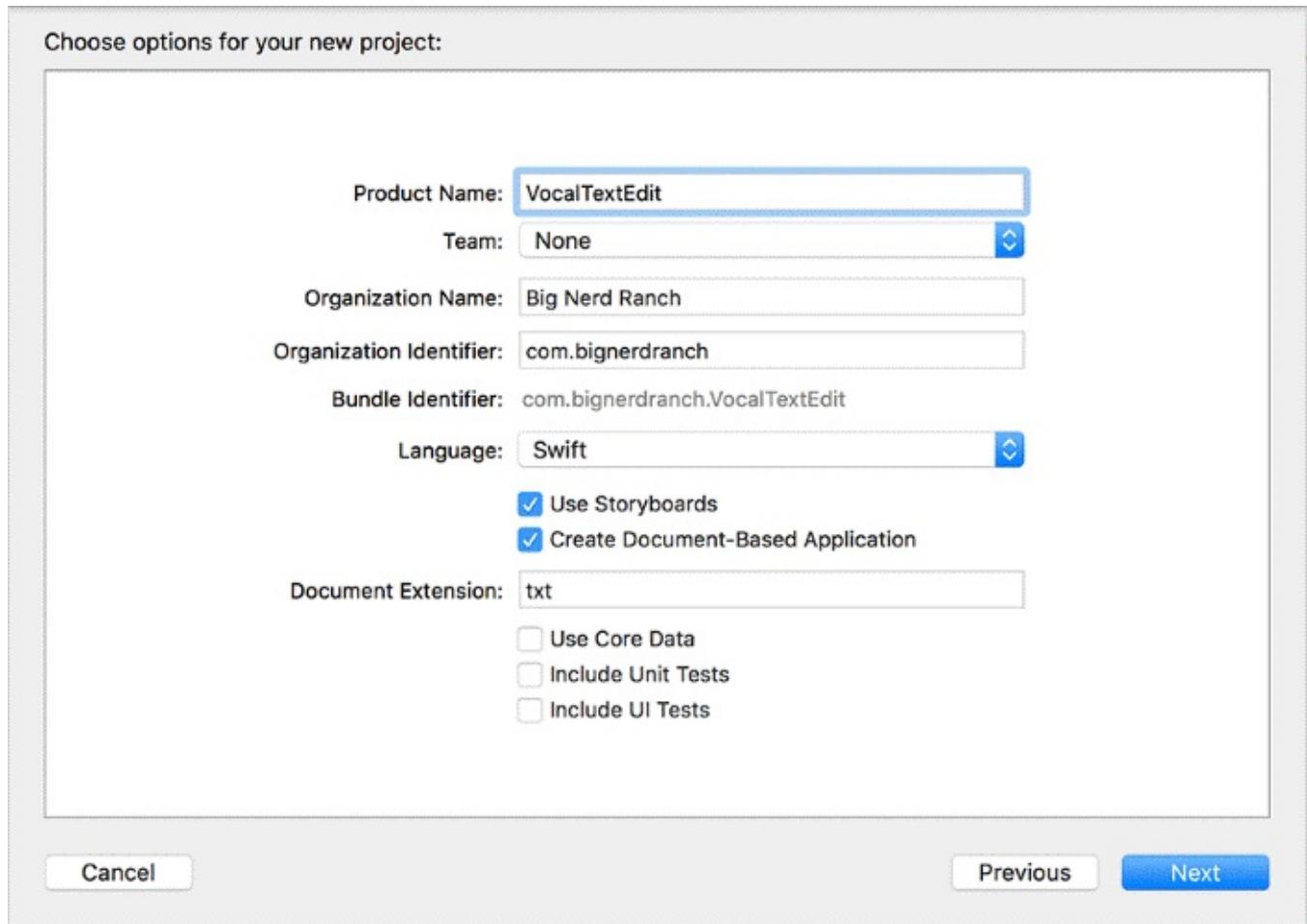
In Xcode, choose File → New → Project... (or, from the Welcome screen, Create a new Xcode project). With macOS selected at the top (not iOS), choose Cocoa from the Application section ([Figure 26.2](#)). Click Next.

Figure 26.2 Choosing the Cocoa application template



In the next window, name the project VocalTextEdit ([Figure 26.3](#)). Make sure the selected language is Swift. Check both the Use Storyboards and Create Document-Based Application boxes. Enter `.txt` as the Document Extension (VocalTextEdit is ultimately just a text editor, and it will save text files).

Figure 26.3 Configuring VocalTextEdit



Click Next and finish creating your project by saving it to the location of your choice.

Before diving into your app, let's briefly look at a core pattern that is used by both Cocoa and iOS applications.

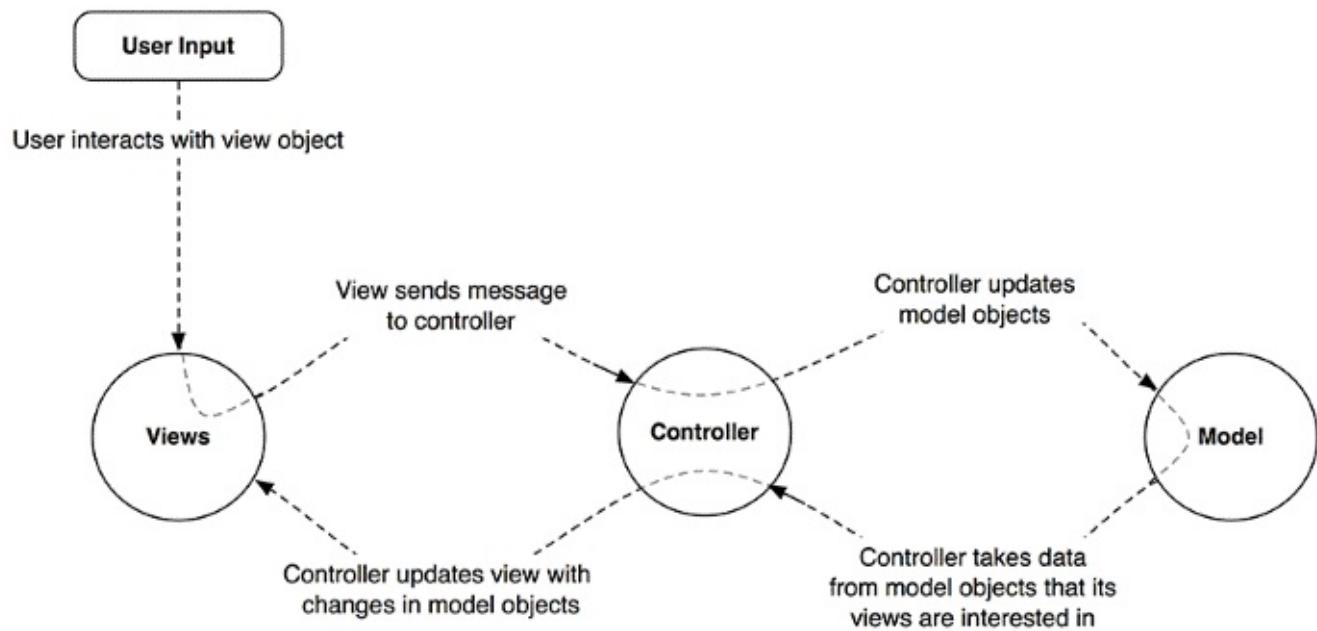
Model-View-Controller

Model-View-Controller, or MVC, is a design pattern that is based on the idea that any class you create should fall into one of three job categories: model, view, or controller. Here is a breakdown of the division of labor:

- *Models* are responsible for storing data and making it available to other objects. Models have no knowledge of the user interface or how to draw themselves on the screen. Their sole purpose is holding and managing data. For example, an application that tracks attendance for a school would define a model object for **Student**. A **Student** would “model” all of the attributes a real student would have, such as a name and a grade. Swift types like **String** and **Array** are traditional building blocks of model objects. In **VocalTextEdit**, the **Document** class will act as the model object for each of the user’s text files.
- *Views* are the visual elements of an application. Views know how to draw themselves on the screen and how to respond to user input. Views have no knowledge of the actual data that they display or how it is structured and stored. A simple rule of thumb is: If you can see it, it is a view. In **VocalTextEdit**, your view objects will include instances of **NSTextView** and **NSButton**.
- *Controllers* perform the logic necessary to connect your views and models. They process events, often from the user of the application, and relay information from your views down to your models and back again. Controllers are the real workhorses of any application, as they are the mediators between models and views. In **VocalTextEdit**, the **ViewController** class will coordinate between the appropriate **Document** and the views that are visible on the screen.

[Figure 26.4](#) shows the flow of control between objects in response to a user event, like a button click. Notice that models and views do not talk to each other directly – controllers sit squarely in the middle of everything, receiving messages from some objects and dispatching instructions to others.

Figure 26.4 MVC flow with user input



Setting Up the View Controller

The template creates a few Swift files and a file called `Main.storyboard`, which you will get to in a moment. First, open `ViewController.swift`. Begin by removing the overridden functions the template provided for you, as you will not need them for this app.

Listing 26.1 Cleaning out template code (`ViewController.swift`)

```
import Cocoa

class ViewController: NSViewController {

    override func viewDidLoad() {
        super.viewDidLoad()

        // Do any additional setup after loading the view.
    }

    override var representedObject: Any? {
        didSet {
            // Update the view, if already loaded.
        }
    }

}
```

Note that the `ViewController` class is a subclass of `NSViewController`. As the name suggests, a view controller manages the user interface and responds to actions by the user.

Add one new property and two instance methods. Some of this code will look unfamiliar; we will explain it after you have typed it in.

Listing 26.2 Adding a property and two instance methods (`ViewController.swift`)

```
import Cocoa

class ViewController: NSViewController {

    @IBOutlet var textView: NSTextView!

    @IBAction func speakButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
        print("The speak button was clicked")
    }

    @IBAction func stopButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
        print("The stop button was clicked")
    }
}
```

}

Ignore @IBOutlet and @IBAction for just a moment and examine the rest of what you typed. You declared an implicitly unwrapped optional property, textView, and two functions that take **NSButton** arguments and return nothing. The textView property will be your handle to the portion of the document window that displays editable text. On macOS, the class that Cocoa gives you to provide this functionality is **NSTextView**.

Look at the documentation for **NSTextView** by Option-clicking its name. In the pop-up, click on the Class Reference link at the bottom to bring up the full reference documentation for **NSTextView** (Figure 26.5).

Figure 26.5 **NSTextView** reference documentation

The screenshot shows the Xcode documentation interface for the **NSTextView** class. The left sidebar lists categories: Swift, Objective-C, and JavaScript. The main content area shows the **NSTextView** class under the **AppKit** category. The title is **NSTextView**. The description states: "The NSTextView class is the front-end class to the Application Kit's text system. The class draws the text managed by the back-end components and handles user events to select and modify its text. NSTextView is the principal means to obtain a text object that caters to almost all needs for displaying and managing text at the user interface level. While NSTextView is a subclass of the **NSText** class—which declares the most general Cocoa interface to the text system—NSTextView adds major features beyond the capabilities of **NSText**". To the right, there are links for Language (Swift | Objective-C), SDKs (macOS 10.10+), and sections like Overview, Symbols, and Relationships. Below the description, there's an **Overview** section with a note about using the class and links to related guides. At the bottom, there's a link to "About Delegate Methods".

NSTextView has many properties and methods, but the only one you need for this application is actually provided by **NSTextView**'s superclass, **NSText**. You can jump to **NSText**'s reference documentation by going to the Relationships section and clicking on **NSText**. **NSText** supplies the **string** property, which will allow you to get and set the contents of the text view as a **String**.

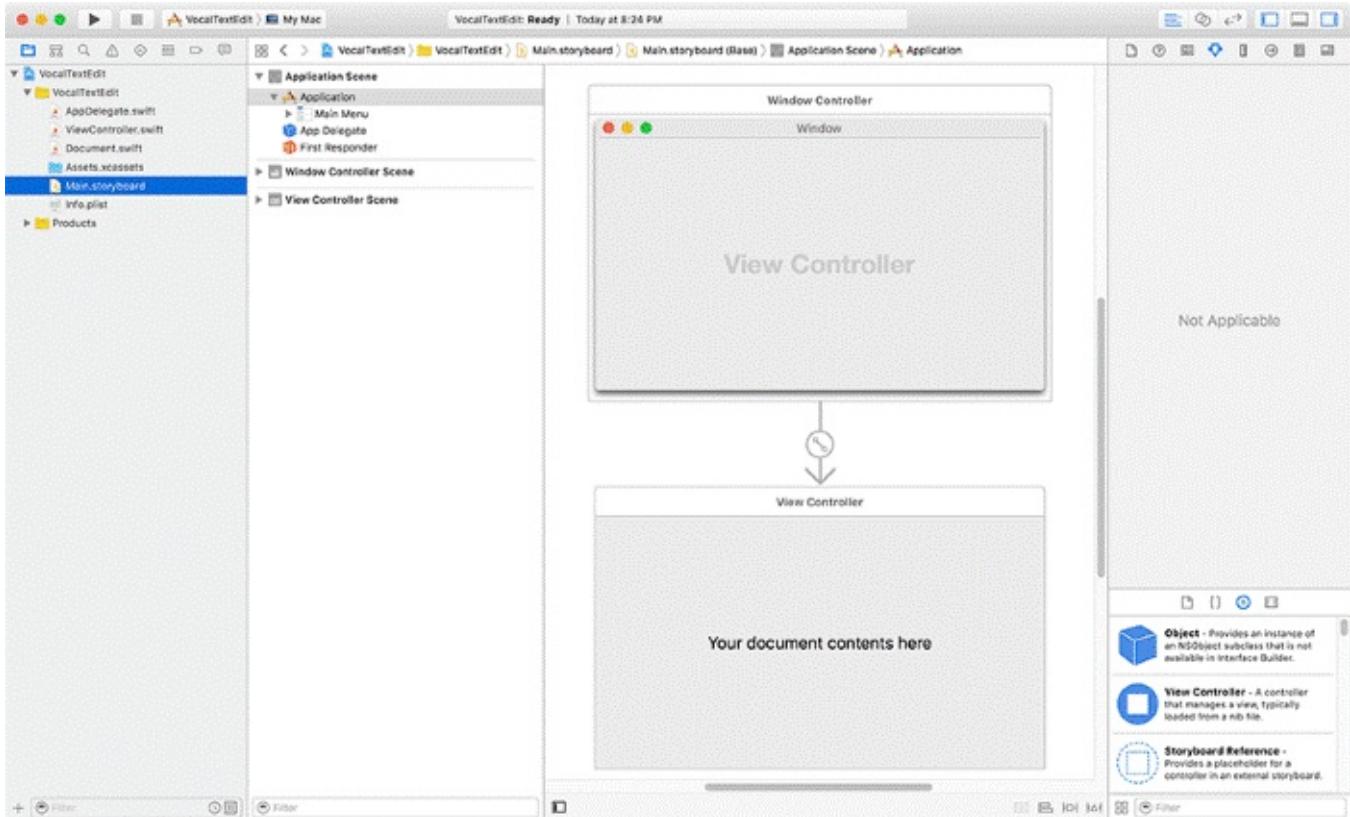
The **IB** in @IBOutlet and @IBAction stands for “Interface Builder.” A long time ago (by software standards), Apple provided two different tools for developing apps: **Xcode**, used for source code, and **Interface Builder**, used for laying out the user interface. **Interface Builder** was merged into **Xcode**, but programmers and Apple still often refer to the “user interface layout” parts of **Xcode** as **Interface Builder**.

`@IBOutlet` and `@IBAction` are *attributes*. The `@IBOutlet` and `@IBAction` here do not change the code in any meaningful way. Instead, they let Xcode know that the attributed properties and methods are involved with Interface Builder. `@IBOutlet` tells Xcode that the `textView` property can be assigned in Interface Builder. `@IBAction` advertises the method to Interface Builder as one that can be called when a user interacts with a view, such as by clicking on a button.

Setting Up Views in Interface Builder

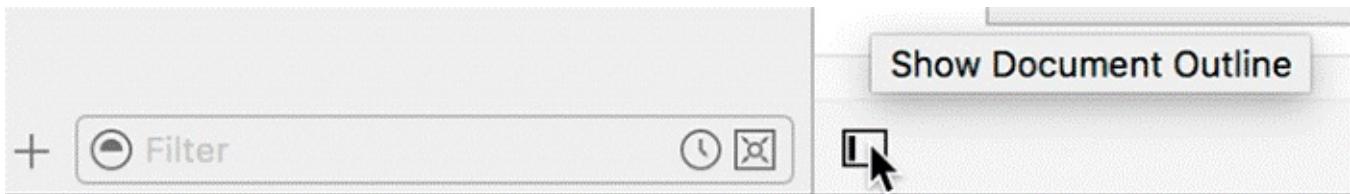
Time to set up your views. In the project navigator on the lefthand side of Xcode, select the `Main.storyboard` file. A storyboard file allows you to visually lay out the windows and views of your application using Interface Builder. Large applications may use many storyboards. You are only going to use `Main.storyboard` for `VocalTextEdit`. `Main.storyboard` starts out looking like the screen shown in [Figure 26.6](#).

Figure 26.6 Initial Main.storyboard contents



The pane just to the left of the user interface in [Figure 26.6](#) is the *document outline*. The document outline presents a tree showing how each object contains its children. If the document outline is not visible, click the Show Document Outline button at the bottom of the storyboard ([Figure 26.7](#)).

Figure 26.7 Show the document outline



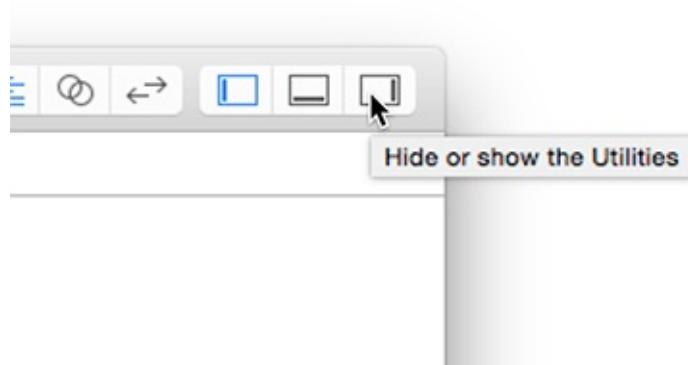
There are currently three top-level *scenes* in `Main.storyboard`. From top to bottom, you are seeing the application's main menu, a window controller scene, and a view controller scene. You will only be working with the view controller scene.

Right now, the view controller scene contains a single line of text contained in an **NSTextField**. You do not need that, so remove it by clicking on the `Your document contents here`

text and pressing Delete on your keyboard.

Now that you have prepared a blank canvas for your application, you are going to lay out the views for VocalTextEdit. If the utilities area is not already visible, click the button in the top-right corner of Xcode to make it visible, as shown in [Figure 26.8](#).

Figure 26.8 Showing Xcode's utilities



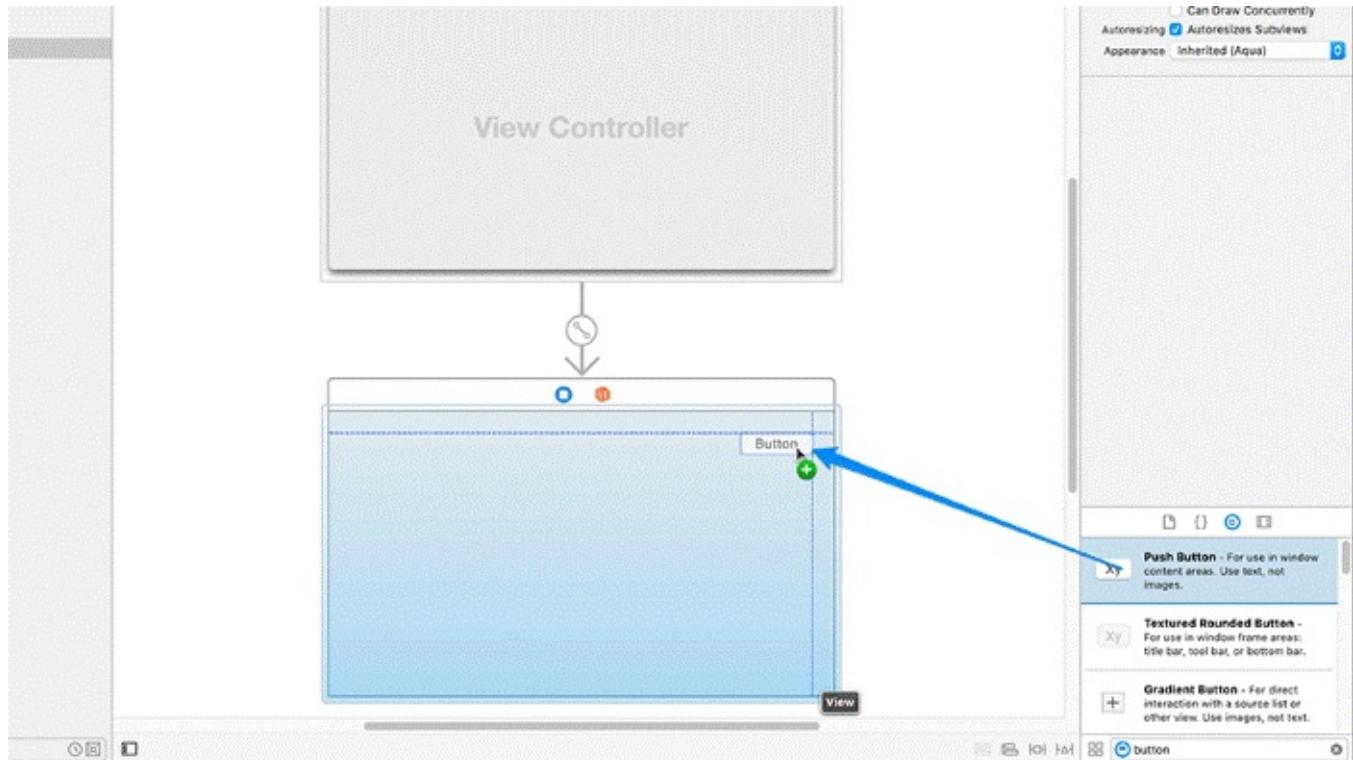
The bottom half of the utilities area is the *library*. The library is divided into tabs, identified by icons. Select the icon to reveal the *object library*. The object library presents the different object types that you can drag and drop on the layout grid to build your user interface.

Adding the Speak and Stop buttons

At the bottom of the object library is a search field. Search for “button.” The item at the top of the object library, Push Button, represents an instance of the **NSButton** class.

To add an instance of a push button to your view controller’s user interface, drag the button from the object library onto the view controller scene. As you drag the button toward the top-right corner of the view, you will see dashed blue lines and the button will snap into place, as shown in [Figure 26.9](#). These dashed lines are called guides and are from Apple’s Human Interface Guidelines, or HIGs. HIGs represent Apple’s standards for designing user interfaces. There are HIGs for all of Apple’s platforms, and you can find them in the developer documentation.

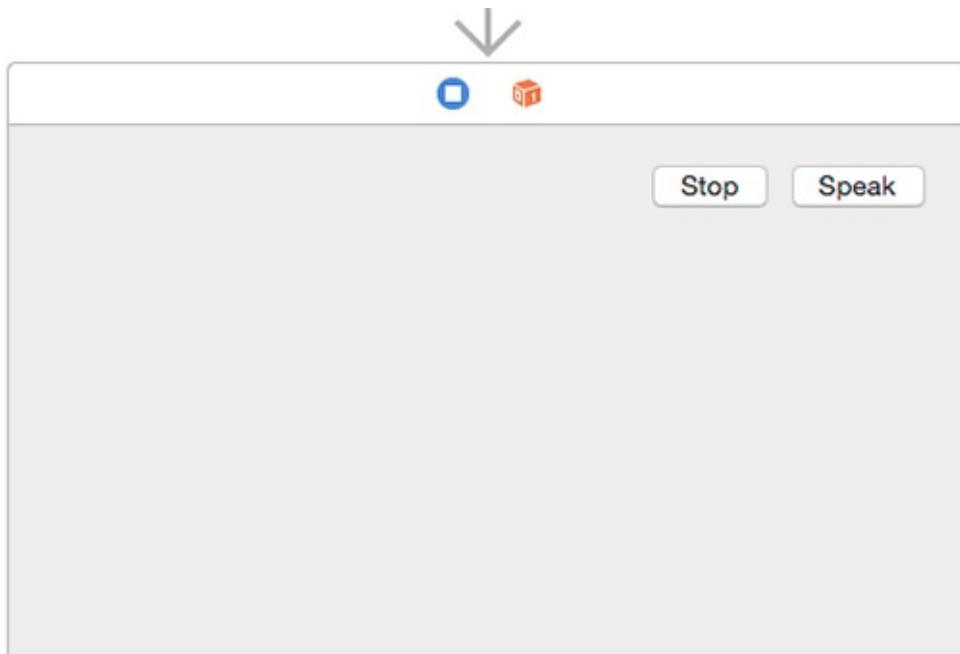
Figure 26.9 Dragging from object library to storyboard



Now that the button is in the view controller scene, you need to change its title. Double-click on the button's text and type in **Speak**. Because “Speak” is slightly shorter than “Button,” this may nudge the button out of place. Drag it back into the corner until it snaps back to the dashed blue lines. (We will cover a way to fix this a little later in the chapter.)

VocalTextEdit needs both a `Speak` and a `Stop` button. Drag another push button onto your view controller. Rename this second button `Stop` and drag it until it snaps into place just to the left of the `Speak` button. Your view controller layout should look like [Figure 26.10](#).

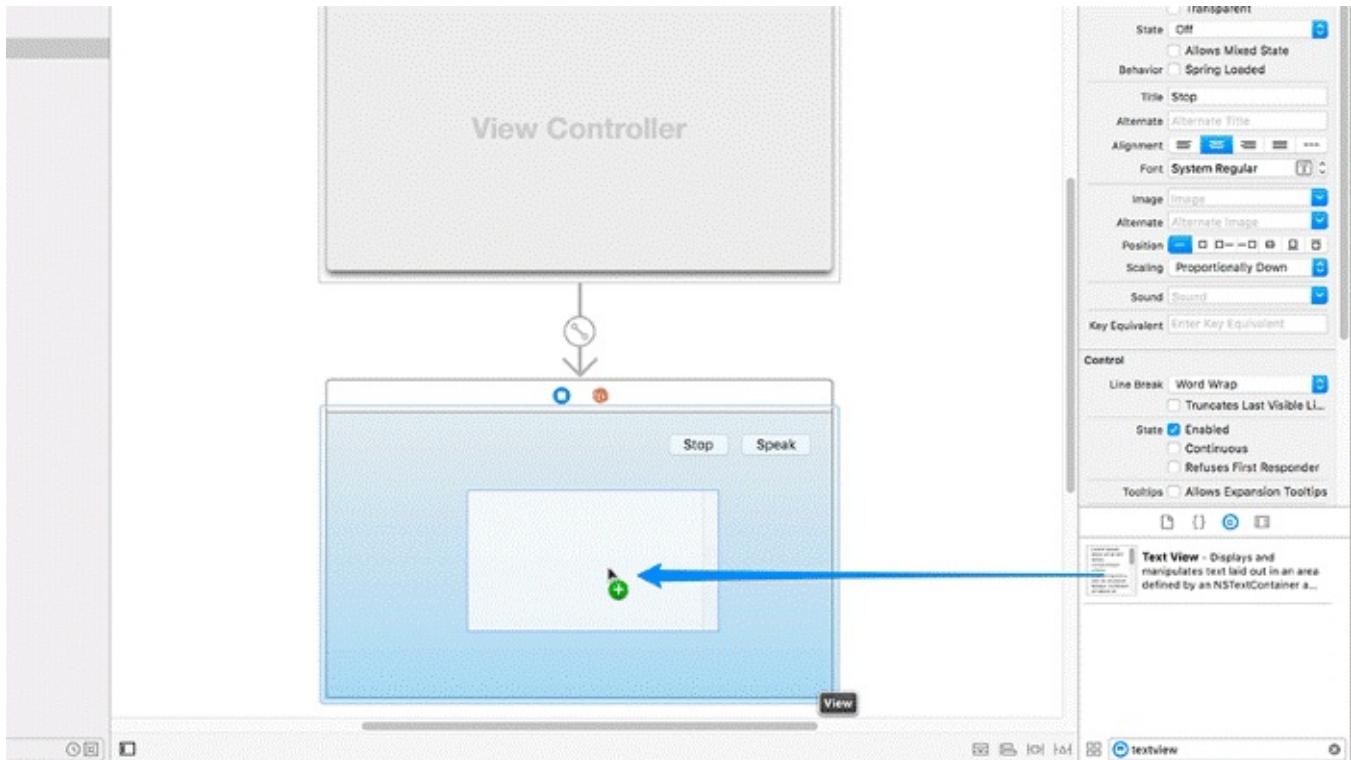
Figure 26.10 VocalTextEdit layout: two buttons



Adding the text view

VocalTextEdit is predominantly a text editor, so you need to add a place for the user to enter text. Back in the search field for the object library, type in “textview.” Drag a text view object onto your view controller layout and place it in the middle of the empty area below the buttons, as in [Figure 26.11](#).

Figure 26.11 VocalTextEdit layout: adding a text view



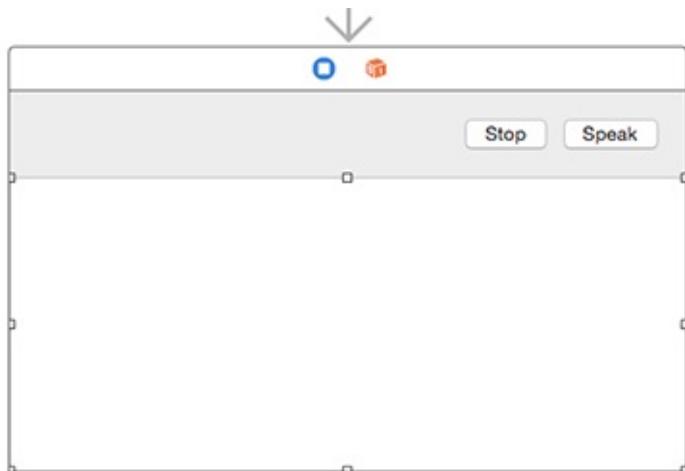
In addition to being able to select items by clicking on them in the layout, you can select them by clicking them in the document outline. Select the `Bordered Scroll View - Text View` item in the document outline, as shown in [Figure 26.12](#).

Figure 26.12 Selecting a text view in the document outline



Notice that the text view is now selected both in the document outline (where it is highlighted in blue) and in the view controller scene (where it has square grab-points at its corners and on each side). Use the squares around the edges of the text view in the layout to resize it. Drag the left, right, and bottom edges until they are even with the view controller's edges, and drag the top until it snaps into place beneath the two buttons you have already added. At this point, your layout should look like [Figure 26.13](#).

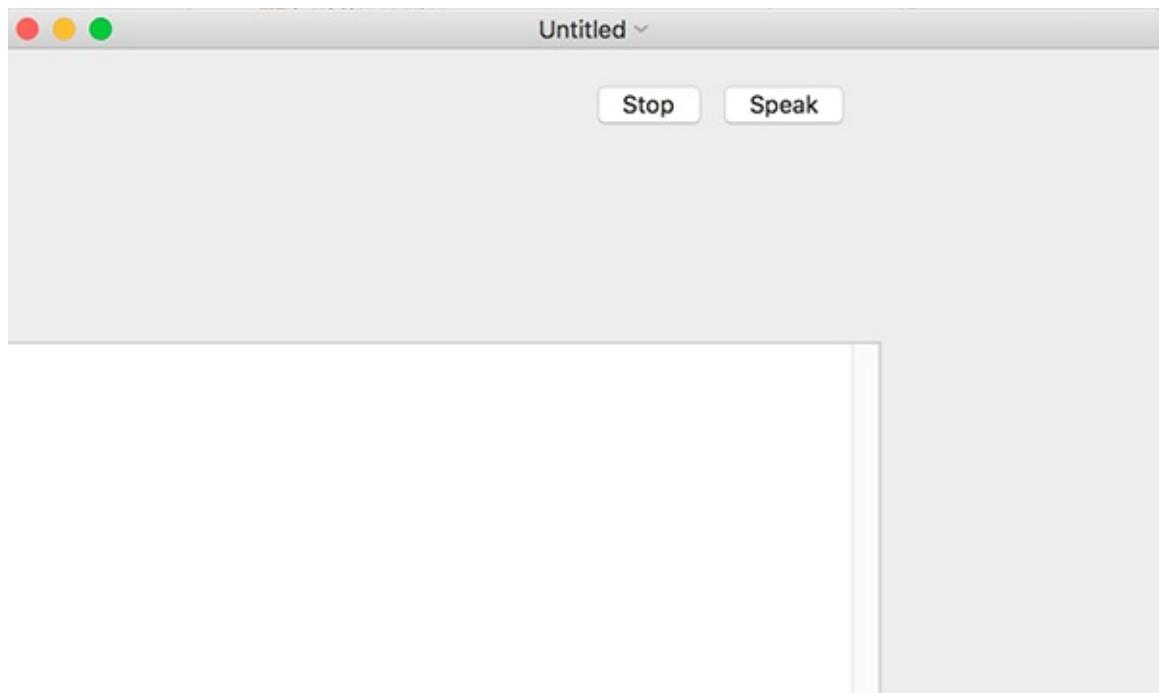
Figure 26.13 VocalTextEdit: layout



Build and run your app. After VocalTextEdit starts, you can create documents using Command-N (or File → New). You can also type into the text view. Unsurprisingly, the Speak and Stop buttons do nothing. Also, you may see error pop-ups about failures to autosave. You will fix both of these problems by the end of this chapter.

There is another problem that is not obvious. Try resizing your document window to give yourself more room to see your document. You may be surprised to find that your interface does not behave well ([Figure 26.14](#)).

Figure 26.14 Resizing failure



This resizing (mis)behavior is clearly undesirable. You will fix it next.

Auto Layout

Apple provides a system called Auto Layout that allows you to set up constraints that define how views interact with each other during layout calculations. Full coverage of Auto Layout is outside the scope of this book, but you can set up some basic constraints that will allow you to get reasonable behavior when you resize a VocalTextEdit document.

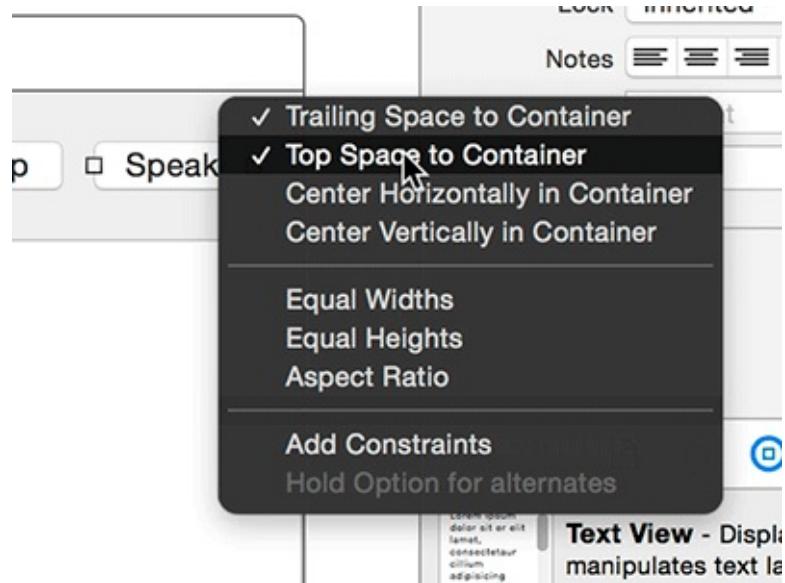
Begin by creating constraints that will force the Speak button to stay in the top-right corner of the document window. Hold down the Control key, click on the Speak button, and drag to the upper right until the view controller's view is highlighted, as in [Figure 26.15](#). (This is called “Control-dragging.”)

Figure 26.15 Auto Layout: Speak



When you let go of the mouse, a contextual menu will pop up. You want to constrain the right and top edges of the button, so hold down the Shift key and click on both Trailing Space to Container and Top Space to Container ([Figure 26.16](#)). (The “trailing edge” of a view is its right side in left-to-right languages like English and its left side in right-to-left languages like Hebrew. The “leading” edge is the opposite one.)

Figure 26.16 Auto Layout: Speak button constraints

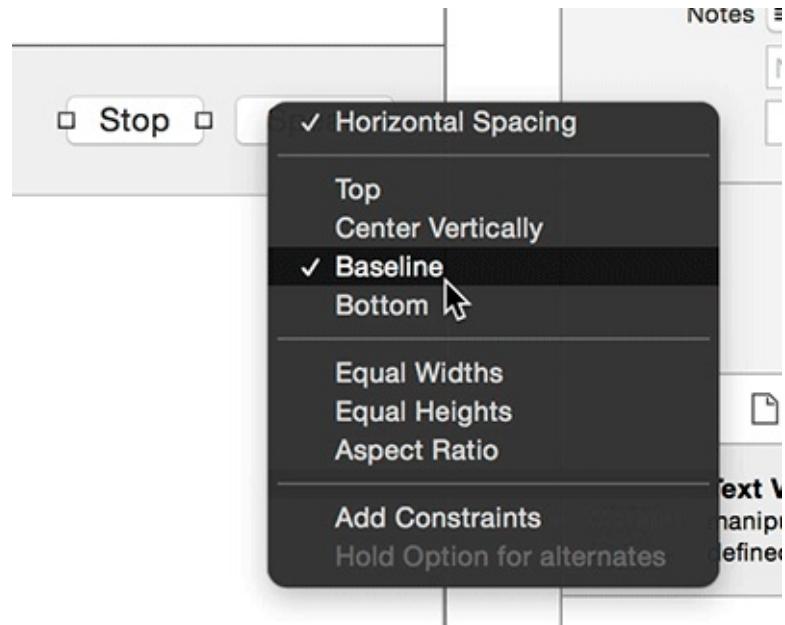


Press Return, and you will see a blue *I-beam* line connecting the top of the Speak button to the top of the view controller's view and another connecting the right edges. Run VocalTextEdit again and try resizing the window. You will see the Speak button stay in the correct place – the top-right corner – as you resize the window.

The Stop button and the text view still do not behave correctly; you need to add constraints to them. You could add the same kinds of constraints to the Stop button as you did to the Speak button, pinning its top and right edges to the view controller's view. But that does not express the real layout relationship. You do not really care where the Stop button is relative to the view controller's view. What you want is for it to always be just to the left of the Speak button.

To create constraints between the Stop and Speak buttons, Control-drag from the Stop button to the Speak button. When the pop-up menu appears, hold down Shift and select both Horizontal Spacing and Baseline ([Figure 26.17](#)), then press Return.

Figure 26.17 Auto Layout: Stop button constraints



The horizontal spacing constraint ensures that the horizontal distance between the buttons

stays fixed. The baseline constraint ensures that the two buttons are vertically aligned, using the baseline of the text within the buttons. Run VocalTextEdit again, resize the window, and confirm that the Stop button always stays in the correct place.

Now for the text view. You want the text view to stay the same size as the window, minus the space at the top for the two buttons. Remember how you can select items in the document outline? You can also create constraints in the document outline. Control-drag from Bordered Scroll View - Text View to its parent, View, as shown in [Figure 26.18](#).

Figure 26.18 Auto Layout: text view to view controller view



In the pop-up menu, hold down Shift and select three constraints: Leading Space to Container, Trailing Space to Container, and Bottom Space to Container. These constraints will pin the left, right, and bottom edges to always stick to the window's edges.

You still need to constrain the top edge. Back in the layout area, Control-drag from the text view to the Speak button. Select Vertical Spacing from the pop-up. This will maintain the spacing between the button and the text view.

Run VocalTextEdit again and resize your window. Now all of the interface elements properly resize with the window.

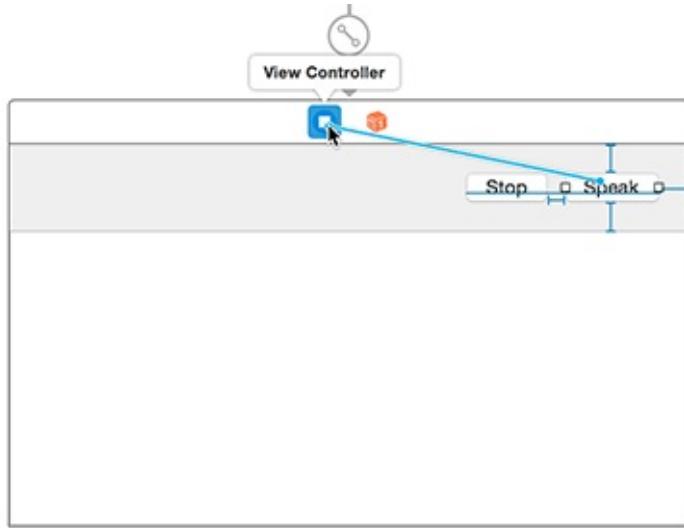
Making Connections

Creating views and laying out your user interface is not the only purpose of Interface Builder. You can also use Interface Builder to wire up connections between your views and your Swift code.

Setting target-action pairs for VocalTextEdit's buttons

When you run your application and `Main.storyboard` is loaded, the Cocoa runtime will create an instance of your **ViewController** class, configure its views, and set up any outlets and actions you have configured. For `VocalTextEdit`, you want the `speakButtonClicked(_)` method to be called on the instance of **ViewController** that is managing the current document. Control-drag from the `Speak` button to the icon representing the **ViewController**, as in [Figure 26.19](#).

Figure 26.19 Connecting the Speak button



You will see a pop-up menu when you let go of the mouse. This menu shows you all the possible actions to take when the `Speak` button is clicked. Select the `speakButtonClicked(_)` action from the Received Actions section of the pop-up.

You just created a *target-action pair*. A target-action pair associates an action (e.g., a method) to be called on a target (e.g., an instance of some type), usually in response to an action by a user (e.g., clicking on a button). When the user clicks on the `Speak` button, the `speakButtonClicked(_)` method will be called on your **ViewController**.

Repeat the process to create a target-action pair for the `Stop` button. Control-drag from the `Stop` button to the **ViewController** icon. Select the `stopButtonClicked(_)` action from the pop-up menu.

Build and run the application. Try clicking on the buttons. Back in Xcode, you will see log messages being printed whenever you click either button. They are the result of the `print()`

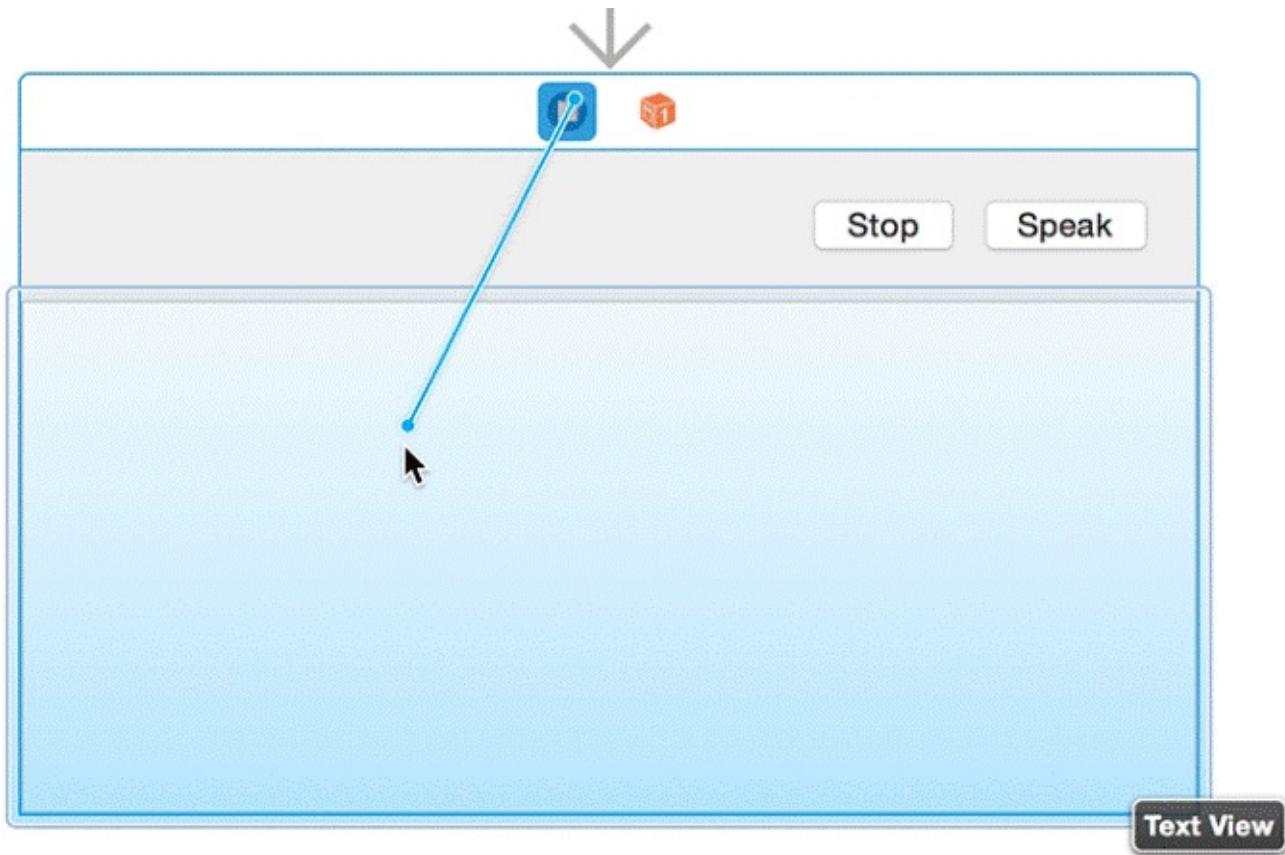
calls you put into the **speakButtonClicked(_:)** and **stopButtonClicked(_:)** methods back at the beginning of this chapter.

Connecting the text view outlet

You have now connected both buttons, and your methods are called whenever the user clicks them. However, you still cannot get the text the user has entered into the text view. To do that, you need to connect the `@IBOutlet` you created for the text view.

To connect an outlet, Control-drag from the view controller icon down to the text view, as shown in [Figure 26.20](#). Note that this is the opposite of how you connected the button actions.

Figure 26.20 Connecting the text view outlet



From the pop-up that appears, select `textView`, which matches the name of the `@IBOutlet` property you created.

You can build and run your application now, but nothing will behave any differently. Your `@IBActions` fire whenever the user clicks a button, but connecting an `@IBOutlet` does not by itself affect your program. Now that you have an outlet to the text view, open `ViewController.swift` and modify your **speakButtonClicked(_:)** method to log the current contents of the text view.

Listing 26.3 Making the Speak button log the contents of the text view
(`ViewController.swift`)

```
import Cocoa
```

```
class ViewController: NSViewController {  
  
    @IBOutlet var textView: NSTextView!  
  
    @IBAction func speakButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {  
        print("The speak button was clicked" "I should speak \(t  
    }  
  
    @IBAction func stopButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {  
        print("The stop button was clicked")  
    }  
}
```

Build and run your application. Type some text into the text view and click the `Speak` button. The text you typed is logged via your `print()` call, with a note that the `String` property of an `NSTextView` is optional. For example, if you type “Hello, world!” into the `NSTextView`, you will see:

I should speak Optional("Hello, world!")

(If you pressed Return after typing “Hello, world!” you will also see `\n` in the console. This represents the newline, or line break.)

Making VocalTextEdit ... Vocal

Logging the text is nice, but the real goal of VocalTextEdit is that the computer will read your users' text to them. Cocoa provides a class for synthesizing speech, suitably named **NSSpeechSynthesizer**. Begin by adding a property to your **ViewController** that is an instance of **NSSpeechSynthesizer**.

Listing 26.4 Adding an instance of NSSpeechSynthesizer (ViewController.swift)

```
import Cocoa

class ViewController: NSViewController {

    let speechSynthesizer = NSSpeechSynthesizer()

    @IBOutlet var textView: NSTextView!

    @IBAction func speakButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
        print("I should speak \(textView.string)")
    }

    @IBAction func stopButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
        print("The stop button was clicked")
    }
}
```

The default initializer of **NSSpeechSynthesizer** creates a speech synthesizer that uses a default voice. Now that you have a speech synthesizer, modify your **speakButtonClicked(_ :)** method to actually synthesize the contents of **textView**. Use **NSSpeechSynthesizer**'s method **startSpeaking(_ :)**, which expects a **String**.

Listing 26.5 Activating the speech synthesizer (ViewController.swift)

```
import Cocoa

class ViewController: NSViewController {

    let speechSynthesizer = NSSpeechSynthesizer()

    @IBOutlet var textView: NSTextView!

    @IBAction func speakButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
        print("I should speak \(textView.string)")
        if let contents = textView.string {
            speechSynthesizer.startSpeaking(contents)
        } else {
    }
```

```

        speechSynthesizer.startSpeaking("The document is empty")
    }
}

@IBAction func stopButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
    print("The stop button was clicked")
}
}

```

You use optional binding to get the contents of the text view, if there are any, and then speak them. If `textView.string` is `nil`, `speechSynthesizer` will speak the sentence "The document is empty."

Build and run your application. Type in some text – perhaps "Hello, world!" – and click the `Speak` button. You should hear your computer read your text back to you! (Make sure your sound is not muted.)

Now try deleting all the text and clicking `Speak`. Nothing happens. Why doesn't the computer synthesize "The document is empty"?

There are actually two different ways the contents of a text view can be "empty." The `string` property could be `nil`, which would be handled by the code you already wrote. The other possibility is that the `string` property is not `nil`, but the **String** it contains is "", the empty string. Modify `speakButtonClicked(_ :)` to handle this case.

Listing 26.6 Handling both types of empty string (`ViewController.swift`)

```

...
@IBAction func speakButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
    if let contents = textView.string, !contents.isEmpty {
        speechSynthesizer.startSpeaking(contents)
    } else {
        speechSynthesizer.startSpeaking("The document is empty")
    }
}
...

```

Build and run the application again. Leaving the text view empty, click the `Speak` button. Now you should hear the synthesized comment that the document is empty.

Now that `VocalTextEdit` can read your documents back to you, it would be nice to be able to stop the speaking. You already have a `Stop` button. The only thing you have to do is change the `stopButtonClicked(_ :)` method to actually do something instead of calling `print()`. `NSSpeechSynthesizer` provides a convenient method to do exactly what you want.

Listing 26.7 Stop! (`ViewController.swift`)

```

...
@IBAction func stopButtonClicked(_ sender: NSButton) {
    print("The stop button was clicked")
}

```

```
    speechSynthesizer.stopSpeaking()  
}  
...
```

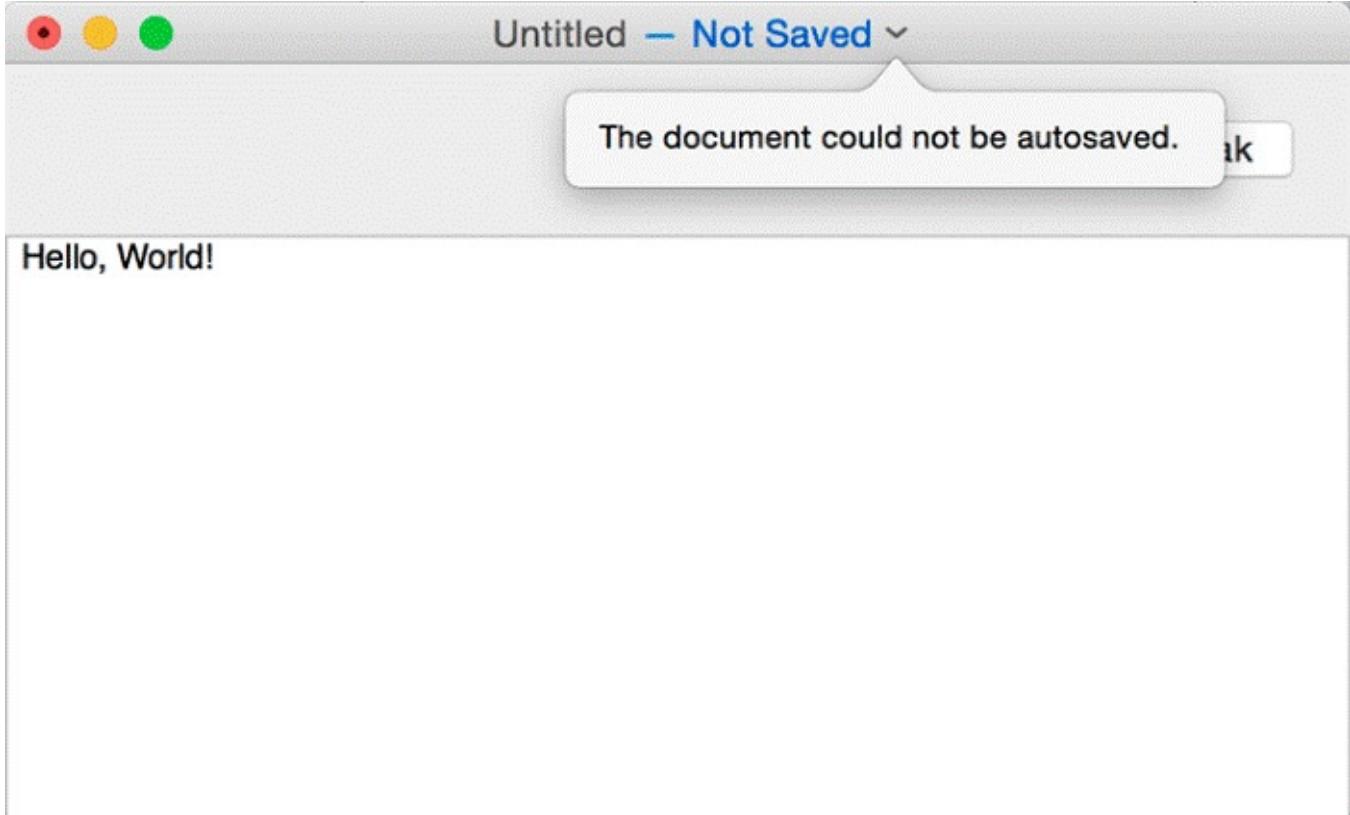
Now, if `VocalTextEdit` is speaking, the `Stop` button will immediately stop the vocalization. There is no harm in calling `speechSynthesizer.stopSpeaking()` when `VocalTextEdit` is not speaking, so you do not need to guard against that possibility.

Build and run `VocalTextEdit`. Type some text – something long enough that it will take a while for the computer to vocalize it – and click the `Speak` button. Then, while the text is being read, click the `Stop` button. The vocalization should stop immediately.

Saving and Loading Documents

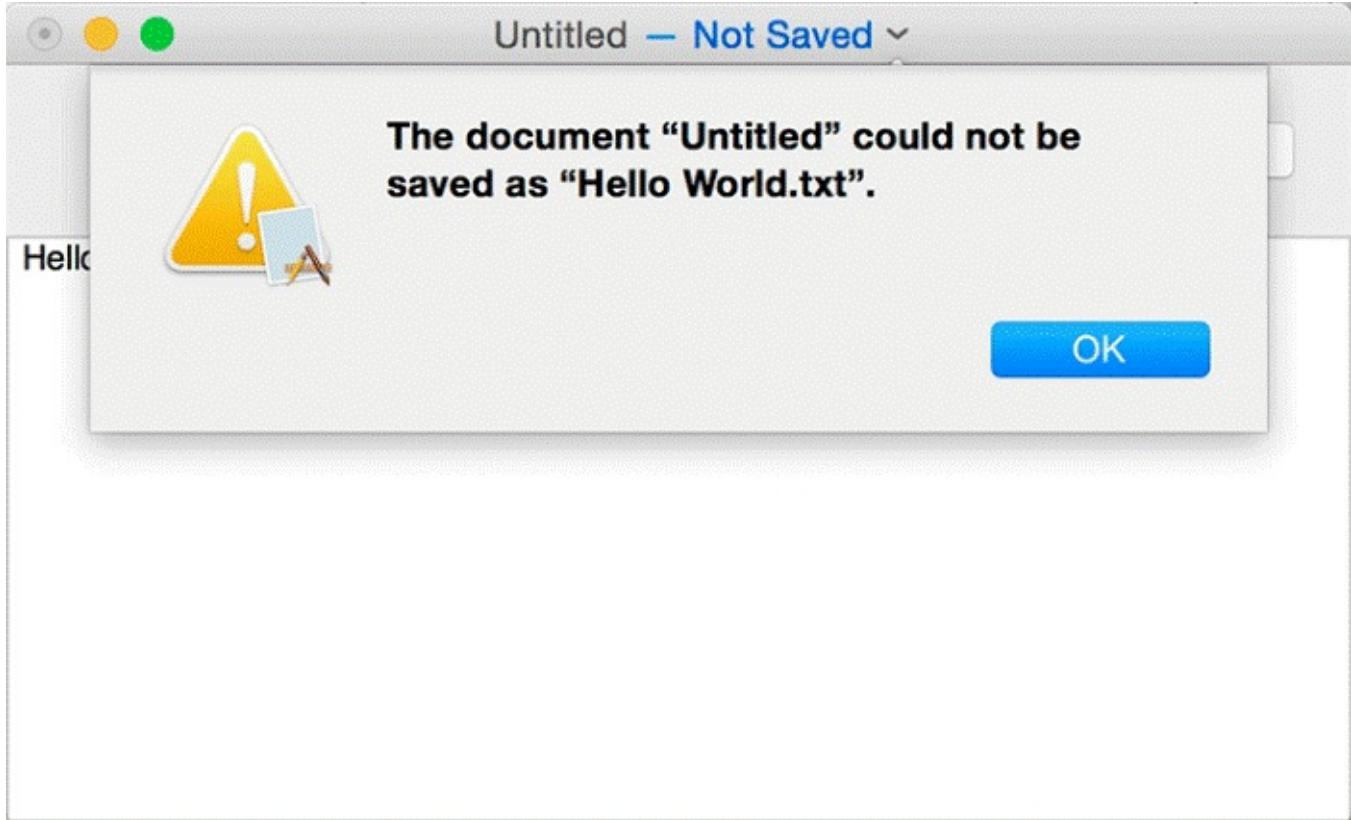
VocalTextEdit is starting to come together! You can enter text and hear it spoken back to you. Unfortunately, there is a pretty major feature missing: The files cannot be saved. You might have seen a notification that your documents cannot be autosaved, as shown in [Figure 26.21](#).

Figure 26.21 VocalTextEdit autosave failure



Even worse, if you try to save a document, you get a pretty nasty error message, as shown in [Figure 26.22](#).

Figure 26.22 VocalTextEdit save failure



This might be a little surprising, because `VocalTextEdit` just works with text documents. The problem is that although you and your users know `VocalTextEdit` is working with text documents, Cocoa does not know that. You have to fill in some methods that allow Cocoa to save and load your documents.

To begin, open up `Document.swift` and delete some of the boilerplate that you do not need.

Listing 26.8 Clearing the decks (`Document.swift`)

```
import Cocoa

class Document: NSDocument {

    override init() {
        super.init()
        // Add your subclass-specific initialization here.
    }

    override class func autosavesInPlace() -> Bool {
        return true
    }

    override func makeWindowControllers() {
        // Returns the Storyboard that contains your Document wi
        let storyboard = UIStoryboard(name: "Main", bundle: nil)
```

```

        let windowController =
            storyboard.instantiateController(
               (withIdentifier: "Document Window Controller"
            ) as! NSWindowController

            self.addWindowController(windowController)
    }

override func data(ofType typeName: String) throws -> Data {
    // Insert code here to write your document to data of th
    throw NSError(domain: NSOSStatusErrorDomain, code: unimp
}

override func read(from data: Data, ofType typeName: String)
    // Insert code here to read your document
    // from the given data of the specified type. ....
    throw NSError(domain: NSOSStatusErrorDomain, code: unimp
}
}

```

Let's walk through the remaining methods.

autosavesInPlace() is a class-level method on **NSDocument**. If **autosavesInPlace()** returns true, that means the document class supports autosaving files right where they are whenever the user makes changes. The default implementation returns false, so the Xcode template helpfully inserts an override to return true, and it is up to you to make sure autosaving works correctly. (This will not be difficult for `VocalTextEdit`.)

The next method, **makeWindowControllers()**, is called when a new document is created or an old document is opened and is responsible for setting up the **NSWindowController** that will manage the document's window. Because you are using a storyboard, setting up the window controller is pretty easy: It needs to be loaded from the storyboard (the first two lines) and then added to the document (the final line).

There is one feature in **makeWindowControllers()**'s implementation that you have not seen before. The `as!` operator is one of Swift's *type-casting* operators.

Type casting

Type casting allows you to tell the compiler, “This object, which you think is of type X, is actually of type Y.” In pure Swift code, type casting should usually be avoided, as other tools like inheritance and generics can often solve the same problems. However, type casting comes up quite frequently when dealing with libraries that were written in Objective-C.

The `as!` operator acts similarly to unwrapping an optional. If you try to type cast to a type that does not match the actual type, you will get a trap. (If you do not remember what a trap is,

refer back to [Chapter 20](#).) There are two other variants of this type-casting operator: as? attempts to perform a type cast and returns nil if the type you request does not match the actual type, and as performs type casts that the Swift compiler can guarantee will succeed, such as from **NSString** to **String**.

Option-click on the **instantiateController(withIdentifier:)** method call in the second line of **makeWindowControllers()**'s implementation. Note that its return type is **Any**. **Any** is a Swift protocol that has no methods or properties: It represents any possible type. **instantiateController(withIdentifier:)** returns an **Any** because storyboards can contain controllers of many different types. To use the returned controller, you need to cast it to its actual type: **NSWindowController**. When you create a storyboard-based application, Xcode assigns the Document Window Controller identifier to the **NSWindowController** it creates, and it inserts the same identifier for you on this line.

Saving documents

The final two methods in **Document.swift** support saving and loading. The **data(ofType:)** method is called whenever a document needs to be saved. It typically returns an instance of **Data**. You can think of **Data** as something akin to an array of bytes. If you are able to save the document, **data(ofType:)** returns the bytes that should be saved. If you cannot save the document for any reason, it throws an error.

The associated method to implement loading a document is **read(from:ofType:)**. Its first parameter is an instance of **Data**, and **read(from:ofType:)** loads the document from those bytes. If the loading is unsuccessful, it throws an error.

At the moment, both **data(ofType:)** and **read(from:ofType:)** always fail, which explains why you see autosave failures. Note that the project has comments in these methods indicating that you will need to do something, like // Insert code here to write your document to data of the specified type. You are going to fix these methods as indicated in the comments.

Begin by implementing **data(ofType:)** to be able to save VocalTextEdit's text files. To save the document, you need to convert the contents of the text view into an instance of **Data**. The first step is to get the **ViewController** associated with this **Document**. Note that in the code listings below, the boilerplate comments that Xcode inserted have been truncated to save a few trees.

Listing 26.9 Getting the associated ViewController (Document.swift**)**

```
...
override func data(ofType typeName: String) throws -> Data {
    // Insert code here to write your document to data of the
    // throw NSError(domain: NSOSStatusErrorDomain, code: unimpE
    let windowController = windowControllers[0]
    let viewController = windowController.contentViewControll
```

```
}
```

```
...
```

data(ofType:) is not yet complete, and the compiler is currently complaining that you do not return a value. Before fixing this, examine what you have added so far.

In general, an **NSDocument** may have multiple window controllers. In this case, you only created one (in **makeWindowControllers()**), so **windowControllers[0]** gives you that sole window controller.

An **NSWindowController** may or may not have a view controller for its content – the Mac platform has had window controllers much longer than it has had view controllers. Option-click on **contentViewController** and you will see that its type is

NSViewController?. The window controller may not have a content view controller, in which case it is **nil**. If **windowController** does have a content view controller, the compiler knows it will be an **NSViewController** or some subclass of **NSViewController**.

In this application, you only have one **ViewController** type, but in a large application, you might have many. You used the **as!** type casting operator to tell the compiler, “I know that the view controller for **Document**’s window controllers are of type **ViewController**.”

Now that you have a handle to the view controller, you can implement the rest of **data(ofType:)**.

Listing 26.10 Implementing `data(ofType:)` for saving (`Document.swift`)

```
import Cocoa
```

```
class Document: NSDocument {
    enum Error: Swift.Error, LocalizedError {
        case UTF8Encoding

        var failureReason: String? {
            switch self {
                case .UTF8Encoding: return "File cannot be encoded in UTF-8"
            }
        }
    }
    ...
    override func data(ofType typeName: String) throws -> Data {
        let windowController = windowControllers[0]
        let viewController = windowController.contentViewController
        let contents = viewController.textView.string ?? ""

        guard let data = contents.data(using: .utf8) else {
            throw Document.Error.UTF8Encoding
        }
    }
}
```

```
    return data
}
...
}
```

Let's break this down bit by bit.

```
enum Error: Swift.Error, LocalizedError {
    case UTF8Encoding

    var failureReason: String? {
        switch self {
        case .UTF8Encoding: return "File cannot be encoded i
        }
    }
}
```

First, you declare an error type that conforms to **Swift.Error** just like you did in [Chapter 20](#). You also made it conform to the **LocalizedError** protocol.

LocalizedError gives you a way to present more user-friendly error messages. (In a real-world application, the string you return for **failureReason** should be localized into different languages, but that is outside the scope of this book.) Cocoa will take an error's **failureReason** and include it in the alert it shows the user if saving their file fails.

```
let contents = viewController.textView.string ?? ""
```

Next, you attempt to get the contents of the text view via the **string** property, the same way you did inside **ViewController** to get the text to synthesize. If **String** is **nil**, you use the nil-coalescing operator that you saw in [Chapter 8](#) to use a default of "", the empty string.

```
guard let data = contents.data(using: .utf8) else {
    throw Document.Error.UTF8Encoding
}

return data
```

Finally, you use **data(using:)** on a string to attempt to convert **contents** into an instance of **Data**. The **data(using:)** method requires you to specify a string encoding – that is, how to convert the text inside **contents** into bytes. **.utf8** is one of the cases of the **String.Encoding** enum, specifying that the string should be encoded using UTF-8, a common Unicode encoding. If the conversion fails, you throw the error case you defined above. If the conversion succeeds, you return the newly created **data**.

Build and run your application. Type some text into a document, then save it. Success! Well, almost. Close the document you saved, and try to open it via **File → Open**.

No dice. You can save documents, but you still need to implement **read(from:ofType:)** to load them.

Loading documents

When you saved the document, you got the contents from the view controller's text view, converted the string to **Data**, and returned the data. To load a document, it would make sense to perform the inverse: You are given an instance of **Data**, so you need to convert it to a string and then put the contents into the view controller's text view. Try the following, which might look correct at first glance but actually has a major problem.

Listing 26.11 Loading a document – the wrong way (**Document.swift**)

```
import Cocoa

class Document: NSDocument {
    enum Error: Swift.Error, LocalizedError {
        case UTF8Encoding
        case UTF8Decoding

        var failureReason: String? {
            switch self {
                case .UTF8Encoding: return "File cannot be encoded i
                case .UTF8Decoding: return "File is not valid UTF-8.'
            }
        }
    }

    ...
    override func read(from data: Data, ofType typeName: String) {
        // Insert code here to read your document
        // from the given data of the specified type...
        throw NSError(domain: NSOSStatusErrorDomain, code: unimpE
        guard let contents = String(data: data, encoding: .utf8)
            throw Document.Error.UTF8Decoding
        }

        // WARNING: BIG PROBLEM HERE
        let windowController = windowControllers[0]
        let viewController = windowController.contentViewControll
            as! ViewController
        viewController.textView.string = contents
    }
}
```

Build and run your application. Close all the windows, then try to open the document you saved a few minutes ago. Uh-oh: The document does not open – your application appears to do nothing. If you look in Xcode's console, you will see that you got a very long error

message beginning with:

index 0 beyond bounds for empty NSArray

This error is saying that when you tried to get element 0 from the **windowControllers** array, it did not exist. Why doesn't it exist? Cocoa calls **read(from ofType:)** before it creates the window and its associated controllers, so the document does not yet have a window controller or a view controller.

So that implementation, while logical on the surface, does not work. Instead, you can save off the string and then update the view controller's contents once it is loaded from the storyboard. Start by creating a new property to hold the contents that will be filled in when the view controller is available.

Listing 26.12 Loading a document a better way – creating a **contents property (Document.swift)**

```
import Cocoa

class Document: NSDocument {
    ...
    var contents: String = ""

    override class func autosavesInPlace() -> Bool {
        return true
    }
    ...
}
```

You can default the **contents** to an empty string, because that is the correct value for brand-new **Documents** that are not the result of opening a file. Next, modify **read(from ofType:)** to store into this property instead of attempting to update a view controller that does not exist.

Listing 26.13 Loading a document a better way – storing the **contents property (Document.swift)**

```
...
override func read(from data: Data, ofType typeName: String) {
    guard let contents = String(data: data, encoding: .utf8)
        throw Document.Error.UTF8Decoding
    }

// WARNING: BIG PROBLEM HERE
let windowController = windowControllers[0]
let viewController = windowController.contentViewController
as! ViewController
viewController.textView.string = contents
self.contents = contents
```

```
    }  
}
```

Finally, you need to forward the document contents on to the view controller when it is created. Update **makeWindowControllers()** to do just that.

Listing 26.14 Loading a document a better way – forwarding document contents to the view controller (Document.swift**)**

```
...  
override func makeWindowControllers() {  
    // Returns the Storyboard that contains your Document wi  
    let storyboard = NSStoryboard(name: "Main", bundle: nil)  
    let windowController =  
        storyboard.instantiateController(  
            withIdentifier: "Document Window Controller"  
        ) as! NSWindowController  
  
    let viewController = windowController.contentViewControll  
    viewController.textView.string = contents  
  
    self.addWindowController(windowController)  
}  
...  
...
```

Build and run the application. Now you can successfully open files! VocalTextEdit is nearly complete.

MVC cleanup

VocalTextEdit is now feature complete: It can save and load documents, and it can read them back to you. But before you say it is completely finished, think back to something we said about MVC: “Models have no knowledge of the user interface.” You are using **Document** as a model class, but it reaches out and touches a text view in a couple of different places. A text view is definitely part of the user interface!

The **ViewController** should be the class coordinating between the user interface (the text view) and the model (the document). For the sake of good programming, clean up VocalTextEdit’s layers. Start by opening up **ViewController.swift** and creating a new property for the contents of the text view.

Listing 26.15 Creating a new property for the text view’s contents (ViewController.swift**)**

```
import Cocoa  
  
class ViewController: NSViewController {
```

```

let speechSynthesizer = NSSpeechSynthesizer()

@IBOutlet var textView: NSTextView!

var contents: String? {
    get {
        return textView.string
    }
    set {
        textView.string = newValue
    }
}
...
}

```

Here, you create a new computed property, `contents`, whose getter and setter read from and write to `textView`'s `string` property.

Now, back in `Document.swift`, replace both of the references to the view controller's text view with this new property.

Listing 26.16 Replacing text view references with contents (`Document.swift`)

```

...
override func makeWindowControllers() {
    // Returns the Storyboard that contains your Document wi
    let storyboard = NSStoryboard(name: "Main", bundle: nil)
    let windowController =
        storyboard.instantiateController(
            withIdentifier: "Document Window Controller"
        ) as! NSwindowController

    viewController = windowController.contentViewController
    viewController.textView.stringcontents = contents

    self.addWindowController(windowController)
}

override func data(ofType typeName: String) throws -> Data {
    let windowController = windowControllers[0]
    let viewController = windowController.contentViewControl
    let contents = viewController.textView.stringcontents ??

    guard let data = contents.data(using: .utf8) else {
        throw Document.Error.UTF8Encoding
    }
}

```

```
    return data  
}  
...
```

Build and run `VocalTextEdit` and confirm that you can still save and load files as expected. The refactoring of the code you just did may seem small, but it is an important change. **Document** does not, and should not, care how the string is going to be displayed. The **ViewController** class is responsible for managing the user interface (so it knows about the text view) and for communicating with the document (so it exposes what the document needs: a **contents** property).

This change has a couple of benefits aside from good programming practice. One is that **Document** is more readable now, because the code more directly expresses your intention. To save a document, get the contents from the view controller and save them. To load a document, put the contents into a property and give them to a view controller as soon as you can.

The second extra benefit is that the refactored code makes **Document** more robust to potential future changes in the view controller. You might decide to add a second text view for users to type in a document title, for example, or you might decide to use a different view than a text view. Changes of that nature are less likely to impact the readability and correctness of **Document** now that you have clarified its interactions with **ViewController**.

Swift in the real world

Congratulations – you have written an app for the Mac! It may not be the most impressive app, but that is not the point. You have applied your knowledge of Swift and made use of some of the Cocoa libraries provided by Apple. And you have made a fully functional, well-designed app. Bravo!

As you worked through this chapter, your programmer Spidey-sense may have tingled a little bit at some of the techniques you used. Implicitly unwrapped optionals can be dangerous. The `as!` operator can be dangerous. You frequently used both of these.

Unfortunately, the purity and safety of Swift is not always available when you start working with tools and frameworks that were designed with Objective-C in mind. Some concessions have to be made, particularly when working with the systems built up around **Interface Builder**. Take heart, however: In a larger application, the parts of your code that feel a little shaky will be well offset by the safety and security you get from using Swift throughout the rest of the app.

Silver Challenge

Right now, users of `VocalTextEdit` can click the `Speak` or `Stop` buttons at any time. That is not ideal: Clicking `Speak` while `VocalTextEdit` is currently synthesizing will abruptly restart the vocalization, for example. Modify `VocalTextEdit` so that users can only click on `Speak` if the application is not currently synthesizing and only click `Stop` when it is.

To complete this challenge, you will need a way to set the `enabled` property of the two buttons. You will also need a way to know when speaking ends. (You already know when it starts.) Investigate the documentation for the **NSSpeechSynthesizerDelegate** protocol to find out how to do these things.

Gold Challenge

If you have not already completed the silver challenge, do that first!

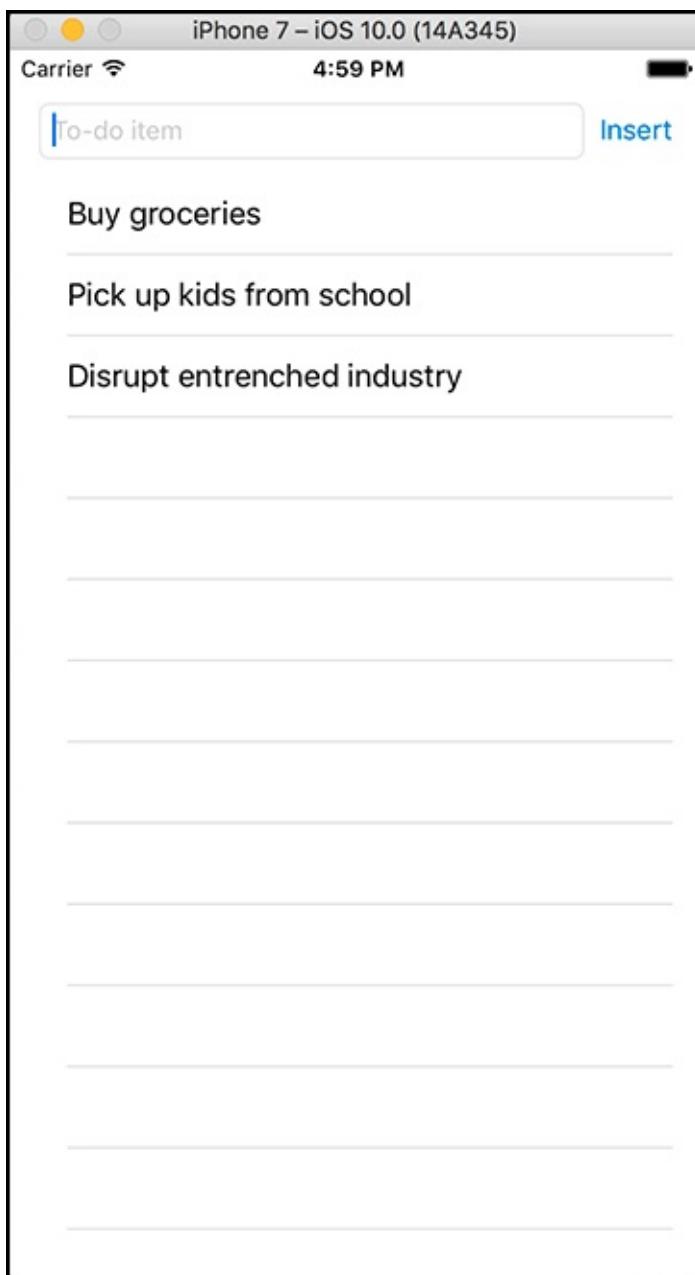
Now that your buttons react when the app starts or stops speaking, give the user a way to know how long speaking will continue. Add an **NSProgressIndicator** to your interface and update it to show a rough estimate of how much speaking has been completed. For bonus points, make the progress indicator visible only when the app is speaking.

Your First iOS Application

In this chapter, you are going to create iTahDoodle, an iOS application for iPhone. iTahDoodle will allow users to create to-do lists. Like VocalTextEdit, iTahDoodle is a relatively simple app, and building it will give you only a taste of what iOS development is all about. For a thorough exploration of iOS programming, see the most recent edition of *iOS Programming: The Big Nerd Ranch Guide*.

When you are done, iTahDoodle will look like [Figure 27.1](#).

Figure 27.1 Completed iTahDoodle application

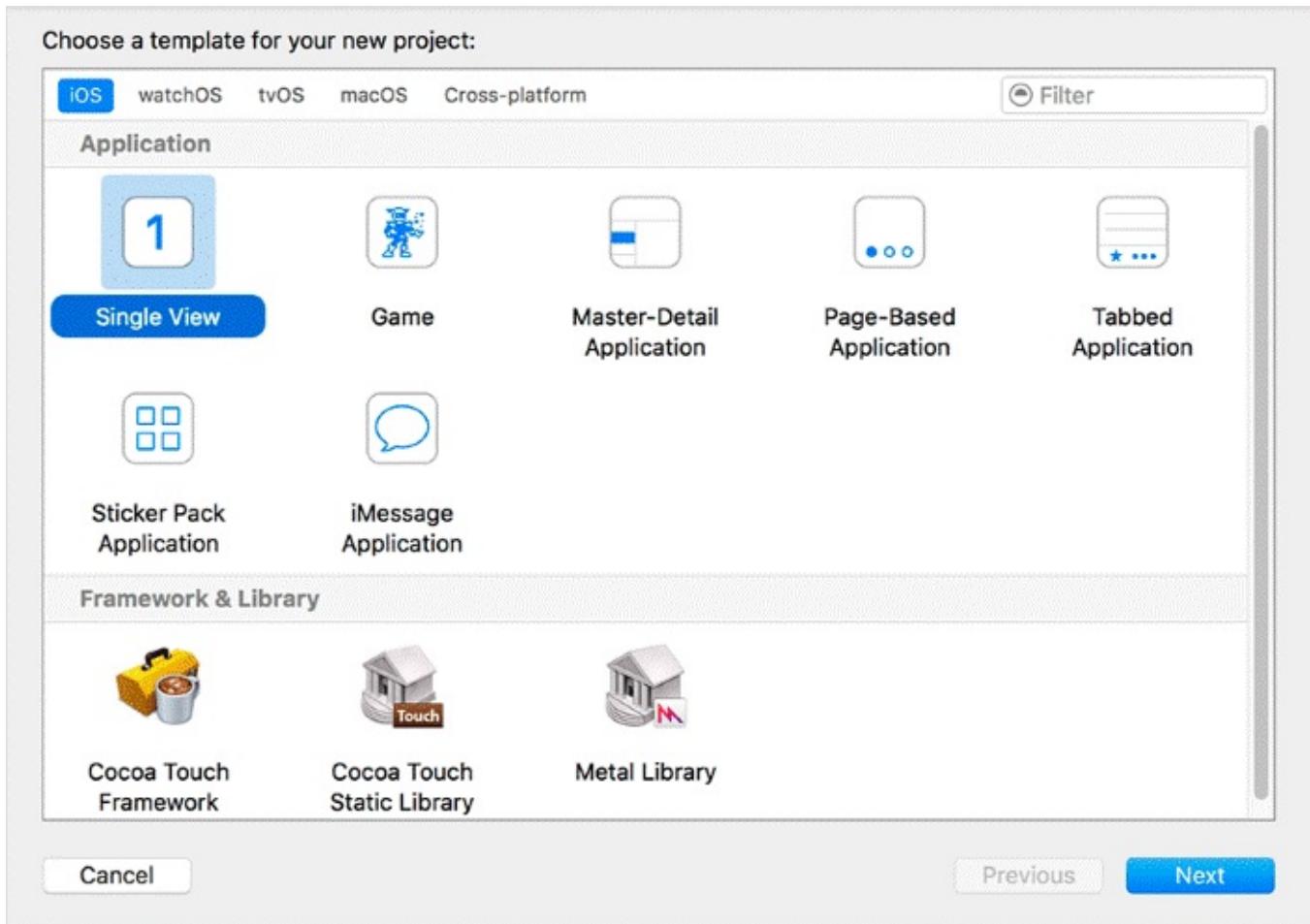


Users can add an item to the to-do list by typing in the text field at the top and tapping `Insert`. You will persist the to-do list so that users will not lose their list if they close the application.

Getting Started with iTahDoodle

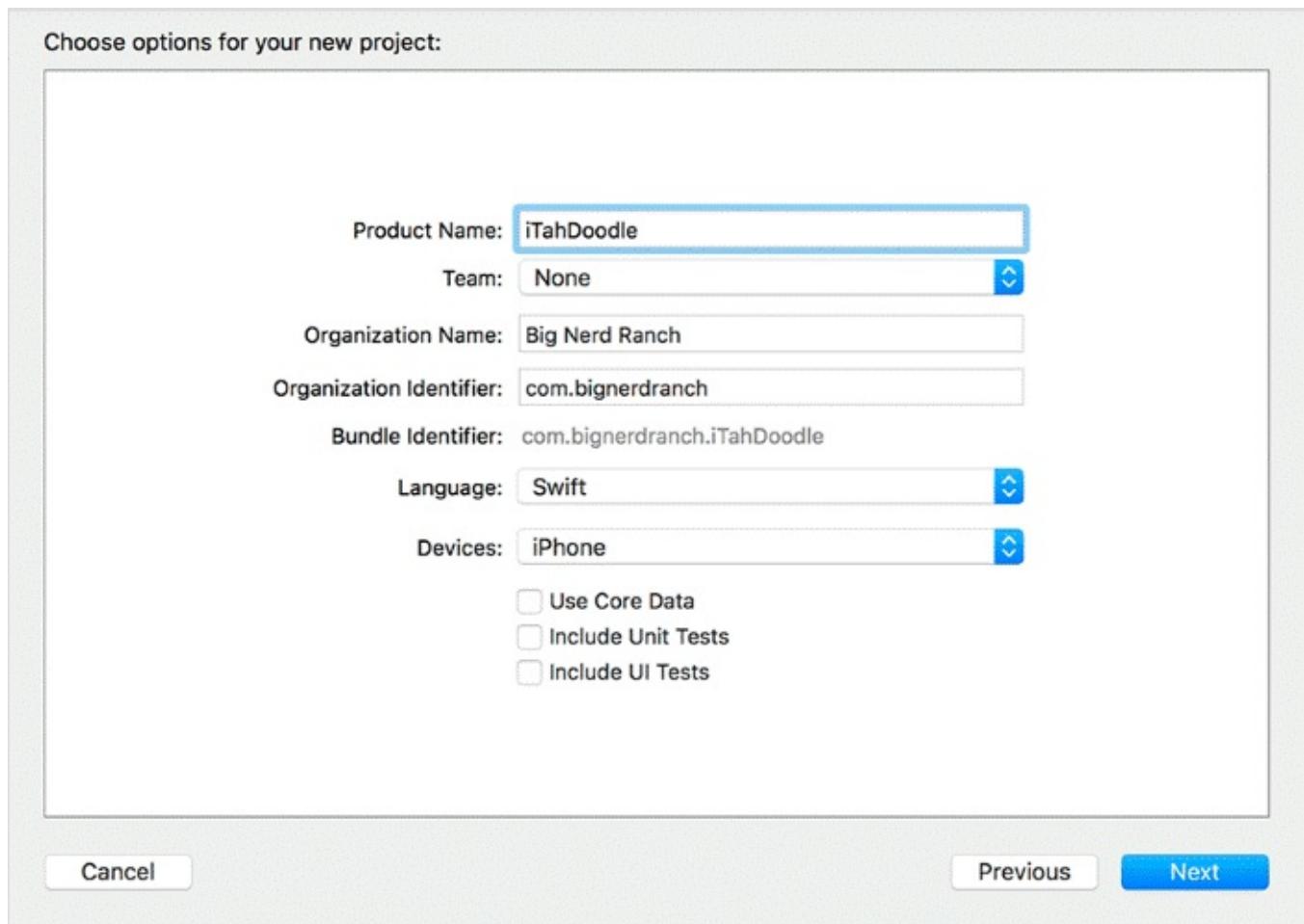
In Xcode, choose File → New → Project.... With iOS selected at the top, choose the Single View template under Application ([Figure 27.2](#)) and click Next.

Figure 27.2 Choosing the iOS single view application template



In the project options window, name the project iTahDoodle, as in [Figure 27.3](#). Make sure the selected language is Swift and the device is set to iPhone. Leave the Use Core Data, Include Unit Tests, and Include UI Tests boxes unchecked.

Figure 27.3 Configuring iTahDoodle



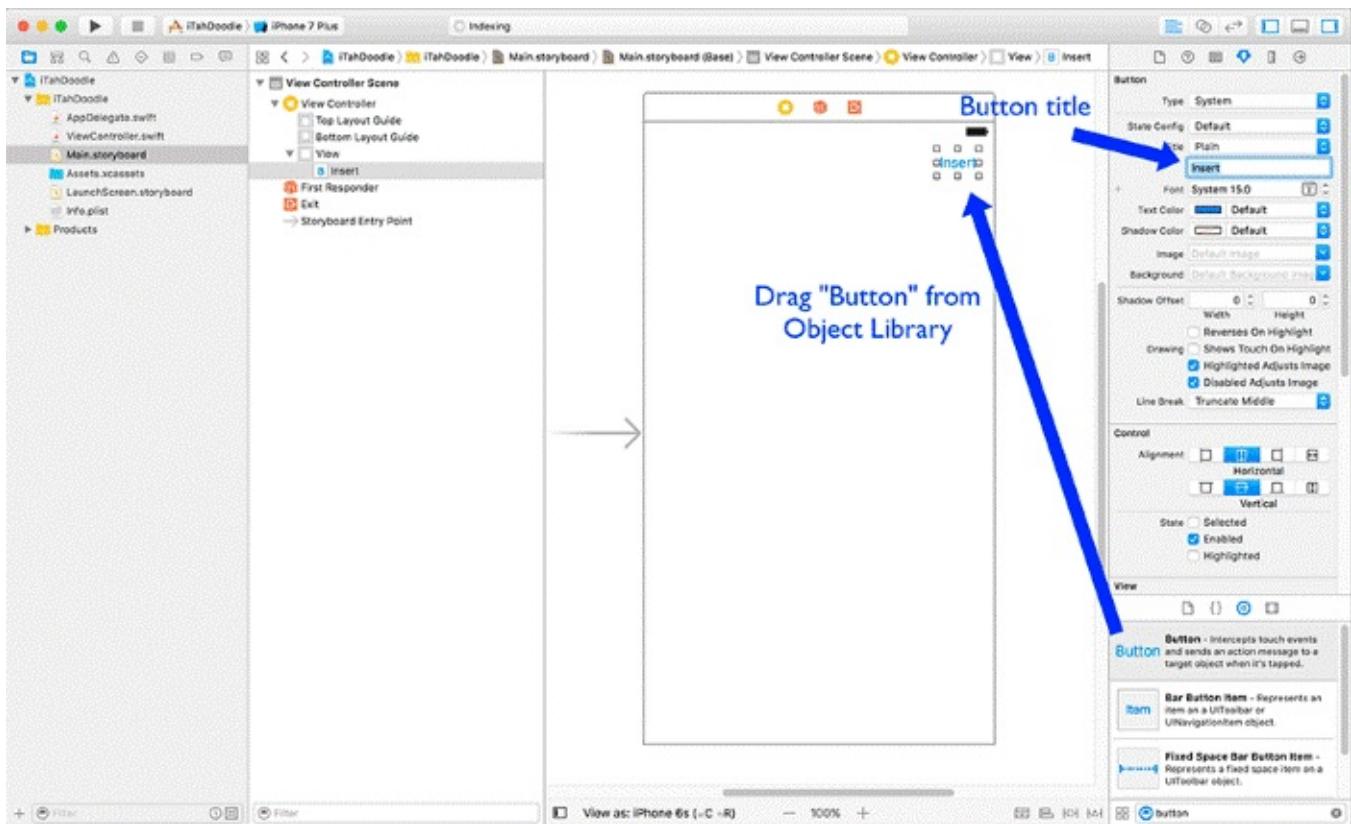
Click Next and finish creating your project by saving it to the location of your choice.

Laying Out the User Interface

Select `Main.storyboard` from the project navigator. The iOS single view application template is much simpler than the Cocoa storyboard you used in the previous chapter. Your storyboard currently contains only a single empty view controller.

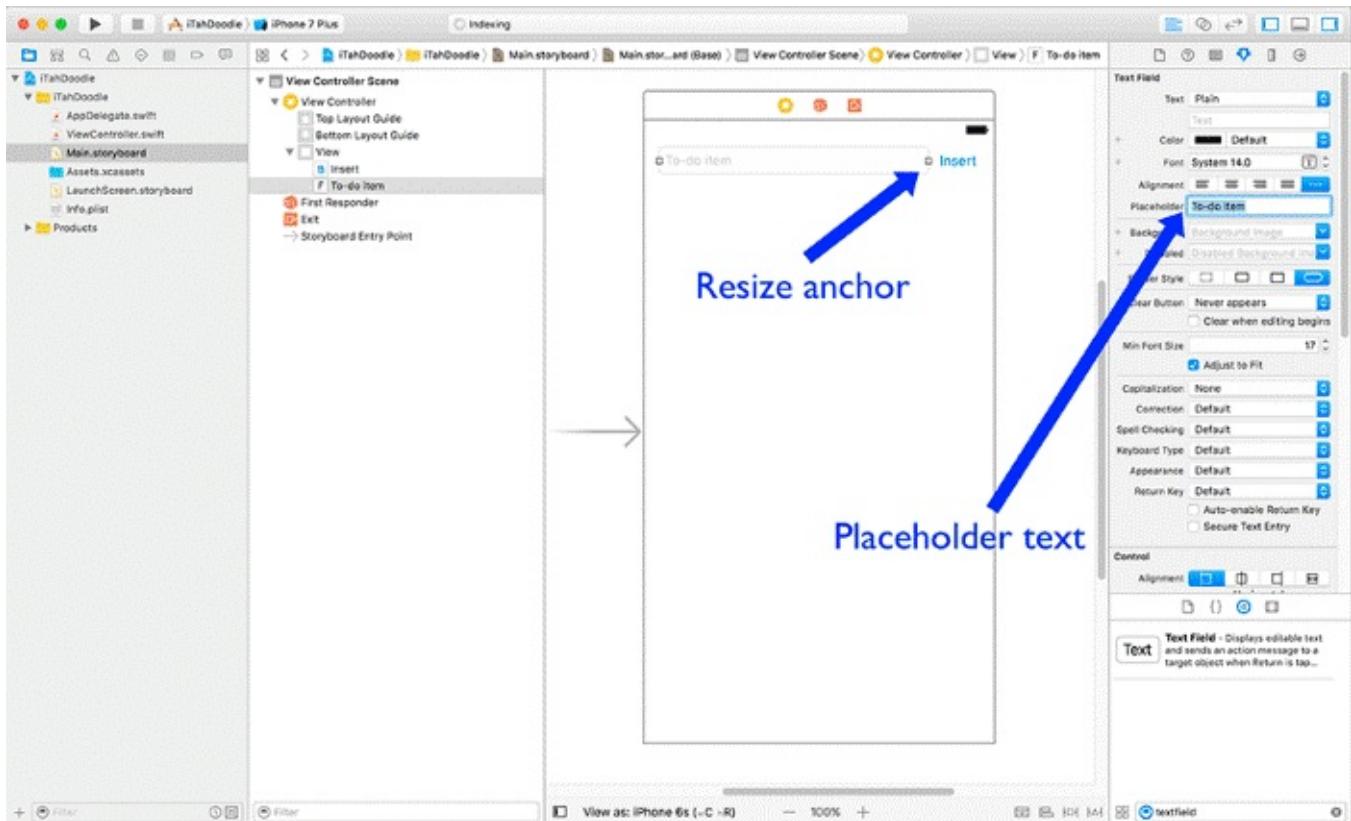
Add a button to your view controller. In the object library (at the bottom of the utilities pane), search for “button.” Drag a `Button` onto your view controller canvas and drop it in the top-right corner, where it will snap into place against the dashed blue guidelines. Finally, change the title of the button to “Insert” in the attributes inspector. Your view controller should look like the screen shown in [Figure 27.4](#).

Figure 27.4 iTahDoodle with Insert button



Next, add the text field where users will type in their to-do items. Search for “text field” in the object library. Drag a `Text Field` into the top-left corner of your view controller canvas. Resize the text field using the square resize anchor so that its right edge is adjacent to the button you added. Use the attributes inspector to set the text field’s placeholder text to “To-do Item” ([Figure 27.5](#)).

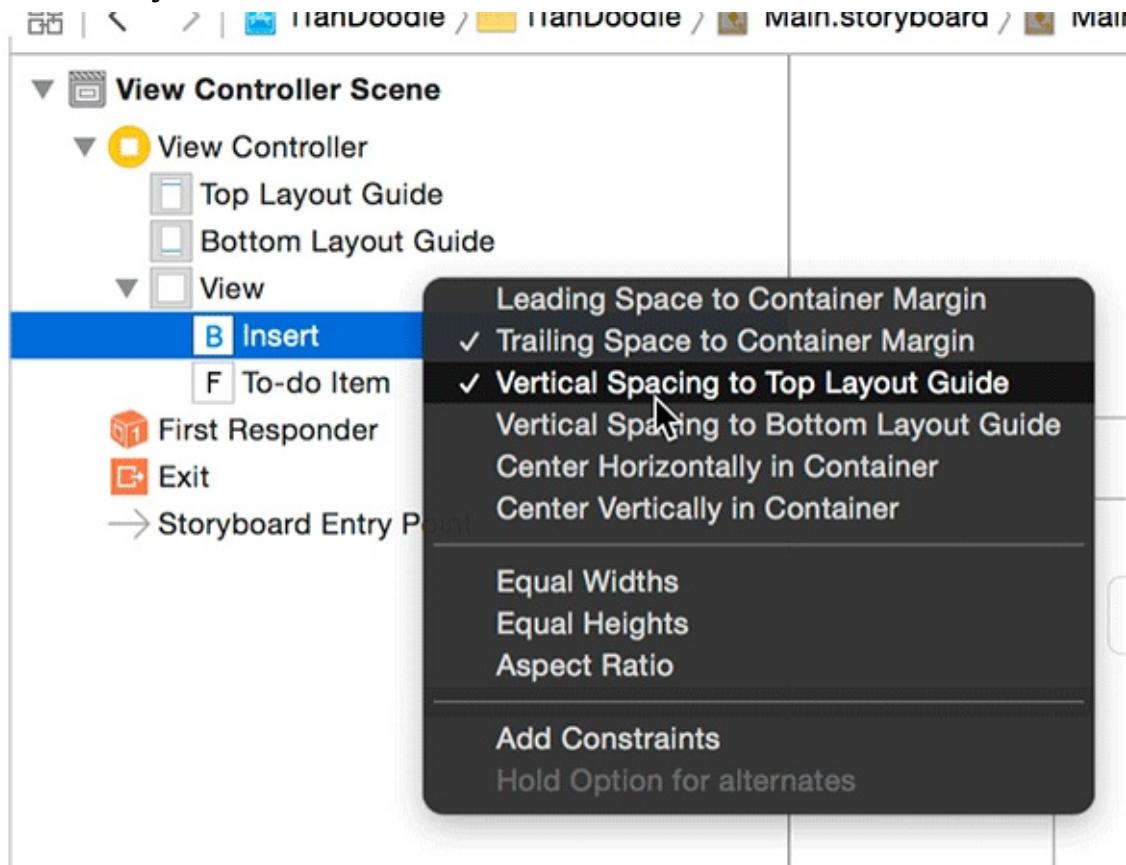
Figure 27.5 iTahDoodle with a text field



In the previous chapter, you used Auto Layout to make sure your interface would look correct when the user resized the window. Currently, users cannot resize the windows of iOS applications, but there is a comparable problem. You want your app to look correct on a variety of screen sizes. Specifying iPhone as the target device (as you did when you set up iTahDoodle) is not enough, as there are a variety of iPhone models with different screen sizes. However, you can use the same Auto Layout system to ensure that your interface adjusts to fit correctly on each screen size.

In the document outline, Control-drag from `Insert` to its parent, `View`. In the pop-up menu, Shift-click on both `Trailing Space to Container Margin` and `Vertical Spacing to Top Layout Guide` ([Figure 27.6](#)).

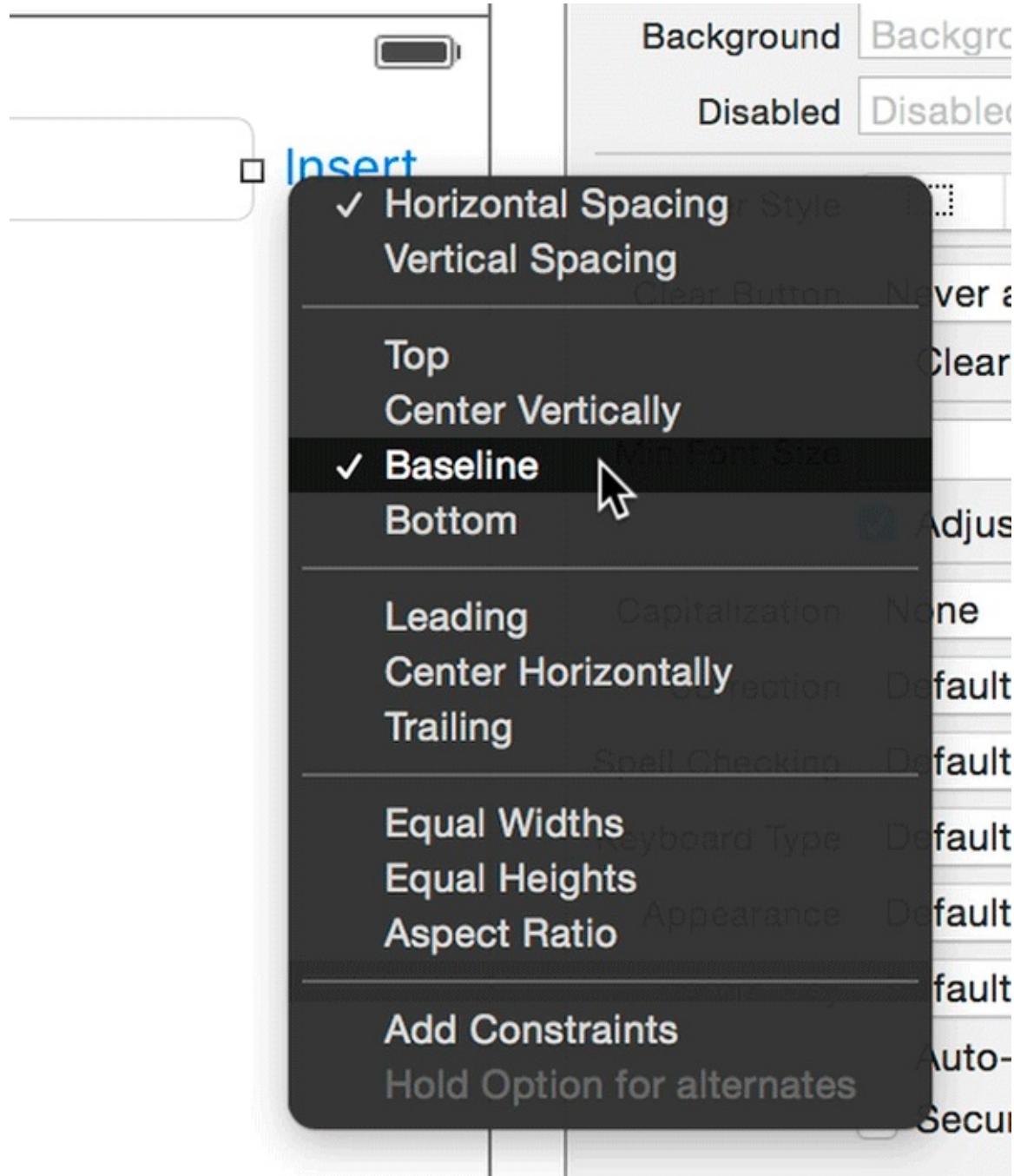
Figure 27.6 Auto Layout constraints for Insert button



These constraints will ensure that the button stays pinned to the top-right corner of the view.

Next, create constraints between the text field and the button. Control-drag from the text field to the button. In the pop-up menu, Shift-click on both Horizontal Spacing and Baseline ([Figure 27.7](#)). (You may notice a yellow icon indicating a warning in Interface Builder – you will address it shortly.)

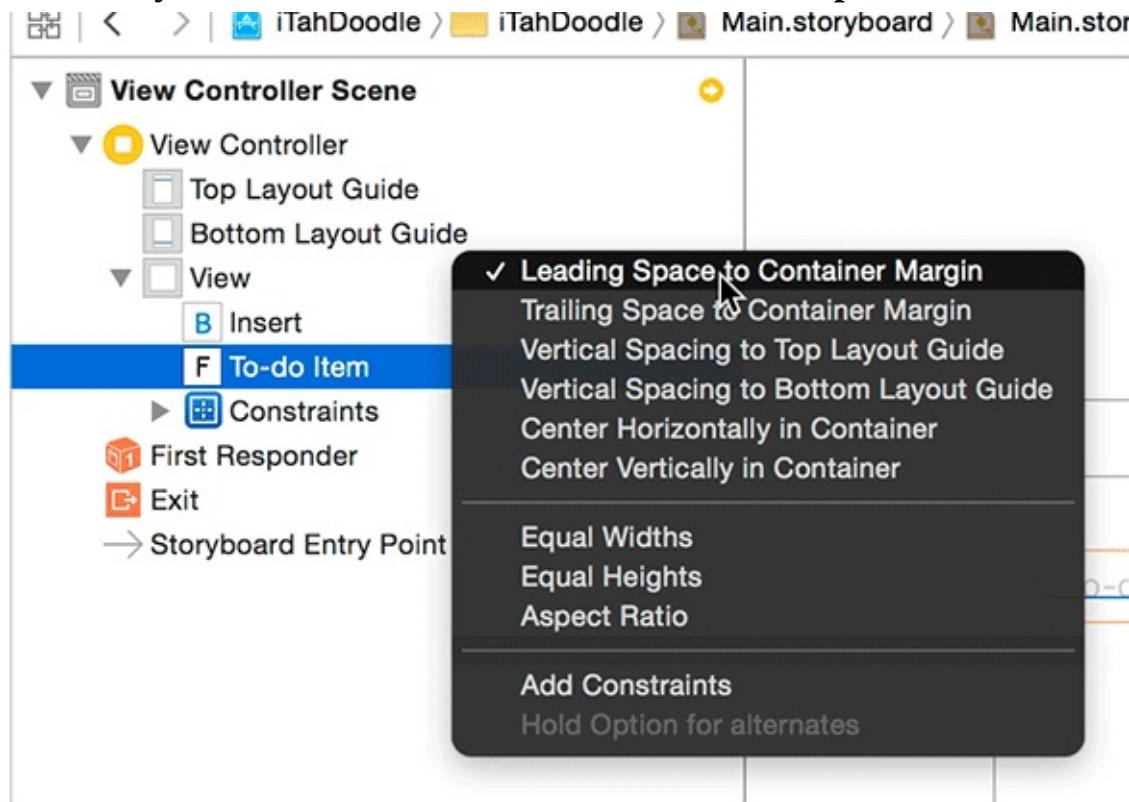
Figure 27.7 Auto Layout constraints between text field and button



These constraints will ensure that the right side of the text field stays next to the button and that the text in the text field will be vertically aligned with the button's text.

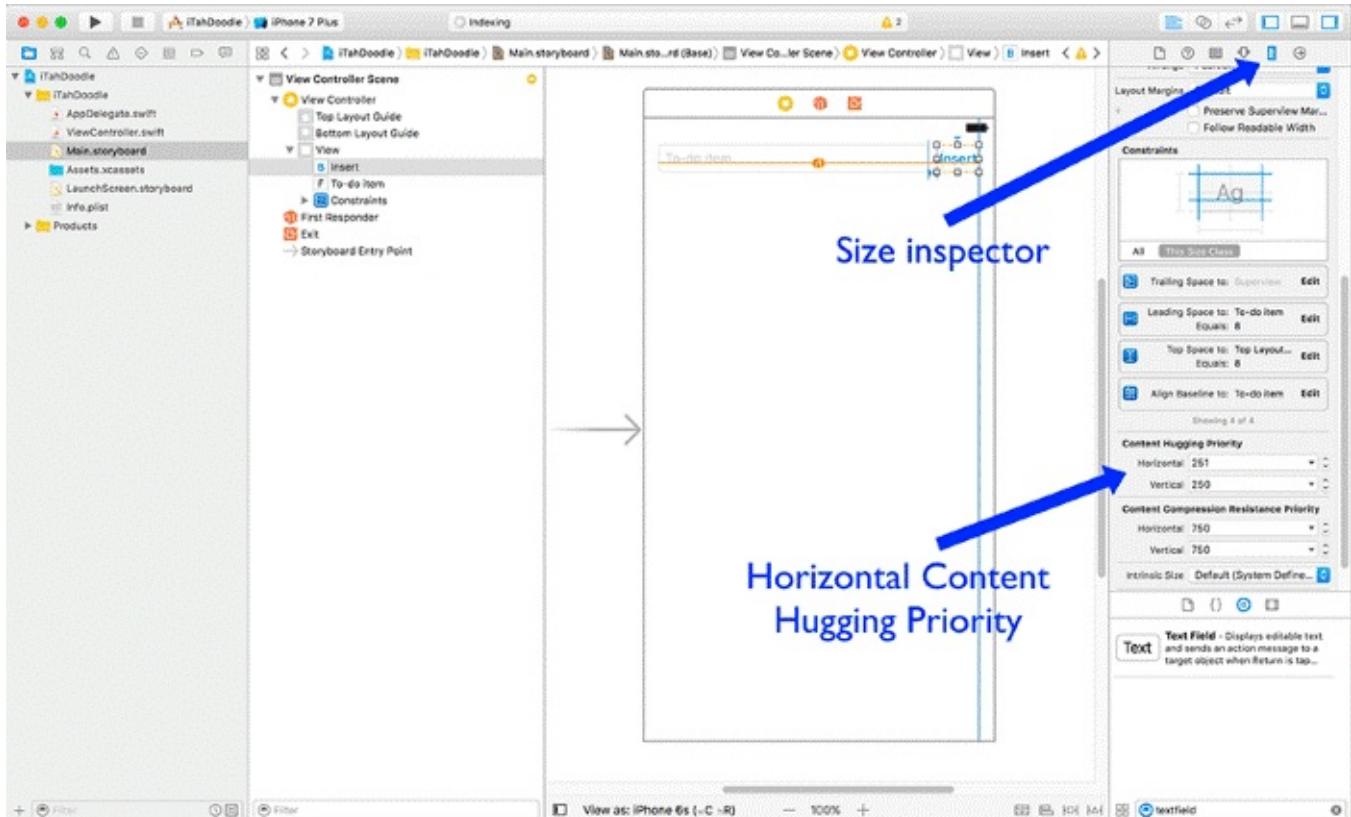
The final constraint to add is to pin the left edge of the text field to the left edge of the view. In the document outline, Control-drag from the text field to its parent view and select **Leading Space to Container Margin** from the pop-up ([Figure 27.8](#)).

Figure 27.8 Auto Layout constraint between text field and superview



You may notice that Interface Builder still has a warning. Press Command-4 to open the issue navigator, where you will see 2 views are horizontally ambiguous. The problem is that you have constrained the text field and button together to fill up the entire horizontal space, but Auto Layout does not know how to divide the space. According to the constraints you have added, Auto Layout could make the button skinny and the text field wide or vice versa (or anything in between). To fix this problem, select the button, open up its size inspector in the utilities pane, and set its Horizontal Content Hugging Priority to be 251 instead of 250 ([Figure 27.9](#)).

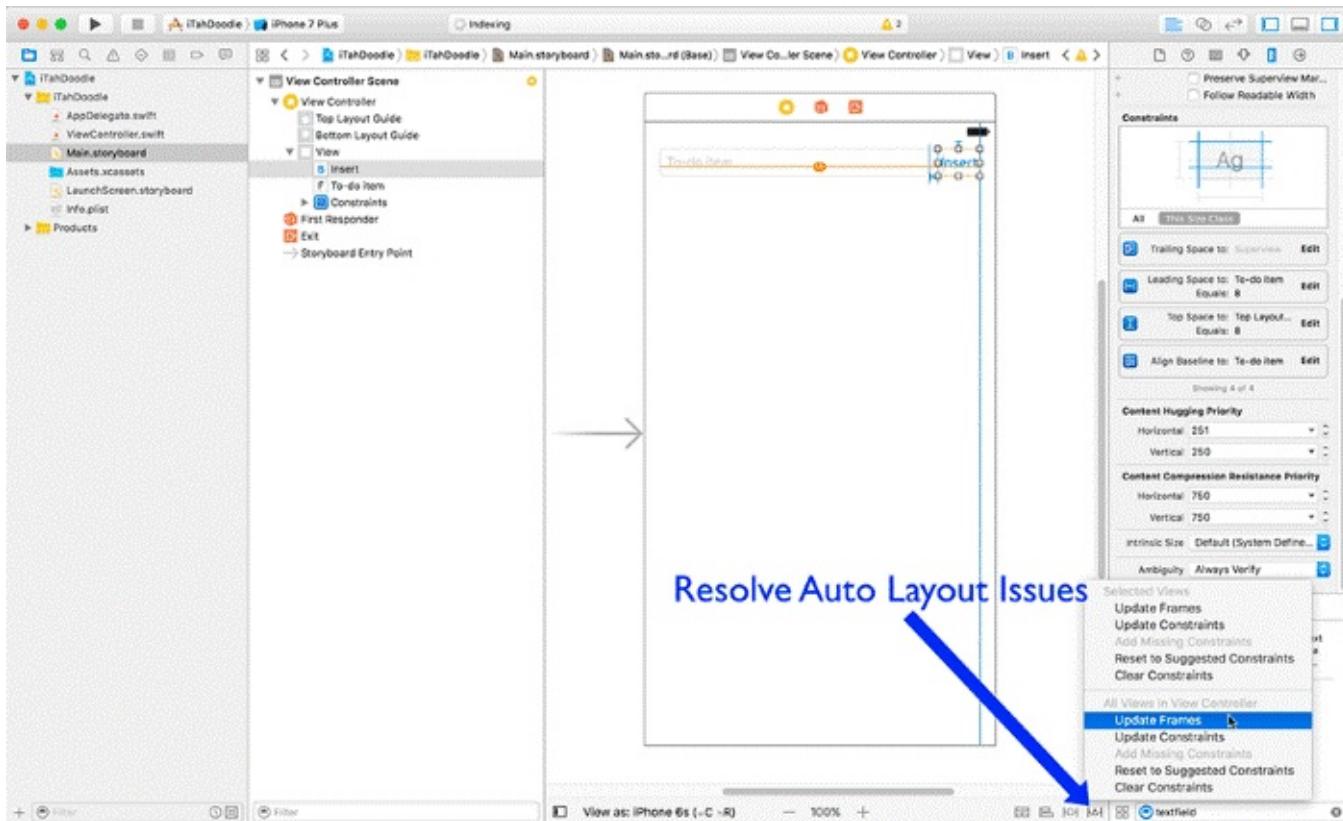
Figure 27.9 Insert button horizontal content hugging priority



The content hugging priority determines how strongly Auto Layout should attempt to keep an element from expanding. You bumped the button’s content hugging priority up to 251, higher than the text field’s default of 250. When Auto Layout tries to determine how to fill the entire horizontal space, it will see that the button does not want to expand horizontally. Therefore, the text field will grow to fill the available space, leaving the button the same size.

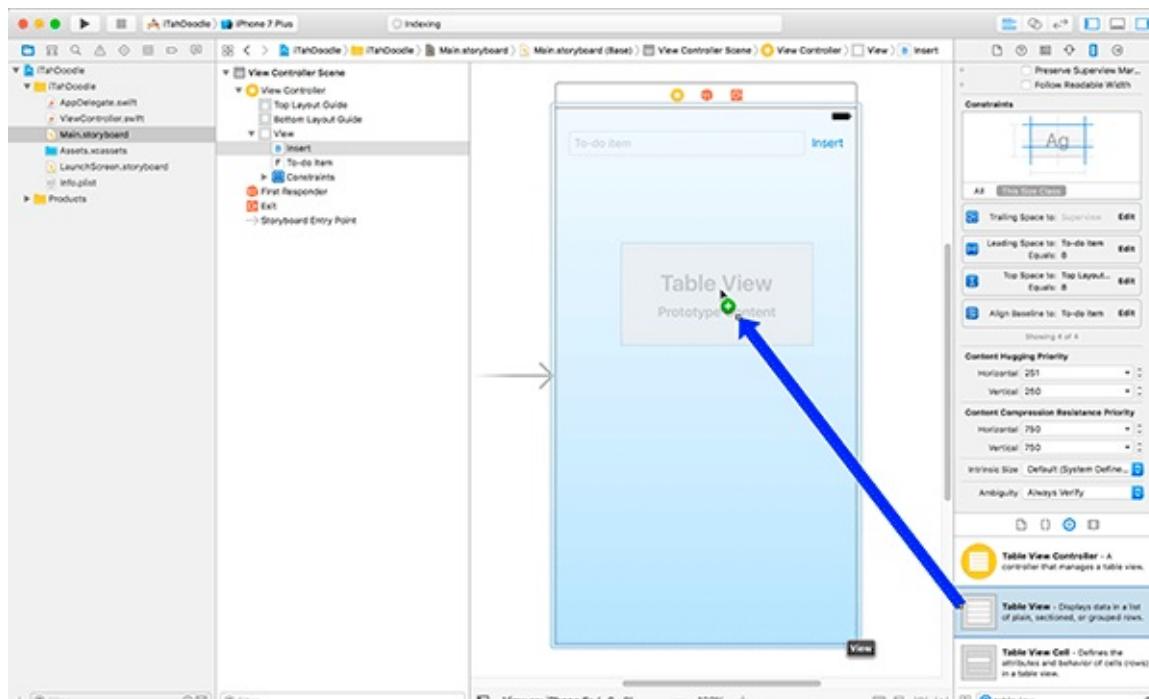
You probably have a warning or two about “misplaced views.” This means that the frames of the views as you are looking at them in the storyboard do not match what the positions will be when you run your app and Auto Layout takes over. Xcode has a number of tools to resolve layout issues like this one. One of the most commonly used tools updates the views’ frames to match what Auto Layout thinks they should be. Use this tool now by clicking on the **Resolve Auto Layout Issues** button and selecting **Update Frames** in the **All Views in View Controller** section ([Figure 27.10](#)).

Figure 27.10 Resolve Auto Layout Issues: Update Frames



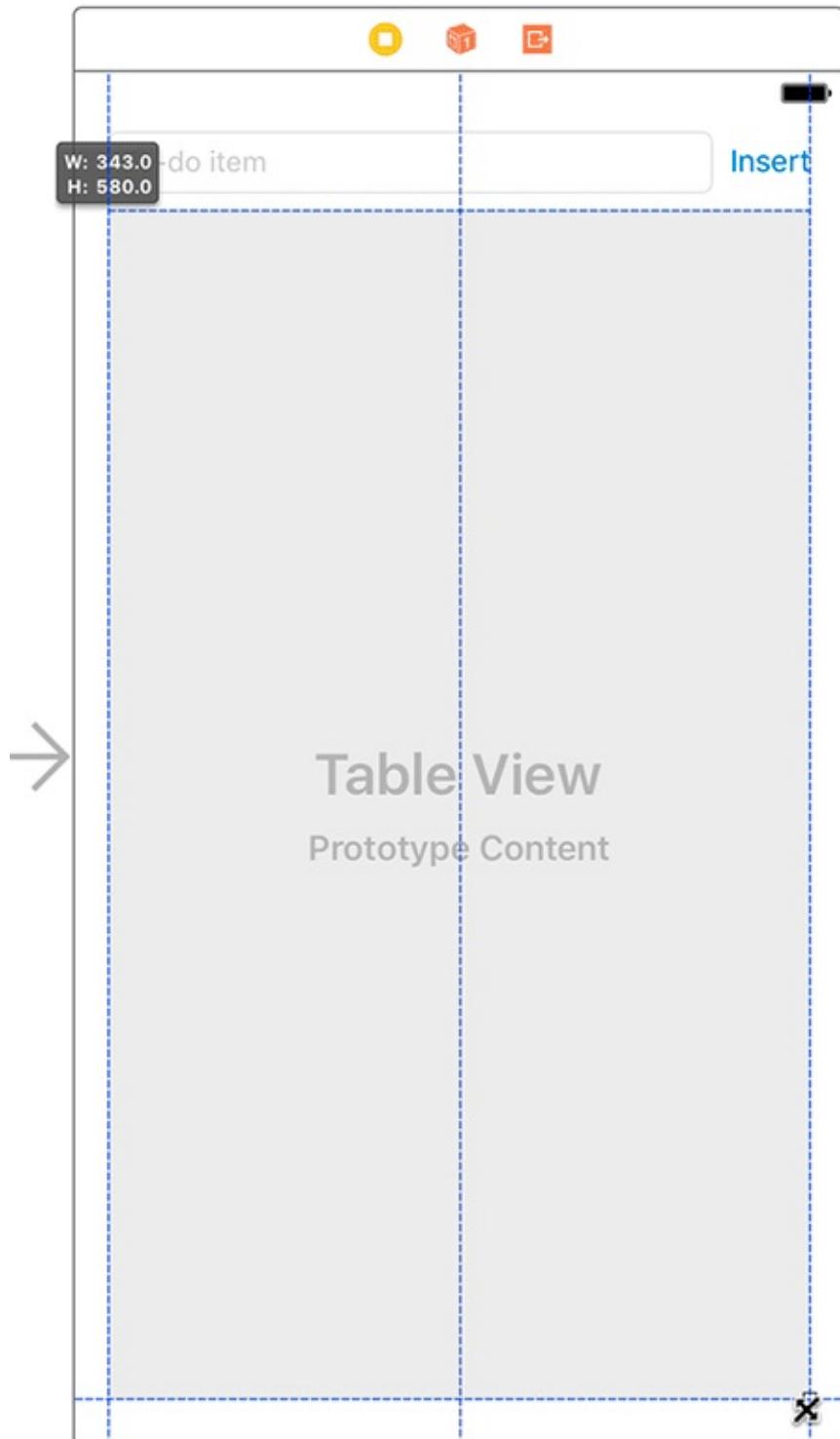
The final user interface, or UI, element you need is a way to display the list of to-do items. iOS provides a perfect class for this purpose: **UITableView**. Search for “table” in the object library and drag a Table View onto your view controller, as in [Figure 27.11](#). (Make sure you grab the Table View, not the Table View Controller.)

Figure 27.11 Adding a table view



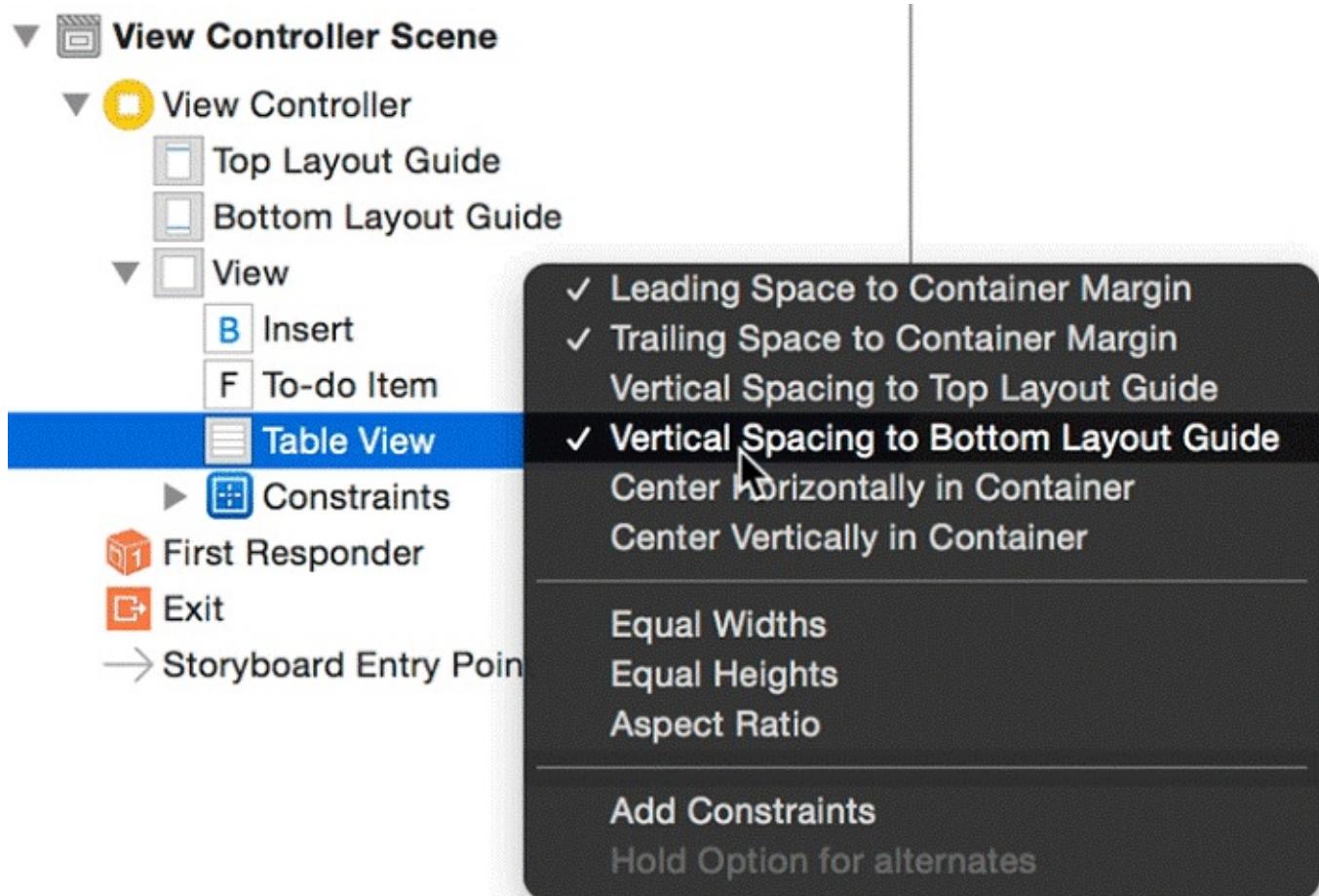
Resize the table view until it snaps into place around the edges ([Figure 27.12](#)).

Figure 27.12 Resizing table view to fill view controller



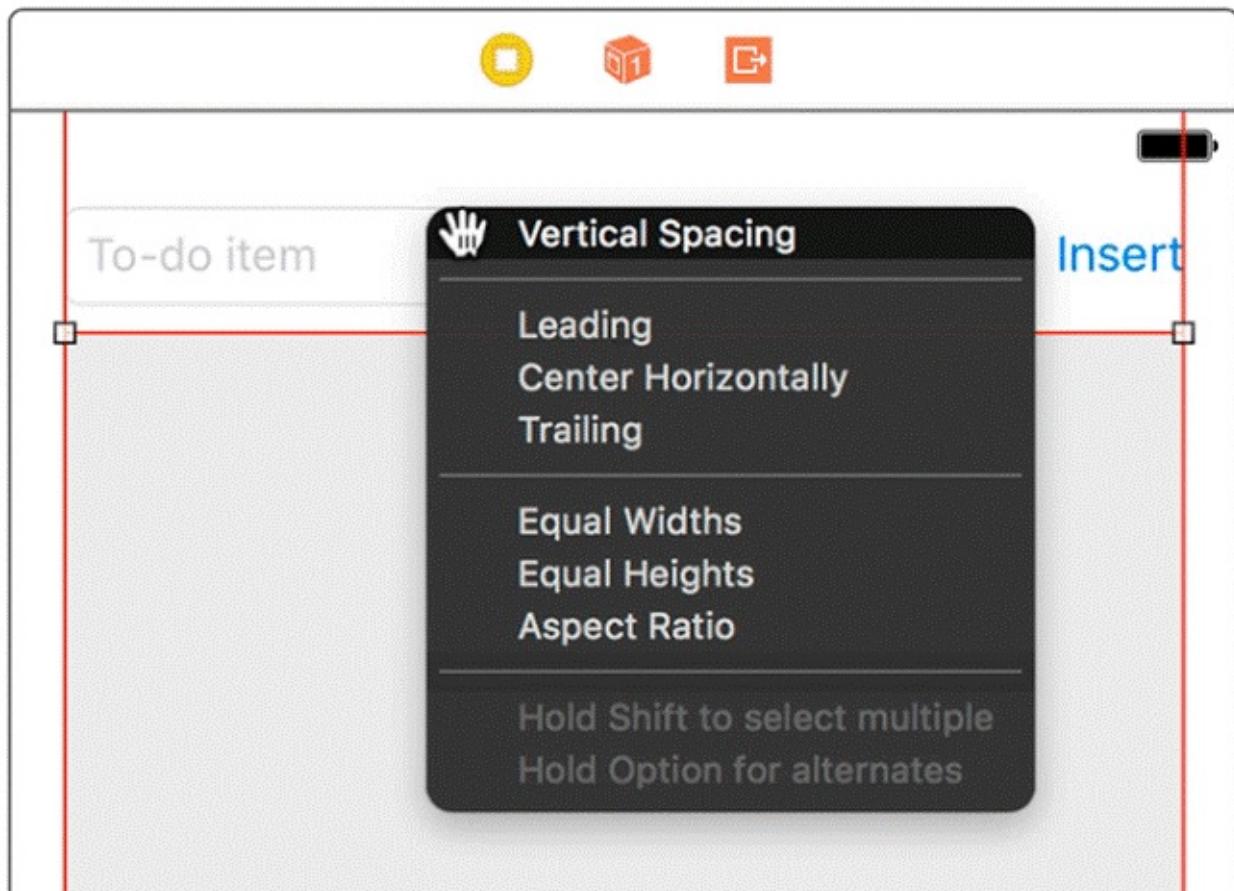
You need to add Auto Layout constraints to make sure the table view always fills the available screen space. In the document outline, Control-drag from table view to its parent, View. In the pop-up menu, Shift-click on Leading Space to Container Margin, Trailing Space to Container Margin, and Vertical Spacing to Bottom Layout Guide ([Figure 27.13](#)).

Figure 27.13 Auto Layout constraints between table view and superview



Finally, add a constraint to fix the spacing between the table view and the text field just above it. Control-drag from the table view to the text field and select Vertical Spacing from the pop-up menu ([Figure 27.14](#)).

Figure 27.14 Auto Layout constraints between table view and text field



Build and run your application. This will open iTahDoodle in Xcode's iOS simulator, as shown in [Figure 27.15](#). It does not do anything yet, but you should see the user interface you designed.

Figure 27.15 iTahDoodle user interface



Wiring up your interface

Now that you have an interface, it is time to create outlets and actions so that you can start to make your app interactive. Open `ViewController.swift` and add properties for your UI elements and an action method to call when the user taps the `Insert` button.

Listing 27.1 Adding UI element properties and a button action method (`ViewController.swift`)

```
import UIKit

class ViewController: UIViewController {
```

```

@IBOutlet var itemTextField: UITextField!
@IBOutlet var tableView: UITableView!

override func viewDidLoad() {
    super.viewDidLoad()
    // Do any additional setup after loading the view, typically from a nib.
}

override func didReceiveMemoryWarning() {
    super.didReceiveMemoryWarning()
    // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
}

@IBAction func addButtonPressed(_ sender: UIButton) {
    print("Add to-do item: \(itemTextField.text)")
}
}

```

Next, go back to `Main.storyboard` and create connections to the items you just added. Control-drag from the view controller to the text field, selecting `itemTextField` from the pop-up menu ([Figure 27.16](#)).

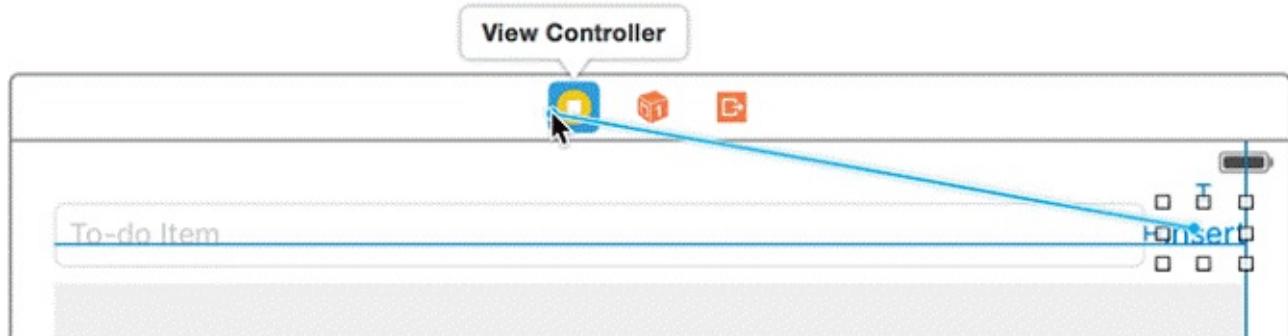
Figure 27.16 Connecting text field to view controller `@IBOutlet`



Repeat the same process to connect the table view. Control-drag from the view controller to the table view and select `tableView` from the pop-up menu.

Remember from [Chapter 26](#) that to connect an action you Control-drag in the opposite direction? Control-drag from the `Insert` button to the view controller ([Figure 27.17](#)) and select `addButtonPressed:` under Sent Events in the pop-up menu.

Figure 27.17 Connecting Insert button to view controller `@IBAction`



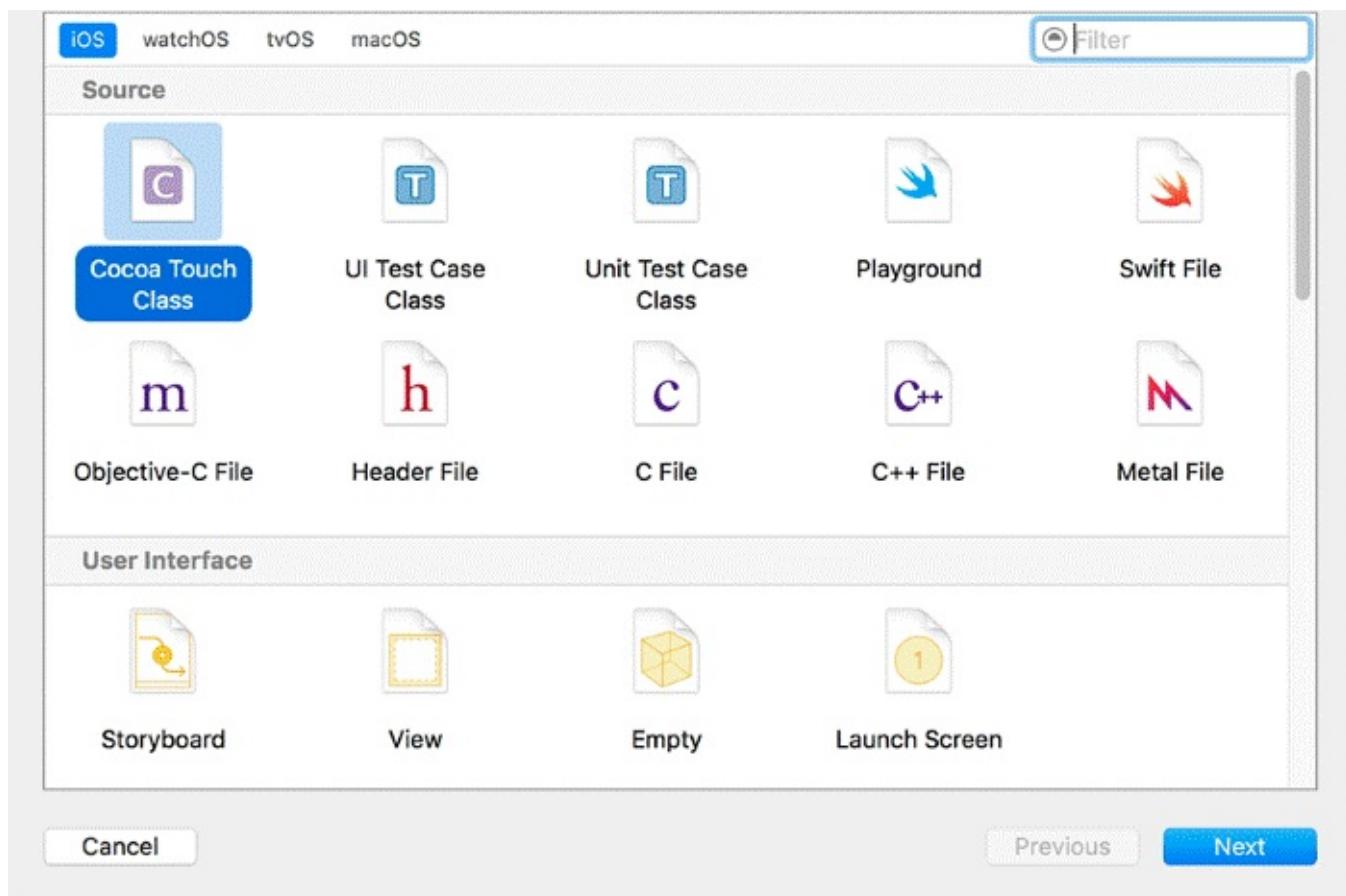
Build and run your application again. Try typing in the text field and tapping the `Insert` button. Your text will be logged to the console. For example, if you type “Buy groceries”, tap `Insert`, type “Walk the dog”, and tap `Insert` again, you will see:

```
Add to-do item: Optional("Buy groceries")
Add to-do item: Optional("Walk the dog")
```


Modeling a To-Do List

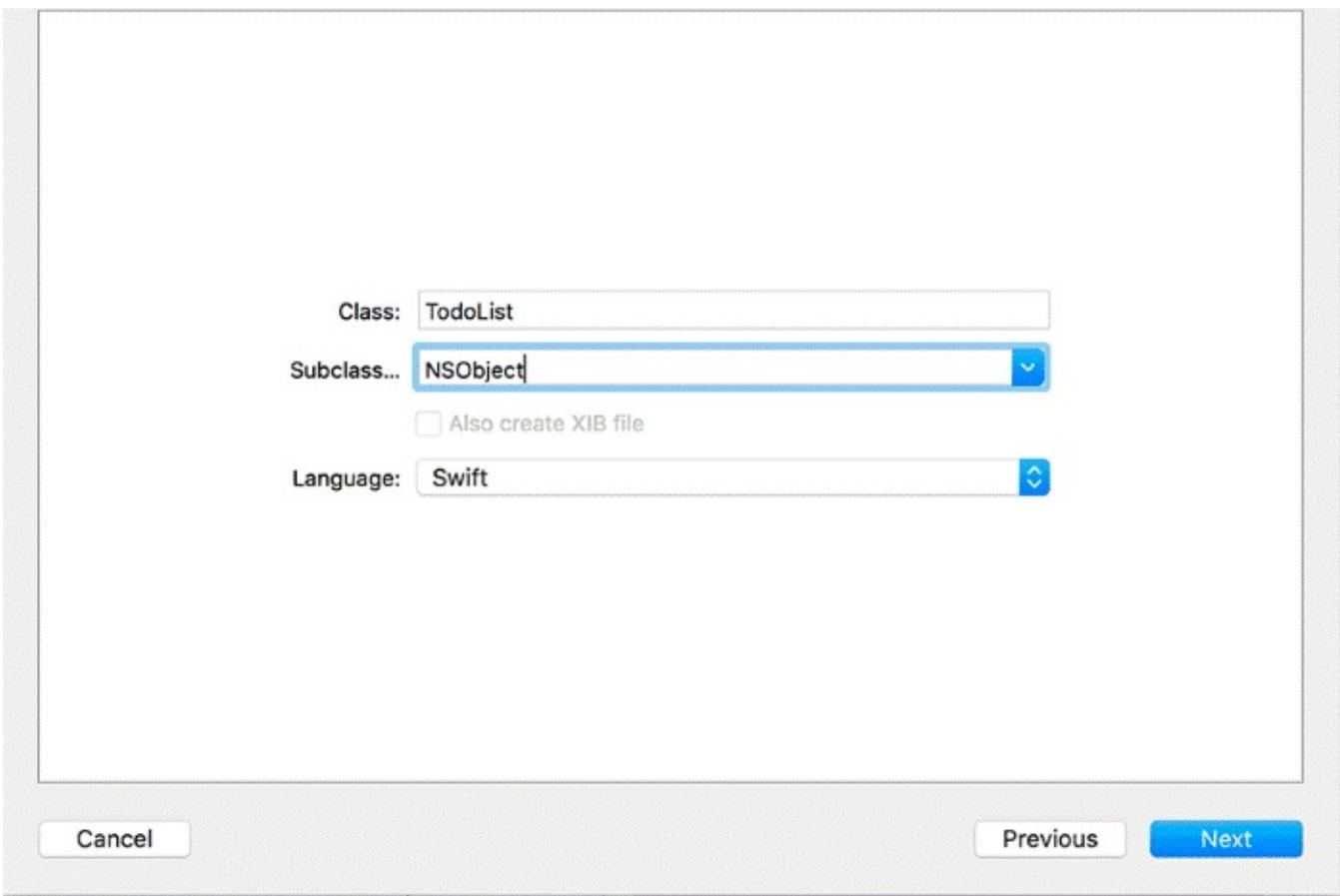
Remember the Model-View-Controller architecture you read about in [Chapter 26](#)? You have already created a view (your storyboard and UI elements) and a controller (your **ViewController** class). At this point, however, you do not have a model. Create a Cocoa Touch class by selecting **File → New → File...**. With **iOS** selected at the top, select **Cocoa Touch Class** from the Source section ([Figure 27.18](#)).

Figure 27.18 Creating a new Cocoa Touch class



On the next screen, name your class **TodoList**, make it a subclass of **NSObject**, and make sure the language is set to Swift ([Figure 27.19](#)).

Figure 27.19 Creating the TodoList class



Click Next, then Create.

Xcode creates and opens your new class:

```
import UIKit

class TodoList: NSObject {
```

}

What is **NSObject**? In Swift, you can create classes that do not have a superclass. In Objective-C, all classes are required to have a superclass. **NSObject** is called a *root class*: It provides some basic Objective-C runtime support.

You need **TodoList** to inherit from **NSObject** because you are going to use it to interact with Cocoa Touch classes that expect to receive Objective-C objects. (The relationship between Swift and Objective-C is the subject of [Chapter 28](#).)

At its most basic, a to-do list is just a list of strings with the capability to add new things to the list. Add a property and a method to **TodoList** to meet those requirements.

Listing 27.2 Adding basic list functionality (`TodoList.swift`)

```
import UIKit

class TodoList: NSObject {
    fileprivate var items: [String] = []
```

```
func add(_ item: String) {
    items.append(item)
}
}
```

Earlier you placed a **UITableView** into your interface to display your to-do list. Every **UITableView** has a property named `dataSource` that provides the content for its cells. To act as a table view's data source, **TodoList** must conform to the **UITableViewDataSource** protocol. As you learned in [Chapter 21](#), you can add protocol conformance in an extension to keep related chunks of functionality grouped together. Add an extension on **TodoList** declaring that it conforms to **UITableViewDataSource**.

Listing 27.3 Adding protocol conformance in an extension (`TodoList.swift`)

```
import UIKit
```

```
class TodoList: NSObject {
    fileprivate var items: [String] = []

    func add(_ item: String) {
        items.append(item)
    }
}

extension TodoList: UITableViewDataSource { }
```

If you were to try to build your project now, you would get an error that **TodoList** does not conform to **UITableViewDataSource**. Open the documentation for **UITableViewDataSource** ([Figure 27.20](#)). (That is, Option-click on **UITableViewDataSource** to bring up the quick reference, then click on the `UITableViewDataSource Protocol Reference` link to bring up the full documentation.)

Figure 27.20 **UITableViewDataSource** protocol reference

The screenshot shows the Apple Developer Documentation interface. In the top left, there's a sidebar with navigation links for Swift, Objective-C, and JavaScript. The main content area has a breadcrumb trail: UIKit > UITableViewDataSource. The title is "Protocol" followed by "UITableViewDataSource". A detailed description follows: "The UITableViewDataSource protocol is adopted by an object that mediates the application's data model for a UITableView object. The data source provides the table-view object with the information it needs to construct and modify a table view." To the right, there are sections for "Language" (Swift, Objective-C), "SDKs" (iOS 8.0+, tvOS 9.0+), and "On This Page" links for Overview, Symbols, and Relationships.

Overview

As a representative of the data model, the data source supplies minimal information about the table view's appearance. The table-view object's delegate—an object adopting the `UITableViewDelegate` protocol—provides that information.

The required methods of the protocol provide the cells to be displayed by the table-view as well as inform the `UITableView` object about the number of sections and the number of rows in each section. The data source may implement optional methods to configure various aspects of the table view and to insert, delete, and reorder rows.

Note

To enable the swipe-to-delete feature of table views (wherein a user swipes horizontally across a row to display a Delete button), you must implement the `tableView(_:commit:forRowAt:)` method.

There are a lot of methods in the **UITableViewDataSource** protocol! However, only two of them are required. They are **tableView(_:cellForRowAt:)**, which configures and returns cells (the rows of your table view), and **tableView(_:numberOfRowsInSection:)**, which tells the table view how many rows there are going to be. Begin by implementing **tableView(_:numberOfRowsInSection:)**.

Listing 27.4 Adding `tableView(_:numberOfRowsInSection:)` (`TodoList.swift`)

```
...
extension TodoList : UITableViewDataSource {
    func tableView(_ tableView: UITableView,
                  numberOfRowsInSection section: Int) -> Int {
        return items.count
    }
}
```

UITableView supports a table having multiple sections, each of which can have 0 or more rows. For iTahDoodle, you are only going to use a single section, so in the method above, you ignore the `section` argument. You return `items.count`, telling the table view that there will be one row for each to-do list item.

Next, implement `tableView(_:cellForRowAt:)`.

Listing 27.5 Adding `tableView(_:cellForRowAt:)` (`TodoList.swift`)

```
...
extension TodoList : UITableViewDataSource {
    func tableView(_ tableView: UITableView,
                  numberOfRowsInSection section: Int) -> Int {
        return items.count
    }

    func tableView(_ tableView: UITableView, cellForRowAt indexPath: IndexPath) -> UITableViewCell {
        let cell = tableView.dequeueReusableCell(withIdentifier: "Cell", for: indexPath)
        let item = items[indexPath.row]

        cell.textLabel!.text = item

        return cell
    }
}
```

Here is a line-by-line walk-through of what this method does:

```
let cell = tableView.dequeueReusableCell(withIdentifier: "Cell",
```

This line asks the table view for a reusable cell with the identifier "Cell" and the given index path.

What does *reusable cell* mean? To achieve good scrolling performance on mobile devices, **UITableView** uses a *reuse pool* of cells. When cells are no longer needed by the system, such as when the user scrolls and cells “fall off” the screen, the table view puts that cell into its reuse pool. If the table view has a cell in the reuse pool, it will give that one to you, dequeuing it from the pool. Otherwise, it will create a new one. Either way, you are guaranteed to get an instance back.

Keep the "Cell" identifier in the back of your mind. We will revisit it shortly.

```
let item = items[indexPath.row]
```

The `tableView(_:cellForRowAt:)` method is called every time the table view needs the data source to configure a cell that will be displayed to the user. The `indexPath` argument indicates which row the table view needs to display. It contains properties for both a `section` and a `row`. As mentioned above, the iTahDoodle table view only has one section, so you can ignore the section and just look up which item to display based on the `row`.

```
cell.textLabel!.text = item
```

Now that you have both a **UITableViewCell** and the to-do list item you want to display, this line sets the `text` property of the cell's `TextLabel` to be equal to the to-do list item.

You are force-unwrapping `textLabel`; not all **UITableViewCells** are guaranteed to have a **textLabel**, but the one you are using does.

```
return cell
```

Finally, the method returns the fully configured cell.

Your **TodoList** is now ready to act as a data source for a **UITableView**. Build your application to make sure you implemented all the methods correctly. You will not see any new behavior yet, because you still need to set up the table view. But you should not see any errors.

Setting Up the UITableView

Your model class is now ready. Return to your controller in `ViewController.swift`. Add an instance of `TodoList` as a new property and change `addButtonPressed(_:)` to add items to `todoList` instead of printing them.

Listing 27.6 Adding the model class to the controller as a property (ViewController.swift)

```
import UIKit

class ViewController: UIViewController {

    @IBOutlet var itemTextField: UITextField!
    @IBOutlet var tableView: UITableView!

    let todoList = TodoList()

    override func viewDidLoad() {
        super.viewDidLoad()
        // Do any additional setup after loading the view, typical
    }

    override func didReceiveMemoryWarning() {
        super.didReceiveMemoryWarning()
        // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
    }

    @IBAction func addButtonPressed(_ sender: UIButton) {
        print("Add to-do item: \(itemTextField.text)")
        guard let todo = itemTextField.text else {
            return
        }
        todoList.add(todo)
    }
}
```

You used a `guard` statement to check that `itemTextField.text` is not nil, storing the string into `text` for use in the rest of the method. If `itemTextField.text` is nil, you just return – there is nothing to add to the to-do list.

Next, you need to configure the table view. The Xcode template that you used to create your project includes a comment directing you where to “do any additional setup after loading the view”: inside `viewDidLoad()`. (The “nib” that the comment refers to is the format your storyboard is compiled into when you build your application.) Add two lines to configure your table view.

Listing 27.7 Configuring the table view (`ViewController.swift`)

```
import UIKit

class ViewController: UIViewController {

    @IBOutlet var itemTextField: UITextField!
    @IBOutlet var tableView: UITableView!

    let todoList = TodoList()

    override func viewDidLoad() {
        super.viewDidLoad()
        // Do any additional setup after loading the view, typical
        tableView.register(UITableViewCell.self, forCellReuseIdentifier: "Cell")
        tableView.dataSource = todoList
    }

    override func didReceiveMemoryWarning() {
        super.didReceiveMemoryWarning()
        // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
    }

    @IBAction func addButtonPressed(_ sender: UIButton) {
        guard let todo = itemTextField.text else {
            return
        }
        todoList.add(todo)
    }
}
```

The first line you added tells the table view what to do when the data source tries to dequeue a reusable cell with the identifier "Cell" (which is the identifier you used in `TodoList`). Specifically, it registers the class **UITableViewCell**, which tells the table view to create instances of **UITableViewCell**. The second line tells the table view that the `todoList` is its data source.

There is one more step to finish the controller. Whenever the data source changes, the table view needs to be notified. In **addButtonPressed(_:)**, tell the table view to reload its data after you add the new item to the to-do list.

Listing 27.8 Notifying the view to reload data (`ViewController.swift`)

```
import UIKit

class ViewController: UIViewController {
```

```
@IBOutlet var itemTextField: UITextField!
@IBOutlet var tableView: UITableView!

let todoList = TodoList()

override func viewDidLoad() {
    super.viewDidLoad()
    // Do any additional setup after loading the view, typical
    tableView.register(UITableViewCell.self, forCellReuseIdentifier: "cell")
    tableView.dataSource = todoList
}

override func didReceiveMemoryWarning() {
    super.didReceiveMemoryWarning()
    // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
}

@IBAction func addButtonPressed(_ sender: UIButton) {
    guard let todo = itemTextField.text else {
        return
    }
    todoList.add(todo)
    tableView.reloadData()
}
}
```

Build and run your application. Type in your text field and tap Insert. You should see items populate the table view below.

Saving and Loading TodoList

iTahDoodle is now functional. Unfortunately, it forgets the to-do list every time the app is launched. You need to add the ability for **TodoList** to save and load its state.

Saving TodoList

In [Chapter 26](#), you implemented document saving and loading by taking advantage of features of the **NSDocument** class. Document-based Mac apps follow patterns (both in the code and the user interface) that have existed for years in OS X and macOS. Most iOS apps, on the other hand, do not operate on documents. iTahDoodle definitely does not – there is a single to-do list, and the user will expect it to stick around.

All iOS applications live inside of an *application sandbox*. This means that your app cannot see files created by other applications, and vice versa. Another side effect of the sandbox is that the directories you should use to store files can change. Because you want to save a file containing the contents of the to-do list, the first thing you need to do is ask iOS where you should store files. Add a new property, computed from a closure, to **TodoList**.

Listing 27.9 Asking iOS where to store files (TodoList.swift**)**

```
import UIKit
```

```
class TodoList: NSObject {
    private let fileURL: URL = {
        let documentDirectoryURLs = FileManager.default.urls(
            for: .documentDirectory, in: .userDomainMask)
        let documentDirectoryURL = documentDirectoryURLs.first!
        return documentDirectoryURL.appendingPathComponent("todolist")
    }()
    ...
    private var items: [String] = []
    func add(_ item: String) {
        items.append(item)
    }
}
```

The first line of the closure asks the default **FileManager** (a class that lets you interact with iOS's filesystem) to give you an array of URLs containing the user's document directories. The next line gets the first element out of the returned array, making use of force-unwrapping because iOS will always return the app's documents directory in the array. Finally, you return a new URL that contains the filename `todolist.items` appended to the user's documents directory.

Next, add a method to actually save the to-do list items.

Listing 27.10 Saving the to-do list (`TodoList.swift`)

```
import UIKit

class TodoList: NSObject {
    private let fileURL: URL = {
        let documentDirectoryURLs = FileManager.default.urls(
            for: .documentDirectory, in: .userDomainMask)
        let documentDirectoryURL = documentDirectoryURLs.first!
        return documentDirectoryURL.appendingPathComponent("todc")
    }()

    fileprivate var items: [String] = []

    func saveItems() {
        let itemsArray = items as NSArray

        print("Saving items to \(fileURL)")
        if !itemsArray.write(to: fileURL, atomically: true) {
            print("Could not save to-do list")
        }
    }

    func add(_ item: String) {
        items.append(item)
        saveItems()
    }
}
...
```

The `saveItems()` method first gets the URL using the function you just wrote. Next, you cast the `items` array into an `NSArray`. This is so you can call a method that exists on `NSArrays` but not Swift arrays. You then call that method – `write(to:atomically:)` – on `NSArray`. The method attempts to save the contents of the array to the given URL and returns a `Bool` indicating whether it succeeded.

You also add a call to `saveItems()` in `add(_:)`. Saving the full item list every time you add a new item is not ideal. It would be better to only save the items when the app is about to close, but for the purposes of iTahDoodle, saving after every addition is fine.

Build and run your application. Add some items to the to-do list. You should see a logged message after each addition documenting that the to-do list has been saved.

Loading TodoList

Loading saved to-do lists uses many of the same features as saving them. Add a **loadItems()** method to **TodoList**.

Listing 27.11 Loading a saved to-do list (TodoList.swift**)**

```
import UIKit

class TodoList: NSObject {
    private let fileURL: URL = {
        let documentDirectoryURLs = FileManager.default.urls(
            for: .documentDirectory, in: .userDomainMask)
        let documentDirectoryURL = documentDirectoryURLs.first!
        return documentDirectoryURL.appendingPathComponent("todc")
    }()

    fileprivate var items: [String] = []

    func saveItems() {
        let itemsArray = items as NSArray

        print("Saving items to \(fileURL)")
        if !itemsArray.write(to: fileURL, atomically: true) {
            print("Could not save to-do list")
        }
    }

    func loadItems() {
        if let itemsArray = NSArray(contentsOf: fileURL) as? [String] {
            items = itemsArray
        }
    }

    func add(_ item: String) {
        items.append(item)
        saveItems()
    }
}

...
```

The **loadItems()** method first grabs the same file URL that you saved the items to in **saveItems()**. Next, you attempt to construct an **NSArray** using its initializer, which expects a URL from which the array should be loaded. If the array can be constructed and you can cast the array to **[String]**, you store it in **TodoList**'s **items** property.

You can now load the saved to-do list, but when should you do so? The simplest answer is to attempt to load the saved items when you first create a **TodoList**. So far, you have been

taking advantage of the no-argument initializer provided automatically, but now you need to write an explicit initializer.

Listing 27.12 Adding an explicit initializer (`TodoList.swift`)

```
import UIKit

class TodoList: NSObject {
    private let fileURL: URL = {
        let documentDirectoryURLs = FileManager.default.urls(
            for: .documentDirectory, in: .userDomainMask)
        let documentDirectoryURL = documentDirectoryURLs.first!
        return documentDirectoryURL.appendingPathComponent("todc")
    }()

    fileprivate var items: [String] = []

    override init() {
        super.init()
        loadItems()
    }
    ...
}
```

You add a new `init()` method that overrides `NSObject`'s initializer. In the implementation, you call the superclass initializer, which you are required to do before you access `self` in any way (for example, by calling methods). Finally, you attempt to load the saved items. If loading fails, the `TodoList` will be created with an empty `items` array.

And with that, you are now the proud author of your first iOS application! There is much more to learn about iOS development. This chapter has just been a small taste of what awaits you.

Bronze Challenge

There are a couple of small – but annoying – bugs in iTahDoodle. First, when you add a new item to the to-do list, the text field is not cleared: It keeps the text you just added to the list. Second, you are able to add empty rows to the to-do list by tapping `Insert` when the text field is empty. Fix both of these bugs.

Silver Challenge

Your **ViewController** class is currently taking on a little too much responsibility. When it is setting up the table view, the view controller is registering the cell class and reuse identifier, but **TodoList** is the class that actually wants to use the created cells. Fix this problem by coming up with a way for **ViewController** to successfully set up the table view without having to know the details of what kind of cells **TodoList** is going to want.

Gold Challenge

There is a pretty glaring omission in iTahDoodle: The user cannot remove items! Make it possible for users to remove an item by tapping on it. You already know enough to update **TodoList**. Here is a hint about how to detect when the user taps on a row: Make your view controller the table view's *delegate*. This will require conforming to the **UITableViewDelegate** protocol. **UITableViewDelegate** has a method that will be very useful for this challenge: Tapping on a row results in *selection* of that row.

Interoperability

Because Swift is a very new language, it will be common in your development career to work on an existing project implemented in Objective-C. After all, there are many years of app development behind us at this point. If you want to continue development using Swift on projects originally developed in Objective-C, you will need to learn how to make the two languages work together.

This chapter will show you exactly that. If you are not familiar with Objective-C, just follow along and type in the code. Not knowing Objective-C will not stop you from understanding the basic mechanics of interoperability. If you would like to learn more about Objective-C, check out the latest edition of *Objective-C Programming: The Big Nerd Ranch Guide*.

In addition to adding Swift code to an existing Objective-C project, you may need to use the two languages together if you have a Swift project that needs to either interact with the Cocoa or Cocoa Touch software development kits (SDKs) or take advantage of Objective-C.

As you saw in [Chapter 26](#) and [Chapter 27](#), all Mac and iOS apps will need to interact with the Cocoa or Cocoa Touch frameworks. These frameworks provide the basic building blocks for developing Mac and iOS apps, and are mostly written in Objective-C, so using them means interoperating with Objective-C, which affects how you write Swift code.

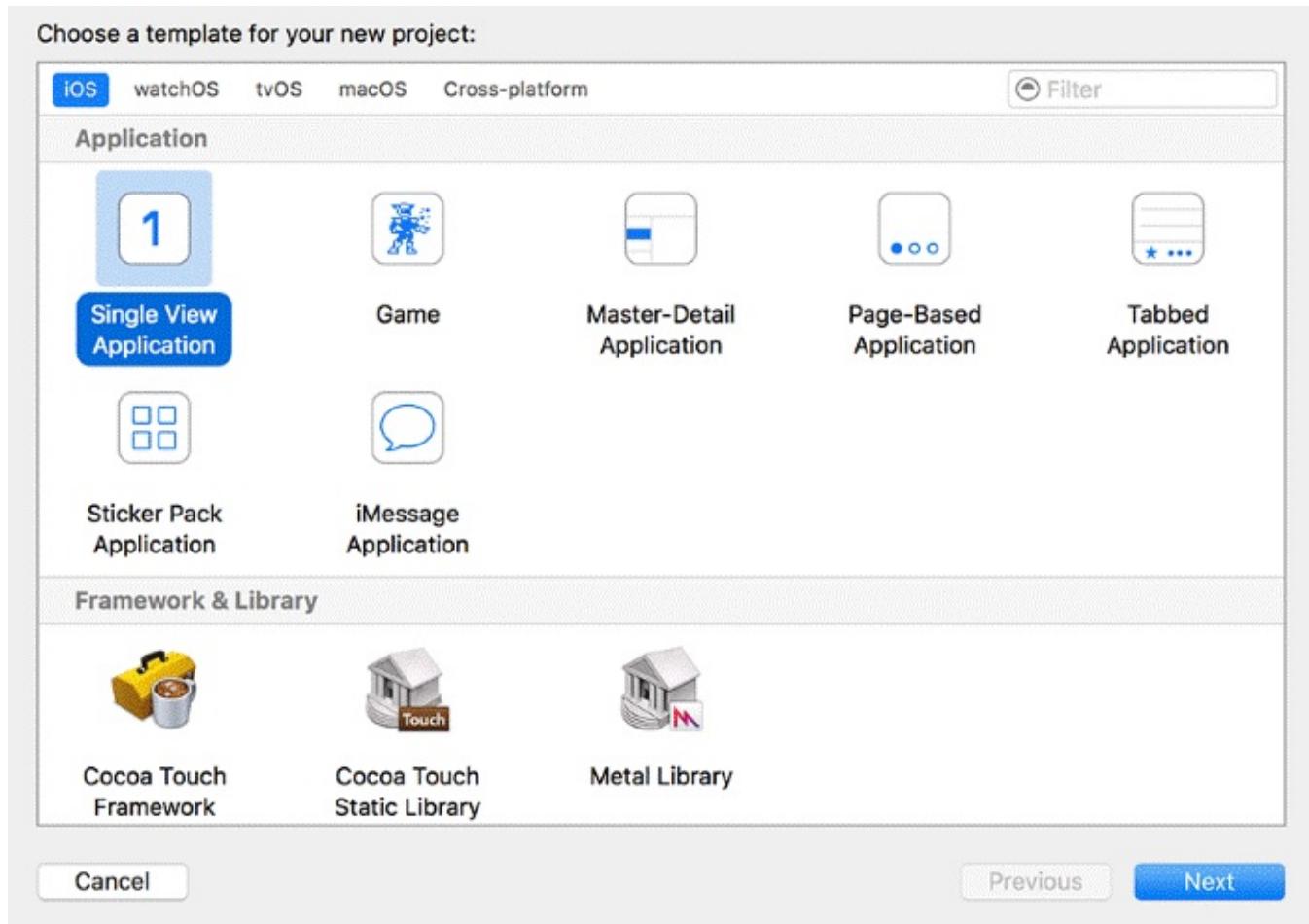
To see how this works, you will start by writing a small application in Objective-C. Next, you will add a Swift file to that project to define a Swift class and use it in an Objective-C file. Finally, you will create another Objective-C class and use that class in your Swift code.

An Objective-C Project

To illustrate interoperability, you are going to create a simple version of the iOS Contacts application. The project will begin in Objective-C, and later you will incorporate some new Swift code.

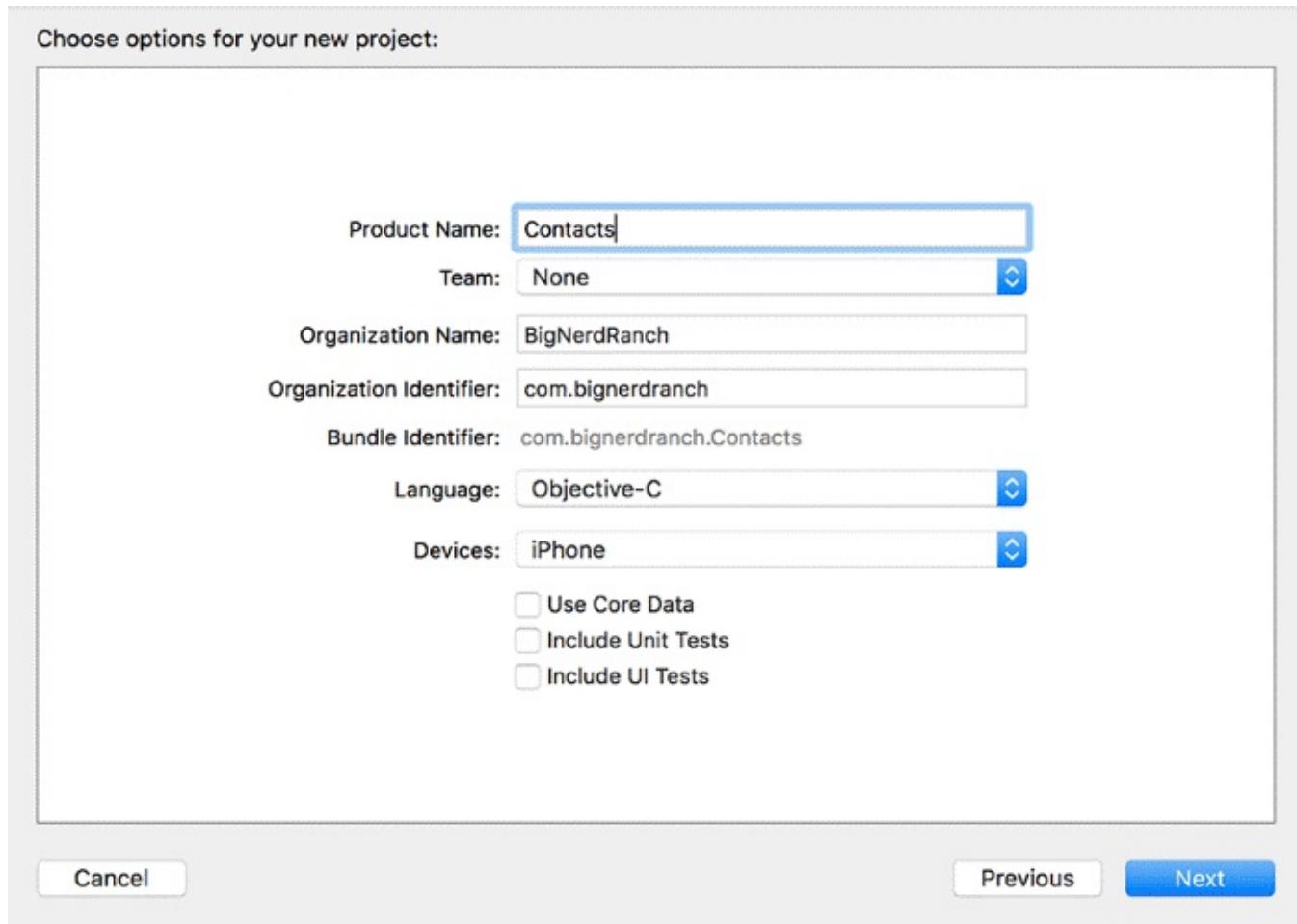
Create a new Xcode project. Select iOS at the top of the template-selection window, then choose the Single View template from the Application section ([Figure 28.1](#)).

Figure 28.1 The single view application template



Name the project **Contacts** and make sure that the language selection is Objective-C ([Figure 28.2](#)).

Figure 28.2 Setting project options



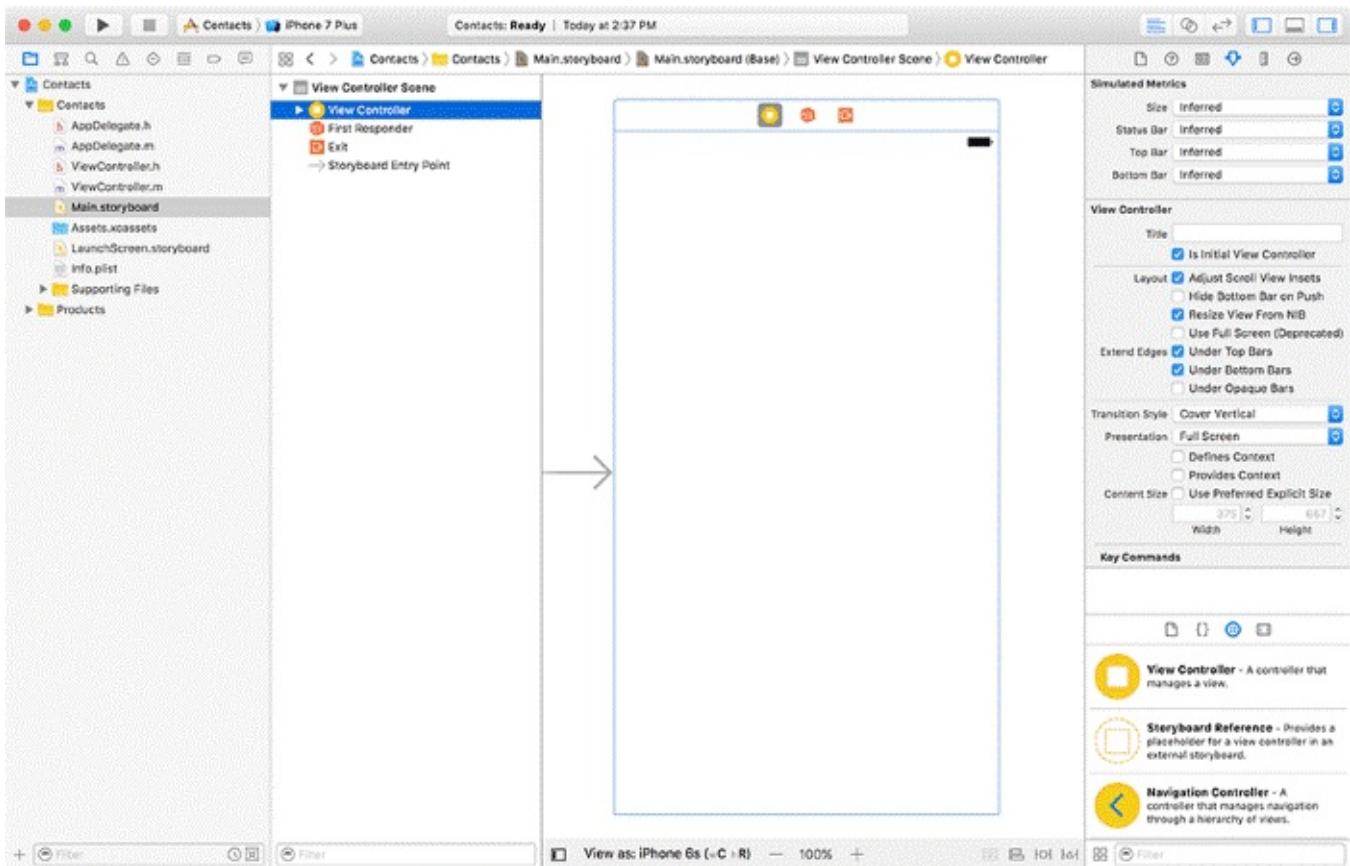
Click Next, choose a location to save your project, and click Create.

Creating a contacts app

Begin your simple contacts organizer application by adding a table to your main view in the storyboard. This table will hold a list of hardcoded contacts. Remember, a storyboard is an interface provided by Xcode that allows you to manage your views and their relationships.

Open `Main.storyboard`. Your first step is to delete the view controller that came with the template, as you will not be using it. Select the view controller in the document outline ([Figure 28.3](#)).

Figure 28.3 Deleting a view controller scene



With the view controller selected, press Delete.

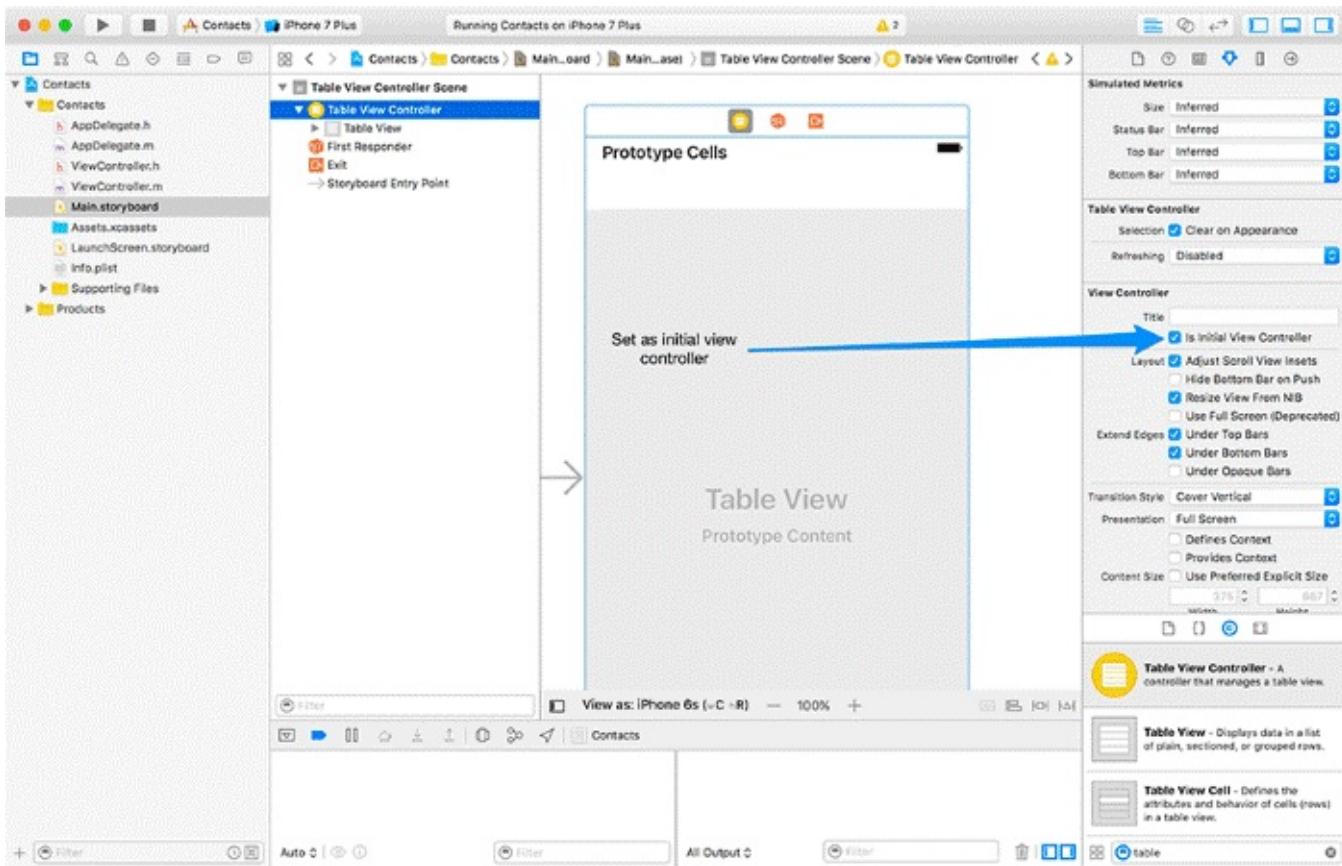
Deleting this scene was a necessary step, but it introduced a problem. The scene that you deleted was the application's point of entry upon launch. Therefore, your app no longer has an initial view to display.

In fact, if you try to build and run your application now, you will see the following message log to the console: Failed to instantiate the default view controller for `UIStoryboardFile 'Main'` - perhaps the designated entry point is not set? Fix this problem by adding a new default view controller.

Open the object library and search for “table.” Drag a Table View Controller onto your storyboard’s canvas.

You have now added a new view controller to your storyboard, but you have not yet made it the default. Select the table view controller and open the attributes inspector. Check the box to make the table view controller the initial view controller ([Figure 28.4](#)).

Figure 28.4 The attribute inspector



Try running your app now: no error, just an empty table view. To display data in this table view, you need to give the table view a data source, as you saw in [Chapter 27](#).

The first step is to associate the table view controller scene with the **ViewController** class that the template provided. This class was originally associated with the scene that you deleted. Because this relationship was broken when you deleted the view controller's scene, you need to associate this class with the **UITableViewcontroller** in the storyboard. (You could create a brand-new view controller class, but it is simpler to adapt the one that was provided by the template.)

Your first step in adapting the class will be to change its name from the overly generic **ViewController** to **ContactsViewController**. This name more concretely describes its purpose. Click on **ViewController.h** in the project navigator. Its contents should look like this:

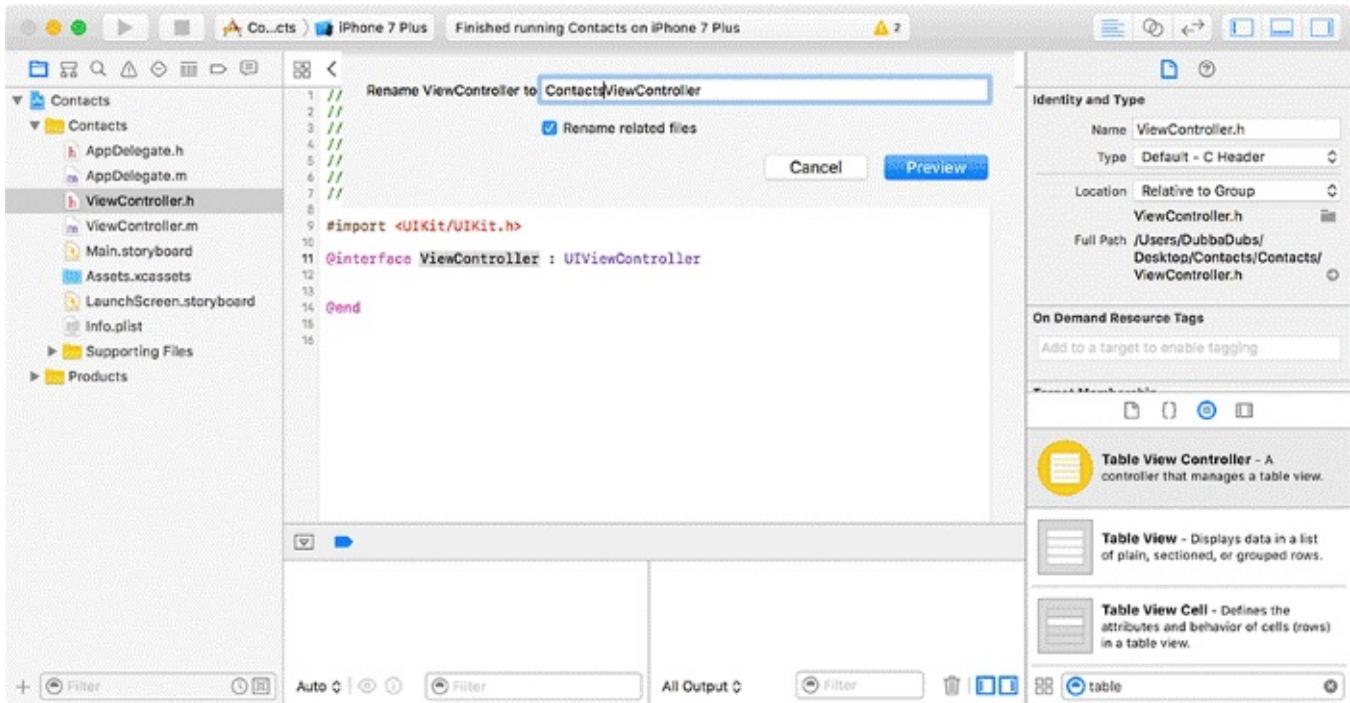
```
#import <UIKit/UIKit.h>
```

```
@interface ViewController : UIViewController
```

```
@end
```

To rename the class, right-click on **ViewController** in the file and select Refactor → Rename... from the pop-up. In the sheet that pops up, change **ViewController** to **ContactsViewController**, as shown in [Figure 28.5](#).

Figure 28.5 Renaming ViewController



Click Preview, and the sheet will expand to display the changes that will be made. Click Save. (If Xcode asks you if you would like to enable snapshotting, click Enable to proceed.)

Now that your class has a more specific name, the next step is to change its superclass to be **UITableViewController**, the kind of controller you added to your storyboard.

Listing 28.1 Changing the superclass (**ContactsViewController.h**)

```
#import <UIKit/UIKit.h>

@interface ContactsViewController : UIViewController UITableView

@end
```

Now that you have adapted this view controller, you can put it to work. It will be responsible for populating the app’s table view with contacts. Your class **ContactsViewController** inherits from **UITableViewController**, which makes it ideal for displaying lists. In this case, you want to display a list of contact names.

To make contact names display in the table view, the table view controller will need to know what contacts should be displayed and it will need to serve as the table view’s data source.

UITableViewController conforms to the **UITableViewDataSource** protocol. Conformance requires that you implement two methods, but before you do this you will create an array containing some hardcoded strings for contact names. Switch to **ContactsViewController.m** to add a property for this array in the class extension. Give this array some data in **initWithCoder:**.

Listing 28.2 Hardcoding contact names (**ContactsViewController.m**)

```
#import "ContactsViewController.h"
```

```

@interface ContactsViewController ()  

@property (nonatomic, readonly, strong) NSMutableArray *contacts;  

@end  

@implementation ContactsViewController  

- (id)initWithCoder:(NSCoder *)aDecoder {  

    self = [super initWithCoder:aDecoder];  

    if (self) {  

        NSArray *contactArray = @[@"Johnny Appleseed",  

                                @"Paul Bunyan",  

                                @"Calamity Jane"];  

        _contacts = [NSMutableArray arrayWithArray:contactArray];  

    }  

    return self;  

}  

- (void)viewDidLoad {  

    [super viewDidLoad];  

    // Do any additional setup after loading the view, typically  

}  

- (void)didReceiveMemoryWarning {  

    [super didReceiveMemoryWarning];  

    // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.  

}  

@end

```

This mutable array, named `contacts`, contains a small list of strings for contacts that you will display on the table view. To get these names in the table, you will need to implement the required methods in the **UITableViewDataSource** protocol. Add the following method implementations to populate the table with data.

Listing 28.3 Implementing required methods for protocol conformance (`ContactsViewController.m`)

```

...
- (void)viewDidLoad {  

    [super viewDidLoad];  

    // Do any additional setup after loading the view, typically  

    [self.tableView registerClass:[UITableViewCell class]  

        forCellReuseIdentifier:@"UITableViewCell"];
}

```

```

- (void)didReceiveMemoryWarning {
    [super didReceiveMemoryWarning];
    // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
}

- (NSInteger)tableView:(UITableView *)tableView
 numberOfRowsInSection:(NSInteger)section
{
    return self.contacts.count;
}

- (UITableViewCell *)tableView:(UITableView *)tableView
cellForRowAtIndexPath:(NSIndexPath *)indexPath
{
    UITableViewCell *cell = [tableView
        dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier:@"
forIndexPath:indexPath];
    NSString *contact = self.contacts[indexPath.row];
    cell.textLabel.text = contact;
    return cell;
}

```

@end

Here, you register the **UITableViewCell** class with the table view controller's **tableView** property so the table view knows how to create new cells and reuse existing ones. Next, you use the **contacts** property to determine the number of rows the table view needs to provide in **tableView:numberOfRowsInSection:**. You also ask the table view for an instance of **UITableViewCell**, if necessary, in **tableView:cellForRowAtIndexPath:**. In this data source method, you use the current **indexPath** to put the appropriate contact name in the cell instance. Finally, you return the cell to display it in the table view.

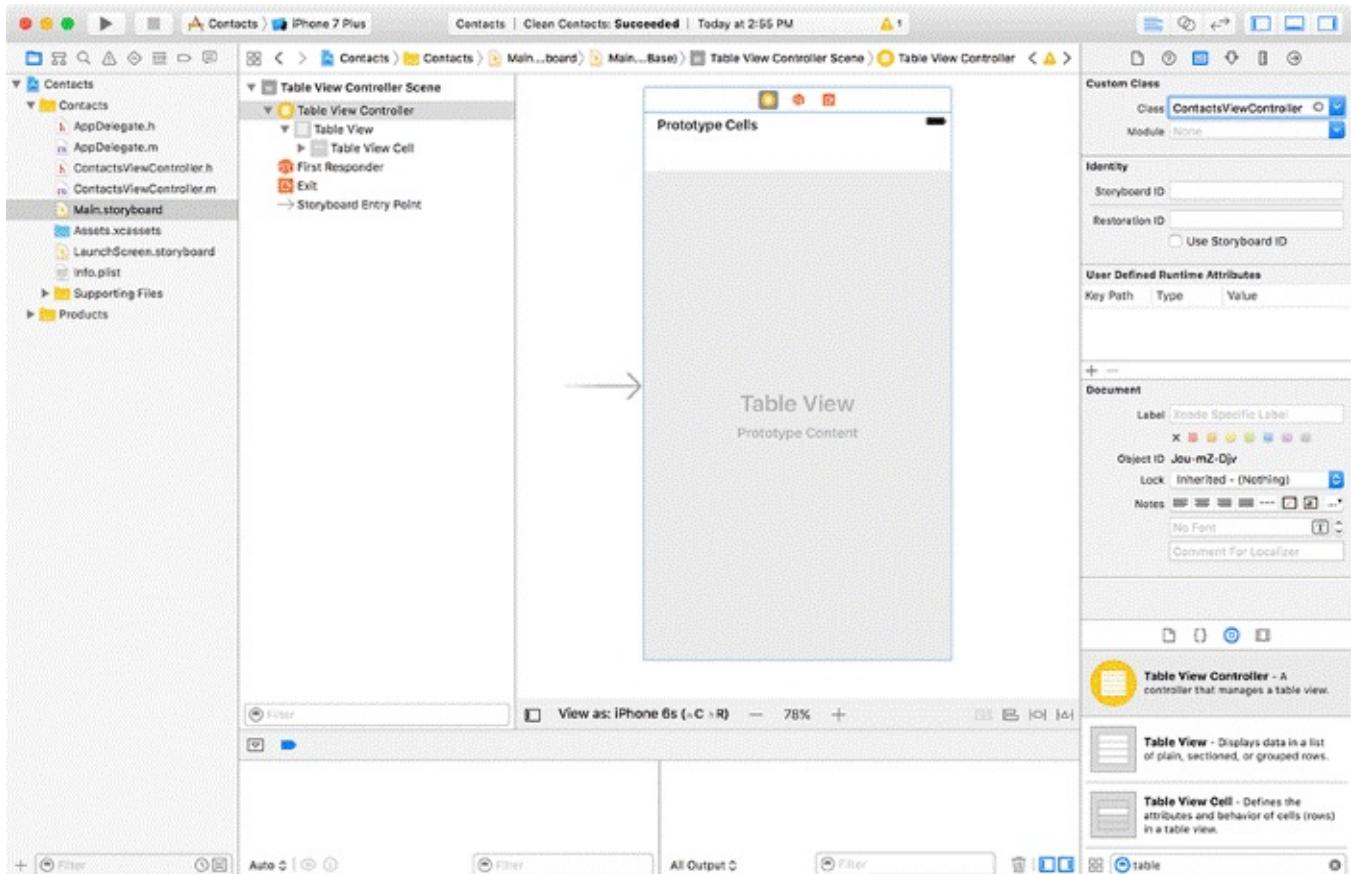
Build and run the application. Your contact names are not displayed on the table. You made **ContactsViewController** the table view's data source and gave it contacts data. What is the problem? One thing is missing: You have not yet associated the table view controller scene in the storyboard with the class that contains the data source code.

You can make this association in the **Main.storyboard** file. Open the storyboard and click on the table view controller scene. Make sure to have the utilities area displayed. In the inspector pane, click on the identity inspector icon, which is third from the left.

Find the section labeled **Custom Class**. This section provides a **Class** field to identify the custom class that should be associated with the scene. Currently, that class is defaulting to **UITableViewController**, which is why your table view is not displaying your contact names.

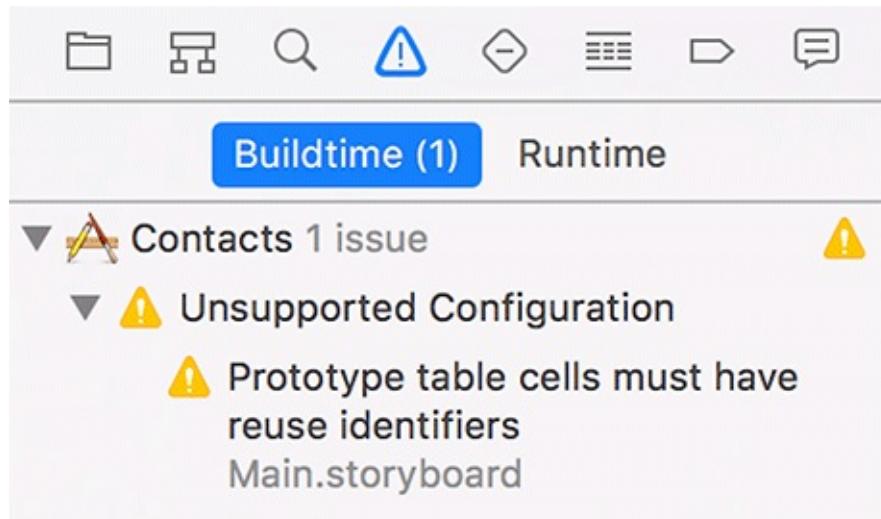
Change the value of this field to be **ContactsViewController**. Your storyboard should now look like the screen shown in [Figure 28.6](#).

Figure 28.6 Table view controller scene's custom class



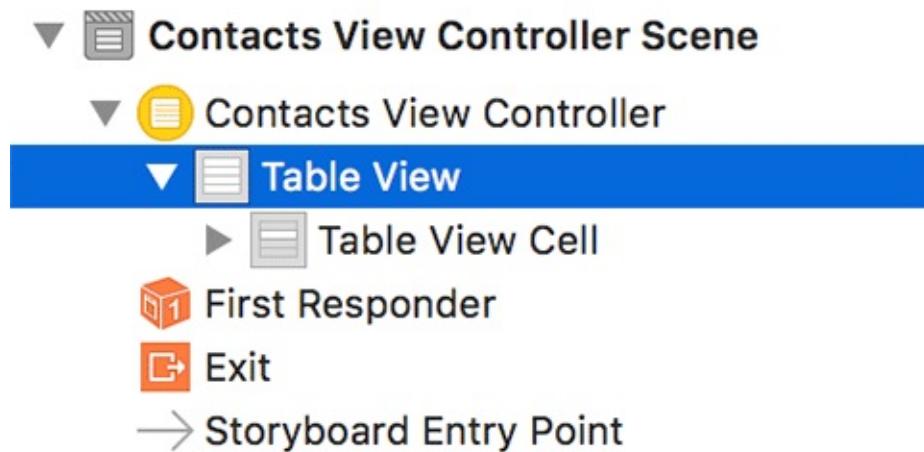
While you are here, you can take care of the warning coming from the storyboard. At the top of the project navigator, choose the issue navigator icon, which is fourth from the left ([Figure 28.7](#)). This navigator displays your project's current warnings and errors.

Figure 28.7 Displaying issues in the issue navigator



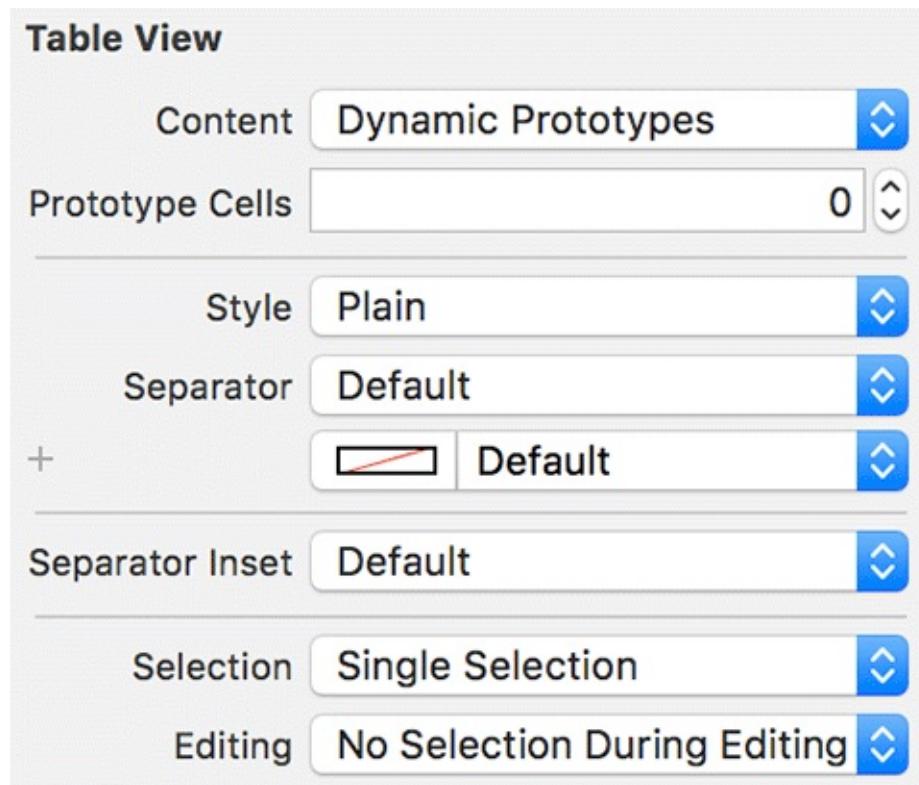
The issue navigator shows a warning from `Main.storyboard` that you need to give your prototype table cells a reuse identifier. Because you are not using the prototype cells feature on the storyboard, you can resolve this issue by telling the table view that it will not use prototype cells. Make sure that the document outline is displayed and expand the `Contacts View Controller` so that you can see its hierarchy, as in [Figure 28.8](#).

Figure 28.8 Table view outline in storyboard



Select the table view and make sure that the utilities area is displayed. In the inspector pane, select the attributes inspector. Find the field for `Prototype Cells` and change the number to 0 ([Figure 28.9](#)).

Figure 28.9 Changing the prototype cells in storyboard



The warning disappears. Build and run the application, and you should see data populate the table view, as in [Figure 28.10](#).

Figure 28.10 Displaying the contacts

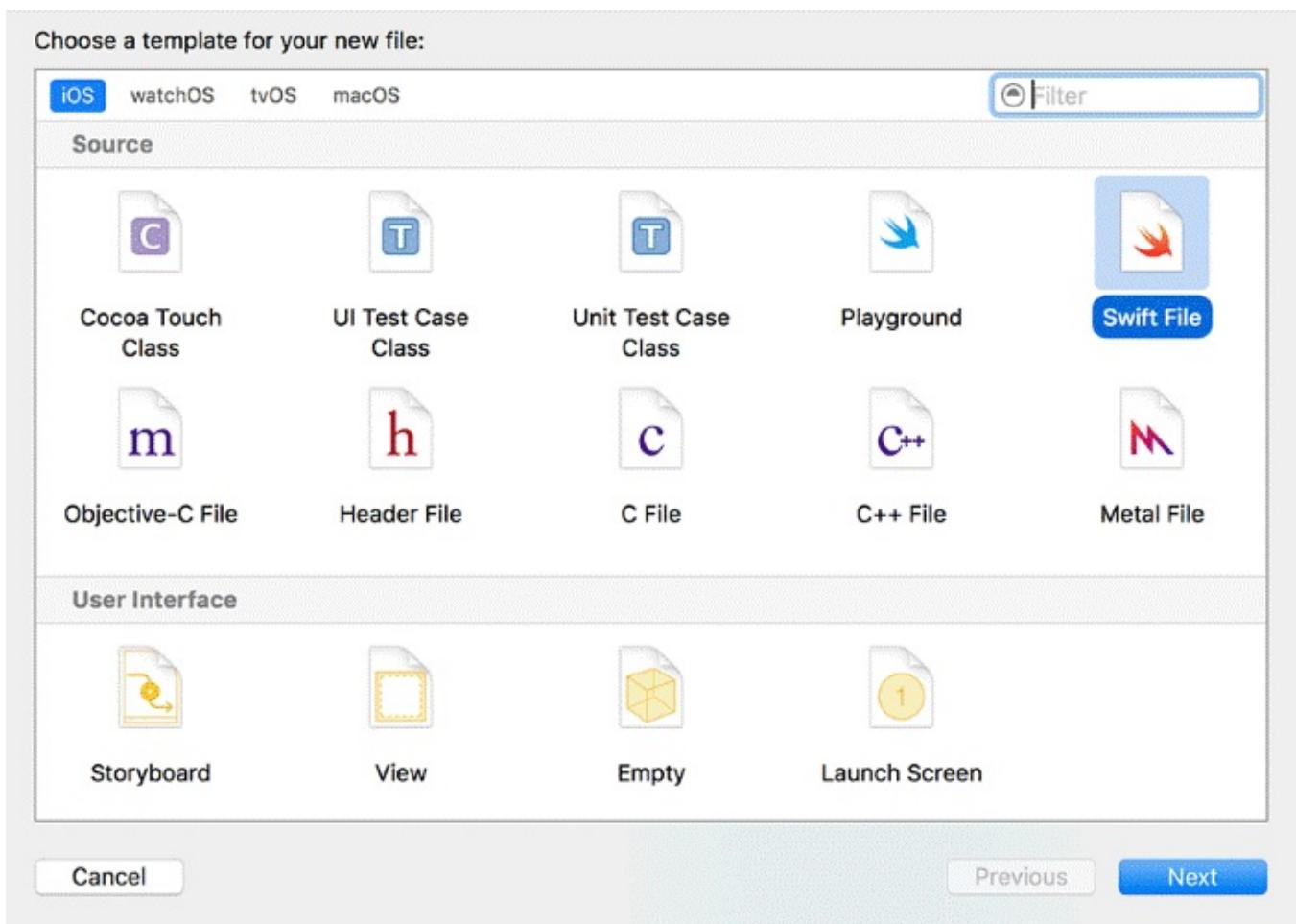


Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project

Now that you have a small Objective-C project working, it is time to add some Swift files. Imagine, for example, that you have an epiphany: It would be far better not to hardcode your contacts as strings in an array. Instead, you could create a **Contact** type and then display the contacts' names in the table. You decide to use Swift for your new type because you heard how safe its initialization process is, and you want to take advantage of it.

Add a new Swift file to your project. Click File → New → File.... In the window that pops up, make sure iOS is selected at the top. Select Swift File under the Source label and click Next ([Figure 28.11](#)).

Figure 28.11 Adding a new Swift file



In the next window, name the file `Contact.swift`. Also, make sure the box at the bottom that adds the new file to the Contacts target is checked. Click Create.

Because you are now adding a Swift file to your Objective-C project, Xcode asks if you would like to configure an *Objective-C bridging header* ([Figure 28.12](#)).

Figure 28.12 Would you like to configure an Objective-C bridging header?



The bridging header is used to “bridge” from Objective-C code to Swift code. Click **Create Bridging Header**. Xcode will create your new Swift file, **Contact.swift**, as well as **Contacts-Bridging-Header.h** – the Objective-C bridging header file.

Find and select the **Contacts-Bridging-Header.h** file in the project navigator. You will see that it is empty except for the following comments.

Listing 28.4 Looking at **Contacts-Bridging-Header.h**

```
//  
// Use this file to import your target's public headers  
// that you would like to expose to Swift.  
//
```

As you can see, nothing is entered to this file for you. Later in this chapter, you will add an import of the header file of a class written in Objective-C that you would like to expose to Swift. That is the role of the bridging header.

But that comes later. Now, it is time to create your **Contact** class. Switch to the **Contact.swift** file and add the following code.

Listing 28.5 Creating the **Contact class (**Contact.swift**)**

```
import Foundation
```

```
class Contact: NSObject {  
    let name: String  
    init(name: String) {  
        self.name = name  
        super.init()  
    }  
}
```

Your new class inherits from **NSObject**, which allows it to be exposed to the Objective-C portion of the application. Subclassing from an Objective-C class is necessary to call Swift code from Objective-C. In this example, you subclass from **NSObject**, which is the base class in Objective-C. **Contact**’s simple implementation includes a **name** property for instances of this class and an initializer with a **name** parameter to help prepare the instance.

If this project were written solely in Swift, you would probably want to make **Contact** a struct. However, this would not work for your mixed Objective-C/Swift project, because Swift’s structs are not visible to Objective-C.

Now that you have written the class, you are ready to use it in your Objective-C code. You are

going to change **ContactsViewController** to maintain an array of **Contact** objects rather than an array of **Strings**.

First, you need to import an Xcode-generated header file into **ContactsViewController.m**. This will allow you to use your new Swift **Contact** class in the table view controller.

Listing 28.6 Importing the Contacts-Swift.h header file (ContactsViewController.m)

```
#import "ContactsViewController.h"
#import "Contacts-Swift.h"

@interface ContactsViewController : UIViewController

@property (nonatomic, readonly, strong) NSMutableArray *contacts

@end
...
```

This header file, **Contacts-Swift.h**, exposes your Swift code to the file that imports it. It contains interfaces for your Swift code to share with the Objective-C component of your application.

The naming convention for these header files is: **ProductName-Swift.h**. Here, the product name is **Contacts** – as is the module name, because this application has a single target. Thus, the name for your generated header is **Contacts-Swift.h**.

Now that the **Contact** class is visible in **ContactsViewController.m**, change the **contacts** array to hold instances of the **Contact** class instead of hardcoded strings. Also, be sure to use contact's name in the data source method, **tableView:cellForRowAtIndexPath:**.

Listing 28.7 Updating the contacts array (ContactsViewController.m)

```
#import "ContactsViewController.h"
#import "Contacts-Swift.h"

@interface ContactsViewController : UIViewController

@property (nonatomic, readonly, strong) NSMutableArray *contacts

@end

@implementation ContactsViewController

- (id)initWithCoder:(NSCoder *)aDecoder {
    self = [super initWithCoder:aDecoder];
    if (self) {
        // Initialize contacts array
        NSMutableArray *tempArray = [[NSMutableArray alloc] init];
        Contact *contact1 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"John Doe" andPhone:@"555-1234"];
        Contact *contact2 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Jane Doe" andPhone:@"555-2345"];
        Contact *contact3 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Bob Smith" andPhone:@"555-3456"];
        Contact *contact4 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Alice Johnson" andPhone:@"555-4567"];
        Contact *contact5 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Mike Williams" andPhone:@"555-5678"];
        Contact *contact6 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Sarah Davis" andPhone:@"555-6789"];
        Contact *contact7 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"David Wilson" andPhone:@"555-7890"];
        Contact *contact8 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Emily Clark" andPhone:@"555-8901"];
        Contact *contact9 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Kevin Green" andPhone:@"555-9012"];
        Contact *contact10 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:@"Linda Brown" andPhone:@"555-0123"];
        [tempArray addObject:contact1];
        [tempArray addObject:contact2];
        [tempArray addObject:contact3];
        [tempArray addObject:contact4];
        [tempArray addObject:contact5];
        [tempArray addObject:contact6];
        [tempArray addObject:contact7];
        [tempArray addObject:contact8];
        [tempArray addObject:contact9];
        [tempArray addObject:contact10];
        self.contacts = tempArray;
    }
}
```

```

NSArray *contactArray = @[@"Johnny Appleseed",  

    @"Paul Bunyan",  

    @"Calamity Jane"];  

Contact *c1 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName: @"Johnny Ap  

Contact *c2 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName: @"Paul Buny  

Contact *c3 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName: @"Calamity .  

_contacts = [NSMutableArray arrayWithArray:contactArray ()  

}  

    return self;  

}  

...  

- (UITableViewCell *)tableView:(UITableView *)tableView  

    cellForRowAtIndexPath:(NSIndexPath *)indexPath  

{  

    UITableViewCell *cell = [tableView  

        dequeueReusableCellWithIdentifier:@"  

        forIndexPath:indexPath];  

NSString Contact *contact = self.contacts[indexPath.row];  

    cell.textLabel.text = contact.name;  

    return cell;  

}

```

Build and run the application. You should see the same results on the simulator.

Adding contacts

You are now using your new Swift type, but you are still hardcoding the contacts' names. This practice is obviously unsustainable – what if a user wants to add a contact? Your application needs a mechanism to add new contacts.

Begin by removing your hardcoded contacts. Instead, initialize an empty `contacts` array to be filled with data later.

Listing 28.8 Replacing hardcoded contact names with an array (ContactsViewController.m)

```

...  

- (id)initWithCoder:(NSCoder *)aDecoder {  

    self = [super initWithCoder:aDecoder];  

    if (self) {  

        Contact *c1 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName: @"Johnny Ap  

        Contact *c2 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName: @"Paul Buny  

        ...
}

```

```

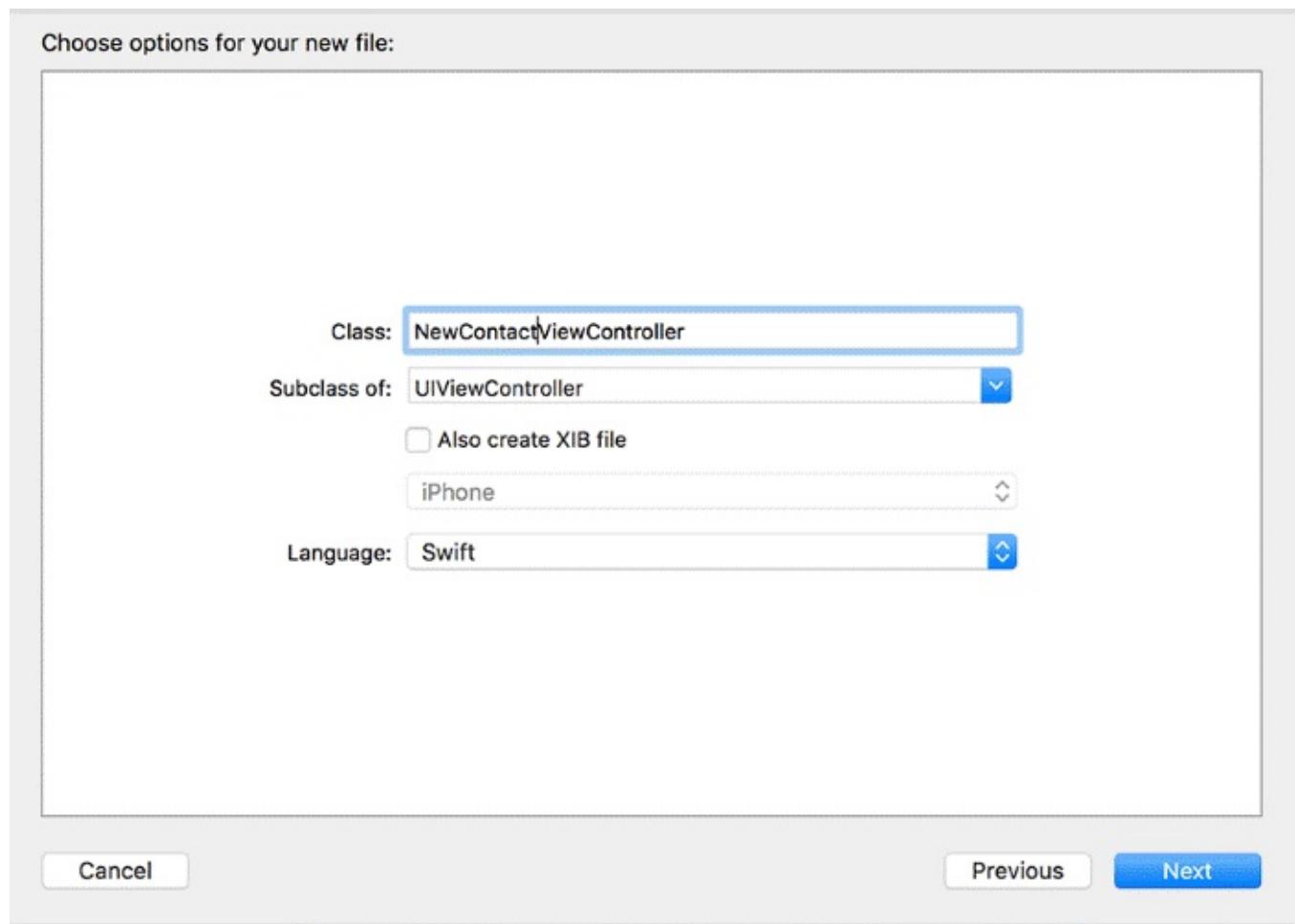
    Contact *c3 = [[Contact alloc] initWithName: @"Calamity"];
    _contacts = [NSMutableArray arrayWithArray: @[c1, c2, c3]];
    _contacts = [NSMutableArray array];
}
return self;
}
...

```

Next, create a new file that will be a new view controller to handle contact creation.

When you are asked to choose a template for the new file, select **Cocoa Touch Class** under the **Source** label in the **iOS** section. You are going to subclass a class available in **UIKit**, which is only available for iOS projects. Name this new file **NewContactViewController**, and make it a subclass of **UIViewController**. Also, make sure to choose Swift as the language ([Figure 28.13](#)).

Figure 28.13 Subclassing UIViewController



Click **Next** and make sure to create the file with the project's target selected.

You are going to fill in the details of this new class, **NewContactViewController**, in just a bit. For now, switch to the **Main.storyboard** file and select the contacts view controller. You need to add something to the view that a user can select to add a new contact. You will add a navigation bar to the top of the view with a button to launch **NewContactViewController**.

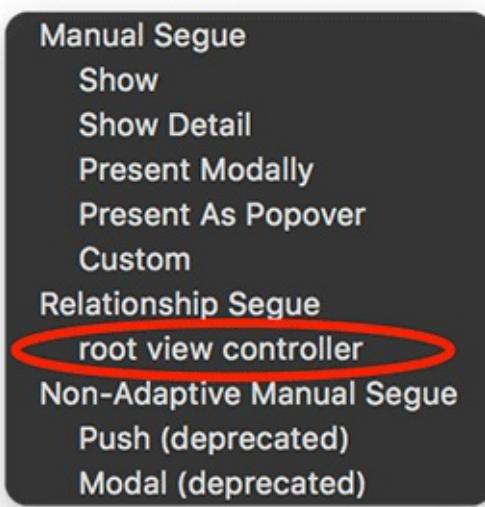
The simplest way to do this is to add a **UINavigationController** as the initial view controller of the storyboard. Search for a navigation controller in the object library. Drag one of these onto the storyboard canvas.

Dropping a **UINavigationController** object onto the storyboard gives you a navigation controller with a root view controller scene. You do not really need this extra scene. In fact, you have already created a root view controller – contacts view controller. Delete the root view controller scene.

Next, make the navigation controller the initial view controller. In the document outline, expand Navigation Controller Scene and select Navigation Controller. Open the attributes inspector and check the Is Initial View Controller box.

Note that this change means that the app currently has no way to display the contacts view controller scene. Fix this by creating a *relationship segue* between the navigation controller and the contacts view controller. Select the navigation controller scene and Control-drag from the navigation controller to the contacts view controller. In the pop-up, choose the root view controller option from the Relationship Segue section ([Figure 28.14](#)).

Figure 28.14 Setting the root view controller

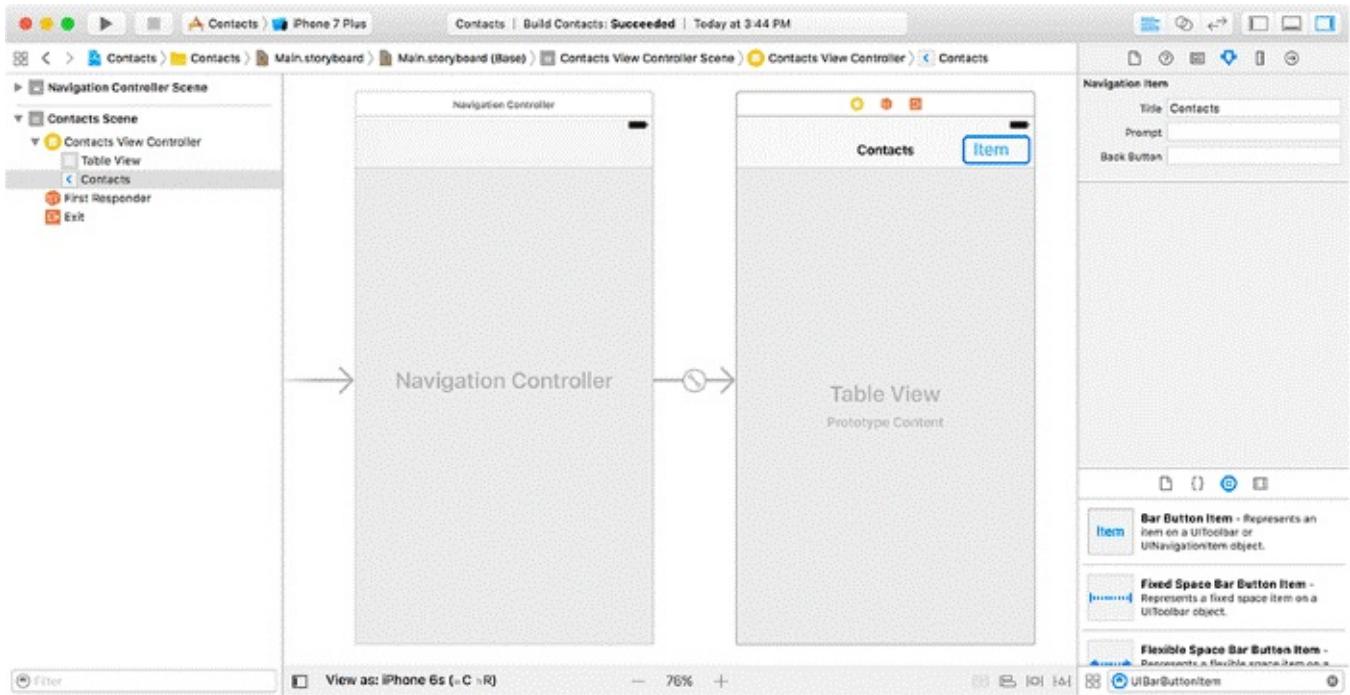


Your app is now living inside of a navigation controller. This means that every view controller inside of the navigation controller will have a configurable **UINavigationItem**, which gives access to a **title** property that can be set in the storyboard. In the document outline, click on the contacts view controller scene's navigation item. Find the field in the attributes inspector for the item's **title**. Enter **Contacts** into this field.

If you build and run the application, you will see the same empty table view, but it will now be included in a navigation controller and will have a navigation item with **Contacts** as the title.

Next, add a button to the navigation bar. Search for a “**UIBarButtonItem**” in the object library. Drag an instance of this type onto the righthand side of the contacts view controller scene's navigation item ([Figure 28.15](#)).

Figure 28.15 Adding a bar button item to the navigation item

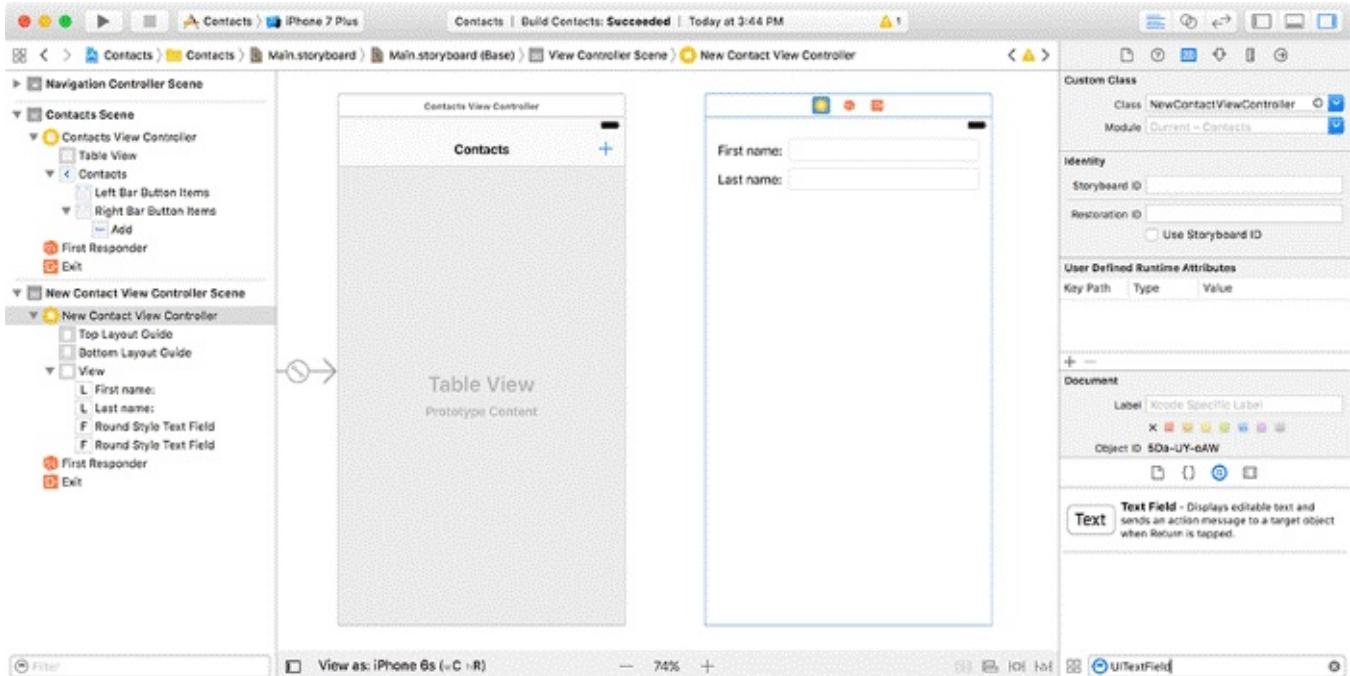


Select the new **UIBarButtonItem** and change its appearance. In the attributes inspector, change the button's identifier from Custom to Add. The button changes to a graphic plus symbol.

You want this bar button item to launch a new view that is dedicated to creating a new contact. Drag a new view controller from the object library onto the storyboard. Associate the new view controller with your new Swift class, **NewContactViewController**, by clicking on the view controller and changing its class name in the identity inspector to **NewContactViewController**. In the document outline, the view controller scene is renamed New Contact View Controller Scene.

Now you need to add some labels and text fields to the new contact view controller so that users can add a new contact. Drag two instances of **UILabel** and two **UITextField**s from the object library onto the storyboard. Set the view up as shown in [Figure 28.16](#).

Figure 28.16 New contact view controller



Next, you need to connect a segue between the **UIBarButtonItem** on the table view controller's navigation bar and **NewContactViewController**. Control-drag from the plus button to the new contact view controller scene. Release the mouse, and a menu pops up asking what sort of Action Segue you want to create. Select Present Modally.

Build and run the application. Click the plus button, and you will find that the **NewContactViewController**'s view is presented modally.

So far, so good. But you are not finished. There is no way to dismiss the view once the user has entered the new contact's information. And there is no way for the user to save the new contact. The next step is to give the user a way to save the new contact and dismiss the view controller.

You could just add a button to the view controller to let the user save the entered contact information and dismiss the **NewContactViewController**. But it would look clunky in combination with the navigation bar button you already have. Instead, you are going to embed the **NewContactViewController** inside a navigation controller, then add a button to the new contact view controller's navigation item. Actually, you are going to add two buttons to the navigation item: one to save the new contact and one to cancel the process.

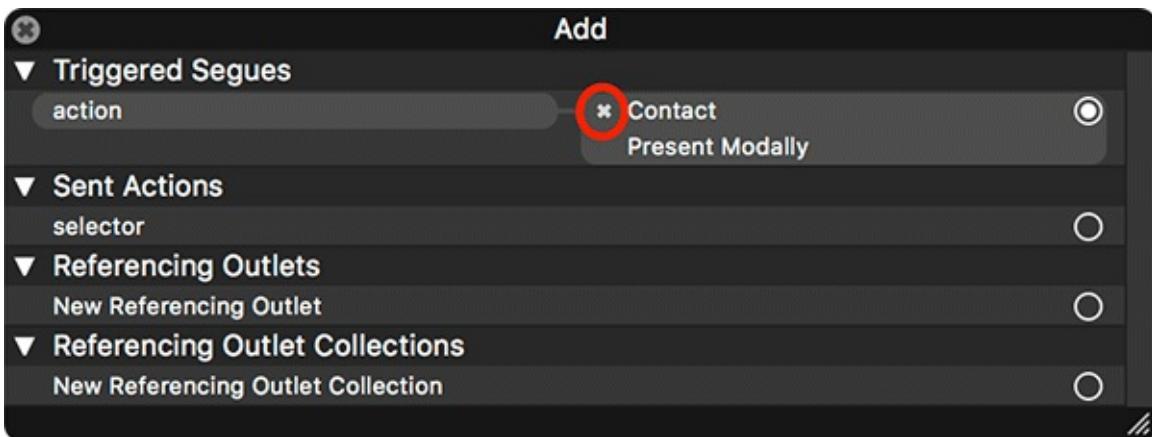
Drag a new **UINavigationController** from the object library and drop it on the canvas in **Main.storyboard**. As before, you will need to replace this navigation controller's root view controller with the existing New Contact View Controller. Delete the existing root view controller, Control-drag from the navigation controller to the **NewContactViewController**, and select the root view controller relationship segue.

Now that **NewContactViewController** is embedded within a **UINavigationController**, you can set its navigation item's title as you did for **ContactsViewController** earlier. Select **NewContactViewController**'s navigation item and change its title to "Contact."

Though you have made the new contact view controller the root view controller of your new navigation controller, if you run the app now the new contact view controller will not be displayed inside a navigation controller. The contacts view controller does not know about the new navigation controller. To fix that, you are going to replace the segue for the **ContactViewController**'s plus button with a segue to the new navigation controller.

Control-click on **ContactsViewController**'s plus button and click the small **x** button next to **Contact**, as in [Figure 28.17](#). This deletes the segue.

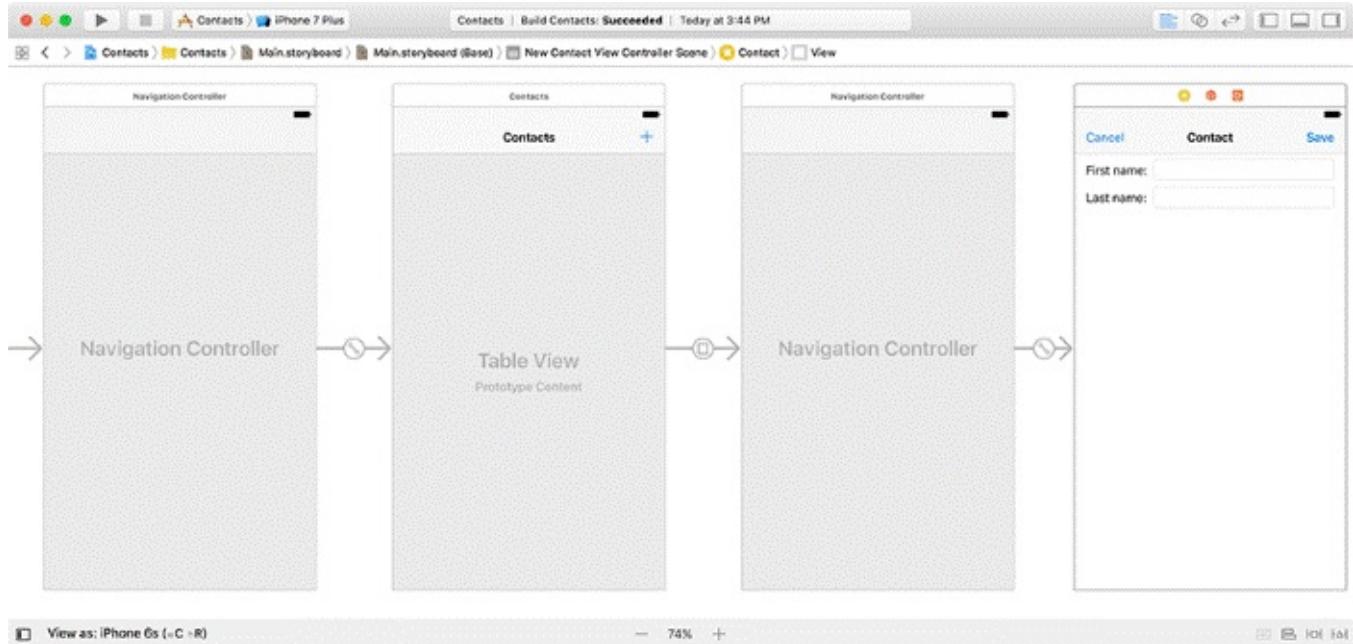
Figure 28.17 Deleting a connected segue



Next, add a segue to display the **UINavigationController**. Control-drag from the plus button to the **UINavigationController**. Choose the option to present the navigation controller modally.

Now you are ready to add two instances of **UIBarButtonItem** to **NewContactViewController**'s navigation bar. Drag them from the object library and place one on the left side of the navigation bar and one on the right. Select the button on the left and, in the attributes inspector, change its System Item to **Cancel**. In the same way, change the button on the right to **Save**. Your storyboard's layout should look like the screen shown in [Figure 28.18](#).

Figure 28.18 New storyboard layout



Before you set these two buttons' actions, you are going to create two outlets on **NewContactViewController** for the first name and last name text fields. These outlets will allow you to access their text, which you will use to build a new instance of the **Contact** type when the `Save` button is tapped. Open `NewContactViewController.swift` and add the following properties for the text fields.

Listing 28.9 Adding outlets for text fields (`NewContactViewController.swift`)

```
import UIKit
```

```
class NewContactViewController: UIViewController {
    @IBOutlet var firstNameTextField: UITextField!
    @IBOutlet var lastNameTextField: UITextField!
    override func viewDidLoad() {
        super.viewDidLoad()

        // Do any additional setup after loading the view.
    }

    override func didReceiveMemoryWarning() {
        super.didReceiveMemoryWarning()
        // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
    }
}
```

Now that you have added `@IBOutlet` properties for these text fields, you will connect them in the storyboard. Open `Main.storyboard` and connect the outlets in the contact scene. Control-dragging from the contact view controller to each text field will allow you to select the appropriate `@IBOutlet`, as you saw in [Chapter 26](#).

With your properties connected to their corresponding **UITextField**s, you are ready to give the two buttons actions so that they can either create a contact or cancel. You will take advantage of a feature of **UIStoryboard** called an *unwind segue*. An unwind segue allows you to define a relationship between a view controller and the view controller that precedes it in the navigation flow. You can think of unwind segues as a mechanism for creating *backwards navigation*. This feature of storyboards is quite handy, as you want to use these buttons to pop back to the user's list of contacts.

To take advantage of unwind segues, you must first write an unwind method programmatically on the view controller you want to unwind to. In this case, you want to unwind to the contacts view controller when the user cancels the creation of a new contact, so you will add the method to **ContactsViewController**.

Open `ContactsViewController.m` and add the new method.

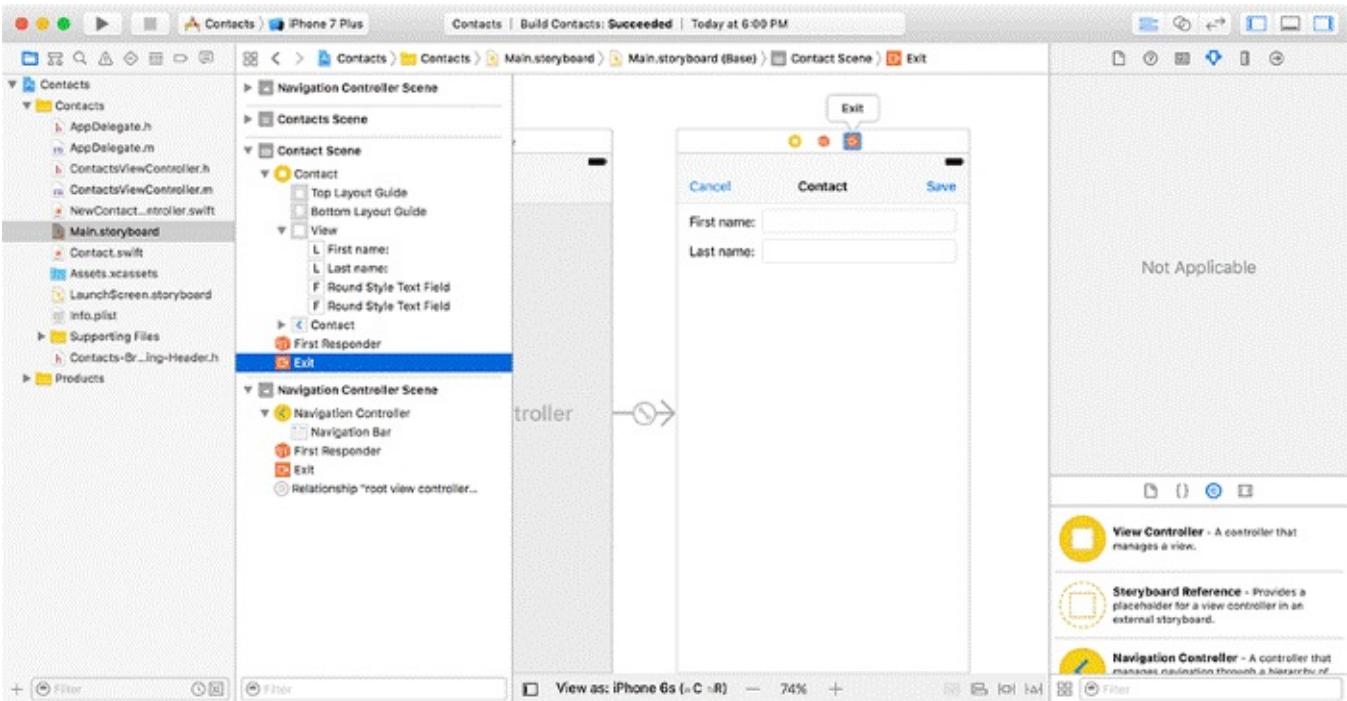
Listing 28.10 Adding a method for canceling (`ContactsViewController.m`)

```
...
- (UITableViewCell *)tableView:(UITableView *)tableView
    cellForRowAtIndexPath:(NSIndexPath *)indexPath
{
    ...
}
- (IBAction)cancelToContactsViewController:(UIStoryboardSegue *)segue
{
    // No action to take if user cancels
}
@end
```

Your new **cancelToContactsViewController:** method takes an instance of **UIStoryboardSegue**. Notice, also, that you have exposed this method to the storyboard via the **IBAction** return type. The **segue** argument carries with it a lot of useful information, which you will use to capture the new contact's first and last name.

You need to connect the unwind segue to the contact view controller in `Main.storyboard`. Open the storyboard and select the view controller. Notice the `Exit` icon at the top of the contact scene ([Figure 28.19](#))? You will use this element to connect your new segue to the unwinding action and dismiss the **NewContactViewController**.

Figure 28.19 Exiting from a scene



Control-drag from the Cancel bar button item to the Exit icon. Release, and you will see an option to connect the button's action to `cancelToContactsViewController:`. Select this method.

Run your application, tap the button to add a new contact, then tap Cancel. You will unwind back to the table's list of the user's contacts.

Your next step is to wire up the Save bar button to save the new contact's information and also unwind back to the list of contacts. Also, the list of contacts needs to be updated to display the new contact. You will follow the same strategy as with the Cancel button, but this time you will create an unwind action that uses the information sent along with the **UIStoryboardSegue** instance.

Open `ContactsViewController.m` and add a new unwind action.

Listing 28.11 Adding `createNewContact:` (`ContactsViewController.m`)

```
...  
  
- (IBAction)cancelToContactsViewController:(UIStoryboardSegue *)segue  
{  
    // No action to take if user cancels  
}  
  
- (IBAction)createNewContact:(UIStoryboardSegue *)segue  
{  
    NewContactViewController *newContactVC = segue.sourceViewController;  
    NSString *firstName = newContactVC.firstNameTextField.text;  
    NSString *lastName = newContactVC.lastNameTextField.text;  
    if (firstName.length != 0 || lastName.length != 0) {  
        NSString *name = [NSString stringWithFormat:@"%@ %@",
```

```
    firstName, lastName];
Contact *newContact = [[Contact alloc] initWithName:name];
[self.contacts addObject:newContact];
[self.tableView reloadData];
}
}

@end
```

Here, you define a new unwind action. This action uses the `segue` parameter passed into the method's argument to get the `sourceViewController` that originated the unwind action. After you get the `sourceViewController` from the segue, you can then grab the text from the `UITextField` property outlets on `NewContactViewController`.

Next, you check to make sure at least one of the strings is not empty. If they contain any text, you create a new instance of the `Contact` type and add it to the `contacts` property. Last, you reload the `tableView` to display the new contact's name.

You can now use this method as the unwind action when the user taps the `Save` button to create a new contact. Switch back to `Main.storyboard` and select the new contact view controller. Control-drag from the `Save` button to the `Exit` icon and choose `createNewContact:`.

Run the application. Add a new contact and tap `Save`. You should be transferred back to your list of contacts, where you should see the newly added contact.

Adding an Objective-C Class

Now that you have interoperated from Objective-C to Swift, your next task is to interoperate from Swift to Objective-C. You will create a new Objective-C class to make a default image for new contacts. Your Swift class **NewContactViewController** will use this new Objective-C class. This simulates a fairly common reality: An existing project will often have a number of Objective-C classes that are needed in the Swift components of the project.

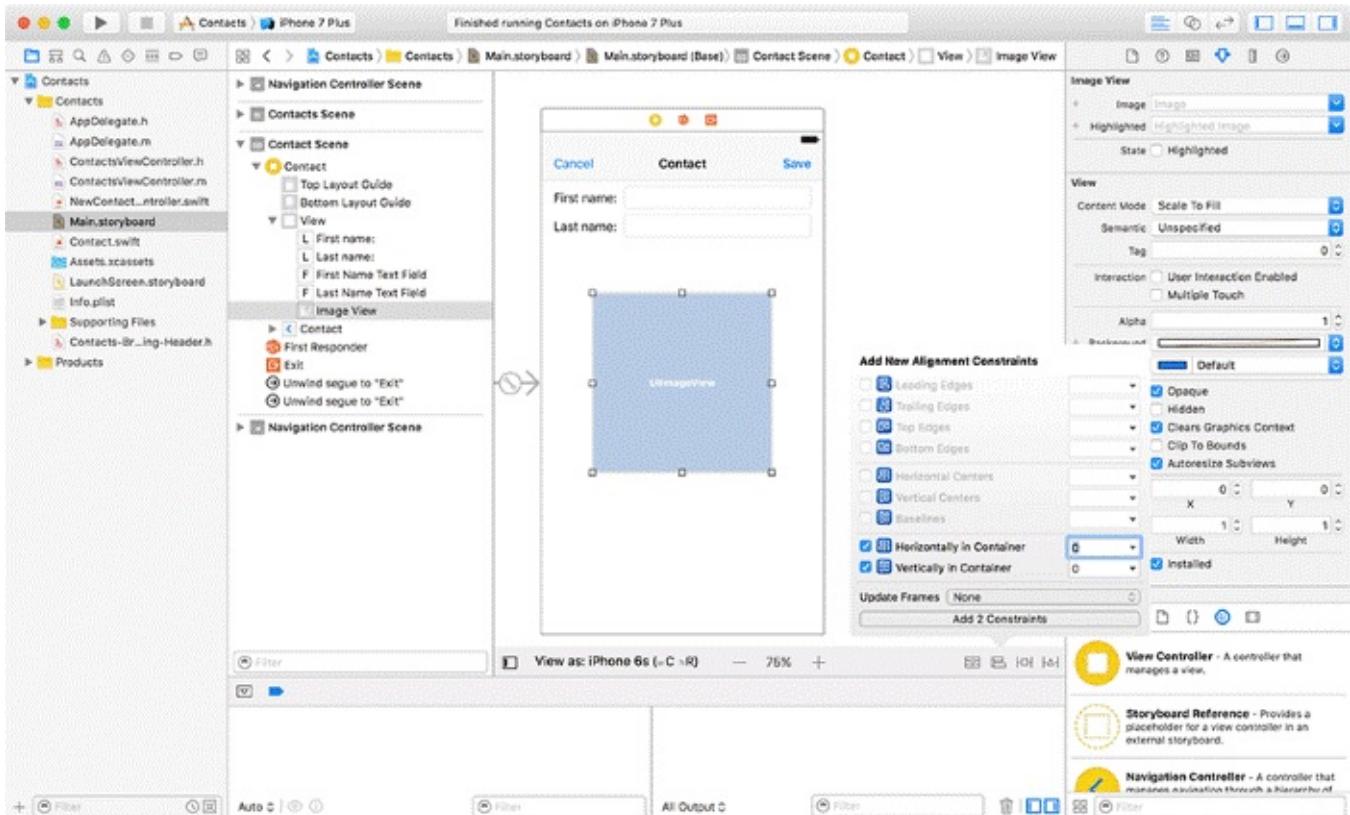
Create a new Objective-C file that is a Cocoa Touch Class and call it **ImageFactory**. Its job will be to create a new contact's default image. Make this new class a subclass of **NSObject**. Be sure to select Objective-C as the language for this class.

Before you begin to add new code to this class, you need to add a **UIImageView** to the contact scene in **Main.storyboard**. This image view will display the default image for the new contact. Drag an **Image View** from the object library onto the contact scene. Make the image view 240 points wide and 240 points tall.

Next you will add Auto Layout constraints to ensure that the view for **NewContactViewController** displays its subviews correctly.

Begin by centering the image view in the view with vertical and horizontal constraints. Select the **UIImageView** and open the Auto Layout Align menu in the bottom righthand corner of the storyboard. Check the options for **Horizontally in Container** and **Vertically in Container** in the menu that appears, as in [Figure 28.20](#). Select the button that says **Add 2 constraints**.

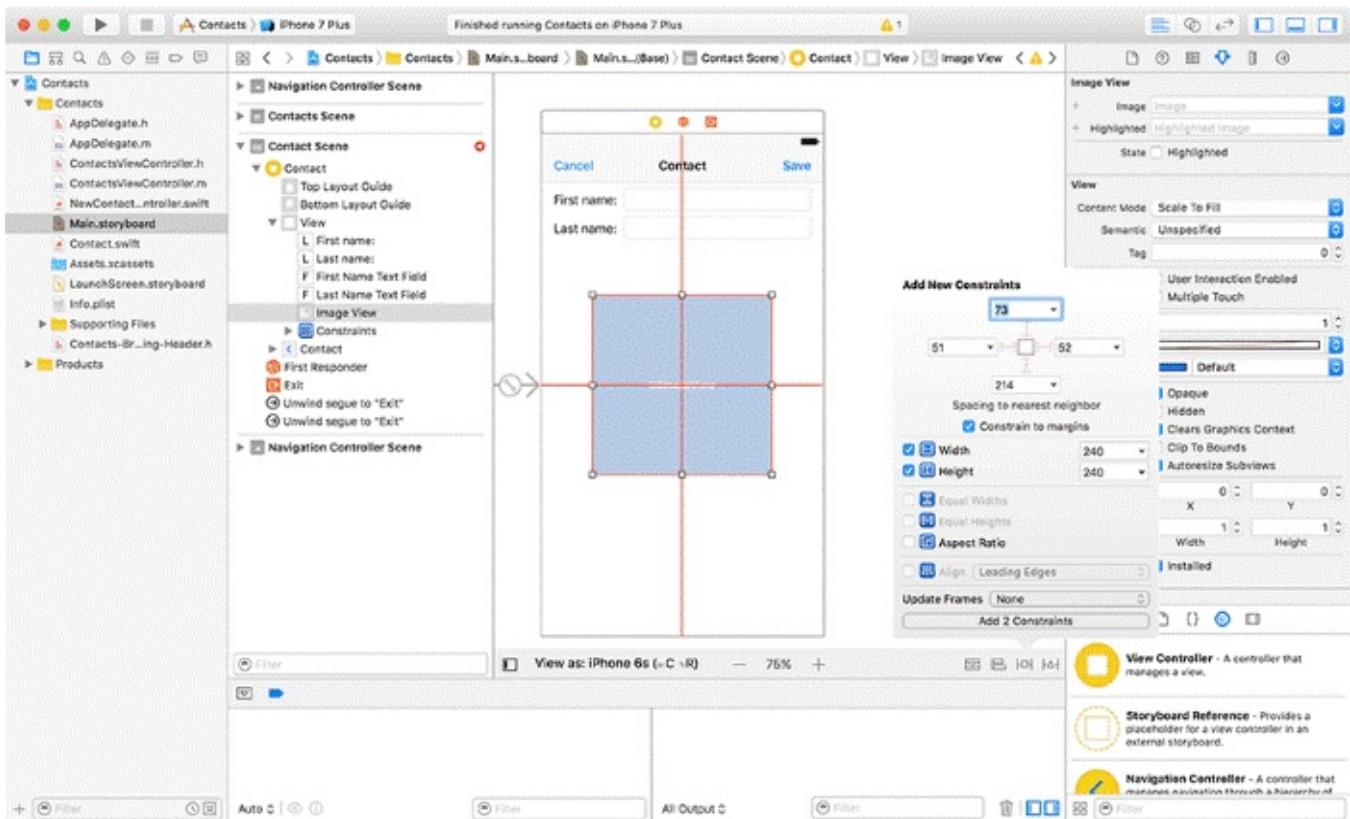
Figure 28.20 Centering the image view



Next, set a width and height constraint for the image view. With the image view still selected,

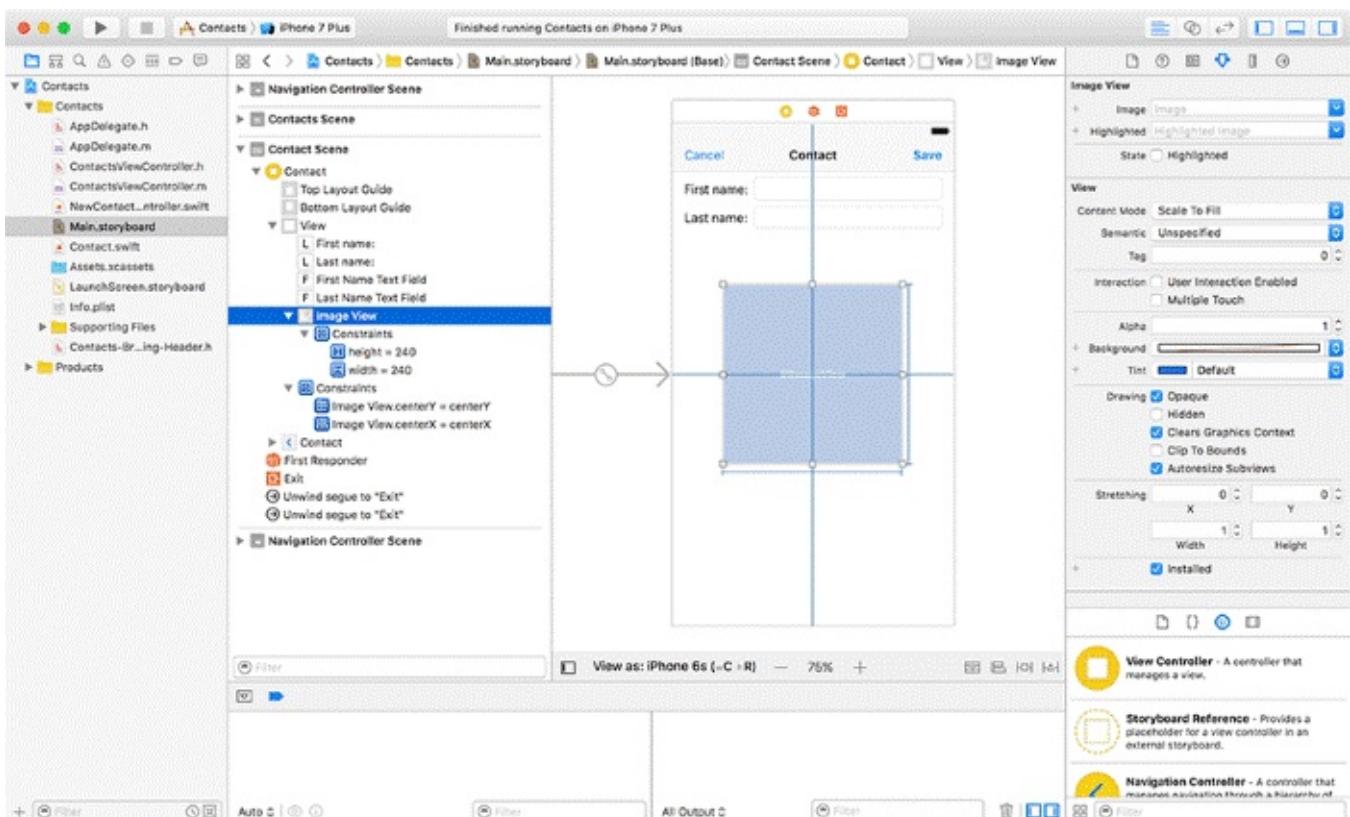
open the Auto Layout Pin menu in the bottom righthand corner of the storyboard. Check the boxes for Width and Height, leaving the values as they appear (Figure 28.21). Add the two constraints to pin the image view to this width and height.

Figure 28.21 Width and height constraints for the image view



When you are done, your contact scene should look like the screen in Figure 28.22.

Figure 28.22 New contact view Auto Layout



These simple constraints will work fine in portrait mode on the simulator for iPhone 7 or 7 Plus. If you change to a different device or orientation, then the layout will be disturbed.

Now that you have an image view on the contact scene, you need to add a new @IBOutlet for the image view to **NewContactViewController**. Add a **UIImageView** property to **NewContactViewController** so that you can set the image that will be displayed.

Listing 28.12 Adding an @IBOutlet to the image view (NewContactViewController.swift)

```
...
class NewContactViewController: UIViewController {
    @IBOutlet var firstNameTextField: UITextField!
    @IBOutlet var lastNameTextField: UITextField!
    @IBOutlet var contactImageView: UIImageView!
    override func viewDidLoad() {
        super.viewDidLoad()
        // Do any additional setup after loading the view.
    }

    override func didReceiveMemoryWarning() {
        super.didReceiveMemoryWarning()
        // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
    }
}
```

Last, make sure to connect this property to the image view in `Main.storyboard`.

Time to implement your **ImageFactory** class. Switch to `ImageFactory.h` and add a **generateDefaultImageOfSize:** method as shown below. Make sure that you import `UIKit` at the top of the file.

Listing 28.13 Implementing ImageFactory (ImageFactory.h)

```
#import <Foundation/Foundation.h>
#import <UIKit/UIKit.h>

@interface ImageFactory : NSObject

+ (UIImage *)generateDefaultImageOfSize:(CGSize)size;

@end
```

This new method will be the public interface for the **ImageFactory** class. It will use the `size` argument to do some drawing in an offscreen context. Open `ImageFactory.m` and enter the drawing code. It is a sizeable block of code – take your time.

Listing 28.14 Drawing the default image (ImageFactory.m)

```

#import "ImageFactory.h"

@implementation ImageFactory

+ (UIImage *)generateDefaultImageOfSize:(CGSize)size
{
    // Make frame and get context
    CGRect frame = CGRectMake(0, 0, size.width, size.height);
    UIGraphicsBeginImageContext(size);
    CGContextRef context = UIGraphicsGetCurrentContext();

    // Draw white background and yellow circle
    CGContextSetFillColorWithColor(context, [[UIColor whiteColor]
    CGContextFillRect(context, frame);
    CGContextSetFillColorWithColor(context, [[UIColor yellowColor]
    CGContextFillEllipseInRect(context, frame);

    CGFloat x = frame.origin.x + size.width / 2;
    CGFloat y = frame.origin.y + size.height / 2;
    CGPoint center = CGPointMake(x, y);

    // Draw eyes and smile
    CGSize eyeSize = CGSizeMake(frame.size.width * 0.1, frame.size.height * 0.1);
    CGFloat separation = frame.size.width * 0.1;

    CGPoint leftPt = CGPointMake(center.x - (separation + eyeSize.width),
        center.y - (eyeSize.height * 2));
    CGPoint rightPt = CGPointMake(center.x + separation,
        center.y - (eyeSize.height * 2));

    CGRect leftEye = CGRectMake(leftPt.x, leftPt.y, eyeSize.width, eyeSize.height);
    CGRect rightEye = CGRectMake(rightPt.x, rightPt.y, eyeSize.width, eyeSize.height);
    CGContextSetFillColorWithColor(context, [[UIColor blackColor]
    CGContextFillEllipseInRect(context, leftEye);
    CGContextFillEllipseInRect(context, rightEye);

    CGFloat smileHeight = center.y + eyeSize.height;
    CGPoint leftEdge = CGPointMake(leftEye.origin.x, smileHeight);
    CGPoint rightEdge = CGPointMake(rightEye.origin.x + rightEye.width,
        smileHeight);
    CGFloat smileLength = rightEdge.x - leftEdge.x;
    CGFloat smileWidth = eyeSize.width / 3;

    CGContextSetLineWidth(context, smileWidth);
}

```

```

    CGContextBeginPath(context);
    CGContextMoveToPoint(context, leftEdge.x, leftEdge.y);
    CGContextAddCurveToPoint(context, leftEdge.x + (smileLength,
        smileHeight + smileWidth * 2, rightEdge.x - (smileLength
        smileHeight + smileWidth * 2, rightEdge.x, rightEdge.y));
    CGContextStrokePath(context);

    UIImage *image = UIGraphicsGetImageFromCurrentImageContext(),
    UIGraphicsEndImageContext();
    return image;
}
@end

```

The drawing code may look pretty gnarly, but do not worry too much about it. The framework you are using here is called Core Graphics, and its details are outside the scope of this book. Apple's documentation on Core Graphics is very thorough if you are curious about what all those functions are doing. The end result is a yellow smiley face, which you are going to use as a contact's default image.

generateDefaultImageOfSize:'s main job is to create an instance of **UIImage**. To do so, you begin a new graphics context of the appropriate size. You next grab a reference to that context so that you can use various Core Graphics drawing functions. You use **UIGraphicsGetImageFromCurrentImageContext()** to create an image from the current context. Because you created a new context, you had to end it to clean up your drawing environment. Last, you returned the image you created.

When you are interoperating with Objective-C in Swift, it is a good idea to consider how these two languages will communicate with each other in your project. For example, the **generateDefaultImageOfSize:** method provides a simple interface for the Swift code to generate the default image.

Before you can use your Objective-C class in the Swift portions of your project, you need to import the class in the project's bridging header file. Open **Contacts-Bridging-Header.h** and import the header file for **ImageFactory** there. Doing so will ensure that this Objective-C class is available to your Swift code.

Listing 28.15 Importing the Objective-C class's header in the bridging header file (Contacts-Bridging-Header.h**)**

```

// 
// Use this file to import your target's public headers
// that you would like to expose to Swift.
//
#import "ImageFactory.h"

```

With the **ImageFactory** class visible to Swift, it is time to use it. Create an instance of **ImageFactory** in **NewContactViewController**'s **viewDidLoad** method.

Listing 28.16 Using the Objective-C **ImageFactory class in**

NewContactViewController (`NewContactViewController.swift`)

```
class NewContactViewController: UIViewController {
    @IBOutlet var firstNameTextField: UITextField!
    @IBOutlet var lastNameTextField: UITextField!
    @IBOutlet var contactImageView: UIImageView!
    override func viewDidLoad() {
        super.viewDidLoad()

        // Do any additional setup after loading the view.
        contactImageView.image =
            ImageFactory.generateDefaultImage(of: contactImageView)
    }

    override func didReceiveMemoryWarning() {
        super.didReceiveMemoryWarning()
        // Dispose of any resources that can be recreated.
    }
}
```

Adding `ImageFactory.h` to `Contacts-Bridging-Header.h` means that this file will be automatically visible to any Swift file within the same target. You can use the **ImageFactory** class as if it were written in Swift, as you can see in the above implementation of **viewDidLoad()**.

Besides importing `ImageFactory.h` into the bridging header, you do not have to do any additional work to use your **ImageFactory** Objective-C class from your Swift code. You simply call **ImageFactory**'s class method just as if it were on a Swift class. Doing so triggers the drawing code in **ImageFactory** and returns an image. The resulting image is given to the `contactImageView`'s `image` property.

Swift translates the Objective-C method to be **generateDefaultImage(of:)**, whereas it was **generateDefaultImageOfSize:** in Objective-C. Swift's syntax is a bit more parsimonious than Objective-C, so this method is transformed in Swift to remove the word "size" from the call, and the word "of" is placed within the parentheses. The word "size", or some other such word, will typically be used in the name of the value that is passed to the method when it is called, which is exactly the case in [Listing 28.16](#). Swift style suggests that you remove words from your method names that may be redundant on the names of the values passed as the method's arguments.

Option-click on **generateDefaultImage(of:)** in `NewContactViewController.swift` to see how the method is exported to Swift ([Figure 28.23](#)).

Figure 28.23 generateDefaultImageOfSize: in Swift

```
contactImageView.image = ImageFactory.generateDefaultImage(of: contactImageView.frame.size)
```

Declaration class func generateDefaultImage(of size: CGSize) -> UIImage!

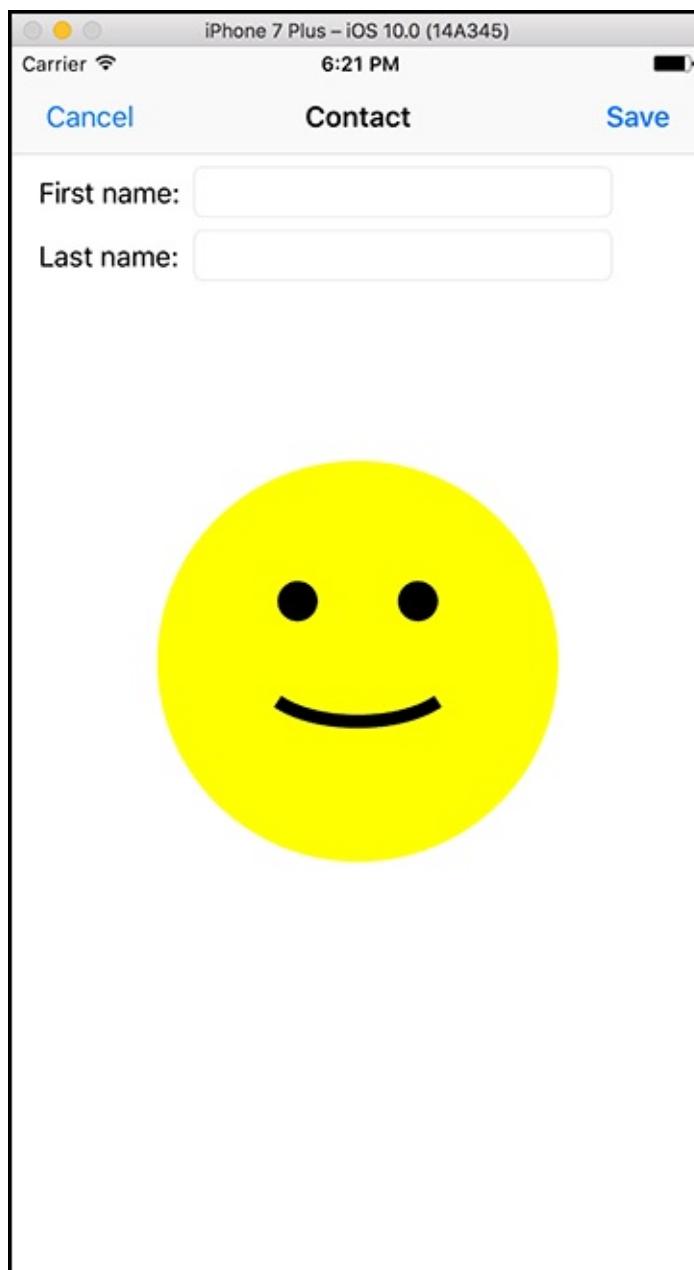
Parameters size No description.

Declared In ImageFactory.h

Notice that Swift translated the Objective-C parameter name `size` to be an internal parameter: `generateDefaultImage(of size: CGSize)`.

Run the application to see the product of your work. Click the plus button at the upper-right corner of the app to create a new contact. **NewContactViewController** will be displayed with the default image below the text fields ([Figure 28.24](#)).

Figure 28.24 A default image for a new contact



In this chapter, you developed an app that simulates a common real-world programming situation. Many apps that were developed prior to the release of Swift will likely require a mixed-language approach for the near future: Older parts will remain in Objective-C, and newer parts will be developed in Swift. The code you wrote for `Contacts` in Objective-C is like the “older,” pre-existing parts of the application. You added “newer” parts in Swift to see the process of organizing an application that needs to take advantage of interoperability.

When you want to add Swift to an older application, you will most often be interoperating with the Cocoa and Foundation frameworks. This form of interoperation is seamless and is handled for you automatically. Things become more complicated, as you have seen, when you want to interoperate between Objective-C and Swift code that you have written.

Silver Challenge

Add functionality to the app to allow a user to view a contact's information. A user should be able to tap on a row in **ContactsViewController**, and that should push a new **UIViewController** onto the current **UINavigationController**'s stack. Call this new view controller **ExistingContactViewController** and implement it in Swift.

Gold Challenge

Users should be able to edit an existing contact's information. Add this functionality to **ExistingContactViewController**. Make sure that the changes made in this view controller are reflected in the **ContactsViewController**.

Conclusion

Congratulations! You have made it to the end of this introduction to the Swift programming language. Thank you for sticking with us.

Along the way, you covered quite a bit of material, from the basic features of Swift like `let` and `var` to more advanced features like generics and interoperability. You also saw how to put these pieces together to write pure Swift programs and applied your understanding of Swift to write some simple macOS and iOS applications. You are now a Swift developer.

Where to Go from Here?

After all your hard work, what should you expect for your Swift development? The truth is that your journey is just beginning. Swift is a rich language, and there is ample opportunity to learn more every day. Furthermore, Swift truly begins to show its power in its interaction with the various Apple frameworks used to develop macOS and iOS applications. That is where you should focus your work.

Shameless Plugs

Matt and John are both on Twitter. You can follow Matt with @matthewDmathias, and you can follow John with @nerdyjkg. We occasionally tweet useful information on Swift programming in between our usual streams of gifs and emojis.

If you enjoyed this book, please take a look at other Big Nerd Ranch texts at www.bignerdranch.com/books. We have references on Mac and iOS programming and offer weeklong training bootcamps for both that will help you learn these platforms more deeply. Visit www.bignerdranch.com/we-teach for more details.

An Invitation

Your knowledge of Swift will continue to grow with practice. Take the time to begin a project; make something new. If you do not have a project available or in mind, visit developer.apple.com. This website provides a good overview of the resources available to Mac and iOS developers and also provides some examples that may inspire your creativity.

Another recommendation is to find Meetup groups for Mac and iOS development in your area. Most major cities have such groups, and they host regular talks. Going to these meetings will help you learn, practice, and get to know your peers.

So, come join us. We're out here making things, and we would love to see what you can create.

Index

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)

Symbols

! (for failable initializers), [A failable Town initializer](#)
! (forced unwrap) operator, [Optional Types](#), [Modifying an Optional in Place](#)
! (implicitly unwrapped optional), [Implicitly Unwrapped Optionals](#)
! (logical not) operator, [if/else](#)
!= (not equal to) operator, [if/else](#), [Buy one method, get another free!](#)
!== (nonidentity) operator, [if/else](#)
\$0, \$1... (shorthand argument names), [Closure Expression Syntax](#)
% (remainder) operator, [Integer division](#)
%= (remainder assignment) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)
& (for arguments passed to in-out parameters), [In-out parameters](#)
& (for protocol composition), [Protocol Composition](#)
&& (logical and) operator, [if/else](#)
&* (overflow multiplication) operator, [Overflow operators](#)
&+ (overflow addition) operator, [Overflow operators](#)
&- (overflow subtraction) operator, [Overflow operators](#)
*= (multiplication assignment) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)
+ (addition) operator, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)
+= (addition assignment) operator, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#), [Operator shorthand](#), [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
-= (subtraction assignment) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)
... (variadic parameter syntax), [Variadic parameters](#)
// (code comment), [Playing in a Playground](#)
/= (division assignment) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)
: (for protocol conformance), [Protocols](#)
< (less than) operator, [if/else](#), [Conforming to Comparable](#)
<= (less than or equal to) operator, [if/else](#)
<> (array) syntax, [Creating an Array](#)
<> (dictionary) syntax, [Creating a Dictionary](#)
<> (generics) syntax, [Generic Data Structures](#)
= (assignment) operator, [Playing in a Playground](#), [Types](#)
== (equal to) operator, [if/else](#), [Floating-Point Numbers](#), [Array Equality](#)
==== (identity) operator, [if/else](#)
> (greater than) operator, [if/else](#)
>= (greater than or equal to) operator, [if/else](#)
? (for failable initializers), [A failable Town initializer](#)
? (optional), [Optional Types](#)

?? (nil coalescing) operator, [The Nil Coalescing Operator](#)
@escaping attribute, [Escaping and Non-escaping Closures](#)
@IBAction, [Connecting the text view outlet](#)
@IBOutlet, [Connecting the text view outlet](#)
[:] (dictionary literal syntax), [Creating a Dictionary](#)
[] (array literal syntax), [Creating an Array](#)
[] (subscript syntax), [Indices and ranges](#)
\() (string interpolation), [String Interpolation](#)
\u{ } syntax, [Unicode scalars](#)
_ (as parameter name), [In-out parameters](#), [For the More Curious: Initializer Parameters](#)
_ (wildcard), [Tuples and pattern matching](#), [for-in Loops](#)
|| (logical or) operator, [if/else](#)

A

a ? b : c statements, [Ternary Operator](#)
access control, [Access Control](#)
addition (+) operator, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)
addition assignment (+=) operator, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#), [Operator shorthand](#), [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
Any type, [Type casting](#)
append(_:) method, [Modifying an Optional in Place](#), [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
Application Programming Interfaces (APIs), [Playing in a Playground](#)
application sandbox, [Saving TodoList](#)
applications, document-based, [Your First Cocoa Application](#)
ARC (Automatic Reference Counting), [Memory Allocation](#)
arguments
(see also [parameters](#))
about, [Function Parameters](#)
functions as, [Functions as Arguments](#)
shorthand names for, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)
vs parameters, [Function Parameters](#)
“Array index out of range” error, [Loading documents](#)
Array type
(see also [arrays](#))
about, [Arrays](#)
count property, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
last property, [Copying](#)
literal syntax ([]), [Creating an Array](#)
Array() syntax, [Translating a Dictionary to an Array](#)
arrays
about, [Arrays](#)
appending items, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
checking equality of, [Array Equality](#)

combining, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
converting dictionaries to, [Translating a Dictionary to an Array](#)
copying, [Copying](#)
counting items, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
creating sets from, [Getting a Set](#)
declaring, [Creating an Array](#)
filtering, [filter\(:\)](#)
immutable, [Immutable Arrays](#)
initializing, [Creating an Array](#)
inserting items, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
looping over, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
mapping contents, [map\(:\)](#)
modifying items, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
NSArray, [Saving TodoList](#)
reducing, [reduce\(: :\)](#)
removing items, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
replacing items, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
sorting, [Closure Syntax](#)
subscripting, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
vs sets, [What Is a Set?](#)
as, as!, as? (type-casting) operators, [Type casting](#)
assert(_:_:) function, [Lexing an Input String](#)
assertions, [Lexing an Input String](#)
assignment (=) operator, [Playing in a Playground](#), [Types](#)
associated types, [Associated Type Protocols](#)
attributes, [Setting Up the View Controller](#)
Auto Layout, [Auto Layout](#), [Laying Out the User Interface](#)
Automatic Reference Counting (ARC), [Memory Allocation](#)
autosavesInPlace() method, [Saving and Loading Documents](#)

B

Bool (Boolean) type, [if/else](#)
break statements, [switch vs if/else](#), [Control Transfer Statements](#), [Redux](#)
bridging, [Your First Cocoa Application](#)
bridging headers, [Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#), [Adding an Objective-C Class](#)
buttons
 adding to navigation bar, [Adding contacts](#)
 adding to views, [Adding the Speak and Stop buttons](#)

C

catch statements, [Catching Errors](#)
Character type

about, [Working with Strings](#)

characters property, [Working with Strings](#)

“Class...has no initializers” error, [Designated initializers for classes](#)

class keyword, [A Monster class](#), [For the More Curious: Type Methods](#), [Type Properties](#)

classes

about, [Classes](#)

computed properties, [Type Properties](#)

convenience initializers, [Class Initialization](#), [Convenience initializers for classes](#)

creating, [A Monster class](#)

default initializers, [Default initializers for classes](#)

designated initializers, [Class Initialization](#), [Designated initializers for classes](#)

FileManager, [Saving TodoList](#)

inheritance (see [inheritance](#))

memory management, [Deinitialization](#), [Memory Allocation](#)

NSDocument, [Saving and Loading Documents](#)

NSObject, [Modeling a To-Do List](#)

NSSpeechSynthesizer, [Making VocalTextEdit ... Vocal](#)

NSTextView, [Setting Up the View Controller](#)

NSViewController, [Setting Up the View Controller](#)

required subclass initializers, [Required initializers for classes](#)

root, [Modeling a To-Do List](#)

stored properties, [Type Properties](#)

structs vs, [What Should I Use?](#), [Value Semantics](#), [What Should I Use?](#)

UITableView, [Laying Out the User Interface](#)

using in Objective-C, [Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#)

closures

about, [Closures](#)

closure expressions, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

@escaping attribute, [Escaping and Non-escaping Closures](#)

escaping vs non-escaping, [Escaping and Non-escaping Closures](#)

and function types, [Functions as Return Types](#)

inline syntax, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

with lazy properties, [Lazy Stored Properties](#)

omitting return, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

reference cycles in, [Reference Cycles in Closures](#)

as reference types, [Closures Are Reference Types](#)

self in, [Lazy Stored Properties](#)

shorthand argument names, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

tracking values with, [Closures Capture Values](#)

trailing syntax, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

type inference in, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

Cocoa

(see also individual class names)

Auto Layout, [Auto Layout](#)

creating a new project, [Getting Started with VocalTextEdit](#)
error handling, [Saving documents](#)
interaction with Swift, [Interoperability](#)
loading documents, [Loading documents](#)
saving documents, [Saving and Loading Documents](#), [Saving documents](#)
speech synthesizer, [Making VocalTextEdit ... Vocal](#)
view controllers, [Saving documents](#)
window controllers, [Saving and Loading Documents](#), [Saving documents](#)

Cocoa Touch class, [Modeling a To-Do List](#)

collections
(see also individual collection names)

about, [Arrays](#)
types compared, [What Is a Set?](#)

command-line tools, [Getting Started with Xcode](#), [Structs and Classes](#)

comments, [Playing in a Playground](#)

Comparable protocol, [Conforming to Comparable](#)

comparison operators, table of, [if/else](#)

conditional statements

- else if, [else if](#)
- guard, [Exiting Early from a Function](#), [Parsing the Token Array](#)
- if-case, [switch vs if/else](#)
- if/else, [if/else](#)
- nested if statements, [Nested ifs](#)
- switch, [What Is a Switch?](#)
- ternary operator, [Ternary Operator](#)
- while let, [Lexing an Input String](#)

console, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)

constants

- about, [Constants vs Variables](#)
- declaring, [Constants vs Variables](#)
- as reference types, [Constant Value and Reference Types](#)
- as value types, [Constant Value and Reference Types](#)
- vs variables, [Constants vs Variables](#)

contains(_:) method, [Working with Sets](#)

continue statements, [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)

control transfer statements

- break, [switch vs if/else](#), [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)
- continue, [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)
- fallthrough, [Switch It Up](#)
- in loops, [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)

controllers, in MVC, [Model-View-Controller](#)

convenience keyword, [Designated initializers for classes](#), [Convenience initializers for classes](#)

copies, shallow vs deep, [Copying](#)

count property

on arrays, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)

on dictionaries, [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

on strings, [Counting elements](#)

D

Data type, [Saving documents](#)

data types (see [types](#))

data(ofType:) method, [Saving documents](#)

debug area, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#), [A New Project](#)

debug mode, [Lexing an Input String](#)

deinit method, [Strong Reference Cycles](#)

deinitializers, [Deinitialization](#), [Memory Allocation](#)

designated initializers

about, [Class Initialization](#), [Designated initializers for classes](#)

and convenience initializers, [Convenience initializers for classes](#)

inheritance, [Automatic initializer inheritance](#)

multiple, [Required initializers for classes](#)

dictionaries

about, [Dictionaries](#)

adding key-value pairs, [Populating a Dictionary](#), [Adding and Removing Values](#)

converting to arrays, [Translating a Dictionary to an Array](#)

counting items, [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

declaring, [Creating a Dictionary](#)

immutable, [Immutable Dictionaries](#)

key-value pairs, [Dictionaries](#)

keys, [Creating a Dictionary](#)

looping over, [Looping](#)

modifying values, [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

reading from, [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

removing items, [Adding and Removing Values](#)

vs sets, [What Is a Set?](#)

Dictionary type

(see also [dictionaries](#))

about, [Dictionaries](#)

count property, [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

hashable keys, [Creating a Dictionary](#)

literal syntax ([:]), [Creating a Dictionary](#)

didSet observer, [Property Observers](#)

division assignment (/=) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)

do/catch statements

about, [Catching Errors](#)

exhaustiveness checks, [Swift Error-Handling Philosophy](#)

document outline, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)

document-based applications, [Your First Cocoa Application](#)

dot syntax, [Working with Strings](#)

Double type, [Floating-Point Numbers](#)

E

editor area, [A New Project](#)

else if statements, [else if](#)

encapsulation, [Protocols](#)

enum keyword, [Basic Enumerations](#)

enumerations

about, [Enumerations](#)

associated values, [Associated Values](#)

comparing values, [Basic Enumerations](#)

creating, [Basic Enumerations](#)

as Errors, [Lexing an Input String](#)

methods on, [Methods](#)

nested, [Nested Types](#)

raw values, [Raw Value Enumerations](#)

recursive, [Recursive Enumerations](#)

equal to (==) operator, [if/else](#), [Floating-Point Numbers](#), [Array Equality](#)

equality, [Equality vs Identity](#)

Equatable protocol, [Conforming to Equatable](#)

error handling

about, [Swift Error-Handling Philosophy](#)

assertions, [Lexing an Input String](#)

catching errors, [Catching Errors](#)

in Cocoa, [Saving documents](#)

ignoring, [Handling Errors by Sticking Your Head in the Sand](#)

throwing an error, [Lexing an Input String](#), [Swift Error-Handling Philosophy](#)

traps, [Classes of Errors](#)

Error protocol, [Lexing an Input String](#)

“Errors thrown from here are not handled” error, [Handling Errors by Sticking Your Head in the Sand](#)

errors, recoverable vs nonrecoverable, [Classes of Errors](#)

@escaping attribute, [Escaping and Non-escaping Closures](#)

“Execution interrupted” error, [Overflow operators](#)

extension keyword

for protocol extensions, [Extending Exercise](#)

for type extensions, [Extending an Existing Type](#)

extensions

about, [Extensions](#)

for adding functions, [Extensions with functions](#)

for adding initializers, [Adding an initializer with an extension](#)

for adding nested types, [Nested types and extensions](#)

computed vs stored properties on, [Extending an Existing Type](#)
on existing types, [Extending an Existing Type](#)
for protocol conformance, [Using extensions to add protocol conformance](#)
on protocols (see [protocol extensions](#))

F

fallthrough statements, [Switch It Up](#)
FileManager class, [Saving TodoList](#)
fileprivate keyword, [For the More Curious: Copy on Write](#)
filter(_:) function, [filter\(_:\)](#)
final keyword, [Preventing overriding](#), [For the More Curious: Type Methods](#)
first-class objects, [Functional Programming](#)
Float type, [Floating-Point Numbers](#)
floating-point numbers, [Floating-Point Numbers](#)
for keyword, [for-in Loops](#)
for-in loops, [for-in Loops](#)
forced unwrap (!) operator, [Optional Types](#), [Modifying an Optional in Place](#)
frameworks
 importing, [A New Project](#)
 modules and, [Access Control](#)
func keyword, [A Basic Function](#)
functional programming, [Functional Programming](#)
functions
 about, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#), [Functions](#)
 adding via an extension, [Extensions with functions](#)
 arguments, [Functions as Arguments](#)
 (see also [parameters](#))
 assert(_:_:), [Lexing an Input String](#)
 assigning function types to variables, [Function Types](#)
 calling, [A Basic Function](#)
 defining, [A Basic Function](#)
 filter(_:), [filter\(_:\)](#)
 as first-class objects, [Functional Programming](#)
 function types, [Function Types](#)
 generic, [Generic Functions and Methods](#)
 global (or free), [Instance Methods](#)
 higher-order, [Higher-order functions](#)
 implementing on a custom type, [Conforming to Equatable](#)
 insert(_:at:), [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
 map(_:), [map\(_:\)](#)
 modifying argument values, [In-out parameters](#)
 nesting, [Nested Functions and Scope](#)
 parameters (see [parameters](#))

polymorphism, [For the More Curious: Parametric Polymorphism](#)
precondition(_:_:), [Lexing an Input String](#)
print(), [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)
pure, [Functional Programming](#)
reduce(_:_:), [reduce\(: \)](#)
remove(at:), [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
as return values, [Functions as Return Types](#)
returning early, [Exiting Early from a Function](#)
returning multiple values, [Multiple Returns](#)
returning optionals, [Optional Return Types](#)
returning values, [Returning from a Function](#)
scope, [Nested Functions and Scope](#)
sleep(), [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)
Swift naming guidelines, [Parameter names](#)

G

generics

about, [Generics](#)
associated types, [Associated Type Protocols](#)
declaring, [Generic Data Structures](#)
functions and methods, [Generic Functions and Methods](#)
optionals, [For the More Curious: Understanding Optionals](#)
specialization, [Generic Data Structures](#)
type constraints, [Type Constraints](#)
types of instances, [Generic Data Structures](#)
getters, [A getter and a setter](#), [Controlling getter and setter visibility](#)
greater than (>) operator, [if/else](#)
greater than or equal to (>=) operator, [if/else](#)
guard statements, [Exiting Early from a Function](#)

H

hashability, [Creating a Dictionary](#)
hexadecimal codes, in strings, [Unicode scalars](#)
higher-order functions, [Higher-order functions](#)

I

IB (Interface Builder) (see [Xcode](#))
@IBAction, [Connecting the text view outlet](#)
@IBOutlet, [Connecting the text view outlet](#)
identity, [Equality vs Identity](#)
identity (==) operator, [if/else](#)

if-case statements

about, [switch vs if/else](#)

vs if/else statements, [switch vs if/else](#)

vs switch statements, [switch vs if/else](#)

if/else statements

about, [if/else](#), [Nested ifs](#)

vs if-case statements, [switch vs if/else](#)

vs switch statements, [switch vs if/else](#)

immutability, [Functional Programming](#)

import Foundation, [A New Project](#)

import keyword, [Access Control](#)

in keyword, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

in-out parameters, [In-out parameters](#)

index(_:offsetBy:) method, [Indices and ranges](#)

indirect keyword, [Recursive Enumerations](#)

infinite loops, [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)

inheritance

about, [A Monster class](#), [Inheritance](#)

class initializers and, [Initialization and class inheritance](#)

overriding, [A Zombie subclass](#), [Type Properties](#)

preventing overriding, [Preventing overriding](#)

protocol, [Protocol Inheritance](#)

init keyword, [Initializer Syntax](#)

initialization

about, [Initialization](#)

classes vs value types, [Initialization Going Forward](#)

of variables, [Constants vs Variables](#)

initializer delegation, [Convenience initializers for classes](#)

initializers

adding via an extension, [Adding an initializer with an extension](#)

automatic inheritance, [Automatic initializer inheritance](#)

class inheritance and, [Initialization and class inheritance](#)

convenience, [Class Initialization](#), [Convenience initializers for classes](#)

creating, [Initializer Syntax](#)

custom, [Custom initializers for structs](#)

default, for classes, [Default initializers for classes](#)

default, for structs, [Default initializers for structs](#)

deinitialization, [Deinitialization](#), [Memory Allocation](#)

designated (see [designated initializers](#))

empty, [Default initializers for structs](#)

failable, [Failable Initializers](#)

initializer delegation, [Initializer delegation](#)

memberwise, [Default initializers for structs](#), [Initializer delegation](#)

parameters, [For the More Curious: Initializer Parameters](#)

required, [Required initializers for classes](#)

subclasses calling superclass initializers, [Designated initializers for classes](#)

inout keyword, [In-out parameters](#)

insert(_:) method, [Getting a Set](#)

insert(_:at:) function, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)

instance methods, [Instance Methods](#), [For the More Curious: Mutating Methods](#)

instance properties, vs type properties, [Type Properties](#)

Int type

(see also [integers](#))

about, [Types](#)

converting, [Converting Between Integer Types](#)

declaring, [Creating Integer Instances](#)

macOS vs iOS, [Integers](#)

recommendation for, [Converting Between Integer Types](#)

sized, [Integers](#)

Int8, Int16, Int32, Int64 types, [Integers](#)

integer overflow error, [Creating Integer Instances](#)

integers

about, [Integers](#)

converting types, [Converting Between Integer Types](#)

dividing, [Integer division](#)

maximum and minimum values, [Integers](#)

operations on, [Operations on Integers](#)

overflow and underflow, [Overflow operators](#)

unsigned, [Integers](#)

Interface Builder (IB) (see [Xcode](#))

internal private(set) syntax, [Controlling getter and setter visibility](#)

intersection(_:) method, [Intersections](#)

interval matching, [Tuples and pattern matching](#)

iOS

adding models to controllers, [Setting Up the UITableView](#)

Auto Layout, [Laying Out the User Interface](#)

creating a model, [Modeling a To-Do List](#)

creating a new project, [Getting Started with iTahDoodle](#)

image views, [Adding an Objective-C Class](#)

loading files, [Loading TodoList](#)

navigation controller, [Adding contacts](#)

saving files, [Saving TodoList](#)

table view, [Laying Out the User Interface](#)

isDisjoint(with:) method, [Disjoint](#)

issue navigator, [Custom initializers for structs](#)

IteratorProtocol protocol, [Associated Type Protocols](#)

iterators, [for-in Loops](#)

L

last property, [Copying](#)
lazy keyword, [Lazy Stored Properties](#)
lazy loading, [Lazy Stored Properties](#)
less than (<) operator, [if/else](#), [Conforming to Comparable](#)
less than or equal to (<=) operator, [if/else](#)
let keyword, [Constants vs Variables](#), [Functional Programming](#)
logical and (&&) operator, [if/else](#)
logical not (!) operator, [if/else](#)
logical or (||) operator, [if/else](#)
loops
 about, [Loops](#)
 over arrays, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
 control transfer statements in, [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)
 over dictionaries, [Looping](#)
 for-in, [for-in Loops](#)
 infinite, [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)
 repeat-while, [repeat-while Loops](#)
 over sets, [Getting a Set](#)
 where clauses in, [where](#)
 while, [while Loops](#)
 while let, [Lexing an Input String](#)

M

main.swift, [A New Project](#)
makeWindowControllers() method, [Saving and Loading Documents](#)
map(_:) function, [map\(_:\)](#)
memory management
 about, [Memory Allocation](#)
 deinitialization, [Deinitialization](#), [Memory Allocation](#)
 memory allocation, [Memory Allocation](#)
 memory leaks, [Strong Reference Cycles](#)
 references (see [references](#))
 for value types, [Memory Allocation](#)
methods
 about, [Closure Syntax](#)
 append(_:), [Modifying an Optional in Place](#), [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
 autosavesInPlace(), [Saving and Loading Documents](#)
 contains(_:), [Working with Sets](#)
 data(ofType:), [Saving documents](#)
 deinit, [Strong Reference Cycles](#)
 on enumerations, [Methods](#)

generic, [Generic Functions and Methods](#)
implicit arguments, [Methods](#)
index(_:offsetBy:), [Indices and ranges](#)
insert(_:), [Getting a Set](#)
instance, [Instance Methods](#), [For the More Curious: Mutating Methods](#)
intersection(_:), [Intersections](#)
isDisjoint(with:), [Disjoint](#)
makeWindowControllers(), [Saving and Loading Documents](#)
mutating, [Methods](#), [Mutating methods](#), [For the More Curious: Mutating Methods](#)
read(from:type:), [Saving documents](#)
removeValue(forKey:), [Adding and Removing Values](#)
sorted(by:), [Closure Syntax](#)
type, [For the More Curious: Type Methods](#)
union(_:), [Unions](#)
updateValue(_:_forKey:), [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)
write(to:atomicity), [Saving TodoList](#)
“Missing argument” error, [Initialization and class inheritance](#)
model objects, [Formatting a Table of Data](#)
Model-View-Controller (MVC) design, [Model-View-Controller](#)
models, in MVC, [Model-View-Controller](#)
modules
frameworks and, [Access Control](#)
vs namespaces, [Lexing an Input String](#)
multiplication assignment (*=) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)
mutating keyword, [Methods](#), [Mutating methods](#), [For the More Curious: Mutating Methods](#)
mutating methods, [Methods](#), [For the More Curious: Mutating Methods](#)
MVC (Model-View-Controller) design, [Model-View-Controller](#)

N

namespaces, [Lexing an Input String](#)
navigator area, [A New Project](#)
nested types, [Nested Types](#), [Nested types and extensions](#)
nil coalescing (??) operator, [The Nil Coalescing Operator](#)
nil value, [Optionals](#), [A failable Town initializer](#)
nonidentity (!==) operator, [if/else](#)
not equal to (!=) operator, [if/else](#), [Buy one method, get another free!](#)
NSArray type, [Saving TodoList](#)
NSDocument class, [Saving and Loading Documents](#)
NSObject class, [Modeling a To-Do List](#), [Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#)
NSSpeechSynthesizer class, [Making VocalTextEdit ... Vocal](#)
NSTextView class, [Setting Up the View Controller](#)
NSViewController class, [Setting Up the View Controller](#)
numbers

floating-point, [Floating-Point Numbers](#)
integers, [Integers](#)

O

object library, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)

Objective-C

and Swift, [Your First Cocoa Application](#)

importing Swift header files, [Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#)

subclassing Objective-C classes in Swift code, [Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#)

Swift structs not visible to, [Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#)

using in Swift, [Adding an Objective-C Class](#)

using Swift in, [Adding Swift to an Objective-C Project](#)

operators

(see also individual operators)

custom, [For the More Curious: Custom Operators](#)

as functions, [Conforming to Equatable](#)

implementing on a custom type, [Conforming to Equatable](#)

infix, [Interlude: infix operators](#)

optionals

about, [Optionals](#), [For the More Curious: Understanding Optionals](#)

accessing value of, [Optional Types](#), [Modifying an Optional in Place](#)

binding, [Optional Binding](#)

chaining, [Optional Chaining](#)

declaring, [Optional Types](#)

forced unwrapping, [Optional Types](#), [Modifying an Optional in Place](#)

implicitly unwrapped, [Implicitly Unwrapped Optionals](#)

modifying in place, [Modifying an Optional in Place](#)

nil coalescing, [The Nil Coalescing Operator](#)

returning, [Optional Return Types](#), [Functions as Arguments](#)

unwrapping multiple, [Optional Binding](#)

Organization Identifier, [A New Project](#)

Organization Name, [A New Project](#)

outlets, [Connecting the text view outlet](#), [Wiring up your interface](#), [Adding contacts](#)

overflow addition (&+) operator, [Overflow operators](#)

overflow multiplication (&*) operator, [Overflow operators](#)

overflow subtraction (&-) operator, [Overflow operators](#)

overflowing, [Overflow operators](#)

override error, [Type Properties](#)

override keyword, [A Zombie subclass](#), [Type Properties](#)

P

parameters

(see also [arguments](#))
about, [Function Parameters](#)
default values, [Default parameter values](#)
external, [Parameter names](#)
in-out, [In-out parameters](#), [For the More Curious: Mutating Methods](#)
for initializers, [For the More Curious: Initializer Parameters](#)
names, [Parameter names](#)
passing multiple, [Function Parameters](#)
suppressing external names, [In-out parameters](#)
variadic, [Variadic parameters](#)

pattern matching
about, [Tuples and pattern matching](#)
interval matching, [Tuples and pattern matching](#)
with tuples, [Tuples and pattern matching](#)

placeholder types, [Generic Data Structures](#), [Type Constraints](#)

playgrounds
code editor, [Playing in a Playground](#)
creating, [Getting Started with Xcode](#)
debug area, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)
Quick Look, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
results sidebar, [Playing in a Playground](#), [for-in Loops](#)

polymorphism, [For the More Curious: Parametric Polymorphism](#)

precedencegroups, [For the More Curious: Custom Operators](#)

precondition(_:_:) function, [Lexing an Input String](#)

print() function, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)

Product Name, [A New Project](#)

project navigator, [A New Project](#), [Custom initializers for structs](#)

properties
about, [Properties](#)
adding to a struct, [Structures](#)
on classes, [Type Properties](#)
computed, [Properties](#), [Computed Properties](#), [Type Properties](#)
instance vs type, [Type Properties](#)
lazy stored, [Lazy Stored Properties](#)
optional, [A Monster class](#)
read-only, [Basic Stored Properties](#)
read/write, [Basic Stored Properties](#)
static, [Type Properties](#)
stored, [Properties](#)
stored type, [Type Properties](#)
type, [Type Properties](#)

property observers, [Property Observers](#)

protocol conformance, [Default Implementations with Protocol Extensions](#)

protocol extensions

about, [Protocol Extensions](#)
creating, [Extending Exercise](#)
default implementations, [Default Implementations with Protocol Extensions](#)
in Swift standard library, [Gold Challenge](#)
naming conflicts, [Naming Things: A Cautionary Tale](#)
where clauses, [Protocol Extension where Clauses](#)

protocols
about, [Protocols](#), [Protocols](#)
associated types, [Associated Type Protocols](#)
Comparable, [Conforming to Comparable](#)
composition, [Protocol Composition](#)
conformance, [Protocols](#), [Protocol Conformance](#), [Using extensions to add protocol conformance](#)
conforming to multiple, [Protocol Conformance](#)
CustomStringConvertible, [Protocol Conformance](#)
defining, [Protocols](#)
Equatable, [Conforming to Equatable](#)
Error, [Lexing an Input String](#)
extending (see [protocol extensions](#))
inheritance, [Protocol Inheritance](#), [Comparable's Inheritance](#)
IteratorProtocol, [Associated Type Protocols](#)
mutating methods in, [Mutating Methods](#)
Sequence, [Associated Type Protocols](#), [Protocol Extension where Clauses](#)
as types, [Protocols](#)

Pyramid of Doom, [Optional Binding](#)

Q

quotation marks, for strings, [Playing in a Playground](#)

R

range matching, [Ranges](#)
raw value enumerations, [Raw Value Enumerations](#)
read(from:ofType:) method, [Saving documents](#)
reduce(_:_:) function, [reduce\(_:_:\)](#)
refactoring, [Nested ifs](#)
reference semantics, [Reference Semantics](#)
reference types
about, [Closures Are Reference Types](#)
constants as, [Constant Value and Reference Types](#)
deinitialization, [Deinitialization](#)
in value types, [Using Value and Reference Types Together](#)
references
about, [Reference Semantics](#), [Strong Reference Cycles](#)

capture list, [Reference Cycles in Closures](#)
count, [Memory Allocation](#)
reference cycles in closures, [Reference Cycles in Closures](#)
reference semantics, [Reference Semantics](#)
strong, [Strong Reference Cycles](#)
strong reference cycles, [Strong Reference Cycles](#)
weak, [Breaking Strong Reference Cycles with weak](#)
release mode, [Lexing an Input String](#)
remainder (%) operator, [Integer division](#)
remainder assignment (%=) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)
remove(at:) function, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)
removeValue(forKey:) method, [Adding and Removing Values](#)
repeat-while loops, [repeat-while Loops](#)
“required’ initializer” error, [Required initializers for classes](#)
required keyword, [Required initializers for classes](#)
return values
about, [Returning from a Function](#)
functions as, [Functions as Return Types](#)
multiple, [Multiple Returns](#)
optional, [Optional Return Types](#), [Functions as Arguments](#)
root classes, [Modeling a To-Do List](#)

S

scenes, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)
scope, [Nested Functions and Scope](#)
segues
action, [Adding contacts](#)
deleting, [Adding contacts](#)
relationship, [Adding contacts](#)
unwind, [Adding contacts](#)
self
about, [Methods](#)
in closures, [Lazy Stored Properties](#)
Sequence protocol, [Associated Type Protocols](#), [Protocol Extension where Clauses](#)
set keyword, [A getter and a setter](#)
Set type
(see also [sets](#))
sets
about, [What Is a Set?](#)
adding items, [Getting a Set](#)
checking for an item, [Working with Sets](#)
combining, [Unions](#)
creating from arrays, [Getting a Set](#)

declaring, [Getting a Set](#)
disjoint, [Disjoint](#)
intersections, [Intersections](#)
looping over, [Getting a Set](#)
vs arrays, [What Is a Set?](#)
vs dictionaries, [What Is a Set?](#)
setters, [A getter and a setter](#), [Controlling getter and setter visibility](#)
sleep() function, [Control Transfer Statements, Redux](#)
sorted(by:) method, [Closure Syntax](#)
source files, [Access Control](#)
speech, synthesizing, [Making VocalTextEdit ... Vocal](#)
startIndex property, [Indices and ranges](#)
static keyword, [For the More Curious: Type Methods](#), [Type Properties](#)
storyboards
 about, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)
 associating a class with a scene, [Creating a contacts app](#)
 root view controllers, [Adding contacts](#)
string interpolation, [String Interpolation](#)
String type
 (see also [strings](#))
 about, [Playing in a Playground](#), [Working with Strings](#)
 count property, [Counting elements](#)
 startIndex property, [Indices and ranges](#)
 string literals, [Types](#)
 unicodeScalars property, [Unicode scalars](#)
String.CharacterView type, [Lexing an Input String](#)
String.CharacterView.Index type, [Indices and ranges](#)
strings
 accessing characters in, [Indices and ranges](#)
 canonical equivalence, [Canonical equivalence](#)
 counting characters, [Counting elements](#)
 creating, [Working with Strings](#)
 inserting variable value in, [String Interpolation](#)
 ranges, [Indices and ranges](#)
 subscripting, [Indices and ranges](#)
 Unicode scalars, [Unicode scalars](#)
strong typing, [Functional Programming](#)
struct keyword, [Structures](#)
structs
 about, [Structures](#)
 adding properties, [Structures](#)
 changing properties of, [Mutating methods](#)
 classes vs, [What Should I Use?](#), [Value Semantics](#), [What Should I Use?](#)
 creating, [Structures](#)

custom initializers, [Custom initializers for structs](#)

default initializers, [Default initializers for structs](#)

subclasses

about, [Inheritance](#)

calling superclass initializers, [Designated initializers for classes](#)

creating, [A Zombie subclass](#)

creating in projects, [Adding contacts](#)

overriding, [A Zombie subclass](#), [Type Properties](#)

preventing overriding, [Preventing overriding](#)

requiring initializers on, [Required initializers for classes](#)

subscript syntax ([]), [Indices and ranges](#)

subscripting

arrays, [Accessing and Modifying Arrays](#)

dictionaries, [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

strings, [Indices and ranges](#)

subtraction assignment (-=) operator, [Operator shorthand](#)

super prefix, [A Zombie subclass](#)

superclasses, [Inheritance](#)

switch cases

about, [What Is a Switch?](#)

default, [What Is a Switch?](#)

pattern matching in, [Tuples and pattern matching](#)

ranges, [Ranges](#)

switch statements

about, [What Is a Switch?](#)

associated values, [Associated Values](#)

in enumerations, [Basic Enumerations](#)

exhaustiveness checks, [What Is a Switch?](#)

vs if-case statements, [switch vs if/else](#)

vs if/else statements, [switch vs if/else](#)

T

target-action pairs, [Setting target-action pairs for VocalTextEdit's buttons](#), [Wiring up your interface](#)

text view

capturing entered text, [Connecting the text view outlet](#)

empty, [Making VocalTextEdit ... Vocal](#)

loading data into, [Loading documents](#)

managing with ViewController, [MVC cleanup](#)

throw keyword, [Lexing an Input String](#)

throws keyword, [Lexing an Input String](#)

trailing closure syntax, [Closure Expression Syntax](#)

traps, [Overflow operators](#), [Classes of Errors](#)

try keyword, [Catching Errors](#), [Parsing the Token Array](#), [Handling Errors by Sticking Your Head in the Sand](#)

try! keyword, [Handling Errors by Sticking Your Head in the Sand](#)

try? keyword, [Handling Errors by Sticking Your Head in the Sand](#)

tuples

about, [Tuples and pattern matching](#), [Multiple Returns](#)

named, [Multiple Returns](#)

“Type annotation missing in pattern” error, [Custom initializers for structs](#)

type annotation, [Types](#)

type casting, [Type casting](#)

type checking, [Types](#)

type constraints, [Type Constraints](#), [Associated Type Protocols](#), [Type Constraint where Clauses](#)

“type...does not conform to protocol...” error, [Mutating Methods](#)

type extensions (see [extensions](#))

type inference, [Types](#), [A Quick Note on Type Inference](#), [Creating an Array](#), [Closure Expression Syntax](#), [Basic Enumerations](#), [Associated Type Protocols](#)

type methods, [For the More Curious: Type Methods](#)

type properties, [Type Properties](#)

typealias keyword, [Extending an Existing Type](#)

types

about, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#), [Types](#)

Any, [Type casting](#)

Array, [Arrays](#)

Bool (Boolean), [if/else](#)

Character, [Working with Strings](#)

Data, [Saving documents](#)

Double, [Floating-Point Numbers](#)

Float, [Floating-Point Numbers](#)

Int, [Types](#), [Integers](#)

Int8, [Integers](#)

Int16, [Integers](#)

Int32, [Integers](#)

Int64, [Integers](#)

nested, [Nested Types](#)

NSArray, [Saving TodoList](#)

Set, [Sets](#)

String, [Playing in a Playground](#), [Types](#), [Working with Strings](#)

String.CharacterView.Index, [Indices and ranges](#)

UInt, [Integers](#)

U

UIImageView type, [Adding an Objective-C Class](#)

UIKit framework, [Adding contacts](#)

UINavigationController type, [Adding contacts](#)

UInt type, [Integers](#)

UITableView class, [Laying Out the User Interface](#)

underflowing, [Overflow operators](#)

Unicode, [Unicode](#)

Unicode scalars

about, [Unicode scalars](#)

canonical equivalence, [Canonical equivalence](#)

combining, [Unicode scalars](#)

extended grapheme clusters, [Unicode scalars](#)

unicodeScalars property, [Unicode scalars](#)

unicodeScalars property, [Unicode scalars](#)

uninitialized variables, [Constants vs Variables](#)

union(_:) method, [Unions](#)

updateValue(_:forKey:) method, [Accessing and Modifying a Dictionary](#)

uppercase, converting to, [Optional Chaining](#)

“Use of ‘self’ in delegating initializer before self.init is called” error, [Convenience initializers for classes](#)

utilities area, [A New Project](#), [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)

V

“Value of optional type...not unwrapped” error, [A failable Town initializer](#)

value binding

about, [Value binding](#)

where clauses in, [where clauses](#)

value semantics, [Value Semantics](#)

value types

about, [Value Semantics](#)

constants as, [Constant Value and Reference Types](#)

copy on write, [For the More Curious: Copy on Write](#)

memory management, [Deinitialization](#), [For the More Curious: Copy on Write](#)

in reference types, [Using Value and Reference Types Together](#)

self and, [Methods](#)

var keyword, [Playing in a Playground](#)

variables

about, [Playing in a Playground](#)

assigning function types to, [Function Types](#)

assigning values, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)

declaring, [Playing in a Playground](#), [Types](#)

initializing, [Constants vs Variables](#)

inserting into a string, [String Interpolation](#)

vs constants, [Constants vs Variables](#)

variadic parameters, [Variadic parameters](#)

view controllers, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#), [Saving documents](#), [Creating a contacts app](#), [Adding contacts](#)

views

about, [Model-View-Controller](#)
adding buttons, [Adding the Speak and Stop buttons](#)
creating, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#), [Laying Out the User Interface](#)
dismissing, [Adding contacts](#)
image, [Adding an Objective-C Class](#)
layout, [Laying Out the User Interface](#)
table, [Laying Out the User Interface](#), [Modeling a To-Do List](#), [Setting Up the UITableView](#), [Creating a contacts app](#)
text, [Adding the text view](#)

W

where clauses

in loops, [where](#)
in protocol extensions, [Protocol Extension where Clauses](#)
in switch statements, [where clauses](#)
for type constraints, [Type Constraint where Clauses](#)
while let loops, [Lexing an Input String](#)
while loops, [while Loops](#)
willSet observer, [Property Observers](#)
window controllers, [Saving documents](#)
write(to:atomically) method, [Saving TodoList](#)

X

Xcode

adding a file, [Structures](#)
adding a text view, [Adding the text view](#)
application window, [A New Project](#)
connecting outlets, [Connecting the text view outlet](#)
console, [Varying Variables and Printing to the Console](#)
creating a model, [Modeling a To-Do List](#)
creating a new application, [Getting Started with VocalTextEdit](#)
creating a new project, [A New Project](#)
creating views, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#), [Laying Out the User Interface](#)
document outline, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)
documentation, [Documentation](#)
importing header files, [Adding an Objective-C Class](#)
Interface Builder (IB), [Setting Up the View Controller](#)
issue navigator, [Creating a contacts app](#)
object library, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)
playgrounds (see [playgrounds](#))
running a program, [A New Project](#)
target-action pairs, [Setting target-action pairs for VocalTextEdit's buttons](#), [Wiring up your interface](#)
toolbar, [A New Project](#)

utilities area, [Setting Up Views in Interface Builder](#)

view layout, [Auto Layout](#), [Laying Out the User Interface](#)